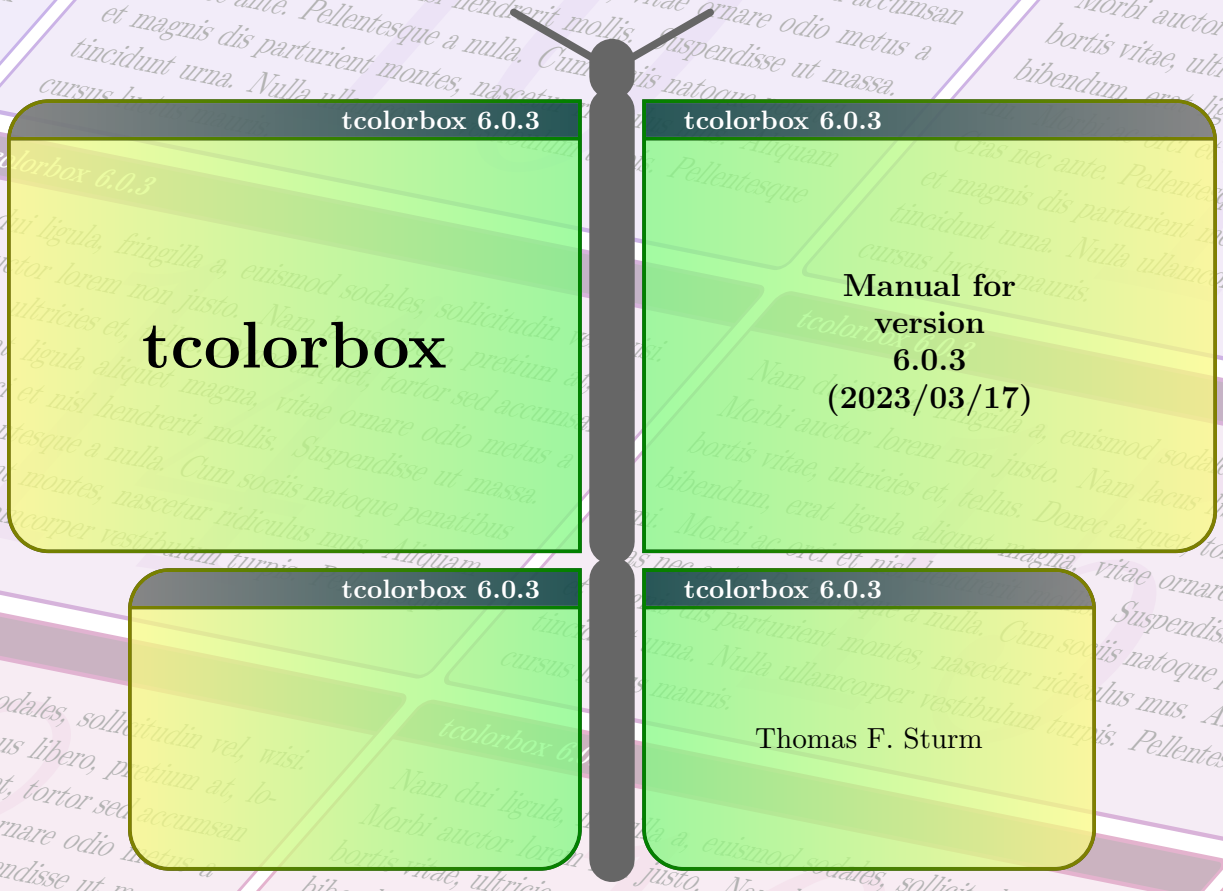

tcolorbox 6.0.3
tcolorbox
tcolorbox 6.0.3
Manual for
version
6.0.3
(2023/03/17)
tcolorbox 6.0.3
tcolorbox 6.0.3
Thomas F. Sturm

Cover code

```
% \usepackage{incgraph}
\begin{inctext}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\definecolorseries{boxcol}{rgb}{last}{blue}{red}
\resetcolorseries[28]{boxcol}
\coordinate (A) at (0,0); \coordinate (B) at (21,29.7);
\path[use as bounding box] (A) rectangle coordinate (C) (B);
\node[transform shape,xslant=0.7,rotate=-10,xshift=0cm] at (C) {%
  \begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=4,title=tcolorbox \version,
    fonttitle=\small\bfseries,raster width=50cm]
  \foreach \b in {1,...,28} {\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,
    watermark text=\thetcbrasternum,
    colframe=boxcol!30!white,
    colback=boxcol!25!white!30!white,
    colbacktitle=boxcol!!+!50!black!30!white,
    colupper=black!30!white]\lipsum[2]\end{tcolorbox}}
  \end{tcbraster}%
};
\node at (C) {%
  \begin{tcbitemize}[title=tcolorbox \version,fonttitle=\small\bfseries,
    enhanced jigsaw,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.75,
    halign=center,valign=center,arc=5mm,
    raster width=16cm,raster column skip=8mm,raster halign=center,
    raster force size=false,
    raster row 1/.style={height=6cm},
    raster row 2/.style={width=6cm,height=4cm},
    raster column 1/.style={flushright title,
      frame style={left color=yellow!50!black,right color=green!50!black},
      title style={left color=yellow!50!blue,right color=blue!50!green!50!black},
      interior style={left color=yellow!70,right color=green!70},
      underlay={\draw[line width=6mm,line cap=round,black!60]
        ([shift={(0.4,-0.15)}]frame.north east)
        --([shift={(0.4,0.15)}]frame.south east); }},
    raster column 2/.style={
      frame style={left color=green!50!black,right color=yellow!50!black},
      title style={left color=blue!50!green!50!black,right color=yellow!50!blue},
      interior style={left color=green!70,right color=yellow!70}}]
  \tcbitem[fontupper=\Huge\bfseries,sharp corners=east,
    underlay={\draw[line width=6mm,line cap=round,black!60]
      ([shift={(0.4,0.30)}]frame.north east)-- coordinate(A) +(0,0.2);
      \draw[line width=1mm,line cap=round,black!60](A) -- +(30:1.5cm);
      \draw[line width=1mm,line cap=round,black!60](A) -- +(150:1.5cm);}]
    tcolorbox
  \tcbitem[fontupper=\large\bfseries,sharp corners=west]
    Manual for\\ version\\ \version\\(\datum)
  \tcbitem[sharp corners=northeast]
  \tcbitem[sharp corners=northwest] Thomas F.~Sturm
  \end{tcbitemize}%
};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{inctext}
```

The tcolorbox package

Manual for version 6.0.3 (2023/03/17)

Thomas F. Sturm[1]

https://www.ctan.org/pkg/tcolorbox

https://github.com/T-F-S/tcolorbox

Abstract

tcolorbox provides an environment for colored and framed text boxes with a heading line. Optionally, such a box can be split in an upper and a lower part. The package tcolorbox can be used for the setting of LaTeX examples where one part of the box displays the source code and the other part shows the output. Another common use case is the setting of theorems. The package supports saving and reuse of source code and text parts.

Contents

1 Introduction **8**
- 1.1 Installation . . . 8
- 1.2 Loading the Package . . . 8
- 1.3 Libraries . . . 9

2 Quick Reference **11**

3 Macros for Box Creation **12**
- 3.1 Using tcolorbox and \tcbox . . . 12
- 3.2 Producing tcolorbox Environments and Commands . . . 15
- 3.3 Producing \tcbox Commands . . . 19
- 3.4 Redefining other Environments (Wrapping with tcolorbox) . . . 22

4 Option Keys **23**
- 4.1 Title . . . 23
- 4.2 Subtitle . . . 26
- 4.3 Upper Part . . . 27
- 4.4 Lower Part . . . 29
- 4.5 Colors and Fonts . . . 32
- 4.6 Text Alignment . . . 35
- 4.7 Geometry . . . 39
  - 4.7.1 Width . . . 39
  - 4.7.2 Rules . . . 40
  - 4.7.3 Arcs . . . 41
  - 4.7.4 Spacing . . . 44
  - 4.7.5 Size Shortcuts . . . 49
  - 4.7.6 Toggle Left and Right . . . 51
- 4.8 Corners . . . 53

[1]Prof. Dr. Dr. Thomas F. Sturm, Institut für Mathematik und Informatik, University of the Bundeswehr Munich, D-85577 Neubiberg, Germany; email: thomas.sturm@unibw.de

4.9 Transparency . . . 56
4.10 Height Control . . . 58
4.11 Box Content Additions . . . 69
4.12 Overlays . . . 79
4.13 Floating Objects . . . 84
4.14 Embedding into the Surroundings . . . 86
4.15 Bounding Box . . . 93
4.15.1 Shifting Bounding Box Borders . . . 93
4.15.2 Box Alignment . . . 96
4.15.3 Toggle Enlargements . . . 97
4.15.4 Spread Box to Page Borders . . . 98
4.15.5 Box Extrusion . . . 100
4.16 Layered Boxes and Every Box Settings . . . 102
4.17 Capture Mode . . . 105
4.18 Text Characteristics . . . 106
4.19 Files . . . 107
4.20 `\tcbox` Specials . . . 108
4.21 Counters, Labels, and References . . . 110
4.22 Even and Odd Pages . . . 114
4.23 Externalization . . . 118
4.24 Miscellaneous . . . 119

5 Initialization Option Keys 124
5.1 Numbered Boxes . . . 124
5.2 Lists of `tcolorboxes` . . . 131

6 Side by Side 134
6.1 Basic Settings . . . 134
6.2 Advanced Settings . . . 140

7 Saving and Loading of Verbatim Texts 144

8 Recording 147
8.1 Macros . . . 147
8.2 Options . . . 147
8.3 Example: Exercises . . . 148
8.4 Example: Solutions . . . 151

9 Technical Overview and Customization 153
9.1 Skins and Drawing Engines . . . 153
9.2 Code Option Keys . . . 157
9.3 Subskins . . . 160
9.4 Drawing Scheme . . . 161
9.5 Color Names . . . 165
9.6 Useful Properties . . . 166

10 Library LIB skins 168
10.1 Style Option Keys . . . 168
10.2 Boxed Title Option Keys . . . 175
10.2.1 Boxed Title Placement . . . 175
10.2.2 Options for the Boxed Title Placement . . . 178
10.2.3 Options for the Boxed Title Box . . . 179

Contents

10.3 Watermark Option Keys . . . 186
10.4 Clip Environments . . . 193
10.5 Border Line Option Keys . . . 198
10.6 Shadow Option Keys . . . 203
10.6.1 Common Shadows and Halos . . . 203
10.6.2 Lifted Shadows . . . 208
10.6.3 Generic Shadows . . . 209
10.6.4 Ti*k*Z Shadows . . . 212
10.7 Ti*k*Z Picture Option Keys . . . 213
10.8 Underlay Option Keys . . . 216
10.9 Finish Option Keys . . . 218
10.10 Hyper Option Keys . . . 220
10.11 Jigsaw Skin Variants . . . 222
10.12 Draft Mode . . . 224

11 Library skins - Catalog of Skins 226
11.1 Skin Family “standard” . . . 228
11.2 Skin Family “enhanced” . . . 230
11.3 Skin Family “bicolor” . . . 242
11.4 Skin Family “tile” . . . 253
11.5 Skin Family “beamer” . . . 257
11.6 Skin Family “widget” . . . 261
11.7 Skin Family “empty” . . . 264
11.8 Skin “spartan” . . . 274
11.9 Skin “draft” . . . 275
11.10 Skin Family “freelance” . . . 277

12 Inclusion of Boxed Image Files 278
12.1 Macros . . . 278
12.2 Option Keys . . . 281

13 Ti*k*Z Auxiliary Macros 283
13.1 Straightening of the Arcs . . . 283
13.2 Extracting Node Dimensions . . . 284
13.3 Hyper Nodes . . . 284

14 Beamer Support 285

15 Library vignette 291
15.1 Vignette Drawing . . . 291
15.2 Generic Geometry Settings . . . 292
15.3 Generic Color and Style Settings . . . 294
15.4 Generic Fading Settings . . . 296
15.5 Vignette as Underlay . . . 299
15.6 Vignette as Finish . . . 301

16 Library raster 304
16.1 Concept of Rasters . . . 304
16.2 Macros of the Library . . . 306
16.3 Option Keys of the Library . . . 310
16.4 Adding Styles for Specific Boxes . . . 316
16.5 Combining Columns or Rows . . . 318
16.6 Rasters inside Rasters . . . 321

16.6.1 Raster Setup . . . 321
16.6.2 Placing Spaces . . . 322

17 Libraries LIB listings, LIB listingsutf8, and LIB minted 326
17.1 Loading the Libraries . . . 326
17.1.1 Loading LIB listings . . . 326
17.1.2 Loading LIB listingsutf8 . . . 326
17.1.3 Loading LIB minted . . . 327
17.2 Common Macros of the Libraries . . . 327
17.3 Producing `tcblisting` Environments . . . 330
17.4 Producing `\tcbinputlisting` Commands . . . 334
17.5 Option Keys of the LIB listings Library . . . 336
17.6 Option Keys of the LIB listingsutf8 Library . . . 338
17.7 Option Keys of the LIB minted Library . . . 339
17.8 Common Option Keys of all Libraries . . . 341
17.9 Option Keys for Processing and Full Document Examples . . . 351
17.10 Creation of LaTeX Tutorials . . . 358
17.11 Creation of LaTeX Exercises . . . 365
17.12 List of Exercises . . . 368
17.13 Solutions for the given LaTeX Exercises . . . 369

18 Library LIB theorems 371
18.1 Macros of the Library . . . 371
18.2 Option Keys of the Library . . . 376
18.3 Examples for Definitions and Theorems . . . 392
18.4 Using other theorem environments with `tcolorbox` . . . 397

19 Library LIB breakable 398
19.1 Technical Overview . . . 398
19.2 Limitations and Known Bugs . . . 399
19.3 Main Option Keys . . . 400
19.4 Option Keys for the Break Appearance . . . 405
19.5 Extra Options for Partial Boxes . . . 407
19.6 Breakable boxes and the `multicol` package . . . 410
19.7 Break Point Insertion . . . 413
19.8 Break Sequence for the Skins . . . 414
19.9 Break by Hand (Faked Break) . . . 424

20 Library LIB magazine 425
20.1 Creation and Resetting of Box Arrays . . . 425
20.2 Storing Content . . . 426
20.3 Retrieving Content . . . 428
20.4 Box Dimensions . . . 431
20.5 Leaflet Example . . . 433

21 Library LIB poster 435
21.1 Overview . . . 435
21.2 Main Poster Environment . . . 436
21.3 Poster Settings . . . 438
21.4 Coverage . . . 439
21.5 Common Box Settings . . . 440
21.6 Font Scaling . . . 440

21.7 Box Placement 441

22 Library LIB fitting **449**
22.1 Macros of the Library 449
22.2 Producing `\tcboxfit` Commands 451
22.3 Option Keys of the Library 454

23 Library LIB hooks **463**
23.1 Concept of Hooks 463
23.2 Box Content Additions 464
23.3 Embedding into the Surroundings 466
23.4 Overlays 467
23.5 Watermarks 469
23.6 Underlays 471
23.7 Finishes 472
23.8 Skin Code 472
23.9 Extras 474
23.10 Listings 474

24 Library LIB xparse **475**

25 Library LIB external **476**
25.1 Preparation of a Document for Externalization 477
25.2 Marking Externalization Snippets 478
25.3 Customization 483
25.4 Troubleshooting and FAQ 487

26 Library LIB documentation **488**
26.1 Macros of the Library 488
26.2 Entry Content Option Keys 502
26.3 Entry Customization Option Keys 505
26.4 General Customization Option Keys 510
26.5 Language Option Keys 513
26.6 Predefined Colors of the Library 514

A Picture Credits **515**

References **516**

Index **518**

Contents

1 Introduction

The package originates from the first edition of my book «*LaTeX– Einführung in das Textsatzsystem*» [20] in about 2006. For the LaTeX examples and tutorials given there, I wanted to have accentuated and colored boxes to display source code and compiled text in combination. Since, in my opinion, this type of boxes is also quite useful to highlight definitions and theorems, I applied them for my lecture notes in mathematics [21–23] as well. With this package, you are invited to apply these boxes for similar projects.

The breaking news for version 2.00 was the support for breakable boxes. This feature allows new applications of the package without affecting the core package too much if you do not need boxes to break automatically. With version 2.20, the often requested "side by side" mode for listings has been added. With version 3.00, boxed titles are introduced together with improved customization options for overlays, underlays, finishes, and own code extensions.

Since the first public release in 2011, I received a lot of feedback from all over the world. I want to thank all who wrote me for supporting this package by sending bug reports and ideas for new or better features.

1.1 Installation

Typically, `tcolorbox` will be installed as part of a major LaTeX distribution and there is nothing special to do for a user.

If you intend to make a local installation *by hand*, see the `README` file of the `tcolorbox` package for some hints. The short story is: you have to install not only `tcolorbox.sty`, but also all `*.code.tex` files in the local `texmf` tree.

1.2 Loading the Package

The base package `tcolorbox` loads the packages `pgf` [24], `verbatim` [19], `etoolbox` [8], and `environ` [18]. `tcolorbox` itself is loaded in the usual manner in the preamble:

```
\usepackage{tcolorbox}
```

The package takes option keys in the key-value syntax. Alternatively, you may use these keys later in the preamble with `\tcbuselibrary` → P. 9 (see there). For example, the key to typeset listings is:

```
\usepackage[listings]{tcolorbox}
```

1.3 Libraries

The base package `tcolorbox` is extendable by program libraries. This is done by using option keys while loading the package or inside the preamble by applying the following macro with the same set of keys.

`\tcbuselibrary{`⟨*key list*⟩`}`

Loads the libraries given by the ⟨*key list*⟩.

```
\tcbuselibrary{listings,theorems}
```

The following keys are used inside `\tcbuselibrary` respectively `\usepackage` without the key tree path `/tcb/library/`.

`/tcb/library/skins` (LIB skins)

Loads the package `tikz` [24] and provides additional styles (skins) for the appearance of the colored boxes; see Section 10 from page 168.

`/tcb/library/vignette` (LIB vignette)

Provides code for more ornamental; see Section 15 from page 291.

`/tcb/library/raster` (LIB raster)

Provides additional macros and options for typesetting multiple boxes arranged in a kind of raster; see Section 16 from page 304.

`/tcb/library/listings` (LIB listings)

Loads the package `listings` [7] and provides additional macros for typesetting listings which are described in Section 17 from page 326.

`/tcb/library/listingsutf8` (LIB listingsutf8)

Loads the packages `listings` [7] and `listingsutf8` [11] for UTF-8 support. This is a variant of the library LIB listings and is described in Section 17 from page 326.

`/tcb/library/minted` (LIB minted)

Loads the package `minted` [14] to typeset listings with the `Pygments` [16] tool, also see Section 17 on page 326.

`/tcb/library/theorems` (LIB theorems)

Provides additional macros for typesetting theorems which are described in Section 18 from page 371.

`/tcb/library/breakable` (LIB breakable)

Provides support for automatic box breaking from one page to another; see Section 19 on page 398.

`/tcb/library/magazine` (LIB magazine)

Provides support for storing broken box parts to be used later or in interchanged order, Section 20 on page 425.

`/tcb/library/poster` (LIB poster)

Provides support for creating posters, Section 21 on page 435.

`/tcb/library/fitting` (LIB fitting)

Provides support for font size adaption of the box content to the box dimensions; see Section 22 from page 449.

`/tcb/library/hooks` (LIB hooks)

Extends several option keys to “hookable” keys; see Section 23 from page 463.

`/tcb/library/xparse` (LIB xparse)

Loads the package `xparse` and is considered a legacy library kept for compatibility; see Section 24 from page 475.

`/tcb/library/external` (LIB external)

Provides externalization support for stand-alone document snippets, see Section 25 on page 476.

`/tcb/library/documentation` (LIB documentation)

Provides additional macros for typesetting LaTeX documentations which are described in Section 26 from page 488.

`/tcb/library/many` (style, no value)

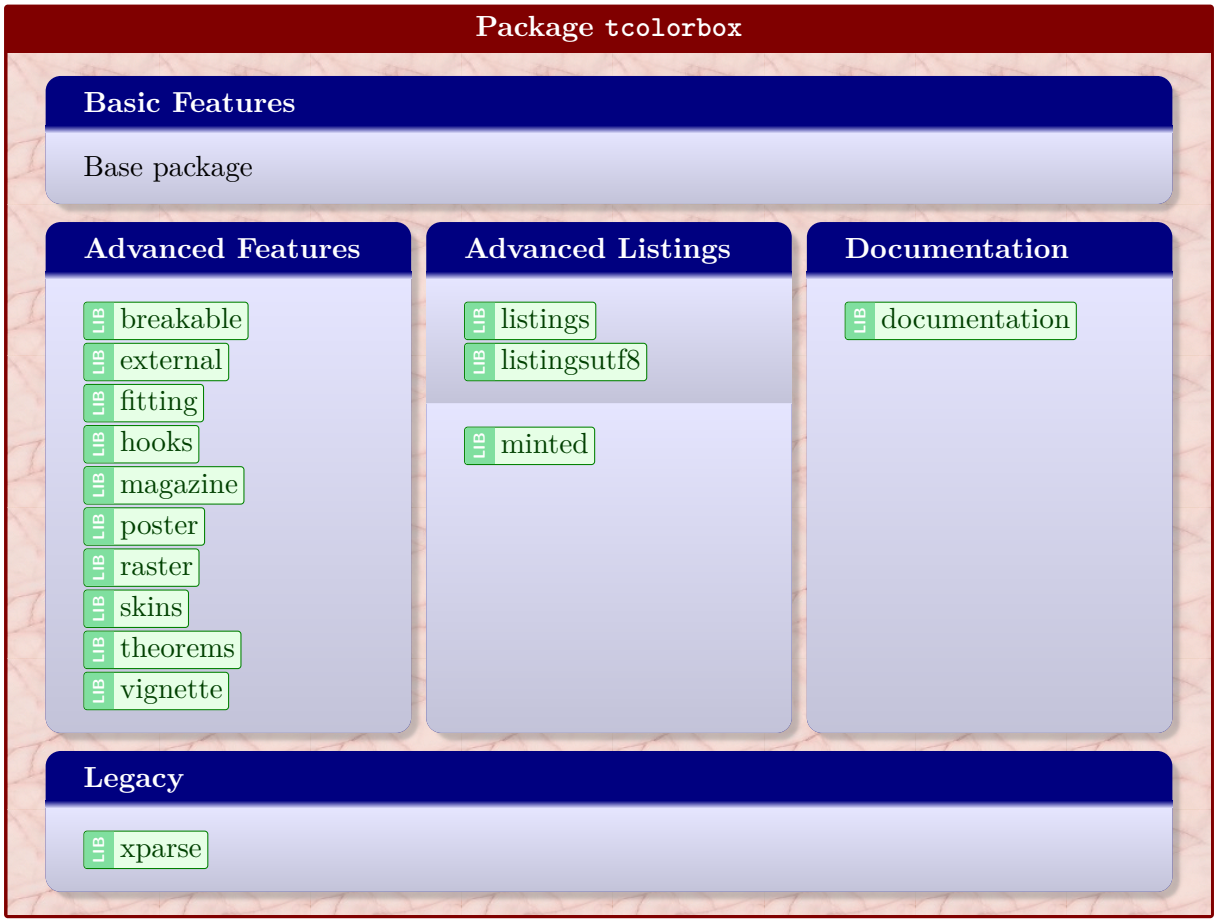
Loads the libraries LIB skins, LIB breakable, LIB raster, LIB hooks, LIB theorems, and LIB fitting. Use this shortcut, if you want to use all features of `tcolorbox` with exception of typesetting listings and using the specialized LIB documentation library.

`/tcb/library/most` (style, no value)

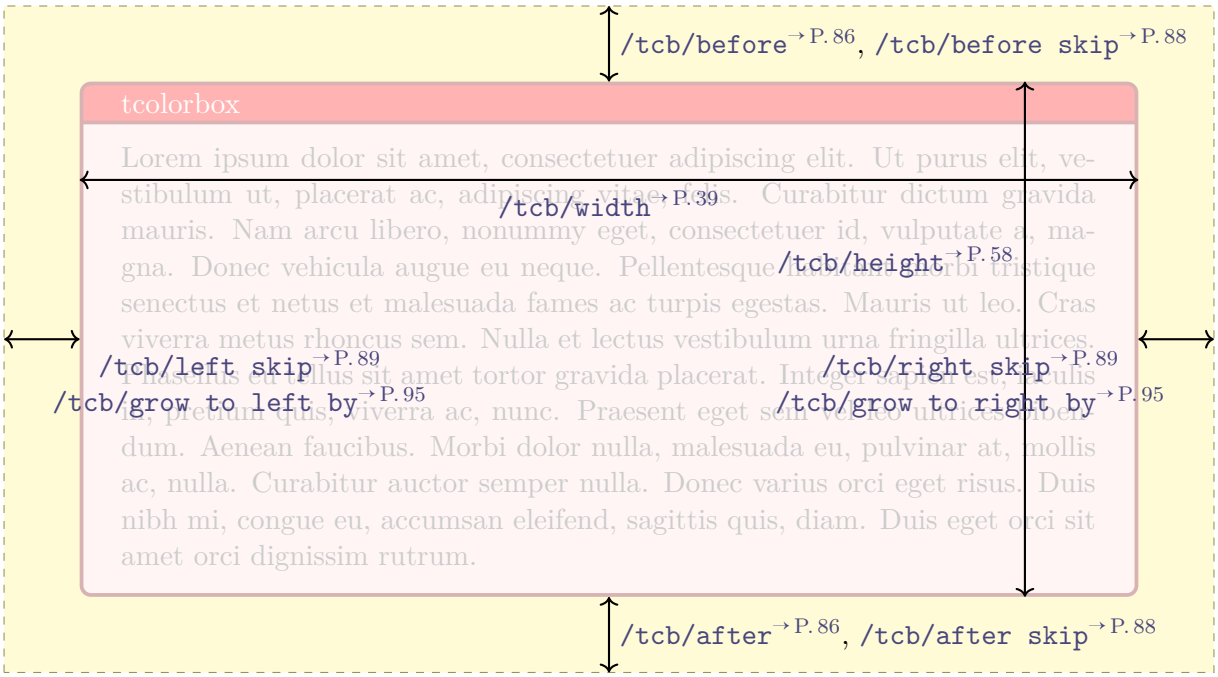
Loads all libraries except LIB minted, LIB documentation, and LIB xparse. Use this shortcut, if you want to use all features of `tcolorbox` with exception of using the `minted` package and using the specialized LIB documentation library.

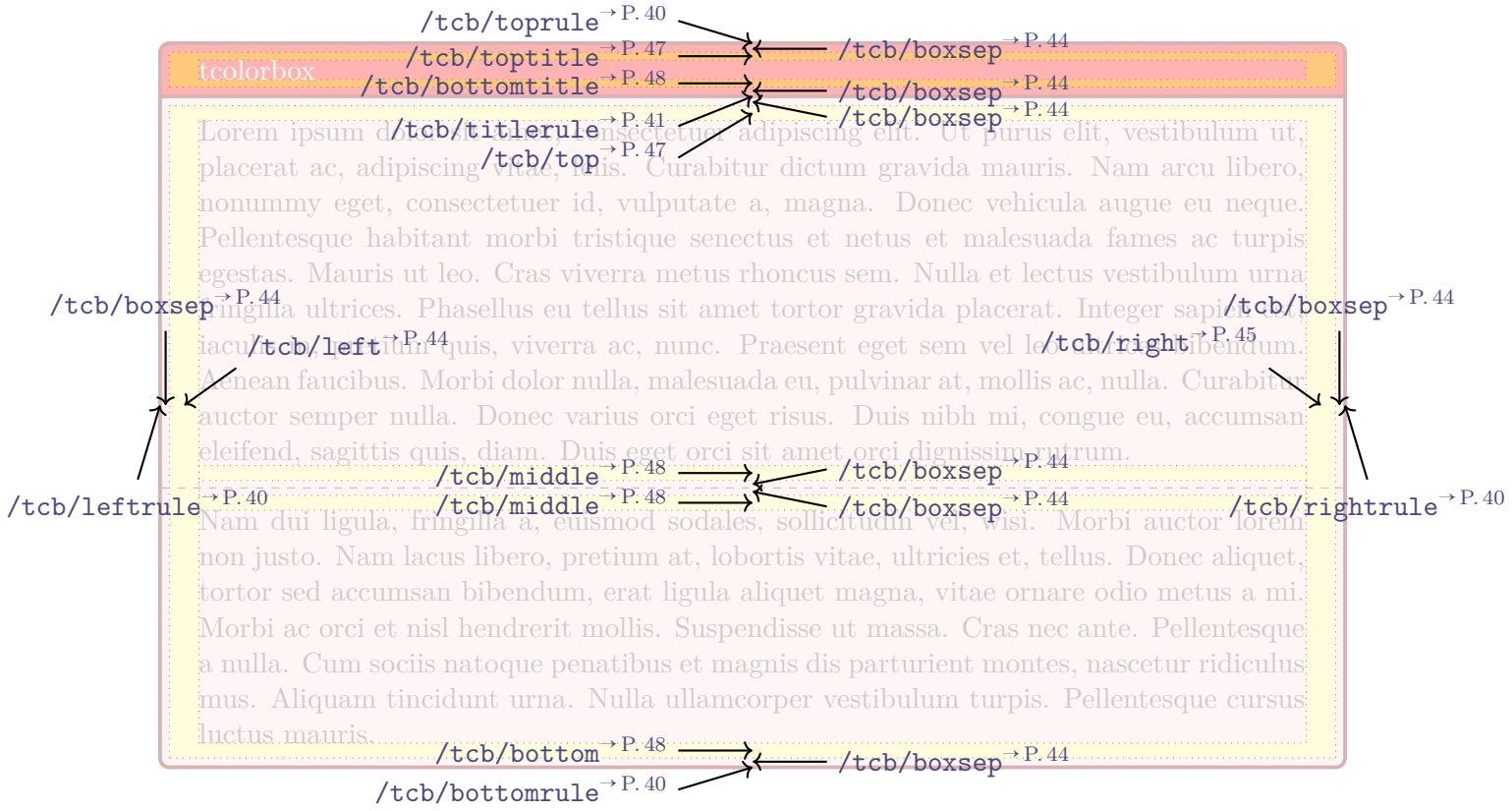
`/tcb/library/all` (style, no value)

Loads all libraries. Use this shortcut only, if you intend to use the LIB documentation library.



2 Quick Reference





3 Macros for Box Creation

3.1 Using tcolorbox and \tcbox

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[⟨options⟩]
  ⟨environment content⟩
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is the main environment to create an accentuated colored text box with rounded corners and, optionally, two parts. The appearance of this box is controlled by numerous options. In the most simple case the source code

```
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

creates the following compiled text box:

This is a **tcolorbox**.

The text content of the box can be divided in an upper and a lower part by the command \tcblower. Visually, both parts are separated by a line. For example:

```
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is another \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
Here, you see the lower part of the box.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This code gives the following box:

This is another **tcolorbox**.

Here, you see the lower part of the box.

The ⟨*options*⟩ control the appearance and several functions of the boxes, see Section 4 on page 23 for the complete list. A quick example is given here:

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,title=My nice heading]
This is another \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
Here, you see the lower part of the box.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My nice heading

This is another **tcolorbox**.

Here, you see the lower part of the box.

```
\tcblower
```

Used inside tcolorbox to separate the upper box part from the optional lower box part. The upper and the lower part are treated as separate functional units. If you only want to draw a line, see \tcbline → P. 233.

`\tcbset{`⟨*options*⟩`}`

Sets options for every following `tcolorbox` → P. 12 inside the current TEX group. By default, this does not apply to nested boxes, see Section 4.16 on page 102.
For example, the colors of the boxes may be defined for the whole document by this:

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
```

`\tcbsetforeverylayer{`⟨*options*⟩`}`

Sets options for every following `tcolorbox` → P. 12 inside the current TEX group. In contrast to `\tcbset`, this does also apply to nested boxes, see Section 4.16 on page 102. Technically, the ⟨*options*⟩ are appended to the default values for every tcolorbox which are applied by `/tcb/reset` → P. 119.
You should not use this macro, if you are not completely sure that you want to have the ⟨*options*⟩ also for boxes in boxes (in boxes in boxes . . .).

```
\tcbset{colback=green!10!white}
\tcbsetforeverylayer{colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=All options for this box]
  This is a tcolorbox.\par\medskip
  \begin{tcolorbox}[title=Nested box]
    Note that this nested box has a red frame but no green background.
  \end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
\bigskip

\begin{tcolorbox}[reset]
  Options given with |\tcbsetforeverylayer| survive a |reset|.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

All options for this box

This is a tcolorbox.

Nested box

Note that this nested box has a red frame but no green background.

Options given with `\tcbsetforeverylayer` survive a `reset`.

`\tcbox[⟨options⟩]{⟨box content⟩}`

Creates a colored box which is fitted to the width of the given ⟨*box content*⟩. In principle, most ⟨*options*⟩ for a `tcolorbox` → P. 12 can be used for `\tcbox` with some restrictions. A `\tcbox` cannot have a lower part and cannot be broken.

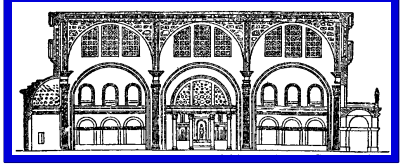
```
\tcbset{colframe=blue!50!black,colback=white,colupper=red!50!black,
        fonttitle=\bfseries,nobeforeafter,center title}

Text \tcbox[tcbox raise base]{Hello World}\hfill
%
\tcbox[left=0mm,right=0mm,top=0mm,bottom=0mm,boxsep=0mm,
  toptitle=0.5mm,bottomtitle=0.5mm,title=My table]{%
  \arrayrulecolor{blue!50!black}\renewcommand{\arraystretch}{1.2}%
  \begin{tabular}{r|c|l}
  One    & Two    & Three \\\hline\hline
  Men    & Mice   & Lions \\\hline
  Upper & Middle & Lower
  \end{tabular}}\hfill
%
\tcbox[colback=blue!85!black,
  left=0mm,right=0mm,top=0mm,bottom=0mm,boxsep=1mm,arc=0mm,boxrule=0.5pt,
  title=My picture]{%
  \includegraphics[width=5cm]{Basilica_5.png}}
```

Text Hello World

My table

One	Two	Three
Men	Mice	Lions
Upper	Middle	Lower

My picture



```
% \usepackage{tikz}
\tcbset{colframe=blue!50!black,colback=white,colupper=red!50!black,
        fonttitle=\bfseries,center title}

% Fixed width box
\begin{tcolorbox}Hello\\World!\end{tcolorbox}

% Fitted width box (like hbox or makebox)
\tcbox{Hello\\World!}

% Fitted width box (using a TikZ node)
\tcbox[tikznode]{Hello\\World!}
```

Hello
World!

HelloWorld!

Hello
World!

3.2 Producing tcolorbox Environments and Commands

`\newtcolorbox[⟨init options⟩]{⟨name⟩}[⟨number⟩][⟨default⟩]{⟨options⟩}`

Creates a new environment ⟨*name*⟩ based on `tcolorbox` → P. 12. Basically, `\newtcolorbox` operates like `\newenvironment`. This means, the new environment ⟨*name*⟩ optionally takes ⟨*number*⟩ arguments, where ⟨*default*⟩ is the default value for the optional first argument. The ⟨*options*⟩ are given to the underlying `tcolorbox`. Note that `/tcb/savedelimiter` → P. 31 is set to the given ⟨*name*⟩ automatically. The ⟨*init options*⟩ allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

```
\newtcolorbox{mybox}{colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{mybox}
This is my own box.
\end{mybox}
```

This is my own box.

```
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1]{colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title={#1}}

\begin{mybox}{Hello there}
This is my own box with a mandatory title.
\end{mybox}
```

Hello there

This is my own box with a mandatory title.

```
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[2][]{colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  colbacktitle=red!85!black,enhanced,
attach boxed title to top center={yshift=-2mm},
  title={#2},#1}

\begin{mybox}[colback=yellow]{Hello there}
This is my own box with a mandatory title
and options.
\end{mybox}
```

Hello there

This is my own box with a mandatory title and options.

Definition in the preamble:

```
\newtcolorbox[auto counter,number within=section]{pabox}[2][]{%
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title=Examp.~\thetcbcounter: #2,#1}
```

```
\begin{pabox}[colback=yellow]{Hello there}
This is my own box with a mandatory
numbered title and options.
\end{pabox}
```

Examp. 3.1: Hello there

This is my own box with a mandatory numbered title and options.

`\renewtcolorbox[⟨init options⟩]{⟨name⟩}[⟨number⟩][⟨default⟩]{⟨options⟩}`

Operates like `\newtcolorbox`, but based on `\renewenvironment` instead of `\newenvironment`. An existing environment is redefined.

`\NewTColorBox[⟨init options⟩]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}`

Creates a new environment ⟨*name*⟩ based on `tcolorbox` → P. 12.
Basically, `\NewTColorBox` operates like `\NewDocumentEnvironment`. This means, the new environment ⟨*name*⟩ is constructed with the given argument ⟨*specification*⟩. An error is issued if an environment with ⟨*name*⟩ has already been defined. The ⟨*options*⟩ are given to the underlying `tcolorbox` → P. 12.
Note that `/tcb/savedelimiter` → P. 31 is set to the given ⟨*name*⟩ automatically.
The ⟨*init options*⟩ allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

```
% counter from previous example
\NewTColorBox[use counter from=pabox]{mybox}{ O{red} m d"" !O{} }
  {enhanced,colframe=#1!75!black,colback=#1!5!white,
   fonttitle=\bfseries,title={\thetcbcounter~#2},
   IfValueT={#3}{watermark text={#3}},#4}

\begin{mybox}{My title}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}[blue]{My title}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}[green]{My title}"My Watermark"
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}[yellow]{My title}[colbacktitle=yellow!50!white,coltitle=black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}[purple]{My title}"All together"[coltitle=yellow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
```

3.2 My title

This is a tcolorbox.

3.3 My title

This is a tcolorbox.

3.4 My title

This is a tcolorbox. My Watermark

3.5 My title

This is a tcolorbox.

3.6 My title

This is a tcolorbox. All together

`\RenewTColorBox[`⟨*init options*⟩`]{`⟨*name*⟩`}{`⟨*specification*⟩`}{`⟨*options*⟩`}`

Operates like `\NewTColorBox` → P. 16, but based on `\RenewDocumentEnvironment` instead of `\NewDocumentEnvironment`. An existing environment is redefined.

`\ProvideTColorBox[`⟨*init options*⟩`]{`⟨*name*⟩`}{`⟨*specification*⟩`}{`⟨*options*⟩`}`

Operates like `\NewTColorBox` → P. 16, but based on `\ProvideDocumentEnvironment` instead of `\NewDocumentEnvironment`. The environment ⟨*name*⟩ is only created if it is not already defined.

`\DeclareTColorBox[`⟨*init options*⟩`]{`⟨*name*⟩`}{`⟨*specification*⟩`}{`⟨*options*⟩`}`

Operates like `\NewTColorBox` → P. 16, but based on `\DeclareDocumentEnvironment` instead of `\NewDocumentEnvironment`. The new environment is always created, irrespective of an already existing environment with the same name.

`\NewTotalTColorBox[`⟨*init options*⟩`]{\`⟨*name*⟩`}{`⟨*specification*⟩`}{`⟨*options*⟩`}{`⟨*content*⟩`}`

Creates a new command \⟨*name*⟩ based on `tcolorbox` → P. 12. In contrast to `\NewTColorBox` → P. 16, also the ⟨*content*⟩ of the `tcolorbox` is specified.

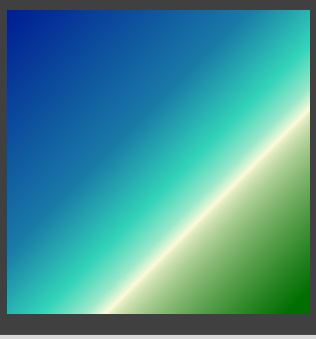
Basically, `\NewTotalTColorBox` operates like `\NewDocumentCommand`. This means, the new command \⟨*name*⟩ is constructed with the given argument ⟨*specification*⟩. An error is issued if \⟨*name*⟩ has already been defined. The ⟨*options*⟩ are given to the underlying `tcolorbox` → P. 12 which is filled with the specified ⟨*content*⟩.

Note that `/tcb/savedelimiter` → P. 31 is set to the given ⟨*name*⟩ automatically. Also note that `/tcb/saveto` → P. 28 and `/tcb/savelowerto` → P. 29 cannot be used with `\NewTotalTColorBox` and friends.

The ⟨*init options*⟩ allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

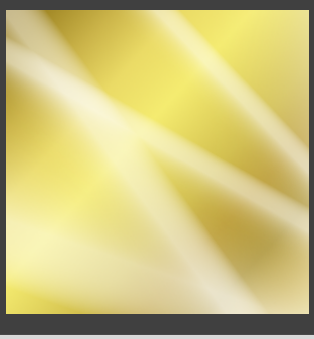
```
\NewTotalTColorBox{\diabox}{ O{} v  m }
  { bicolor,nobeforeafter,equal height group=diabox,width=5.7cm,
    fonttitle=\bfseries\ttfamily,adjusted title={#2},center title,
    colframe=blue!20!black,leftupper=0mm,rightupper=0mm,colback=black!75!white,#1}
  { \tikz\path[fill zoom image={#2}] (0,0) rectangle (\linewidth,4cm);%
    \tcblower#3}

\diabox{blueshade.png}{Created with |GIMP|.\\\url{http://www.gimp.org}}
\diabox{goldshade.png}{Created with |GIMP|.\\\url{http://www.gimp.org}}
```

blueshade.png



Created with GIMP.
http://www.gimp.org

goldshade.png



Created with GIMP.
http://www.gimp.org

`\RenewTotalTColorBox[`⟨*init options*⟩`]{\`⟨*name*⟩`}{`⟨*specification*⟩`}{`⟨*options*⟩`}{`⟨*content*⟩`}`

Operates like `\NewTotalTColorBox`, but based on `\RenewDocumentCommand` instead of `\NewDocumentCommand`. An existing command is redefined.

`\ProvideTotalTColorBox[`⟨*init options*⟩`]{\`⟨*name*⟩`}{`⟨*specification*⟩`}{`⟨*options*⟩`}{`⟨*content*⟩`}`

Operates like `\NewTotalTColorBox`, but based on `\ProvideDocumentCommand` instead of `\NewDocumentCommand`. The command \⟨*name*⟩ is only created if it is not already defined.

`\DeclareTotalTColorBox[`⟨*init options*⟩`]{\`⟨*name*⟩`}{`⟨*specification*⟩`}{`⟨*options*⟩`}{`⟨*content*⟩`}`

Operates like `\NewTotalTColorBox`, but based on `\DeclareDocumentCommand` instead of `\NewDocumentCommand`. The new command is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.

3.3 Producing \tcbox Commands

\newtcbox[⟨*init options*⟩]{\⟨*name*⟩}[⟨*number*⟩][⟨*default*⟩]{⟨*options*⟩}

Creates a new macro \⟨*name*⟩ based on \tcbox → P. 14. Basically, \newtcbox operates like \newcommand. The new macro \⟨*name*⟩ optionally takes ⟨*number*⟩+1 arguments, where ⟨*default*⟩ is the default value for the optional first argument. The ⟨*options*⟩ are given to the underlying tcbox. The ⟨*init options*⟩ allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

```
\newtcbox{\mybox}{colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black}

\mybox{This is my own box.}
```

This is my own box.

```
\newtcbox{\mybox}[1]{colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title={#1}}

\mybox{Hello there}{This is my own box.}
```

Hello there

This is my own box.

```
\newtcbox{\mybox}[2][]{colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title={#2},#1}

\mybox[colback=yellow]{Hello there}%
  {This is my own box.}
```

Hello there

This is my own box.

Definition in the preamble:

```
% counter from previous example
\newtcbox[use counter from=pabox]{\pbbox}[2][]{%
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title=(\thetcbcounter) #2,#1}
```

```
\pbbox[colback=yellow]{Hello there}%
  {This is my own box.}
```

(3.7) Hello there

This is my own box.

```
\newtcbox{\mybox}[1][red]{on line,
  arc=0pt,outer arc=0pt,colback=#1!10!white,colframe=#1!50!black,
  boxsep=0pt,left=1pt,right=1pt,top=2pt,bottom=2pt,
  boxrule=0pt,bottomrule=1pt,toprule=1pt}
\newtcbox{\xmybox}[1][red]{on line,
  arc=7pt,colback=#1!10!white,colframe=#1!50!black,
  before upper={\rule[-3pt]{0pt}{10pt}},boxrule=1pt,
  boxsep=0pt,left=6pt,right=6pt,top=2pt,bottom=2pt}

The \mybox[green]{quick} brown \mybox{fox} \mybox[blue]{jumps} over the
\mybox[green]{lazy} \mybox{dog}.\par
The \xmybox[green]{quick} brown \xmybox{fox} \xmybox[blue]{jumps} over the
\xmybox[green]{lazy} \xmybox{dog}.
```

The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.
The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.

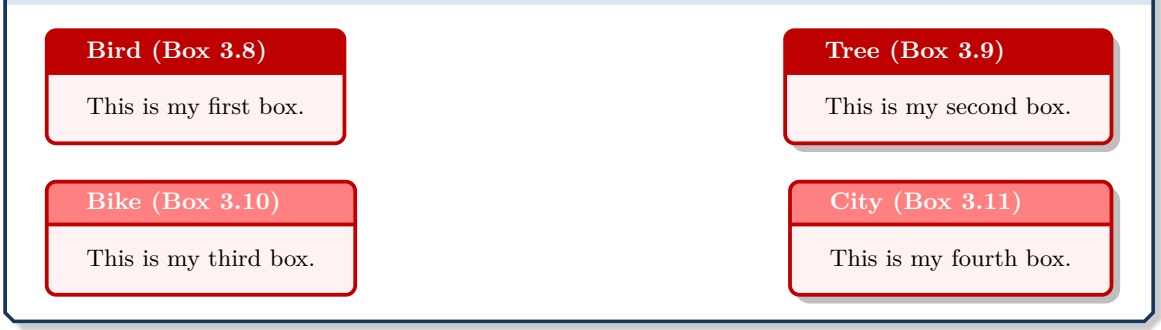
`\renewtcbox[⟨init options⟩]{\⟨name⟩}[⟨number⟩][⟨default⟩]{⟨options⟩}`

Operates like `\newtcbox` → P. 19, but based on `\renewcommand` instead of `\newcommand`. An existing macro is redefined.

`\NewTCBox[⟨init options⟩]{\⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}`

Creates a new command `\⟨name⟩` based on `\tcbox` → P. 14. Basically, `\NewTCBox` operates like `\NewDocumentCommand`. This means, the new command `\⟨name⟩` is constructed with the given argument ⟨*specification*⟩. An error is issued if `\⟨name⟩` has already been defined. The ⟨*options*⟩ are given to the underlying `\tcbox` → P. 14.
Note that `/tcb/savedelimiter` → P. 31 is set to the given ⟨*name*⟩ automatically.
The ⟨*init options*⟩ allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

```
% counter from previous example
\NewTCBox[use counter from=pabox]{\mybox}{ s m s }
{ nobeforeafter,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  title={#2 (Box \thetcbcounter)},fonttitle=\bfseries,
  IfBooleanT={#1}{enhanced,drop shadow},
  IfBooleanT={#3}{colbacktitle=red!50!white} }

\mybox{Bird}{This is my first box.}
  \hfill
\mybox*{Tree}{This is my second box.}
  \par\bigskip
\mybox{Bike}*{This is my third box.}
  \hfill
\mybox*{City}*{This is my fourth box.}
```



`\RenewTCBox[⟨init options⟩]{\⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}`

Operates like `\NewTCBox`, but based on `\RenewDocumentCommand` instead of `\NewDocumentCommand`. An existing command is redefined.

`\ProvideTCBox[⟨init options⟩]{\⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}`

Operates like `\NewTCBox`, but based on `\ProvideDocumentCommand` instead of `\NewDocumentCommand`. The command `\⟨name⟩` is only created if it is not already defined.

`\DeclareTCBox[⟨init options⟩]{\⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}`

Operates like `\NewTCBox`, but based on `\DeclareDocumentCommand` instead of `\NewDocumentCommand`. The new command is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.

`\NewTotalTCBox[`⟨*init options*⟩`]{\`⟨*name*⟩`}{`⟨*specification*⟩`}{`⟨*options*⟩`}{`⟨*content*⟩`}`

Creates a new command \⟨*name*⟩ based on `\tcbox` → P. 14. In contrast to `\NewTCBox` → P. 20, also the ⟨*content*⟩ of the `tcbox` is specified.
Basically, `\NewTotalTCBox` operates like `\NewDocumentCommand`. This means, the new command \⟨*name*⟩ is constructed with the given argument ⟨*specification*⟩. An error is issued if \⟨*name*⟩ has already been defined. The ⟨*options*⟩ are given to the underlying `\tcbox` → P. 14 which is filled with the specified ⟨*content*⟩.
Note that `/tcb/savedelimiter` → P. 31 is set to the given ⟨*name*⟩ automatically.
The ⟨*init options*⟩ allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

```
\NewTotalTCBox{\myverb}{ O{red} v !O{} }
{ fontupper=\ttfamily,nobeforeafter,tcbox raise base,arc=0pt,outer arc=0pt,
  top=0pt,bottom=0pt,left=0mm,right=0mm,
  leftrule=0pt,rightrule=0pt,toprule=0.3mm,bottomrule=0.3mm,boxsep=0.5mm,
  colback=#1!10!white,colframe=#1!50!black,#3}{#2}

To set a word \textbf{bold} in \myverb{\LaTeX}, use
\myverb[green]{\textbf{bold}}. Alternatively, write
\myverb[yellow]{{\bfseries bold}}.
In \myverb[blue]{\LaTeX}[enhanced,fuzzy halo], other font settings are
done in the same way, e.\,g. \myverb{\textit}, \myverb{\itshape}\\
or \myverb[brown]{\texttt}, \myverb[brown]{\ttfamily}.
```

To set a word **bold** in `\LaTeX`, use `\textbf{bold}`. Alternatively, write `{\bfseries bold}`. In `\LaTeX`, other font settings are done in the same way, e. g. `\textit`, `\itshape` or `\texttt`, `\ttfamily`.

The next example uses `\lstinline` from the `listings` package to typeset the verbatim content.

```
% \usepackage{listings} or \tcbuselibrary{listings}
\NewTotalTCBox{\commandbox}{ s v }
{verbatim,colupper=white,colback=black!75!white,colframe=black}
{\IfBooleanT{#1}{\textcolor{red}{\ttfamily\bfseries > }}%
  \lstinline[language=command.com,keywordstyle=\color{blue!35!white}\bfseries]^#2^}

\commandbox*{cd "My Documents"} changes to directory \commandbox{My Documents}.

\commandbox*{dir /A} lists the directory content.

\commandbox*{copy example.txt d:\target} copies \commandbox{example.txt} to
  \commandbox{d:\target}.
```

`> cd "My␣Documents"` changes to directory `My Documents`.
`> dir /A` lists the directory content.
`> copy example.txt d:\target` copies `example.txt` to `d:\target`.

`\RenewTotalTCBox`[⟨*init options*⟩]{\⟨*name*⟩}{⟨*specification*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩}{⟨*content*⟩}

Operates like `\NewTotalTCBox` → P. 21, but based on `\RenewDocumentCommand` instead of `\NewDocumentCommand`. An existing command is redefined.

`\ProvideTotalTCBox`[⟨*init options*⟩]{\⟨*name*⟩}{⟨*specification*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩}{⟨*content*⟩}

Operates like `\NewTotalTCBox` → P. 21, but based on `\ProvideDocumentCommand` instead of `\NewDocumentCommand`. The command \⟨*name*⟩ is only created if it is not already defined.

`\DeclareTotalTCBox`[⟨*init options*⟩]{\⟨*name*⟩}{⟨*specification*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩}{⟨*content*⟩}

Operates like `\NewTotalTCBox` → P. 21, but based on `\NewDocumentCommand` instead of `\DeclareDocumentCommand`. The new command is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.

`\tcboxverb`[⟨*options*⟩]{⟨*verbatim box content*⟩}

Creates a colored box based on `\tcbox` → P. 14 which is fitted to the width of the given ⟨*verbatim box content*⟩. The underlying `\tcbox` → P. 14 is styled with `/tcb/verbatim` → P. 108 plus the given ⟨*options*⟩. The difference to `\tcbox` → P. 14 is that the ⟨*verbatim box content*⟩ is interpreted *verbatim*. Therefore, `\tcboxverb` acts similar to `\verb`.

```
\tcboxverb{\LaTeX}, \tcboxverb[colback=blue!10!white,colupper=blue]{\LaTeX},
\tcboxverb[blank,fuzzy halo]{\LaTeX}, \tcboxverb[beamer]{\LaTeX},
\tcboxverb[enhanced,skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw,colframe=red]{\LaTeX}.
```

\LaTeX, \LaTeX, \LaTeX, \LaTeX, \LaTeX.

3.4 Redefining other Environments (Wrapping with `tcolorbox`)

N 2014-10-20 `\tcolorboxenvironment`{⟨*name*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩}

An existing environment ⟨*name*⟩ is redefined to be boxed inside a `tcolorbox` with the given ⟨*options*⟩.

```
% tcbuselibrary{skins}
\newenvironment{myitemize}{%
  \begin{itemize}}{\end{itemize}}

\tcolorboxenvironment{myitemize}{blanker,
  before skip=6pt,after skip=6pt,
  borderline west={3mm}{0pt}{red}}

Some text.
\begin{myitemize}
\item Alpha
\item Beta
\item Gamma
\end{myitemize}
More text.
```

Some text.

- Alpha
- Beta
- Gamma

More text.

See further examples in Section 18.4 on page 397.

4 Option Keys

For the ⟨*options*⟩ in `tcolorbox` → P. 12 respectively `\tcbset` → P. 13 the following `pgf` keys can be applied. The key tree path `/tcb/` is not to be used inside these macros. It is easy to add your own style keys using the syntax for `pgf` keys, see [20, 24] or the examples starting from page 358.

4.1 Title

`/tcb/title`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Creates a heading line with ⟨*text*⟩ as content.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My heading line]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My heading line

This is a **tcolorbox**.

`/tcb/notitle` (no value, initially set)

Removes the title line if set before.

`/tcb/adjusted title`=⟨*text*⟩ (style, no default, initially unset)

Creates a heading line with ⟨*text*⟩ as content. The minimal height of this line is adjusted to fit the text given by `/tcb/adjust text`. This option makes sense for single line headings if boxes are set side by side with equal height. Note that it is very easy to trick this adjustment.

```
\tcbset{colback=White,arc=0mm,width=(\linewidth-4pt)/4,
equal height group=AT,before=,after=\hfill,fonttitle=\bfseries}

The following titles are not adjusted:\\
\foreach \n in {xxx,ggg,AAA,\"Agypten}
{\begin{tcolorbox}[title=\n,colframe=red!75!black]
  Some content.\end{tcolorbox}}
Now, we try again with adjusted titles:\\
\foreach \n in {xxx,ggg,AAA,\"Agypten}
{\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=\n,colframe=blue!75!black]
  Some content.\end{tcolorbox}}
```

The following titles are not adjusted:

xxx	ggg	AAA	Ägypten
Some content.	Some content.	Some content.	Some content.

Now, we try again with adjusted titles:

xxx	ggg	AAA	Ägypten
Some content.	Some content.	Some content.	Some content.

`/tcb/adjust text`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially `Äpgjy`)

This sets the reference text for `/tcb/adjusted title`. If your texts never exceed “Äpgjy” in depth and height you don’t need to care about this option.

N 2014-11-24 **/tcb/squeezed title=**⟨*text*⟩ (style, no default, initially unset)

Creates a single heading line with ⟨*text*⟩ as content. If the ⟨*text*⟩ is longer than the available space, the text is squeezed to fit into the available space.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3,raster equal height,
  colframe=red!75!black,colback=red!5!white,fonttitle=\bfseries]
\tcbitem[squeezed title={Short title}]
  First box
\tcbitem[squeezed title={This is a very very long title}]
  Second box
\tcbitem[squeezed title={This title is clearly to long for this application}]
  Third box
\end{tcbitemize}
```

Short title
First box

This is a very very long title
Second box

This title is clearly to long for this application
Third box

N 2014-11-24 **/tcb/squeezed title*=**⟨*text*⟩ (style, no default, initially unset)

This is a combination of **/tcb/adjusted title** → P. 23 and **/tcb/squeezed title**.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3,raster equal height,
  colframe=red!75!black,colback=red!5!white,fonttitle=\bfseries]
\tcbitem[squeezed title*={Short title}]
  First box
\tcbitem[squeezed title*={This is a very very long title}]
  Second box
\tcbitem[squeezed title*={This title is clearly to long for this application}]
  Third box
\end{tcbitemize}
```

Short title
First box

This is a very very long title
Second box

This title is clearly to long for this application
Third box

N 2019-03-01 **/tcb/titlebox=**⟨*mode*⟩ (no default, initially **visible**)

Controls the treatment of the title part of the box. Feasible values for ⟨*mode*⟩ are:

- **visible**: usual type setting of the title box,
- **invisible**: empty space instead of the title contents.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My invisible title,
  titlebox=invisible]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

`/tcb/detach title` (no value)

Detaches the title from its normal position. The text of the title is stored into `\tcbtitletext` and the formatted title is available by `\tcbtitle`. The main application is to move the title from its usual place to another one.

```
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[2][]{colbacktitle=red!10!white,
  colback=blue!10!white,coltitle=red!70!black,
  title={#2},fonttitle=\bfseries,#1}

\begin{mybox}{My title}
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[detach title,before upper={\tcbtitle\quad}]{My title}
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[detach title,after upper={\par\hfill\tcbtitle}]{My title}
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
```

My title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

My title This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is a **tcolorbox**.

My title

`/tcb/attach title` (no value)

Attaches the title to its normal position. This option is used to reverse `/tcb/detach title`.

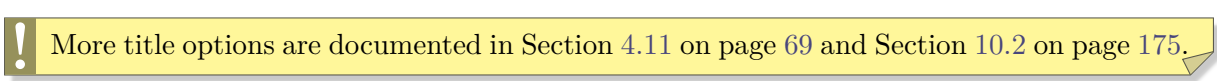
U 2015-07-08 `/tcb/attach title to upper=`⟨*text*⟩ (style, default empty, initially unset)

Attaches the title to the begin of the upper part of the box content. The optional ⟨*text*⟩ is set between the formatted title and the box content.

```
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[2][]{colbacktitle=red!10!white,
  colback=blue!10!white,coltitle=red!70!black,
  title={#2},fonttitle=\bfseries,#1}

\begin{mybox}[attach title to upper={\ ---\ }]{My title}
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[attach title to upper,after title={:\ }]{My title}
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
```

My title — This is a **tcolorbox**.

My title: This is a **tcolorbox**.



4.2 Subtitle

Inside the box content, one or more subtitles can be added. In general, a subtitle is a further tcolorbox→ P. 12 which inherits some color and geometry options from the enclosing box. It may be customized just like any other tcolorbox→ P. 12.

N 2014-10-10 `\tcbsubtitle[⟨options⟩]{⟨text⟩}`

Used inside a tcolorbox→ P. 12 to add a subtitle box with the given ⟨*text*⟩. This is an independent tcolorbox→ P. 12 which is formatted by several inherited properties of the enclosing box, by further settings from `/tcb/subtitle style`, and by the given ⟨*options*⟩.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,
    colback=red!5!white,
    colframe=red!75!black,
    fonttitle=\bfseries]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcbsubtitle[before skip=\baselineskip]%
  {My subtitle}
  Further text.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

My subtitle

Further text.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,
    colback=red!5!white,
    colframe=red!75!black,
    colbacktitle=yellow!50!red,
    coltitle=red!25!black,
    fonttitle=\bfseries]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcbsubtitle[before skip=\baselineskip]%
  {My subtitle}
  Further text.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

My subtitle

Further text.

N 2014-10-10 `/tcb/subtitle style=`⟨*options*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Adds `tcolorbox` ⟨*options*⟩ to the settings for `\tcbsubtitle`.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,
  colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,
  colbacktitle=yellow!50!red,
  coltitle=red!25!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,
  subtitle style={boxrule=0.4pt,
    colback=yellow!50!red!25!white,
    colupper=red!75!gray} ]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcbsubtitle{My subtitle}
  Further text.
\tcbsubtitle{Second subtitle}
  Further text.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

My subtitle

Further text.

Second subtitle

Further text.

4.3 Upper Part

The text content of a tcolorbox→ P. 12 may be parted into a mandatory *upper part* and an optional *lower part*. These parts are separated by \tcblower→ P. 12. If there is no \tcblower→ P. 12 present, there is no *lower part* and the *upper part* forms the complete text content.

N 2015-01-06 **/tcb/upperbox=⟨*mode*⟩** (no default, initially visible)

Controls the treatment of the upper part of the box. If there is no lower part, this is the complete text content. Feasible values for ⟨*mode*⟩ are:

- visible: usual type setting of the upper part,
- invisible: empty space instead of the upper part contents.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[upperbox=invisible,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} (but invisible).
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[upperbox=invisible,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} (but invisible).
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is the lower part.

N 2015-01-06 U 2019-03-01 **/tcb/visible** (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/upperbox, /tcb/lowerbox→ P. 29, and /tcb/titlebox→ P. 24 to be visible.

N 2015-01-06 U 2019-03-01 **/tcb/invisible** (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/upperbox, /tcb/lowerbox→ P. 29, and /tcb/titlebox→ P. 24 to be invisible.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[invisible]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} (but invisible).
\end{tcolorbox}
```

N 2015-05-04 **/tcb/saveto=⟨*file name*⟩** (no default, initially empty)

Saves the content of the box into a file for an optional later usage. This is the counterpart of /tcb/savelowerto→ P. 29, but it saves not only the upper part but the whole content. If a lower part is present, it is also saved including \tcblower→ P. 12.

! This option cannot be combined with /tcb/savelowerto→ P. 29.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[invisible,saveto=\jobname_mysave1.tex,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} which seems to be empty.
The content is saved for later usage.
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, we load the saved text:\\
\input{\jobname_mysave1.tex}
```

Now, we load the saved text:
This is a **tcolorbox** which seems to be empty. The content is saved for later usage.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[saveto=\jobname_mysave2.tex]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, we load the saved text:
\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=red,colback=red!10,
  coltitle=black,colbacktitle=red!20,sidebyside,
  title=Here we see the saved content including the lower part]
\input{\jobname_mysave2.tex}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is the lower part.

Now, we load the saved text:

Here we see the saved content including the lower part

This is a **tcolorbox**. | This is the lower part.

4.4 Lower Part

`/tcb/lowerbox`=⟨*mode*⟩ (no default, initially `visible`)

Controls the treatment of the lower part of the box. Feasible values for ⟨*mode*⟩ are:

- `visible`: usual type setting of the lower part,
- `invisible`: empty space instead of the lower part contents,
- `ignored`: the lower part is not used (here).

The last two values are usually applied in connection with `savelowerto`.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[lowerbox=invisible,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part (but invisible).
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[lowerbox=ignored,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part (but ignored).
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is a **tcolorbox**.

U 2014-11-28 `/tcb/savelowerto`=⟨*file name*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Saves the content of the lower part into a file for an optional later usage.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[lowerbox=invisible,savelowerto=\jobname_bspsave.tex,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part which may be quite complex:
$\displaystyle f(x)=\frac{1+x^2}{1-x^2}$.
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, we load the saved text:\\
\input{\jobname_bspsave.tex}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

Now, we load the saved text:

This is the lower part which may be quite complex: $f(x) = \dfrac{1+x^2}{1-x^2}$.

`/tcb/lower separated=true|false` (default `true`, initially `true`)

If set to `true`, the lower part is visually separated from the upper part. It depends on the chosen skin how the visualization of the separation is done.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{skins,raster}
\begin{tcbraster}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,fontlower=\itshape]
%
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Lower separated]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
%
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Lower not separated,lower separated=false]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
%
\begin{tcolorbox}[sidebyside,title=Lower separated]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
%
\begin{tcolorbox}[sidebyside,title=Lower not separated,lower separated=false]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
%
\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer,title=Lower separated]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
%
\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer,title=Lower not separated,lower separated=false]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
%
\end{tcbraster}
```

Lower separated

This is the upper part.

This is the lower part.

Lower not separated

This is the upper part.

This is the lower part.

Lower separated

This is the upper part.

This is the lower part.

Lower not separated

This is the upper part.

This is the lower part.

Lower separated

This is the upper part.

This is the lower part.

Lower not separated

This is the upper part.

This is the lower part.

`/tcb/savedelimiter=`⟨*name*⟩ (no default, initially `tcolorbox`)

Used in connection with new environment definitions which extend `tcolorbox` and use or allow the option `savelowerto`. To catch the end of the new box environment ⟨*name*⟩ has to be the name of this environment. Additionally, the environment definition has to use `\tcolorbox` instead of `\begin{tcolorbox}` and `\endtcolorbox` instead of `\end{tcolorbox}`.

```
\newenvironment{mybox}[1]{%
  \tcolorbox[savedelimiter=mybox,
             savelowerto=\jobname_bspsave2.tex,lowerbox=ignored,
             colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
             title={#1}]}%
  {\endtcolorbox}

\begin{mybox}{My Example}
Upper part.
\tcblower
Saved lower part!
\end{mybox}

Now, the saved part is used:
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=green!5]
\input{\jobname_bspsave2.tex}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My Example

Upper part.

Now, the saved part is used:

Saved lower part!

The `savedelimiter` is used implicitely with `\newtcolorbox` → P. 15 which allows a more convenient usage:

```
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1]{%
             savelowerto=\jobname_bspsave2.tex,lowerbox=ignored,
             colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
             title={#1}}%

\begin{mybox}{My Example}
Upper part.
\tcblower
Saved lower part!
\end{mybox}

Now, the saved part is used:
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=green!5]
\input{\jobname_bspsave2.tex}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My Example

Upper part.

Now, the saved part is used:

Saved lower part!

4.5 Colors and Fonts

`/tcb/colframe`=⟨*color*⟩ (no default, initially `black!75!white`)

Sets the frame ⟨*color*⟩ of the box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

`/tcb/colback`=⟨*color*⟩ (no default, initially `black!5!white`)

Sets the background ⟨*color*⟩ of the box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

Also see `/tcb/colbacklower` → P. 244 of the LIB skins library.

`/tcb/title filled`=`true|false` (default `true`, initially `false`)

Switches the drawing of the title background according to the given value. This option is set to `true` automatically by `/tcb/colbacktitle`, `/tcb/opacitybacktitle` → P. 56, and `/tcb/title style` → P. 171, and `/tcb/title code` → P. 159.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,title filled]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,
  title filled=false]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

My title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

`/tcb/colbacktitle`=⟨*color*⟩ (no default, initially `black!50!white`)

Sets the background ⟨*color*⟩ of the title area of the box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colbacktitle=red!50!white,
  title=My title,coltitle=black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

/tcb/colupper=⟨*color*⟩ (no default, initially `black`)

Sets the text ⟨*color*⟩ of the upper part.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colupper=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is the lower part.

/tcb/collower=⟨*color*⟩ (no default, initially `black`)

Sets the text ⟨*color*⟩ of the lower part.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[collower=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is the lower part.

/tcb/coltext=⟨*color*⟩ (style, no default, initially `black`)

Sets the text ⟨*color*⟩ of the box. This is an abbreviation for setting `colupper` and `collower` to the same value.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[coltext=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is the lower part.

/tcb/coltitle=⟨*color*⟩ (no default, initially `white`)

Sets the title text ⟨*color*⟩ of the box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[coltitle=red!75!black,
  colbacktitle=black!10!white,title=Test]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Test

This is a **tcolorbox**.

/tcb/fontupper=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Sets ⟨*text*⟩ before the content of the upper part (e. g. font settings).

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[fontupper=Hello!~\sffamily]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Hello! This is a **tcolorbox**.

/tcb/fontlower=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Sets ⟨*text*⟩ before the content of the lower part (e. g. font settings).

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[fontlower=\sffamily\bfseries]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is the lower part.

/tcb/fonttitle=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Sets ⟨*text*⟩ before the content of the title text (e. g. font settings).

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[fonttitle=\sffamily\bfseries\large,title=Hello]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Hello

This is a **tcolorbox**.

More color options are provided by using skins documented in Section 10 from page 168.

4.6 Text Alignment

N 2015-05-07 `/tcb/halign`=⟨*alignment*⟩ (no default, initially `justify`)

N 2015-05-07 `/tcb/halign upper`=⟨*alignment*⟩ (no default, initially `justify`)

If there is no lower part, `halign` determines the horizontal ⟨*alignment*⟩ of the text content. Otherwise, `halign` determines the horizontal ⟨*alignment*⟩ of the upper part of the box only. The feasible values for ⟨*alignment*⟩ are more or less identical to the corresponding `/tikz/align` settings, even if the implementation differs.

- `justify`: usual left and right justified type setting.
- `left`: left border justification in analogy to plain TEX.
- `flush left`: left border justification with `\raggedright` of LATEX.
- `right`: right border justification in analogy to plain TEX.
- `flush right`: right border justification with `\raggedleft` of LATEX.
- `center`: centering in analogy to plain TEX.
- `flush center`: centering with `\centering` of LATEX.

The differences between the flush and non-flush version are explained in detail in the TikZ manual [24]. The short story is that the non-flush versions will often look more balanced but with more hyphenations. `/tcb/halign upper` is an alias for `/tcb/halign`.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,size=small,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,width=3.5cm,box align=top,
  nobeforeafter}

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush center,halign=flush center]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush left,halign=flush left]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush right,halign=flush right]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=center,halign=center]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=left,halign=left]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=right,halign upper=right]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

flush center
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.

flush left
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.

flush right
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.

center
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.

left
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.

right
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.

N 2022-07-07 `/tcb/halign code={⟨code⟩}` (no default)

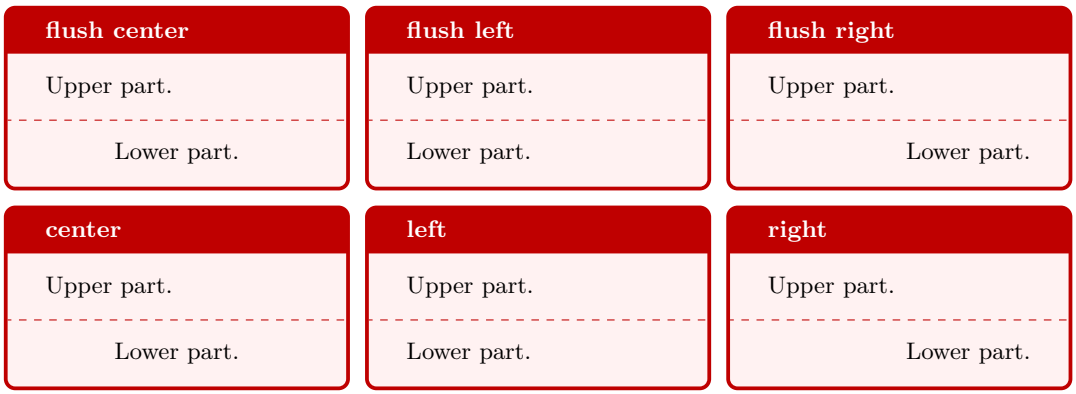
N 2022-07-07 `/tcb/halign upper code={⟨code⟩}` (no default)

If `/tcb/halign` → P. 35 resp. `/tcb/halign upper` → P. 35 is not flexible enough, `/tcb/halign code` resp. `/tcb/halign upper code` allows to set arbitrary ⟨*code*⟩ to configure the horizontal alignment of the text content, e.g. using alignments from specialized packages.

N 2015-05-07 `/tcb/halign lower=`⟨*alignment*⟩ (no default, initially `justify`)

`halign lower` determines the horizontal ⟨*alignment*⟩ of the lower part of the box. The feasible values for ⟨*alignment*⟩ are the same as for `/tcb/halign` → P. 35.

```
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]

  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush center,halign lower=flush center]
    Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush left,halign lower=flush left]
    Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush right,halign lower=flush right]
    Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=center,halign lower=center]
    Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=left,halign lower=left]
    Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=right,halign lower=right]
    Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
  \end{tcolorbox}

\end{tcbraster}
```



N 2022-07-07 `/tcb/halign lower code={⟨code⟩}` (no default)

If `/tcb/halign lower` is not flexible enough, `/tcb/halign lower code` allows to set arbitrary ⟨*code*⟩ to configure the horizontal alignment of the lower part of the box.

N 2015-05-07 **/tcb/halign title=⟨*alignment*⟩** (no default, initially **justify**)

halign lower determines the horizontal ⟨*alignment*⟩ of the title of the box. The feasible values for ⟨*alignment*⟩ are the same as for /tcb/halign → P. 35.

```
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]

  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush center,halign title=flush center]
    This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush left,halign title=flush left]
    This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush right,halign title=flush right]
    This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=center,halign title=center]
    This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=left,halign title=left]
    This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=right,halign title=right]
    This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
  \end{tcolorbox}

\end{tcbraster}
```

flush center
This is a **tcolorbox**.

flush left
This is a **tcolorbox**.

flush right
This is a **tcolorbox**.

center
This is a **tcolorbox**.

left
This is a **tcolorbox**.

right
This is a **tcolorbox**.

N 2022-07-07 **/tcb/halign title code={⟨*code*⟩}** (no default)

If /tcb/halign title is not flexible enough, /tcb/halign title code allows to set arbitrary ⟨*code*⟩ to configure the horizontal alignment of the title of the box.

U 2015-05-07 **/tcb/flushleft upper** (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign → P. 35 to **flush left**.

U 2015-05-07 **/tcb/center upper** (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign → P. 35 to **flush center**.

U 2015-05-07 **/tcb/flushright upper** (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign → P. 35 to **flush right**.

U 2015-05-07 **/tcb/flushleft lower** (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign lower → P. 36 to **flush left**.

U 2015-05-07 **/tcb/center lower** (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign lower → P. 36 to **flush center**.

U 2015-05-07 **/tcb/flushright lower** (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign lower → P. 36 to **flush right**.

U 2015-05-07 **/tcb/flushleft title** (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign title → P. 37 to **flush left**.

U 2015-05-07 **/tcb/center title** (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign title → P. 37 to **flush center**.

U 2015-05-07 **/tcb/flushright title** (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign title → P. 37 to **flush right**.

! The vertical alignment settings are only relevant for boxes which are larger than their natural height, see Section 4.10 on page 58.

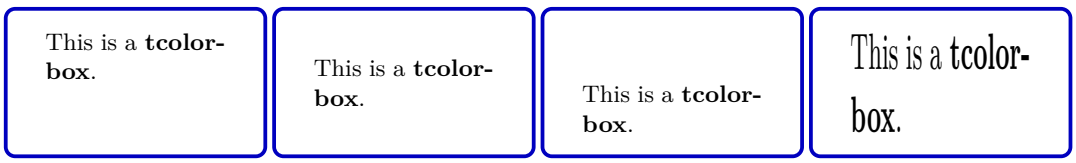
U 2015-07-16 **/tcb/valign=**⟨*alignment*⟩ (no default, initially **top**)

If the height of a **tcolorbox** is not the natural height, **valign** determines the vertical ⟨*alignment*⟩ of the upper part. Feasible values are

- **top**: Anchor text at top.
- **center**: Anchor text at center.
- **bottom**: Anchor text at bottom.
- **scale**: Scale text vertically to fit into the available space. This is brutal and may not look very good. Consider Section 22 on page 449 alternatively.
- **scale***: Like **scale**, but scaling is bounded by /tcb/valign scale limit.

For a box with natural height, these settings are meaningless.

```
\tcbset{width=(\linewidth-2mm)/4,before=,after=\hfill,
colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=2cm}

\foreach \myalign in {top,center,bottom,scale}
{\begin{tcolorbox}[valign=\myalign]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}}
```



N 2015-05-07 **/tcb/valign upper=**⟨*alignment*⟩ (no default, initially **top**)

Alias for /tcb/valign.

/tcb/valign lower=⟨*alignment*⟩ (no default, initially **top**)

This key has the same meaning for the lower part as **valign** for the upper part, i. e., it determines the vertical ⟨*alignment*⟩ of the lower part with feasible values **top**, **center**, **bottom**, **scale**, and **scale***.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/valign scale limit=**⟨*real number*⟩ (no default, initially **1.1**)

Sets an upper scale limit for the **scale*** setting in /tcb/valign and /tcb/valign lower. Note that this value is not reset by /tcb/reset → P. 119. So, changes also apply to embedded boxes.

Also see /tcb/sidebyside align → P. 135 for alignment settings when upper part and lower part are set side-by-side.

4.7 Geometry

4.7.1 Width

`/tcb/width`=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `\linewidth`)

Sets the total width of the colored box to ⟨*length*⟩. See also `/tcb/height` → P. 58.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=\linewidth/2]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

N 2014-10-31 `/tcb/text width`=⟨*length*⟩ (style, no default)

Sets the text width of the upper part to ⟨*length*⟩. See also `/tcb/text height` → P. 59.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[text width=4cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} where the text has a width of 4cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox** where the text has a width of 4cm.

N 2014-11-07 `/tcb/add to width`=⟨*length*⟩ (style, no default)

Adds ⟨*length*⟩ to the current total width of the colored box.

```
\tcbset{width=4cm,colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[add to width=1cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is a **tcolorbox**.

See Section 4.10 on page 58 for setting fixed height values.

4.7.2 Rules

`/tcb/toprule`=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0.5mm`)

Sets the line width of the top rule to ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[toprule=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

`/tcb/bottomrule`=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0.5mm`)

Sets the line width of the bottom rule to ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[bottomrule=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

`/tcb/leftrule`=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0.5mm`)

Sets the line width of the left rule to ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[leftrule=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

`/tcb/rightrule`=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0.5mm`)

Sets the line width of the right rule to ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[rightrule=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

`/tcb/titlerule`=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0.5mm`)

Sets the line width of the rule below the title to ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  colbacktitle=red!90!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[titlerule=3mm,title=This is the title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is the title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

`/tcb/boxrule`=⟨*length*⟩ (style, no default, initially `0.5mm`)

Sets all rules of the frame to ⟨*length*⟩, i. e. `/tcb/toprule` → P. 40, `/tcb/bottomrule` → P. 40, `/tcb/leftrule` → P. 40, `/tcb/rightrule` → P. 40, and `/tcb/titlerule`.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[boxrule=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

! More options for drawing a `/tcb/borderline` → P. 198 are provided by using skins documented in Section 10 from page 168.

4.7.3 Arcs

`/tcb/arc`=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `1mm`)

Sets the inner radius of the four frame arcs to ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[arc=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[arc=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is a **tcolorbox**.

N 2015-05-05 **/tcb/circular arc** (style, no value)

Sets /tcb/arc → P. 41 to match the half of the inner width of the colored box. If width and height of the box are identical, this gives a circle.

! If the height of the box is smaller than the width, the result will look quite ugly.

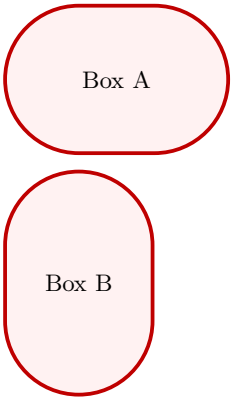
```
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=3cm,
  colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,
  halign=center,valign=center,
  square,circular arc]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

N 2015-05-05 **/tcb/bean arc** (style, no value)

Sets /tcb/arc → P. 41 to match the smaller value of the half of the inner width and of the inner height of the colored box.

! This only works for a fixed /tcb/height → P. 58. Also, /tcb/bean arc must be used *after* width and height are set by option keys.

```
\tcbset{size=fbox,boxrule=0.5mm,
  colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,
  halign=center,valign=center}

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=3cm,height=2cm,
  bean arc]
Box A
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=2cm,height=3cm,
  bean arc]
Box B
\end{tcolorbox}
```



N 2015-05-05 **/tcb/octogon arc** (style, no value)

Sets /tcb/arc → P. 41 to match $\frac{1}{2+\sqrt{2}}$ of the inner width of the colored box. If width and height of the box are identical, the interior is a regular octogon.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,
  size=minimal,auto outer arc,
  width=2.1cm,octogon arc,
  colback=red,colframe=white,colupper=white,
  fontupper=\fontsize{7mm}{7mm}\selectfont\bfseries\sffamily,
  halign=center,valign=center,
  square,arc is angular,
  borderline={0.2mm}{-1mm}{red}  ]
STOP
\end{tcolorbox}
```

N 2015-05-05 **/tcb/arc is angular** (no value, initially unset)

Using this options applies a patch which straightens the corners arcs of the boxes. The little arcs are replaced by little straight lines.

> ! This patch is considered as an experimental feature. It changes some of the original Ti*k*Z code. This change may break with future updates of Ti*k*Z.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  arc=3mm}

\begin{tcolorbox}[arc is angular]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[arc is curved]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is a **tcolorbox**.

N 2015-05-05 **/tcb/arc is curved** (no value, initially set)

This option resets the patch from /tcb/arc is angular. The original Ti*k*Z code is activated.

/tcb/outer arc=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Sets the outer radius of the four frame arcs to ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[arc=4mm,outer arc=1mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

/tcb/auto outer arc (no value, initially set)

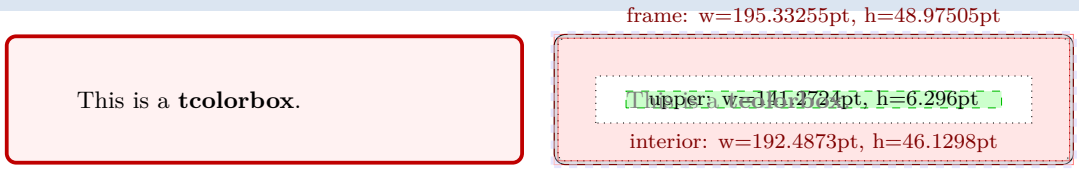
Sets the outer radius of the four frame arcs automatically in dependency of the inner radius given by /tcb/arc → P. 41.

4.7.4 Spacing

`/tcb/boxsep`=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `1mm`)

Sets a common padding of ⟨*length*⟩ between the text content and the frame of the box. This value is added to the key values of `left`, `right`, `top`, `bottom`, and `middle` at the appropriate places.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,width=(\linewidth-4mm)/2,
  before=,after=\hfill}

\begin{tcolorbox}[boxsep=5mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[boxsep=5mm,draft]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/left`=⟨*length*⟩ (style, no default, initially `4mm`)

Sets the left space between all text parts and frame (additional to `boxsep`). This is an abbreviation for setting `lefttitle`, `leftupper`, and `leftlower` to the same value.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[left=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

N 2017-02-16 `/tcb/left*`=⟨*length*⟩ (style, no default)

Sets `/tcb/left` such that ⟨*length*⟩ is the distance between the left bounding box and the text parts.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

This is some text.
\begin{tcolorbox}[grow to left by=5mm,left*=0mm,
  enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is some text.

This is a **tcolorbox**.

`/tcb/lefttitle`=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `4mm`)

Sets the left space between title text and frame (additional to `boxsep`).

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[lefttitle=3cm,title=My Title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My Title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

`/tcb/leftupper`=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `4mm`)

Sets the left space between upper text and frame (additional to `boxsep`).

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[leftupper=3cm,title=My Title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My Title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

`/tcb/leftlower`=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `4mm`)

Sets the left space between lower text and frame (additional to `boxsep`).

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[leftlower=3cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is the lower part.

`/tcb/right`=⟨*length*⟩ (style, no default, initially `4mm`)

Sets the right space between all text parts and frame (additional to `boxsep`). This is an abbreviation for setting `righttitle`, `rightupper`, and `rightlower` to the same value.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm,right=2cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcol-orbox**.

N 2017-02-16 `/tcb/right*`=⟨*length*⟩ (style, no default)

Sets `/tcb/right` → P. 45 such that ⟨*length*⟩ is the distance between the right bounding box and the text parts.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\flushright This is some text.
\begin{tcolorbox}[grow to right by=5mm,right*=0mm,
  halign=right,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is some text.

This is a **tcolorbox**.

`/tcb/righttitle`=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `4mm`)

Sets the right space between title text and frame (additional to `boxsep`).

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm,righttitle=2cm,title=My very long title text]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with standard upper box dimensions.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

**My very long ti-
tle text**

This is a **tcolorbox** with standard upper box dimensions.

`/tcb/rightupper`=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `4mm`)

Sets the right space between upper text and frame (additional to `boxsep`).

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm,rightupper=2cm,title=My very long title text]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with compressed upper box dimensions.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My very long title text

This is a **tcolorbox** with compressed upper box dimensions.

/tcb/rightlower=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially 4mm)

Sets the right space between lower text and frame (additional to boxsep).

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm,rightlower=2cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with standard upper box dimensions.
\tcblower
This is the lower part with large space at right.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox** with standard upper box dimensions.

This is the lower part with large space at right.

/tcb/top=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially 2mm)

Sets the top space between text and frame (additional to boxsep).

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[top=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is the lower part.

/tcb/toptitle=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially 0mm)

Sets the top space between title and frame (additional to boxsep).

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[toptitle=3mm,title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

/tcb/bottom=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially 2mm)

Sets the bottom space between text and frame (additional to boxsep).

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[bottom=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is the lower part.

/tcb/bottomtitle=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially 0mm)

Sets the bottom space between title and frame (additional to boxsep).

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[bottomtitle=3mm,title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

/tcb/middle=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially 2mm)

Sets the space between upper and lower text to the separation line (additional to boxsep).

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[middle=0mm,boxsep=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.
This is the lower part.

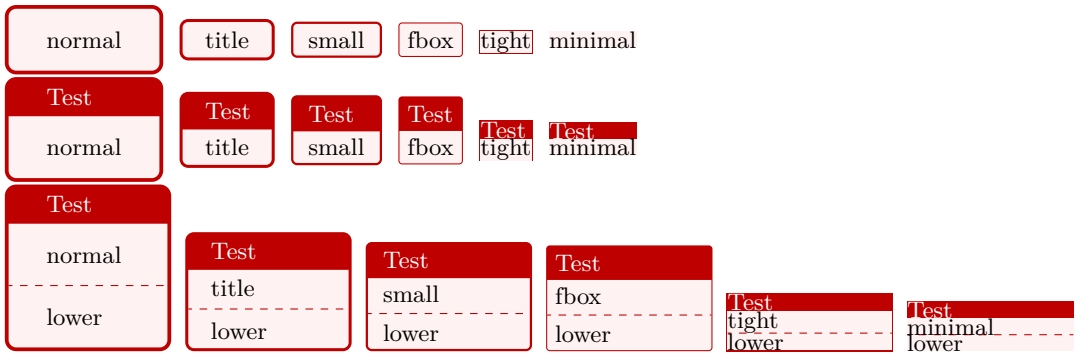
4.7.5 Size Shortcuts

`/tcb/size`=⟨*name*⟩ (no default, initially `normal`)

Sets all geometry keys with exception of `/tcb/width` → P. 39 to predefined length values. For ⟨*name*⟩, the following values are feasible:

- `normal`: normal sized boxes e.g. of width `\linewidth`.
- `title`: title line sized boxes.
- `small`: small boxes e.g. for keyword highlighting.
- `fbox`: identical to the standard `\fbox`.
- `tight`: no padding space at all.
- `minimal`: no padding space, no box rules.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\foreach \s in {normal,title,small,fbox,tight,minimal} {
  \tcbox[size=\s,on line]{\s} }

\foreach \s in {normal,title,small,fbox,tight,minimal} {
  \tcbox[size=\s,on line,title=Test]{\s} }

\foreach \s in {normal,title,small,fbox,tight,minimal} {
  \begin{tcolorbox}[size=\s,on line,title=Test,width=2.2cm]
    \s \tcblower lower\end{tcolorbox} }
```



Predefined values

	normal	title	small	fbox	tight	minimal
boxrule	0.5mm	0.4mm	0.3mm	0.4pt	0.4pt	0.0pt
boxsep	1.0mm	1.0mm	1.0mm	3.0pt	0.0pt	0.0pt
left	4.0mm	2.0mm	1.0mm	0.0pt	0.0pt	0.0pt
right	4.0mm	2.0mm	1.0mm	0.0pt	0.0pt	0.0pt
top	2.0mm	0.25mm	0.0mm	0.0pt	0.0pt	0.0pt
bottom	2.0mm	0.25mm	0.0mm	0.0pt	0.0pt	0.0pt
toptitle	0.0mm	0.0mm	0.0mm	0.0pt	0.0pt	0.0pt
bottomtitle	0.0mm	0.0mm	0.0mm	0.0pt	0.0pt	0.0pt
middle	2.0mm	0.75mm	0.5mm	1.0pt	0.2pt	0.0pt
arc	1.0mm	0.75mm	0.5mm	1.0pt	0.0pt	0.0pt
outer arc	auto	auto	auto	auto	0.0pt	0.0pt

`/tcb/oversize=`⟨*length*⟩ (style, default `0pt`)

Sets the text width of the upper part to the current line width plus an optional ⟨*length*⟩. This is achieved by changing the keys `/tcb/width` → P. 39 `/tcb/enlarge left by` → P. 94, and `/tcb/enlarge right by` → P. 94 appropriately. The resulting box is overlapping into the left and right margin of the page. Note that this style option has to be given *after* all other geometry keys! Also see `/tcb/grow sidewards by` → P. 96 and `/tcb/spread sidewards` → P. 99.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\textit{Normal text for comparison:}\\
\lipsum[2]

\begin{tcolorbox}[oversize,title=Oversized box]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Normal box]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Normal text for comparison:

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

Oversized box

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

Normal box

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

4.7.6 Toggle Left and Right

U 2017-02-16 `/tcb/toggle left and right`=⟨*toggle preset*⟩ (default `evenpage`, initially `none`)

According to the ⟨*toggle preset*⟩, the left and the right settings of the `tcolorbox` are switched or not. Feasible values are:

- `none`: no switching.
- `forced`: the values of the left and right rules, spaces, and corners are switched.
- `evenpage`: if the page is an even page, the values of the left and right rules, spaces, and corners are switched. This value also sets `/tcb/check odd page` → P. 114 to `true`.

! Horizontal bounding box enlargements are not toggled by this option. They can be toggled independently by `/tcb/toggle enlargement` → P. 97. For example, `/tcb/oversize` → P. 50 changes the bounding box.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
% \usetikzlibrary{patterns}
% \tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,breakable,
  toggle left and right,sharp corners,
  boxrule=0mm,top=0mm,bottom=0mm,left=1mm,right=1mm,
  rightrule=1cm,colupper=blue!25!black,
  interior style={fill overzoom image=lichtspiel.jpg,fill image opacity=0.25},
  frame style={pattern=crosshatch dots light steel blue},
  overlay={%
    \begin{tcbclipframe}
    \tcbifoddpage{\coordinate (X) at ([xshift=-5mm]frame.east);}
                 {\coordinate (X) at ([xshift=5mm]frame.west);}
    \fill[shading=ball,ball color=blue!50!white,opacity=0.5] (X) circle (4mm);
    \end{tcbclipframe}}]
\lipsum[1-6]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This example switches a `1cm` thick rule from the left to the right side depending on the page number. Thereby, the rule is always on the outer side of the double-sided paper. Additionally, a ball is drawn on the outer side with help of an overlay.

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tinci-

dunt tristique, libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis. Donec nonummy pellentesque ante. Phasellus adipiscing semper elit. Proin fermentum massa ac quam. Sed diam turpis, molestie vitae, placerat a, molestie nec, leo. Maecenas lacinia. Nam ipsum ligula, eleifend at, accumsan nec, suscipit a, ipsum. Morbi blandit ligula feugiat magna. Nunc eleifend consequat lorem. Sed lacinia nulla vitae enim. Pellentesque tincidunt purus vel magna. Integer non enim. Praesent euismod nunc eu purus. Donec bibendum quam in tellus. Nullam cursus pulvinar lectus. Donec et mi. Nam vulputate metus eu enim. Vestibulum pellentesque felis eu massa.

Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt ultrices. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Integer tempus convallis augue. Etiam facilisis. Nunc elementum fermentum wisi. Aenean placerat. Ut imperdiet, enim sed gravida sollicitudin, felis odio placerat quam, ac pulvinar elit purus eget enim. Nunc vitae tortor. Proin tempus nibh sit amet nisl. Vivamus quis tortor vitae risus porta vehicula.

Fusce mauris. Vestibulum luctus nibh at lectus. Sed bibendum, nulla a faucibus semper, leo velit ultricies tellus, ac venenatis arcu wisi vel nisl. Vestibulum diam. Aliquam pellentesque, augue quis sagittis posuere, turpis lacus congue quam, in hendrerit risus eros eget felis. Maecenas eget erat in sapien mattis porttitor. Vestibulum porttitor. Nulla facilisi. Sed a turpis eu lacus commodo facilisis. Morbi fringilla, wisi in dignissim interdum, justo lectus sagittis dui, et vehicula libero dui cursus dui. Mauris tempor ligula sed lacus. Duis cursus enim ut augue. Cras ac magna. Cras nulla. Nulla egestas. Curabitur a leo. Quisque egestas wisi eget nunc. Nam feugiat lacus vel est. Curabitur consectetuer.

Suspendisse vel felis. Ut lorem lorem, interdum eu, tincidunt sit amet, laoreet vitae, arcu. Aenean faucibus pede eu ante. Praesent enim elit, rutrum at, molestie non, nonummy vel, nisl. Ut lectus eros, malesuada sit amet, fermentum eu, sodales cursus, magna. Donec eu purus. Quisque vehicula, urna sed ultricies auctor, pede lorem egestas dui, et convallis elit erat sed nulla. Donec luctus. Curabitur et nunc. Aliquam dolor odio, commodo pretium, ultricies non, pharetra in, velit. Integer arcu est, nonummy in, fermentum faucibus, egestas vel, odio.

4.8 Corners

The four corners of any `tcolorbox` can be set individually as `/tcb/sharp corners` or as `/tcb/rounded corners` → P. 54. These settings are also reflected in the behavior of `/tcb/borderline` → P. 198 and `/tcb/shadow` → P. 209 as one would expect.

By default, all four corners are *rounded*. So, only the `/tcb/sharp corners` option will be necessary for most use cases. The `/tcb/rounded corners` → P. 54 option can be used to revert a `/tcb/sharp corners` setting.

`/tcb/sharp corners`=⟨*position*⟩ (default `all`, initially unset)

The ⟨*position*⟩ denotes one or more of the four box corners to be set as *sharp* corners. The not assigned corners will retain their mode. Feasible values for ⟨*position*⟩ are:

- `northwest`
- `northeast`
- `southwest`
- `southeast`
- `north`
- `south`
- `east`
- `west`
- `downhill`
- `uphill`
- `all`

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,
  sharp corners=northwest ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,
  sharp corners ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

`/tcb/rounded corners`=⟨*position*⟩ (default `all`, initially `all`)

The `/tcb/rounded corners` can be used to revert a `/tcb/sharp corners` → P. 53 setting. The ⟨*position*⟩ denotes one or more of the four box corners to be set as *rounded* corners. The not assigned corners will retain their mode. Feasible values for ⟨*position*⟩ are[2]:

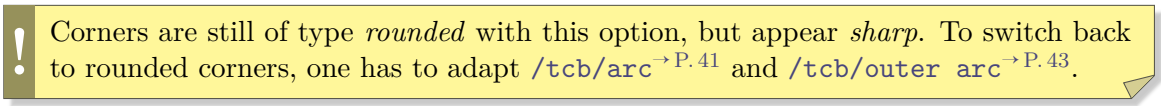
- `northwest`
- `northeast`
- `southwest`
- `southeast`
- `north`
- `south`
- `east`
- `west`
- `downhill`
- `uphill`
- `all`

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,sharp corners,
  rounded corners=northwest ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

`/tcb/sharpish corners` (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting `/tcb/arc` → P. 41 and `/tcb/outer arc` → P. 43 to `0pt`. With this setting, rounded corners will appear as quasi-sharp, but e. g. the shadow will be somewhat rounder than the shadow of really sharp corners.


Corners are still of type *rounded* with this option, but appear *sharp*. To switch back to rounded corners, one has to adapt `/tcb/arc` → P. 41 and `/tcb/outer arc` → P. 43.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,
  sharpish corners ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

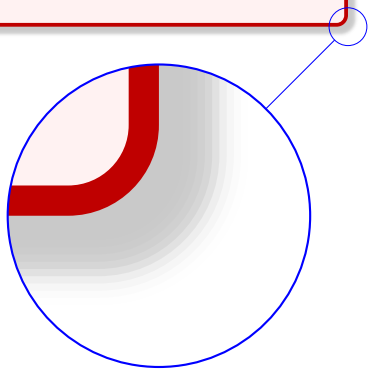
[2]The graphical examples assume that the boxes where set to have sharp corners before.

The following examples will show the differences between /tcb/rounded corners → P. 54, /tcb/sharpish corners → P. 54, and /tcb/sharp corners → P. 53. The later two give the same core box, but /tcb/borderline → P. 198 and /tcb/shadow → P. 209 settings are slightly different. The following examples use /tcb/drop fuzzy shadow → P. 203.

My title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

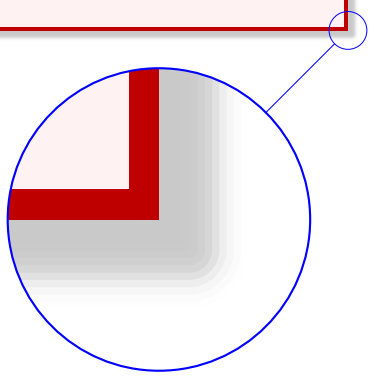
`rounded corners`



My title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

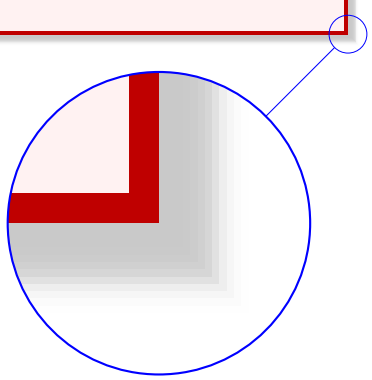
`sharpish corners`



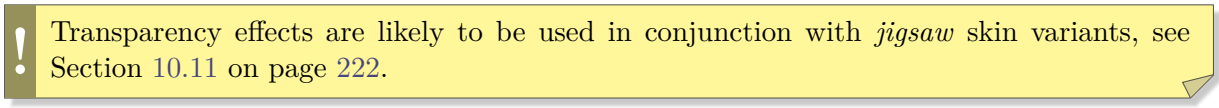
My title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

`sharp corners`



4.9 Transparency



Transparency effects are likely to be used in conjunction with *jigsaw* skin variants, see Section 10.11 on page 222.

`/tcb/opacityframe`=⟨*fraction*⟩ (no default, initially `1.0`)

Sets the frame opacity of the box to the given ⟨*fraction*⟩.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[opacityframe=0.25,
  colframe=red]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

`/tcb/opacityback`=⟨*fraction*⟩ (no default, initially `1.0`)

Sets the background opacity of the box to the given ⟨*fraction*⟩.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[standard jigsaw,colframe=red,
  opacityframe=0.5, opacityback=0.5]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

Also see `/tcb/opacitybacklower` → P. 244 of the LIB skins library.

`/tcb/opacitybacktitle`=⟨*fraction*⟩ (no default, initially `1.0`)

Sets the title background opacity of the box to the given ⟨*fraction*⟩.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[standard jigsaw,colframe=red,
  opacityframe=0.5, opacitybacktitle=0.5,
  title filled, title=This is a title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

`/tcb/opacityfill`=⟨*fraction*⟩ (style, no default, initially `1.0`)

Sets the fill opacity for frame, interior and optionally the title background to the given ⟨*fraction*⟩.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[standard jigsaw,colframe=red,
  opacityfill=0.7, title=This is a title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

/tcb/opacityupper=⟨*fraction*⟩ (no default, initially 1.0)

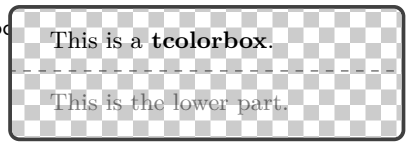
Sets the text opacity of the upper box part to the given ⟨*fraction*⟩.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,opacityupper=0.5,
  interior ❵
      ❴style={preaction={fill=white},pattern=checkerbo
      ❴color=gray!40}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

/tcb/opacitylower=⟨*fraction*⟩ (no default, initially 1.0)

Sets the text opacity of the lower box part to the given ⟨*fraction*⟩.

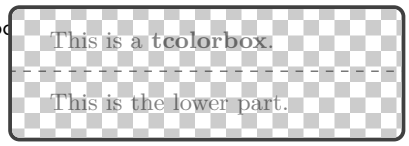
```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,opacitylower=0.5,
  interior ❵
      ❴style={preaction={fill=white},pattern=checkerbo
      ❴color=gray!40}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



/tcb/opacitytext=⟨*fraction*⟩ (no default, initially 1.0)

Sets the text opacity of the upper and the lower box part to the given ⟨*fraction*⟩.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,opacitytext=0.5,
  interior ❵
      ❴style={preaction={fill=white},pattern=checkerbo
      ❴color=gray!40}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



/tcb/opacitytitle=⟨*fraction*⟩ (no default, initially 1.0)

Sets the text opacity of the box title to the given ⟨*fraction*⟩.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,opacitytitle=0.7,
  coltitle=black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,title=This is a title,
  title ❵
      ❴style={preaction={fill=white},pattern=checkerbo
      ❴color=gray!40}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,fonttitle=\bfseries,title=This is a title,
  opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.25,opacitybacktitle=0.25,opacitytext=0.8,
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,colbacktitle=yellow!20!red]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

4.10 Height Control

In a typical usage scenario, the height of a `tcolorbox` is computed automatically to fit the content. Nevertheless, the height can be set to a fixed value or to fit commonly for several boxes, e. g. if boxes are set side by side.

> **!** The height control keys are only applicable to unbreakable boxes. If a box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` →P. 400, the height is always computed according to the *natural height*.

`/tcb/natural height` (no value, initially set)

Sets the total height of the colored box to its natural height depending on the box content.

`/tcb/height`=⟨*length*⟩ (no default)

Sets the total height of the colored box to ⟨*length*⟩ independent of the box content. ⟨*length*⟩ is the minimum height of the box, if `/tcb/height plus` is larger than zero.

```
\tcbset{width=(\linewidth-2mm)/3,before=,after=\hfill,
colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}

\begin{tcolorbox}[height=1cm,valign=center]
  This box has a height of 1cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[height=2cm,valign=center]
  This box has a height of 2cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[height=3cm,split=0.5,valign=center,valign lower=center]
  This box has a height of 3cm.
  \tcblower
  Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This box has a height of 1cm.

This box has a height of 2cm.

This box has a height of 3cm.

Lower part.

`/tcb/height plus`=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0pt`)

The box may extend a given fixed `/tcb/height` up to the given ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,
  right=1mm,boxsep=0mm,width=3cm,nobeforeafter}

\begin{tcolorbox}[height=1cm]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[height=1cm,height plus=1cm]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[height=1cm,height plus=1cm]
This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

This is a tcolorbox.

This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/height from=⟨*min*⟩ to ⟨*max*⟩ (style, no default)

Sets the box height to a dimension between ⟨*min*⟩ and ⟨*max*⟩.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\newtcolorbox{mybox}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,top=1mm,
  bottom=1mm,right=1mm,boxsep=0mm,width=4.5cm,nobeforeafter,
  height from=2cm to 8cm}

\begin{mybox}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}
This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}
\lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox.

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

N 2014-10-31 **/tcb/text height=⟨*length*⟩** (style, no default)

Sets the text height to ⟨*length*⟩. This is the length from the top of the upper part to the bottom of the optional lower part. See also /tcb/text width → P. 39.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[text height=2cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} where the text area has a height of 2cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox** where the text area has a height of 2cm.

N 2014-11-07 **/tcb/add to height=⟨*length*⟩** (style, no default)

Adds ⟨*length*⟩ to the current height of the colored box. /tcb/height → P. 58 has to be set before this key is used! If this option is used several times, then the /tcb/height → P. 58 is also increased several times.

```
\tcbset{height=2cm,
  valign=center,width=(\linewidth-2mm)/2,
  before=,after=\hfill,colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}

\begin{tcolorbox}
  This box has a height of 2cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[add to height=1cm]
  This box has a height of 3cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This box has a height of 2cm.

This box has a height of 3cm.

N 2016-02-16 **/tcb/add to natural height=⟨*length*⟩** (style, no default)

The application of this option generates a box with natural height plus the given ⟨*length*⟩. If this option is used several times, then the last setting of ⟨*length*⟩ wins. The resulting box is not considered a fixed height box and the implementation is quite different to /tcb/add to height.

```
\tcbset{valign=center,width=(\linewidth-2mm)/2,
  before=,after=\hfill,colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}

\begin{tcolorbox}
  This box has natural height.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[add to natural height=1cm]
  This box has natural height plus 1 cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

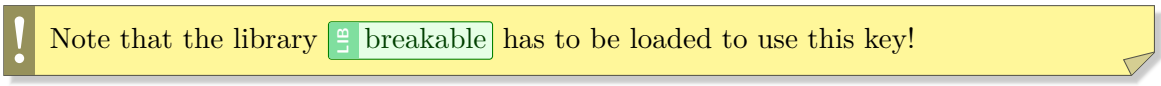
This box has natural height.

This box has natural height plus 1 cm.

N 2014-09-22
U 2016-02-17

`/tcb/height fill=true|false|maximum` (default `true`, initially `false`)

If set to `true`, the height of the `tcolorbox` is set to the rest of the available vertical space of the current page. If set to `maximum`, the page is compressed as much as possible. Note that the `tcolorbox` is always set as its own paragraph using this option. Also see `/tcb/text fill` → P. 74.



This height control key is only applicable to unbreakable boxes, but it uses code from the library LIB breakable. The counterpart for breakable boxes is `/tcb/height fixed for` → P. 406.

This option can and should not be used for boxes in boxes, but it can be used for boxes inside a `tcbraster` → P. 306.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
% \tcbuselibrary{breakable}
\begin{tcolorbox}[height fill,
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title=Box which fills the rest of the page]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Box which fills the rest of the page

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

N 2017-06-28 **/tcb/inherit height=⟨*fraction*⟩** (default 1, initially unset)

If this option is used for a `tcolorbox` which is embedded inside another (outer) `tcolorbox` *and* if this outer `tcolorbox` has a fixed height, then the given ⟨*fraction*⟩ of the available text height of the outer `tcolorbox` is used as `/tcb/height` → P. 58 for the current `tcolorbox`. Otherwise, `/tcb/natural height` → P. 58 is applied for the current `tcolorbox`.

```
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Outer box with fixed height 3.5cm,height=3.5cm]
  \begin{tcolorbox}[title=Inner box,nobeforeafter,inherit height]
    This inner box matches the available space.
  \end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Outer box with natural height]
  \begin{tcolorbox}[title=Inner box,nobeforeafter,inherit height]
    This inner box has its natural height.
  \end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Outer box with fixed height 5cm,height=5cm]
  \begin{tcolorbox}[title=Inner box,nobeforeafter,inherit height]
    \begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=red,beforeafter skip=0pt,inherit height=0.6]
      Deeply nested box using 60 percent of the available space.
    \end{tcolorbox}
    \begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=red,beforeafter skip=0pt,inherit height=0.4]
      Deeply nested box using 40 percent of the available space.
    \end{tcolorbox}
  \end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Outer box with fixed height 3.5cm

Inner box

This inner box matches the available space.

Outer box with natural height

Inner box

This inner box has its natural height.

Outer box with fixed height 5cm

Inner box

Deeply nested box using 60 percent of the available space.

Deeply nested box using 40 percent of the available space.

N 2015-05-05 **/tcb/square** (style, no value)

Sets /tcb/height → P. 58 to match the width of the colored box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=3cm,
  colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,
  halign=center,valign=center,
  square]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

/tcb/space=⟨*fraction*⟩ (no default, initially 0)

If the height of a `tcolorbox` is not the natural height, the space difference between the forced and the natural size is distributed between the upper and the lower part of the box. This space could also be negative. ⟨*fraction*⟩ with a value between 0 and 1 is the amount of space which is added to the upper part, the rest is added to the lower part. If there is no lower part, then all of the space is added to the upper part always.

```
\tcbset{width=(\linewidth-2mm)/3,before=,after=\hfill,
colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=3cm}

\foreach \f in {0.2,0.4,0.7}
{\begin{tcolorbox}[space=\f]
    This is the upper part.
    \tcblower
    This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}}
```

This is the upper part.

This is the lower part.

This is the upper part.

This is the lower part.

This is the upper part.

This is the lower part.

/tcb/space to upper (style)

This is an abbreviation for `space=1`, i. e. all extra space is added to the upper part.

/tcb/space to lower (style, initially set)

This is an abbreviation for `space=0`, i. e. all extra space is added to the lower part (if there is any).

`/tcb/space to both` (style)

This is an abbreviation for `space=0.5`, i. e. the extra space equally distributed between the upper and the lower part.

```
\tcbset{width=(\linewidth-2mm)/3,before=,after=\hfill,
colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=3cm}

\foreach \myspace in {space to upper,space to both,space to lower}
{\begin{tcolorbox}[\myspace]
    This is the upper part.
    \tcblower
    This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}}
```

This is the upper part.

This is the lower part.

This is the upper part.

This is the lower part.

This is the upper part.

This is the lower part.

N 2015-02-15
U 2020-07-30

`/tcb/space to=`⟨*macro*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the height of a `tcolorbox` is not the natural height, the space difference between the forced and the natural size is saved into the given local ⟨*macro*⟩. This ⟨*macro*⟩ can and should be used inside the box content to add content which is vertically sized to match ⟨*macro*⟩.

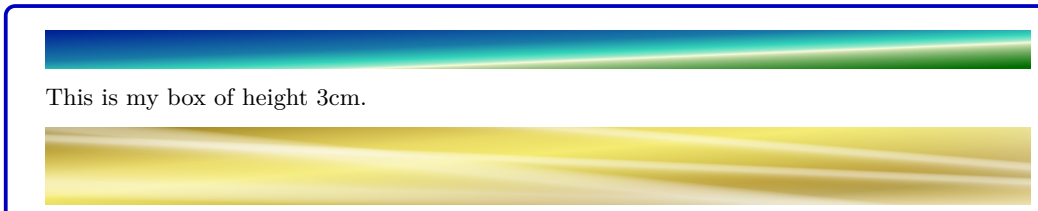
- The actual length saved into ⟨*macro*⟩ is adapted dynamically during several compilations – at least two, but maybe more.
- Due to the adaption algorithm, objects can be sized with ⟨*macro*⟩ plus any offset length.
- Never ever use ⟨*macro*⟩ multiplied with a factor. The only exception to this rule is that the space can be split into parts which sum to ⟨*macro*⟩.
- Never use this in combination with `/tcb/fit` → P. 454.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=3cm,
    space to=\myspace]
  This is my box of height 3cm. The space is filled with a picture:\\[2mm]
  \includegraphics[width=\linewidth,height=\myspace]{goldshade.png}\\[1mm]
  This is some other text.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is my box of height 3cm. The space is filled with a picture:

This is some other text.

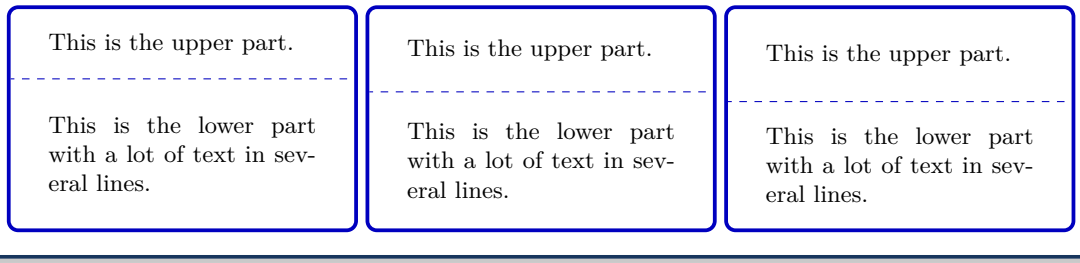
```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=3cm,
    space to=\myspace]
  \includegraphics[width=\linewidth,
    height=0.33\dimexpr\myspace]{blueshade.png}\\[1mm]
  This is my box of height 3cm.\\[2mm]
  \includegraphics[width=\linewidth,
    height=0.67\dimexpr\myspace]{goldshade.png}
\end{tcolorbox}
```



/tcb/split=⟨*fraction*⟩ (no default)

If the height of a `tcolorbox` is not the natural height, the ⟨*fraction*⟩ with a value between 0 and 1 determines the positioning of the segmentation between the upper and the lower part. Here, 0 stands for top and 1 for bottom. Note that the box is split regardless of the actual dimensions of the text parts!

```
\tcbset{width=(\linewidth-2mm)/3,before=,after=\hfill,height=3cm,
colback=white,colframe=blue!75!black,valign=center,valign lower=center}

\foreach \f in {0.1,0.5,0.8}
{\begin{tcolorbox}[split=\f]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part with a lot of text in several lines.
\end{tcolorbox}}
```



U 2014-11-07 **/tcb/equal height group=**⟨*id*⟩ (no default)

Boxes which are members of an **equal height group** will all get the same height, i. e. the maximum of all their natural heights. The ⟨*id*⟩ serves to distinguish between different height groups. Note that you have to compile twice to see changes and that height groups are global definitions.

```
\tcbset{width=(\linewidth-2mm)/3,before=,after=\hfill,arc=0mm,
colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[equal height group=A,adjusted title={One}]
  My smallest box.
\end{tcolorbox}%
\begin{tcolorbox}[equal height group=A,adjusted title={Two}]
  This box is also small.
  \tcblower
  But with a lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}%
\begin{tcolorbox}[equal height group=A,adjusted title={Three}]
  This box contains a lot of text just to fill the space
  with word flowing and flowing and flowing until the box
  is filled with all of it.
\end{tcolorbox}\linebreak
%
\tcbset{width=(\linewidth-1mm)/2,before=,after=\hfill,arc=0mm,
colframe=red!75!black,colback=white}
%
\begin{tcolorbox}[equal height group=B]
  Now, we use another equal height group.
\end{tcolorbox}%
\begin{tcolorbox}[equal height group=B,after=]
  \begin{equation*}
    \int\limits_{0}^{1} x^2 = \frac13.
  \end{equation*}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

One

My smallest box.

Two

This box is also small.

But with a lower part.

Three

This box contains a lot of text just to fill the space with word flowing and flowing and flowing until the box is filled with all of it.

Now, we use another equal height group.

$$\int_0^1 x^2 = \frac{1}{3}.$$

See Section 16 on page 304 for more equal height options.

`/tcb/minimum for equal height group=`⟨*id*⟩`:`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Plants a ⟨*length*⟩ into the equal height group with the given ⟨*id*⟩. This ensures that the height will not drop below ⟨*length*⟩. Note that you cannot reduce a computed height value by using this key with a small value. The difference to applying `/tcb/height` → P. 58 directly is that the boxes are never too small for their content.

```
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,arc=0mm,
  before=,after=\hfill,fonttitle=\bfseries,left=2mm,right=2mm,
  width=3.5cm,
  equal height group=C,
  minimum for equal height group=C:3.5cm}

\begin{tcolorbox}
  My first box. All boxes will get 3.5cm times 3.5cm
  if the content height is not too large.
\end{tcolorbox}%
\begin{tcolorbox}
  My second box.
  \tcblower
  This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}%
\begin{tcblisting}{}
\textbf{Mixed}
with a listing.
\end{tcblisting}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title={Fourth box}]
  My final box.
\end{tcolorbox}%
```

My first box. All boxes will get 3.5cm times 3.5cm if the content height is not too large.

My second box.

This is the lower part.

`\textbf{Mixed}` with a listing.

Mixed with a listing.

Fourth box

My final box.

N 2016-03-24 `/tcb/minimum for current equal height group=`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Sets `/tcb/minimum for equal height group` for the current equal height group. Apparently, this only works for an already known equal height group, i.e. `/tcb/equal height group` → P. 66 has to be set *before* this option is used. This option is likely to be used in combination with `/tcb/raster equal height` → P. 315

```
% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height,colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,
  raster every box/.style={minimum for current equal height group=2cm}]
  \tcbitem A
  \tcbitem B
\end{tcbitemize}
```

A

B

N 2015-11-27
U 2016-02-22

/tcb/use height from group=⟨*id*⟩ (style, default current group)

Sets the current box to a fixed /tcb/height → P. 58 which is copied from an equal height group with the given ⟨*id*⟩. If this height is not available during the current compilation, no fixed height setting is used. If ⟨*id*⟩ is omitted, the current equal height group is used which has to be set before by /tcb/equal height group → P. 66.
Note that the natural height of the current box is not considered for computation of the group height. The main application for /tcb/use height from group is that the height can be adapted further by /tcb/add to height → P. 60.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[use height from group=C,add to height=-2cm,
  colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white]
Height from group \enquote{C} of the previous example, but reduced by 2cm.
\end{tcolorbox}%
```

Height from group “C” of the previous example, but reduced by 2cm.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
Every line is inside an equal height group:
\begin{tcbraster}[raster equal height=rows,
    title=Box \thetcbrasternum,
    enhanced,size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \begin{tcolorbox}First line\\second line\\
    The height of this box rules.\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[use height from group]Test\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[use height from group]
    First line\\second line\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}The height of this box rules.\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
```

Every line is inside an equal height group:

Box 1
First line
second line
The height of this box rules.

Box 2
Test

Box 3
First line
second line

Box 4
The height of this box rules.

N 2015-11-27 **\tcbheightfromgroup{⟨*macro*⟩}{⟨*id*⟩}**

Saves the height from an equal height group with the given ⟨*id*⟩ to a ⟨*macro*⟩. If this height is not available during the current compilation, ⟨*macro*⟩ is set to 0pt.

4.11 Box Content Additions

The following options introduce some arbitrary ⟨*code*⟩ to the content of a `tcolorbox`. These additions can be given at the beginning or at the ending of the title, the upper part, or the lower part.

U 2023-01-27 **/tcb/before title=**⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

The given ⟨*code*⟩ is placed *after* the color and font settings and *before* the content of the title. The ⟨*code*⟩ is appended by a final `\ignorespaces`.

```
\tcbset{before title={\textcolor{yellow}{\large Important:}~},
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Important: My title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

N 2023-01-27 **/tcb/before title*=**⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

The given ⟨*code*⟩ is placed *after* the color and font settings and *before* the content of the title. In contrast to `/tcb/before title`, no `\ignorespaces` is appended.

U 2023-01-27 **/tcb/after title=**⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

The given ⟨*code*⟩ is placed *after* the content of the title. The ⟨*code*⟩ is prepended by a leading `\unskip`.

```
\tcbset{after title={\hfill\colorbox{Navy}{approved}},
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title approved

This is a **tcolorbox**.

N 2023-01-27 **/tcb/after title*=**⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

The given ⟨*code*⟩ is placed *after* the content of the title. In contrast to `/tcb/after title`, no `\unskip` is prepended.

`/tcb/before upper=`⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

The given ⟨*code*⟩ is placed *after* the color and font settings and *before* the content of the upper part. The ⟨*code*⟩ is appended by a final `\ignorespaces`.

```
\tcbset{before upper={\textit{The story:}\par},
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

The story:
This is a **tcolorbox**.

N 2019-02-26 `/tcb/before upper*=`⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

The given ⟨*code*⟩ is placed *after* the color and font settings and *before* the content of the upper part. In contrast to `/tcb/before upper`, no `\ignorespaces` is appended. Use this for situations where `\ignorespaces` is not needed or causes harm.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[size=small,tile,
  colback=yellow!20,colbacktitle=yellow!70!black,
  title=My table,hbox,center,center title,
  before upper*=\begin{tabular}{cc},
  after upper*=\end{tabular},
]
  \multicolumn{2}{c}{Title}\\
  one & two \\
  three & four\\
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My table

Title	
one	two
three	four

U 2016-10-21 **/tcb/after upper=**⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

The given ⟨*code*⟩ is placed *after* the content of the upper part. The ⟨*code*⟩ is prepended by a leading **\unskip**.

```
\tcbset{after upper={\par\hfill\textit{Read more next week}},
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

Read more next week

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[before upper=\flqq,after upper=\frqq,
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

«This is a **tcolorbox**.»

N 2016-10-21
U 2019-02-28 **/tcb/after upper*=**⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

The given ⟨*code*⟩ is placed *after* the content of the upper part. In contrast to **/tcb/after upper**, no **\unskip** is prepended. Use this for situations where **\unskip** is not needed or causes harm. See **/tcb/before upper*** → P. 70 for an example.

! From version 3.80 to 3.94, this option prepended an **\unskip** to the given ⟨*code*⟩.
From version 3.95 to 4.15, this option was deprecated.
From version 4.20, this option is re-established with changed semantic (no **\unskip**!)

`/tcb/before lower=`⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

The given ⟨*code*⟩ is placed *after* the color and font settings and *before* the content of the lower part. The ⟨*code*⟩ is appended by a final `\ignorespaces`.

```
\tcbset{before lower=\textit{Behold:~},colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

Behold: This is the lower part.

N 2019-02-26 `/tcb/before lower*=`⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

The given ⟨*code*⟩ is placed *after* the color and font settings and *before* the content of the lower part. In contrast to `/tcb/before lower`, no `\ignorespaces` is appended. Use this for situations where `\ignorespaces` is not needed or causes harm.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[size=small,bicolor,sidebyside,center lower,
  colback=yellow!30,colbacklower=yellow!20,colframe=yellow!80!black,
  before lower*=\begin{tabular}{cc},
  after lower*=\end{tabular},
]
My table
\tcblower
  \multicolumn{2}{c}{Title}\\
  one & two \\
  three & four\\
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My table

Title	
one	two
three	four

U 2016-10-21 **/tcb/after lower=**⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

The given ⟨*code*⟩ is placed *after* the content of the lower part. The ⟨*code*⟩ is prepended by a leading **\unskip**.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[after lower=\ \textit{This is the end.},
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is the lower part. *This is the end.*

N 2016-10-21
U 2019-02-28 **/tcb/after lower*=**⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

The given ⟨*code*⟩ is placed *after* the content of the lower part. In contrast to /tcb/after upper → P. 71, no **\unskip** is prepended. Use this for situations where **\unskip** is not needed or causes harm.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[before lower*=$,after lower*=$,
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
\sin^2(x)+\cos^2(x)=1.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

$\sin^2(x) + \cos^2(x) = 1.$

! From version 3.80 to 3.94, this option prepended an **\unskip** to the given ⟨*code*⟩.
From version 3.95 to 4.15, this option was deprecated.
From version 4.20, this option is re-established with changed semantic (no **\unskip**!)

If /tcb/text fill is used, one cannot have a lower part and the box is unbreakable.

N 2015-07-15 **/tcb/text fill** (style, no value)

This style sets /tcb/before upper → P. 70 and /tcb/after upper → P. 71 to embed the upper part with a minipage. If a fixed height was applied e.g. by /tcb/height → P. 58 or /tcb/height fill → P. 61, this minipage gets a matching height. This allows to use vertical glue macros like \vfill to act like expected. If the box has no fixed height, setting /tcb/text fill has no other effect as making the box unbreakable.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  height=8cm,text fill,
  title=My filled box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\par\vfill
\begin{center}
  My middle text.
\end{center}
\par\vfill
This is the end of my box.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My filled box

This is a **tcolorbox**.

My middle text.

This is the end of my box.

N 2019-09-19 **/tcb/tabulars=⟨*preamble*⟩** (style)

This style sets /tcb/before upper→P. 70 and /tcb/after upper→P. 71 and several geometry keys to support a `tabular*` with the given ⟨*preamble*⟩. The packages `array` and `colortbl` have to be loaded separately.

```
% \usepackage{array}
% \usepackage{colortbl} - or - \usepackage[table]{xcolor}
\tcbset{enhanced,fonttitle=\bfseries\large,fontupper=\normalsize\sffamily,
  colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black,colbacktitle=Salmon!30!white,
  coltitle=black,center title}

\begin{tcolorbox}[tabulars={@{\extracolsep{\fill}\hspace{5mm}}lrrrrr@{\hspace{5mm}}},
  boxrule=0.5pt,title=My table]
Group & One     & Two     & Three    & Four     & Sum\\\hline\hline
Red   & 1000.00 & 2000.00 &  3000.00 &  4000.00 & 10000.00\\\hline
Green & 2000.00 & 3000.00 &  4000.00 &  5000.00 & 14000.00\\\hline
Blue  & 3000.00 & 4000.00 &  5000.00 &  6000.00 & 18000.00\\\hline\hline
Sum   & 6000.00 & 9000.00 & 12000.00 & 15000.00 & 42000.00
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My table

Group	One	Two	Three	Four	Sum
Red	1000.00	2000.00	3000.00	4000.00	10000.00
Green	2000.00	3000.00	4000.00	5000.00	14000.00
Blue	3000.00	4000.00	5000.00	6000.00	18000.00
Sum	6000.00	9000.00	12000.00	15000.00	42000.00

N 2019-09-19 **/tcb/tabulars*={⟨*code*⟩}{⟨*preamble*⟩}** (style)

This is a variant of /tcb/tabulars which adds some ⟨*code*⟩ before the table starts.

```
% \usepackage{array}
% \usepackage{colortbl} - or - \usepackage[table]{xcolor}
\tcbset{enhanced,fonttitle=\bfseries\large,fontupper=\normalsize\sffamily,
  colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black,colbacktitle=Salmon!30!white,
  coltitle=black,center title}

\begin{tcolorbox}[tabulars*={\arrayrulewidth0.5mm\renewcommand\arraystretch{1.4}}%
    {@{\extracolsep{\fill}\hspace{20mm}}lll@{\hspace{20mm}}},
  title=My table]
One     & Two     & Three \\\hline\hline
1000.00 & 2000.00 &  3000.00\\\hline
2000.00 & 3000.00 &  4000.00
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My table

One	Two	Three
1000.00	2000.00	3000.00
2000.00	3000.00	4000.00

If /tcb/tabularx or /tcb/tabularx* are used, one cannot have a lower part.

/tcb/tabularx=⟨*preamble*⟩ (style)

This style sets /tcb/before upper → P. 70 and /tcb/after upper → P. 71 and several geometry keys to support a tabularx with the given ⟨*preamble*⟩. The packages tabularx [5], array, and colortbl have to be loaded separately.

```
% \usepackage{array,tabularx}
% \usepackage{colortbl} - or - \usepackage[table]{xcolor}
\newcolumntype{Y}{>{\raggedleft\arraybackslash}X}% see tabularx
\tcbset{enhanced,fonttitle=\bfseries\large,fontupper=\normalsize\sffamily,
  colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black,colbacktitle=Salmon!30!white,
  coltitle=black,center title}

\begin{tcolorbox}[tabularx={X||Y|Y|Y|Y||Y},title=My table]
Group & One     & Two     & Three    & Four     & Sum\\\hline\hline
Red   & 1000.00 & 2000.00 &  3000.00 &  4000.00 & 10000.00\\\hline
Green & 2000.00 & 3000.00 &  4000.00 &  5000.00 & 14000.00\\\hline
Blue  & 3000.00 & 4000.00 &  5000.00 &  6000.00 & 18000.00\\\hline\hline
Sum   & 6000.00 & 9000.00 & 12000.00 & 15000.00 & 42000.00
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My table

Group	One	Two	Three	Four	Sum
Red	1000.00	2000.00	3000.00	4000.00	10000.00
Green	2000.00	3000.00	4000.00	5000.00	14000.00
Blue	3000.00	4000.00	5000.00	6000.00	18000.00
Sum	6000.00	9000.00	12000.00	15000.00	42000.00

/tcb/tabularx*={⟨*code*⟩}{⟨*preamble*⟩} (style)

This is a variant of /tcb/tabularx which adds some ⟨*code*⟩ before the table starts.

```
% \usepackage{array,tabularx}
% \usepackage{colortbl} - or - \usepackage[table]{xcolor}
\tcbset{enhanced,fonttitle=\bfseries\large,fontupper=\normalsize\sffamily,
  colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black,colbacktitle=Salmon!30!white,
  coltitle=black,center title}

\begin{tcolorbox}[tabularx*={\arrayrulewidth0.5mm}{X|X|X},title=My table]
One     & Two     & Three \\\hline\hline
1000.00 & 2000.00 &  3000.00\\\hline
2000.00 & 3000.00 &  4000.00
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My table

One	Two	Three
1000.00	2000.00	3000.00
2000.00	3000.00	4000.00

/tcb/tikz upper=⟨*options*⟩ (style)

This style adds a centered `tikzpicture` environment to the start and end of the upper part. The ⟨*options*⟩ may be given as Ti*k*Z picture options.

```
% \usepackage{tikz}

\begin{tcolorbox}[tikz upper,fonttitle=\bfseries,colback=white,colframe=black,
                  title=\tikzname\ drawing]
  \path[fill=yellow,draw=yellow!75!red] (0,0) circle (1cm);
  \fill[red] (45:5mm) circle (1mm);
  \fill[red] (135:5mm) circle (1mm);
  \draw[line width=1mm,red] (215:5mm) arc (215:325:5mm);
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Ti*k*Z drawing

/tcb/tikz lower=⟨*options*⟩ (style)

This style adds a centered `tikzpicture` environment to the start and end of the lower part. The ⟨*options*⟩ may be given as Ti*k*Z picture options.

```
% \usepackage{tikz}
% \tcbuselibrary{skins,listings}

\begin{tcblisting}{tikz lower,listing side text,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  bicolor,colback=LightBlue!50!white,colbacklower=white,colframe=black,
  righthand width=3cm,title=\tikzname\ drawing}
\path[fill=yellow,draw=yellow!75!red]
    (0,0) circle (1cm);
\fill[red] (45:5mm) circle (1mm);
\fill[red] (135:5mm) circle (1mm);
\draw[line width=1mm,red]
    (215:5mm) arc (215:325:5mm);
\end{tcblisting}
```

Ti*k*Z drawing

```
\path[fill=yellow,draw=yellow!75!red]
    (0,0) circle (1cm);
\fill[red] (45:5mm) circle (1mm);
\fill[red] (135:5mm) circle (1mm);
\draw[line width=1mm,red]
    (215:5mm) arc (215:325:5mm);
```

/tcb/tikznode upper=⟨*options*⟩ (style)

This style places the upper part content into a centered Ti*k*Z node. The ⟨*options*⟩ may be given as Ti*k*Z node options. This style is especially useful for boxes with multiline texts which are fitted to the text width.

```
% \usepackage{tikz}
\newtcbox{\headline}[1][]{enhanced,center,
  ignore nobreak,fontupper=\Large\bfseries,
  colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,
  drop fuzzy shadow=yellow,tikznode upper,#1}

\headline{Important\\Headline}
```

Important Headline

/tcb/tikznode lower=⟨*options*⟩ (style)

This style places the lower part content into a centered Ti*k*Z node. The ⟨*options*⟩ may be given as Ti*k*Z node options.

```
% \usepackage{tikz}
\begin{tcolorbox}[bicolor,colback=LightBlue!50!white,colbacklower=white,
  colframe=black,tikznode lower={inner sep=2pt,draw=red,fill=yellow}]
Upper part.
\tcblower
Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Upper part.

Lower part.

/tcb/tikznode=⟨*options*⟩ (style)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/tikznode upper and /tcb/tikznode lower the same time.

/tcb/varwidth upper=⟨*length*⟩ (style, default /tcb/width → P. 39)

This style places the upper part content into a `varwidth` environment. This style needs the `varwidth` package [1] to be loaded manually. The resulting box has a maximal width of ⟨*length*⟩. This option is only senseful for a \tcbox → P. 14.

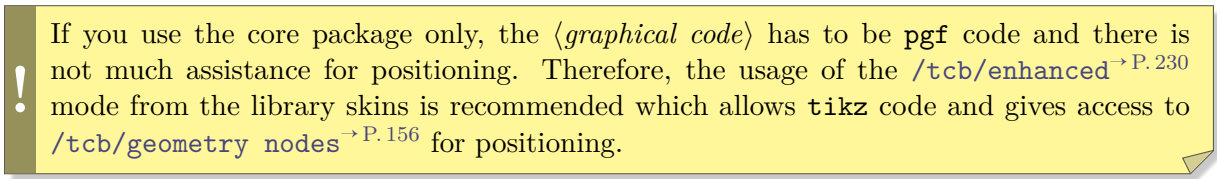
```
% \usepackage{varwidth}
\newtcbox{\varbox}{colframe=red!50!black,
  colback=red!10!white,varwidth upper}

\varbox{Short text.}
\varbox{This box contains is a longer text
  which is broken.}
```

Short text.

This box contains is a longer text which is broken.

4.12 Overlays

With an overlay, arbitrary ⟨*graphical code*⟩ can be added to a `tcolorbox`. This code is executed *after* the frame and interior are drawn and *before* the text content is drawn. Therefore, you can decorate the `tcolorbox` with your own extensions. Common special cases are *watermarks* which are implemented using overlays. See Subsection 10.3 from page 186 if you want to add *watermarks*.



`/tcb/overlay`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Adds ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to the box drawing process. This ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is drawn *after* the frame and interior and *before* the text content.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{skins} % preamble
\tcbset{frogbox/.style={enhanced,colback=green!10,colframe=green!65!black,
  enlarge top by=5.5mm,
  overlay={\foreach \x in {2cm,3.5cm} {
    \begin{scope}[shift={([xshift=\x]frame.north west)}]
      \path[draw=green!65!black,fill=green!10,line width=1mm] (0,0) arc (0:180:5mm);
      \path[fill=black] (-0.2,0) arc (0:180:1mm);
    \end{scope}}}}}

\begin{tcolorbox}[frogbox,title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
% \usetikzlibrary{patterns} % preamble
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}     % preamble
\tcbset{ribbonbox/.style={enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,
  overlay={\path[fill=blue!75!white,draw=blue,double=white!85!blue,
    preaction={opacity=0.6,fill=blue!75!white},
    line width=0.1mm,double distance=0.2mm,
    pattern=fivepointed stars,pattern color=white!75!blue]
    ([xshift=-0.2mm,yshift=-1.02cm]frame.north east)
    -- ++(-1,1) -- ++(-0.5,0) -- ++(1.5,-1.5) -- cycle;}}}

\begin{tcolorbox}[ribbonbox,title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

`/tcb/no overlay` (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the overlay if set before.

`/tcb/overlay broken`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` →P. 400 and *is* broken actually, then the ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is added to the box drawing process. `/tcb/overlay` →P. 79 overwrites this key.

`/tcb/overlay unbroken`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` →P. 400 but *is not* broken actually or if the box is set to be `/tcb/unbreakable` →P. 401, then the ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is added to the box drawing process. `/tcb/overlay` →P. 79 overwrites this key.

`/tcb/overlay first`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` →P. 400 and *is* broken actually, then the ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is added to the box drawing process for the *first* part of the break sequence. `/tcb/overlay` →P. 79 overwrites this key.

`/tcb/overlay middle`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` →P. 400 and *is* broken actually, then the ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is added to the box drawing process for the *middle* parts (if any) of the break sequence. `/tcb/overlay` →P. 79 overwrites this key.

`/tcb/overlay last`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` →P. 400 and *is* broken actually, then the ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is added to the box drawing process for the *last* part of the break sequence. `/tcb/overlay` →P. 79 overwrites this key.

`/tcb/overlay unbroken and first`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This is an optimized abbreviation for setting `/tcb/overlay unbroken` and `/tcb/overlay first` together. `/tcb/overlay` →P. 79 overwrites this key.

`/tcb/overlay middle and last`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This is an optimized abbreviation for setting `/tcb/overlay middle` and `/tcb/overlay last` together. `/tcb/overlay` →P. 79 overwrites this key.

`/tcb/overlay unbroken and last`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This is an optimized abbreviation for setting `/tcb/overlay unbroken` and `/tcb/overlay last` together. `/tcb/overlay` →P. 79 overwrites this key.

N 2014-09-19

`/tcb/overlay first and middle`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This is an optimized abbreviation for setting `/tcb/overlay first` and `/tcb/overlay middle` together. `/tcb/overlay` →P. 79 overwrites this key.

This example demonstrates the application of break sequence specific overlay options. Here, we define an environment `myexample` based on `tcolorbox` where the visible drawing is done totally by overlay keys.
Here, the first application of `myexample` produces an unbroken `tcolorbox`. The frame is drawn by the code given with `/tcb/overlay unbroken`.
The second application of `myexample` is broken into several parts which are drawn by the codes given with `/tcb/overlay first`, `/tcb/overlay middle`, and `/tcb/overlay last`.

```
% Preamble:
%\usepackage{tikz,lipsum}
%\tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
%\newcounter{example}
```

```
\colorlet{colexam}{red!75!black}
\newtcolorbox[use counter=example]{myexample}{%
  empty,title={Example \thetcbcounter},attach boxed title to top left,
  boxed title style={empty,size=minimal,toprule=2pt,top=4pt,
    overlay={\draw[colexam,line width=2pt]
      ([yshift=-1pt]frame.north west)--([yshift=-1pt]frame.north east);}},
  coltitle=colexam,fonttitle=\Large\bfseries,
  before=\par\medskip\noindent,parbox=false,boxsep=0pt,left=0pt,right=3mm,top=4pt,
  breakable,pad at break*=0mm,vfill before first,
  overlay unbroken={\draw[colexam,line width=1pt]
    ([yshift=-1pt]title.north east)--([xshift=-0.5pt,yshift=-1pt]title.north-|frame.east)
    --([xshift=-0.5pt]frame.south east)--(frame.south west); },
  overlay first={\draw[colexam,line width=1pt]
    ([yshift=-1pt]title.north east)--([xshift=-0.5pt,yshift=-1pt]title.north-|frame.east)
    --([xshift=-0.5pt]frame.south east); },
  overlay middle={\draw[colexam,line width=1pt] ([xshift=-0.5pt]frame.north east)
    --([xshift=-0.5pt]frame.south east); },
  overlay last={\draw[colexam,line width=1pt] ([xshift=-0.5pt]frame.north east)
    --([xshift=-0.5pt]frame.south east)--(frame.south west);},%
}

\begin{myexample}
\lipsum[1]
\end{myexample}

\begin{myexample}
\lipsum[2-11]
\end{myexample}

\lipsum[12]% following text
```

Example 1

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

Example 2

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis. Donec nonummy pellentesque ante. Phasellus adipiscing semper elit. Proin fermentum massa ac quam. Sed diam turpis, molestie vitae, placerat a, molestie nec, leo. Maecenas lacinia. Nam ipsum ligula, eleifend at, accumsan nec, suscipit a, ipsum. Morbi blandit ligula feugiat magna. Nunc eleifend consequat lorem. Sed

lacinia nulla vitae enim. Pellentesque tincidunt purus vel magna. Integer non enim. Praesent euismod nunc eu purus. Donec bibendum quam in tellus. Nullam cursus pulvinar lectus. Donec et mi. Nam vulputate metus eu enim. Vestibulum pellentesque felis eu massa.

Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt ultrices. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Integer tempus convallis augue. Etiam facilisis. Nunc elementum fermentum wisi. Aenean placerat. Ut imperdiet, enim sed gravida sollicitudin, felis odio placerat quam, ac pulvinar elit purus eget enim. Nunc vitae tortor. Proin tempus nibh sit amet nisl. Vivamus quis tortor vitae risus porta vehicula.

Fusce mauris. Vestibulum luctus nibh at lectus. Sed bibendum, nulla a faucibus semper, leo velit ultricies tellus, ac venenatis arcu wisi vel nisl. Vestibulum diam. Aliquam pellentesque, augue quis sagittis posuere, turpis lacus congue quam, in hendrerit risus eros eget felis. Maecenas eget erat in sapien mattis porttitor. Vestibulum porttitor. Nulla facilisi. Sed a turpis eu lacus commodo facilisis. Morbi fringilla, wisi in dignissim interdum, justo lectus sagittis dui, et vehicula libero dui cursus dui. Mauris tempor ligula sed lacus. Duis cursus enim ut augue. Cras ac magna. Cras nulla. Nulla egestas. Curabitur a leo. Quisque egestas wisi eget nunc. Nam feugiat lacus vel est. Curabitur consectetuer.

Suspendisse vel felis. Ut lorem lorem, interdum eu, tincidunt sit amet, laoreet vitae, arcu. Aenean faucibus pede eu ante. Praesent enim elit, rutrum at, molestie non, nonummy vel, nisl. Ut lectus eros, malesuada sit amet, fermentum eu, sodales cursus, magna. Donec eu purus. Quisque vehicula, urna sed ultricies auctor, pede lorem egestas dui, et convallis elit erat sed nulla. Donec luctus. Curabitur et nunc. Aliquam dolor odio, commodo pretium, ultricies non, pharetra in, velit. Integer arcu est, nonummy in, fermentum faucibus, egestas vel, odio.

Sed commodo posuere pede. Mauris ut est. Ut quis purus. Sed ac odio. Sed vehicula hendrerit sem. Duis non odio. Morbi ut dui. Sed accumsan risus eget odio. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Pellentesque non elit. Fusce sed justo eu urna porta tincidunt. Mauris felis odio, sollicitudin sed, volutpat a, ornare ac, erat. Morbi quis dolor. Donec pellentesque, erat ac sagittis semper, nunc dui lobortis purus, quis congue purus metus ultricies tellus. Proin et quam. Class aptent taciti sociosqu ad litora torquent per conubia nostra, per inceptos hymenaeos. Praesent sapien turpis, fermentum vel, eleifend faucibus, vehicula eu, lacus.

Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Donec odio elit, dictum in, hendrerit sit amet, egestas sed, leo. Praesent feugiat sapien aliquet odio. Integer vitae justo. Aliquam vestibulum fringilla lorem. Sed neque lectus, consectetuer at, consectetuer sed, eleifend ac, lectus. Nulla facilisi. Pellentesque eget lectus. Proin eu metus. Sed porttitor. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Suspendisse eu lectus. Ut mi mi, lacinia sit amet, placerat et, mollis vitae, dui. Sed ante tellus, tristique ut, iaculis eu, malesuada ac, dui. Mauris nibh leo, facilisis non, adipiscing quis, ultrices a, dui.

Morbi luctus, wisi viverra faucibus pretium, nibh est placerat odio, nec commodo wisi enim eget quam. Quisque libero justo, consectetuer a, feugiat vitae, porttitor eu, libero. Suspendisse sed mauris vitae elit sollicitudin malesuada. Maecenas ultricies eros sit amet ante. Ut venenatis velit. Maecenas sed mi eget dui varius euismod. Phasellus aliquet volutpat odio. Vestibulum ante ipsum primis in faucibus orci luctus et ultrices posuere cubilia Curae; Pellentesque sit amet pede ac sem eleifend consectetuer. Nullam elementum, urna vel imperdiet sodales, elit ipsum pharetra ligula, ac pretium ante justo a nulla. Curabitur tristique arcu eu metus. Vestibulum lectus. Proin mauris. Proin eu nunc eu urna hendrerit faucibus. Aliquam auctor, pede consequat laoreet varius, eros tellus scelerisque quam, pellentesque hendrerit ipsum dolor sed augue. Nulla nec lacus.

Suspendisse vitae elit. Aliquam arcu neque, ornare in, ullamcorper quis, commodo eu, libero.

Fusce sagittis erat at erat tristique mollis. Maecenas sapien libero, molestie et, lobortis in, sodales eget, dui. Morbi ultrices rutrum lorem. Nam elementum ullamcorper leo. Morbi dui. Aliquam sagittis. Nunc placerat. Pellentesque tristique sodales est. Maecenas imperdiet lacinia velit. Cras non urna. Morbi eros pede, suscipit ac, varius vel, egestas non, eros. Praesent malesuada, diam id pretium elementum, eros sem dictum tortor, vel consectetuer odio sem sed wisi.

Sed feugiat. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Ut pellentesque augue sed urna. Vestibulum diam eros, fringilla et, consectetuer eu, nonummy id, sapien. Nullam at lectus. In sagittis ultrices mauris. Curabitur malesuada erat sit amet massa. Fusce blandit. Aliquam erat volutpat. Aliquam euismod. Aenean vel lectus. Nunc imperdiet justo nec dolor.

Etiam euismod. Fusce facilisis lacinia dui. Suspendisse potenti. In mi erat, cursus id, nonummy sed, ullamcorper eget, sapien. Praesent pretium, magna in eleifend egestas, pede pede pretium lorem, quis consectetuer tortor sapien facilisis magna. Mauris quis magna varius nulla scelerisque imperdiet. Aliquam non quam. Aliquam porttitor quam a lacus. Praesent vel arcu ut tortor cursus volutpat. In vitae pede quis diam bibendum placerat. Fusce elementum convallis neque. Sed dolor orci, scelerisque ac, dapibus nec, ultricies ut, mi. Duis nec dui quis leo sagittis commodo.

Floating box from floatplacement

This floating box is placed at the top of a page.

I am floating

4.13 Floating Objects

/tcb/floatplacement=⟨values⟩ (no default, initially htb)

Sets ⟨values⟩ as default values for the usage of /tcb/float and /tcb/float*. Feasible are the usual parameters for floating objects.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
   watermark color=red!15!white}

\begin{tcolorbox}[floatplacement=t,float,
                  title=Floating box from |floatplacement|,
                  watermark text={I am floating}]
  This floating box is placed at the top of a page.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

/tcb/float=⟨values⟩ (default from floatplacement)

Turns the box to a floating object where ⟨values⟩ are the usual parameters for such floating objects. If they are not used, the placement uses the default values given by floatplacement.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[float, title=Floating box from |float|,
    enhanced,watermark text={I'm also floating}]
  This box floats to a feasible place automatically. You do not have to
  use a numbering for this floating object.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Floating box from float

This box floats to a feasible place automatically. You do not have to use a numbering for this floating object.

I'm also floating

/tcb/float*=⟨values⟩ (default from floatplacement)

Identical to /tcb/float, but for wide boxes spanning the whole page width of two column documents or in conjunction with the packages multicol or paracol. Note that you have to set width=\textwidth additionally, if the box should span the whole page width in these cases!

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[float*=b, title=Floating box from |float*|,width=\textwidth,
    enhanced,watermark text={I'm also floating}]
  In this single column document, you will see no difference to |float|.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

/tcb/nofloat (style, initially set)

Turns the floating behavior off.

Floating box from float*

In this single column document, you will see no difference to float.

I'm also floating

N 2014-09-19 `/tcb/every float={⟨code⟩}` (no default, initially empty)

For floating objects, the `/tcb/before` → P. 86 and `/tcb/after` → P. 86 settings are ignored. Instead, `/tcb/before float` and `/tcb/after float` can be used. Further, with `/tcb/every float`, the given ⟨*code*⟩ is inserted before a floating box. If the box is `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400, the given ⟨*code*⟩ is inserted before every part of the break sequence. The most common use case is `every float=\centering`.

```
\tcbox[float=htb,title={Floating box},every float=\centering,
  colback=blue!50!black,colframe=blue!50!white,colbacktitle=blue!10!white,
  coltitle=black,center title]
  {\includegraphics[height=6cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}}
```

Floating box

N 2022-06-21 `/tcb/before float={⟨code⟩}` (no default, initially empty)

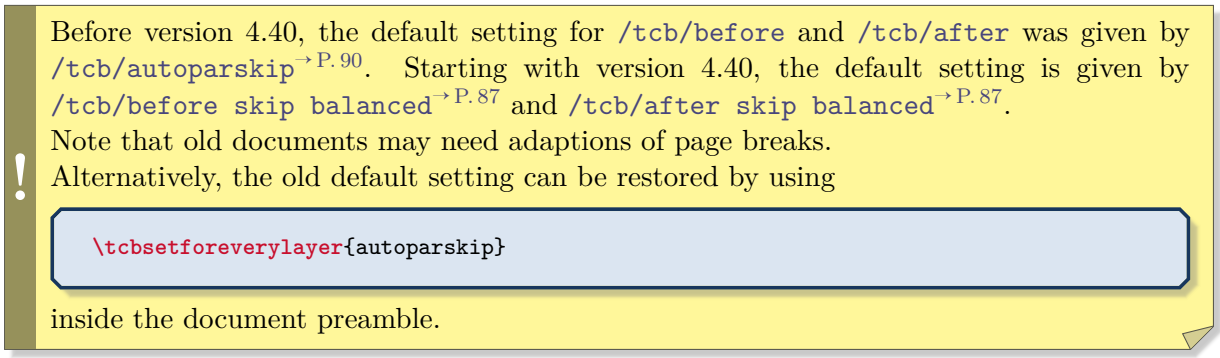
N 2022-06-21 `/tcb/after float={⟨code⟩}` (no default, initially empty)

For floating objects, the `/tcb/before` → P. 86 and `/tcb/after` → P. 86 settings are ignored. Code can be inserted after the begin of the float environment and before `/tcb/every float` with `/tcb/before float` and between the end of the box and the end of the float environment with `/tcb/after float`.

! These options are not compatible with `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 floating objects and are ignored, if the box is set to be breakable.

4.14 Embedding into the Surroundings

Typically, but not necessarily, a `tcolorbox` is put inside a separate paragraph and has some vertical space before and after it. This behavior is controlled by the keys `/tcb/before` and `/tcb/after`.



Before version 4.40, the default setting for `/tcb/before` and `/tcb/after` was given by `/tcb/autoparskip` → P. 90. Starting with version 4.40, the default setting is given by `/tcb/before skip balanced` → P. 87 and `/tcb/after skip balanced` → P. 87.
Note that old documents may need adaptions of page breaks.
Alternatively, the old default setting can be restored by using

```
\tcbsetforeverylayer{autoparskip}
```

inside the document preamble.

`/tcb/before`=⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially see `/tcb/before skip balanced` → P. 87)

Sets the ⟨*code*⟩ which is executed before the colored box. It is not used for floating boxes. Also, it is not used, if the box follows a heading immediately and `/tcb/ignore nobreak` → P. 92 is set to `false`.

`/tcb/after`=⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially see `/tcb/after skip balanced` → P. 87)

Sets the ⟨*code*⟩ which is executed after the colored box. It is not used for floating boxes.

`/tcb/nobeforeafter` (style, no value)

Abbreviation for clearing the keys `before` and `after`. The colored box is not put into a paragraph and there is no space before or after the box.

```
\tcbset{myone/.style={colback=LightGreen,colframe=DarkGreen,
  equal height group=nobefaf,width=\linewidth/4,nobeforeafter}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[myone,title=Box 1]Box 1\end{tcolorbox}%
\begin{tcolorbox}[myone,title=Box 2]Box 2\end{tcolorbox}%
\begin{tcolorbox}[myone,title=Box 3]Box 3\end{tcolorbox}%
\begin{tcolorbox}[myone,title=Box 4]Box 4\end{tcolorbox}
```

Box 1 Box 2 Box 3 Box 4

Box 1 Box 2 Box 3 Box 4

`/tcb/force nobeforeafter` (style, no value)

Forces the setting of `/tcb/nobeforeafter` even if `/tcb/before` and `/tcb/after` are set to other values later. Do not use this option globally unless you *really* know what you do. Note that embedded boxes do not inherit this forced clearance.

N 2020-09-25 **/tcb/before skip balanced=⟨*glue*⟩** (no default, initially `0.5\baselineskip plus 2pt`)

Inserts some vertical space before the colored box. This style sets /tcb/before → P. 86.
If the depth of the preceeding TEX box is between `0pt` and `0.3\baselineskip`, the distance between the *baseline* of the preceeding TEX box and the tcolorbox ist set to ⟨*glue*⟩+`0.3\baselineskip`.
If the depth is larger, the distance of the preceeding TEX box and the tcolorbox ist set to ⟨*glue*⟩.
Alternatively, see /tcb/before skip → P. 88 which ignores the *baseline*.

```
Some text.
\begin{tcolorbox}[before skip balanced=1cm,
    colframe=red!50!white]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Some text.

This is a **tcolorbox**.

N 2020-09-25 **/tcb/after skip balanced=⟨*glue*⟩** (no default, initially `0.5\baselineskip plus 2pt`)

Inserts some vertical space of the given ⟨*glue*⟩ after the colored box. This style sets /tcb/after → P. 86. Additionally, `\prevdepth` is set to `0.3\baselineskip`. The following TEX box may enlarge the space by further glue to adjust its *baseline*. Alternatively, see /tcb/after skip → P. 88 which ignores the *baseline*.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[after skip balanced=1cm,
    colframe=red!50!white]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
Some text.
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

Some text.

N 2020-09-25 **/tcb/beforeafter skip balanced=⟨*glue*⟩** (no default, initially `0.5\baselineskip plus 2pt`)

Inserts some vertical space of the given ⟨*glue*⟩ before *and* after the colored box. This style sets /tcb/before skip balanced and /tcb/after skip balanced.

```
\newtcolorbox{doubleline}[1][]{
  beforeafter skip balanced=0pt,
  height=1.8\baselineskip,
  enlarge top by=.1\baselineskip,
  enlarge bottom by=.1\baselineskip,
  colframe=blue!20,colback=blue!5,
  size=small,valign upper=center,#1 }

\noindent\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[use as bounding box] (0,0)
  rectangle (0.1,0.1);
\foreach \y in {0,1,...,9}  {
  \draw[very thin,red]
    (-0.2,-\y*\baselineskip) --
    (\linewidth+0.2cm,-\y*\baselineskip); }
\end{tikzpicture}
line 1\par
\begin{doubleline}  Abc  \end{doubleline}
\begin{doubleline}  Def  \end{doubleline}
line 2g\par
\begin{doubleline}  Ghi  \end{doubleline}
line 3\par
line 4 g
```

line 1

Abc

Def

line 2g

Ghi

line 3

line 4 g

N 2020-09-25
U 2015-03-16

/tcb/before skip=⟨*glue*⟩ (style, no default)

Inserts some vertical space of the given ⟨*glue*⟩ before the colored box. This style sets /tcb/before → P. 86. In contrast to /tcb/before skip balanced → P. 87, this ⟨*glue*⟩ is relative to the lower edge of the preceeding box and not to the baseline.

```
Some text.
\begin{tcolorbox}[before skip=1cm,
    colframe=red!50!white]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Some text.

This is a **tcolorbox**.

N 2020-09-25
U 2017-02-01

/tcb/after skip=⟨*glue*⟩ (style, no default)

Inserts some vertical space of the given ⟨*glue*⟩ after the colored box. This style sets /tcb/after → P. 86. In contrast to /tcb/after skip balanced → P. 87, this ⟨*glue*⟩ is relative to the upper edge of the following box and not to the baseline.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[after skip=1cm,
    colframe=red!50!white]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
Some text.
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

Some text.

N 2014-10-10

/tcb/beforeafter skip=⟨*glue*⟩ (style, no default)

Inserts some vertical space of the given ⟨*glue*⟩ before *and* after the colored box. This style sets /tcb/before skip and /tcb/after skip.

```
\tcbset{beforeafter skip=0pt,
  colframe=red!50!white}

text before
\begin{tcolorbox}
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}
  Second box.
\end{tcolorbox}
text after
```

text before

This is a **tcolorbox**.

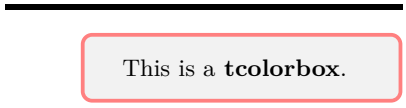
Second box.

text after

N 2014-11-07 **/tcb/left skip=⟨*length*⟩** (style, no default, initially 0mm)

Inserts some horizontal space of the given ⟨*length*⟩ before the colored box. This style sets /tcb/grow to left by → P. 95 with the negated ⟨*length*⟩, i.e. the bounding box and box width are changed.

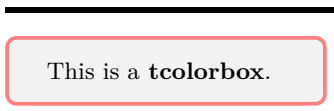
```
\noindent\rule{\linewidth}{2pt}

\begin{tcolorbox}[left skip=1cm,
    colframe=red!50!white]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



N 2014-11-07 **/tcb/right skip=⟨*length*⟩** (style, no default, initially 0mm)

Inserts some horizontal space of the given ⟨*length*⟩ after the colored box. This style sets /tcb/grow to right by → P. 95 with the negated ⟨*length*⟩, i.e. the bounding box and box width are changed.

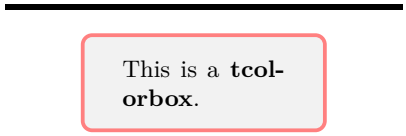
```
\noindent\rule{\linewidth}{2pt}

\begin{tcolorbox}[right skip=1cm,
    colframe=red!50!white]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



N 2014-10-10 **/tcb/leftright skip=⟨*length*⟩** (style, no default)

Inserts some horizontal space of the given ⟨*length*⟩ before *and* after the colored box. This style changes the bounding box and the box width.

```
\noindent\rule{\linewidth}{2pt}

\begin{tcolorbox}[leftright skip=1cm,
    colframe=red!50!white]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



U 2017-02-01 **/tcb/parskip** (style, no value)

This options is considered to be superseded by /tcb/before skip balanced → P. 87 and /tcb/after skip balanced → P. 87 (see note on page 86).
Sets the keys before and after to values which are recommended, if the package parskip *is* used and there is no better idea for before and after. This is similar to:

```
\tcbset{parskip/.style={before={\par\pagebreak[0]\parindent=0pt},
                        after={\par}}}
```

U 2017-02-01 **/tcb/noparskip** (style, no value)

This options is considered to be superseded by /tcb/before skip balanced → P. 87 and /tcb/after skip balanced → P. 87 (see note on page 86).
Sets the keys before and after to values which are recommended, if the package parskip is *not* used and there is no better idea for before and after. This is similar to:

```
\tcbset{noparskip/.style={before={\par\pagebreak[0]\smallskip\parindent=0pt},
                          after={\par\smallskip}}}
```

/tcb/autoparskip (style, no value)

This options is considered to be superseded by /tcb/before skip balanced → P. 87 and /tcb/after skip balanced → P. 87 (see note on page 86).
Tries to detect the usage of the package parskip and sets the keys before and after accordingly. Actually, the following is done:

- If the length of \parskip is greater than 0pt at the beginning of the document, /tcb/parskip is executed. Here, the usage of package parskip is *assumed*.
- Otherwise, if the length of \parskip is not greater than 0pt at the beginning of the document, /tcb/noparskip is executed. Here, the absence of package parskip is *assumed*.

`/tcb/baseline=`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0pt`)

Used to set the `\pgfsetbaseline` value of the resulting `tcolorbox`.

```
\tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,width=4cm,nobeforeafter}
Some text\dotfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[baseline=3mm]
One line.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[baseline=3mm]
First line.\\Second line.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Some text..... One line. First line. Second line.

N 2014-10-10 `/tcb/box align=`⟨*alignment*⟩ (style, no default, initially `bottom`)

Used to set the `/tcb/baseline` value of the resulting `tcolorbox`. Feasible values for ⟨*alignment*⟩ are:

- `bottom`: alignment with the box bottom,
- `top`: alignment with the box top,
- `center`: alignment with the box center,
- `base`: alignment with the box content base. This option is not applicable for a `tcolorbox` → P. 12 but for a `\tcbox` → P. 14 only. It is an alias for `/tcb/tcbox raise base` → P. 108.

```
\tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,width=4cm,nobeforeafter}
Some text\dotfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=bottom]
One line.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=bottom]
First line.\\Second line.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Some text..... One line. First line. Second line.

```
\tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,width=4cm,nobeforeafter}
Some text\dotfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=top]
One line.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=top]
First line.\\Second line.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Some text..... One line. First line. Second line.

```
\tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,width=4cm,nobeforeafter}
Some text\dotfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=center]
One line.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=center]
First line.\\Second line.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Some text..... One line. First line. Second line.

```
\tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,nobeforeafter}
Some text\dotfill
\tcbox[nobeforeafter,box align=base]{One line}
\tcbox[nobeforeafter,box align=base,size=fbox]{Another line}
```

Some text ..... One line Another line

N 2014-12-11 **/tcb/ignore nobreak=true|false** (default **true**, initially **false**)

After a heading, LaTeX tries to avoid a break by setting a **nobreak** boolean value. Starting from version 3.33, the /tcb/before → P. 86 respectively /tcb/before skip → P. 88 settings are not used after a heading if /tcb/ignore nobreak is set to **false**. For an unbreakable box, /tcb/before nobreak is used instead. Further, a /tcb/breakable → P. 400 box will also try to avoid a break between a heading and a directly following first part of a break sequence. Set /tcb/ignore nobreak to **true**, if **nobreak** should be ignored as prior to version 3.33. Also, such a setting may be used locally to enforce the /tcb/before → P. 86 setting.

N 2014-12-16 **/tcb/before nobreak=**⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially **\noindent**)

Sets the ⟨*code*⟩ which is executed before the colored box if it is unbreakable, if /tcb/ignore nobreak is not set, and if the box follows a heading.

N 2017-02-23 **/tcb/parfillskip restore=true|false** (default **true**, initially **true**)

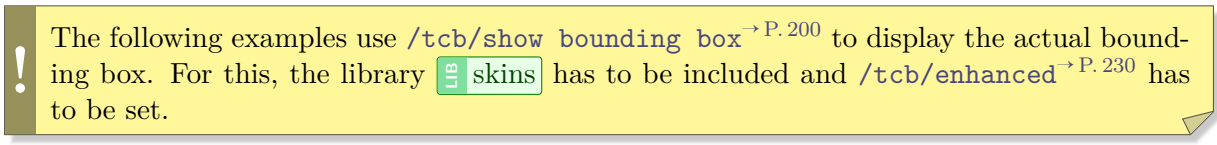
If this option is set to be **true**, the minimum value of **\parfillskip** is tested at specific spots, if it is greater than **0pt**. If so, **\parfillskip** is restored to **\@flushglue** which happens to be the default value.

These tests are executed for /tcb/parskip → P. 90, /tcb/noparskip → P. 90, /tcb/after skip → P. 88, /tcb/breakable → P. 400, and tcbraster → P. 306.

This option was created to automatically avoid overfull box warnings with **\parfillskip** changing packages.

4.15 Bounding Box

Normally, every `tcolorbox` has a bounding box which fits exactly to the dimensions of the outer frame. Therefore, LaTeX reserves exactly the space needed for the box. This behavior can be changed by enlarging (or shrinking) the bounding box. If the bounding box is enlarged, the `tcolorbox` will get some clearance around it. If the bounding box is shrunk, i. e. enlarged with negative values, the `tcolorbox` will overlap to other parts of the page. For example, the `tcolorbox` could be stretched into the page margin.



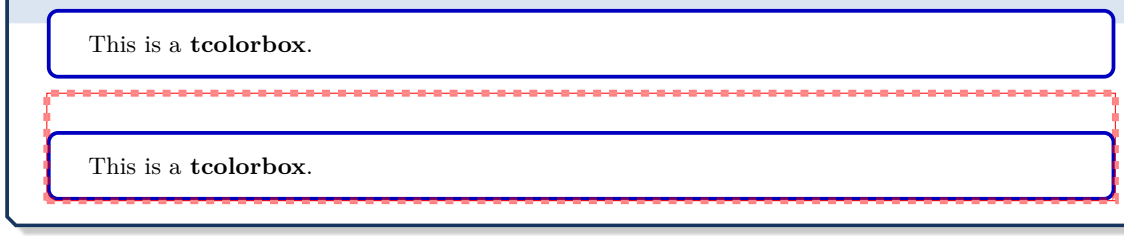
The following examples use `/tcb/show bounding box` → P. 200 to display the actual bounding box. For this, the library LIB skins has to be included and `/tcb/enhanced` → P. 230 has to be set.

4.15.1 Shifting Bounding Box Borders

`/tcb/enlarge top initially by=`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0mm`)

Enlarges the bounding box distance to the top of the box by ⟨*length*⟩. If the box is *breakable*, only the first box of the break sequence gets enlarged. `/tcb/enlarge top by` → P. 94 overwrites this key.

```
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge top initially by=-5mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge top initially by=5mm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



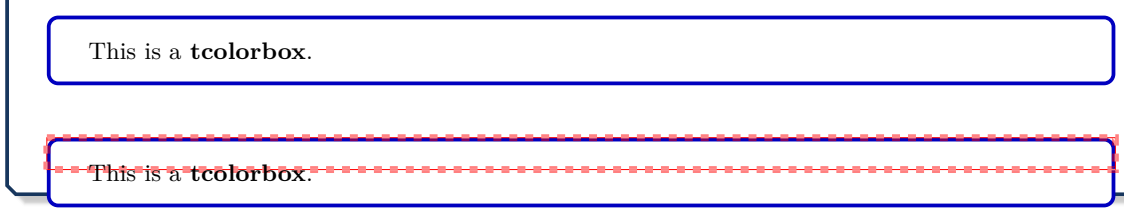
This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is a **tcolorbox**.

`/tcb/enlarge bottom finally by=`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0mm`)

Enlarges the bounding box distance to the bottom of the box by ⟨*length*⟩. If the box is *breakable*, only the last box of the break sequence gets enlarged. `/tcb/enlarge bottom by` → P. 94 overwrites this key.

```
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge bottom finally by=5mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge bottom finally by=-5mm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is a **tcolorbox**.

`/tcb/enlarge top at break by=`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0mm`)

Enlarges the bounding box distance to the top of the box by ⟨*length*⟩, *if* the box is `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400. In this case, it is applied to *middle* and *last* parts in a break sequence. `/tcb/enlarge top by` overwrites this key.

`/tcb/enlarge bottom at break by=`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0mm`)

Enlarges the bounding box distance to the bottom of the box by ⟨*length*⟩, *if* the box is `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400. In this case, it is applied to *first* and *middle* parts in a break sequence. `/tcb/enlarge bottom by` overwrites this key.

`/tcb/enlarge top by=`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0mm`)

Enlarges the bounding box distance to the top of the box by ⟨*length*⟩. `/tcb/enlarge top initially by` → P. 93 and `/tcb/enlarge top at break by` are set to ⟨*length*⟩.

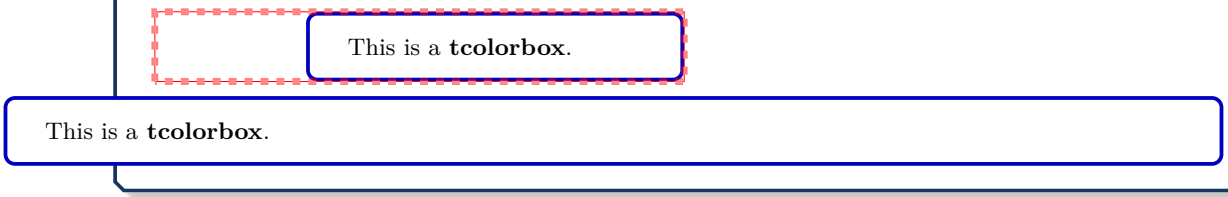
`/tcb/enlarge bottom by=`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0mm`)

Enlarges the bounding box distance to the bottom of the box by ⟨*length*⟩. `/tcb/enlarge bottom finally by` → P. 93 and `/tcb/enlarge bottom at break by` are set to ⟨*length*⟩.

`/tcb/enlarge left by=`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0mm`)

Enlarges the bounding box distance to the left side of the box by ⟨*length*⟩.

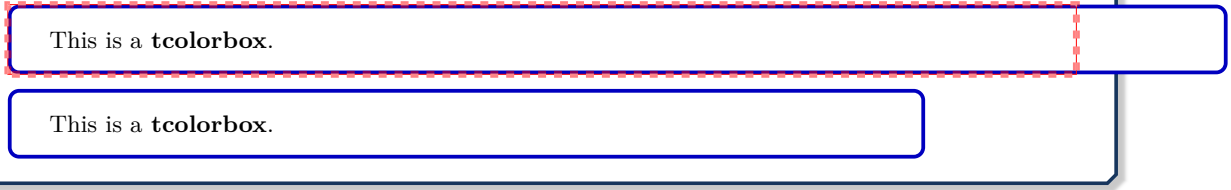
```
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge left by=2cm,width=5cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge left by=-2cm,width=\linewidth+2cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/enlarge right by=`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0mm`)

Enlarges the bounding box distance to the right side of the box by ⟨*length*⟩.

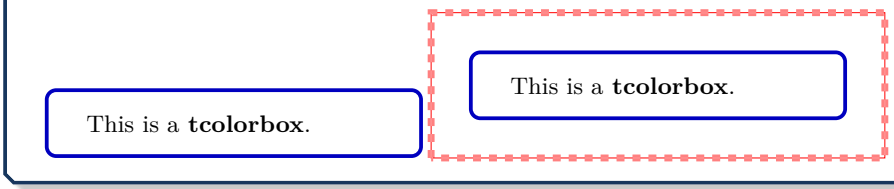
```
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge right by=-2cm,width=\linewidth+2cm,
  enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge right by=2cm,width=\linewidth-2cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/enlarge by=`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0mm`)

Enlarges the bounding box distance to all sides of the box by ⟨*length*⟩.

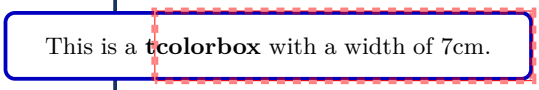
```
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,width=5cm,nobeforeafter}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge by=5mm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/grow to left by=`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0mm`)

Enlarges the current box width by ⟨*length*⟩ and enlarges (shrinks) the bounding box distance to the left side of the box by −⟨*length*⟩. Also see `/tcb/left skip` → P. 89.

```
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm,grow to left by=2cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with a width of 7cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/grow to right by=`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0mm`)

Enlarges the current box width by ⟨*length*⟩ and enlarges (shrinks) the bounding box distance to the right side of the box by −⟨*length*⟩. Also see `/tcb/right skip` → P. 89.

```
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}

\begin{tcolorbox}[grow to right by=2cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\bigskip

\begin{tcolorbox}[grow to right by=2cm,grow to left by=1cm,
  enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

N 2018-03-22 **/tcb/grow sidewards by=**⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially 0mm)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/grow to left by→ P. 95 and /tcb/grow to right by→ P. 95 to ⟨*length*⟩. Also see /tcb/oversize→ P. 50 and /tcb/spread sidewards→ P. 99.

```
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}

\begin{tcolorbox}[grow sidewards by=2cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

4.15.2 Box Alignment

N 2015-11-20 **/tcb/flush left** (style, no value)

Enlarges the bounding box to the right side to fill the line completely.

```
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}

\begin{tcolorbox}[flush left,width=5cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

N 2015-11-20 **/tcb/flush right** (style, no value)

Enlarges the bounding box to the left side to fill the line completely.

```
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}

\begin{tcolorbox}[flush right,width=5cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

N 2015-11-20 **/tcb/center** (style, no value)

Enlarges the bounding box equally to both sides to fill the line completely.

```
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}

\begin{tcolorbox}[center,width=5cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

Floating box from `toggle enlargement`

This page is an odd page. Therefore, the left and right enlargements are not toggled. This box stretches to the right margin on odd pages and to the left margin on even pages. The current document is one-sided – this feature makes sense for two-sided documents only.

4.15.3 Toggle Enlargements

U 2015-11-13 `/tcb/toggle enlargement`=⟨*toggle preset*⟩ (default `evenpage`, initially `none`)

According to the ⟨*toggle preset*⟩, the left and the right enlargements of the bounding box are switched or not. Feasible values are:

- `none`: no switching.
- `forced`: the values of the left and right enlargement are switched.
- `evenpage`: if the page is an even page, the values of the left and right enlargement are switched. This value also sets `/tcb/check odd page` → P. 114 to `true`.

! See `/tcb/toggle left and right` → P. 51 to toggle geometry settings.

```
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,
  grow to left by=20mm,grow to right by=-5mm}

\begin{tcolorbox}[toggle enlargement=none,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[toggle enlargement=forced]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[toggle enlargement=evenpage]
  This page is an \tcbifoddpage{odd}{even} page.
  Therefore, the left and right enlargements
  \tcbifoddpage{are not}{are} toggled.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is a **tcolorbox**.

This page is an odd page. Therefore, the left and right enlargements are not toggled.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=red!60!black,colback=red!15!white,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,title=Floating box from \texttt{toggle enlargement},
  width=\textwidth,grow to right by=2cm,toggle enlargement,float=t]
  This page is an \tcbifoddpage{odd}{even} page.
  Therefore, the left and right enlargements \tcbifoddpage{are not}{are} toggled.
  This box stretches to the right margin on odd pages and to the left
  margin on even pages. The current document is one-sided -- this feature makes
  sense for two-sided documents only.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

4.15.4 Spread Box to Page Borders

! The following border options are *not* applicable to nested boxes, boxes insides tables, etc. For boxes inside lists, the options *may* work, but not necessarily. Also, boxes should be set with `\noindent` and full width.

N 2017-02-13 **/tcb/spread inwards=**⟨*length*⟩ (default `0pt`, initially unset)

Enlarges the current box width to match the inner page border (left-handed side for one-sided documents). If the optional ⟨*length*⟩ is greater than `0pt`, the box grows over the border, if ⟨*length*⟩ is lower than `0pt`, there is a margin between box and page border. `/tcb/toggle enlargement` → P. 97 is set automatically.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread inwards,
  colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

N 2017-02-13 **/tcb/spread outwards=**⟨*length*⟩ (default `0pt`, initially unset)

Enlarges the current box width to match the outer page border (right-handed side for one-sided documents). If the optional ⟨*length*⟩ is greater than `0pt`, the box grows over the border, if ⟨*length*⟩ is lower than `0pt`, there is a margin between box and page border. `/tcb/toggle enlargement` → P. 97 is set automatically.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread outwards,
  colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

N 2017-02-13 **/tcb/move upwards=**⟨*length*⟩ (default `0pt`, initially unset)

Starts a new page with the box at the very top page border. If the optional ⟨*length*⟩ is greater than `0pt`, the box moves over the border, if ⟨*length*⟩ is lower than `0pt`, there is a margin between box and page border.

N 2017-02-13 **/tcb/move upwards*=**⟨*length*⟩ (default `0pt`, initially unset)

Identical to `/tcb/move upwards`, but without starting a new page.

N 2017-02-13 **/tcb/fill downwards=**⟨*length*⟩ (default `0pt`, initially unset)

Enlarges the height of the box until the very bottom page border. The library LIB breakable has to be loaded, and `/tcb/height fill` → P. 61 is set automatically. If the optional ⟨*length*⟩ is greater than `0pt`, the box moves over the border, if ⟨*length*⟩ is lower than `0pt`, there is a margin between box and page border.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,fill downwards,
  colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is an example for “spread upwards”.

N 2017-02-13 **/tcb/spread upwards=**⟨*length*⟩ (default 0pt, initially unset)

Combination of /tcb/move upwards → P. 98, /tcb/spread inwards → P. 98, and /tcb/spread outwards → P. 98. The optional ⟨*length*⟩ is used for all these keys.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread upwards,sharp corners=north,height=3cm,
  colframe=blue!75!black,interior style={top color=blue!50,bottom color=white}]
This is an example for \enquote{spread upwards}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

N 2017-02-13 **/tcb/spread upwards*=**⟨*length*⟩ (default 0pt, initially unset)

Identical to /tcb/move upwards → P. 98, but without starting a new page.

N 2017-02-13 **/tcb/spread sidewards=**⟨*length*⟩ (default 0pt, initially unset)

Combination of /tcb/spread inwards → P. 98 and /tcb/spread outwards → P. 98. The optional ⟨*length*⟩ is used for all these keys. Also see /tcb/oversize → P. 50 and /tcb/grow sidewards by → P. 96.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread sidewards,
  colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

N 2017-02-13 **/tcb/spread=**⟨*length*⟩ (default 0pt, initially unset)

Combination of /tcb/move upwards → P. 98, /tcb/fill downwards → P. 98, /tcb/spread inwards → P. 98, and /tcb/spread outwards → P. 98. Such, the box fills the whole page. The optional ⟨*length*⟩ is used for all these keys.

N 2017-02-13 **/tcb/spread downwards=**⟨*length*⟩ (default 0pt, initially unset)

Combination of /tcb/fill downwards → P. 98, /tcb/spread inwards → P. 98, and /tcb/spread outwards → P. 98. The optional ⟨*length*⟩ is used for all these keys.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread downwards,sharp corners=south,
  colframe=red!75!black,interior style={top color=white,bottom color=red!50}]
This is an example for \enquote{spread downwards}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is an example for “spread downwards”.

4.15.5 Box Extrusion

The following keys should not be used with breakable boxes or boxes with a lower part.

`/tcb/shrink tight` (style, no value, initially unset)

The total colored box is shrunk to the dimensions of the upper part. There should be no lower part and no title. This style sets the `/tcb/boxsep` → P. 44 to `0pt` and other geometry keys to fitting values. This option is likely to be used with the following extrusion keys.

```
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,arc=0mm,boxrule=0.4pt,
        nobeforeafter,tcbox raise base,shrink tight}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Lorem \tcbox{ipsum} dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit.
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.
Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit.

U 2014-09-19 `/tcb/extrude left by=`⟨*length*⟩ (style, no default, initially unset)

The (upper part of the) colored box is extruded by the given ⟨*length*⟩ to the left side. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colframe=red,colback=yellow!25!white,
  frame style={opacity=0.25},interior style={opacity=0.5},
  nobeforeafter,tcbox raise base,shrink tight,extrude by=2mm}

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit,
vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis.
\tcbox[extrude left by=1cm]{Curabitur} dictum gravida mauris.
Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.
```

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.

U 2014-09-19 `/tcb/extrude right by=`⟨*length*⟩ (style, no default, initially unset)

The (upper part of the) colored box is extruded by the given ⟨*length*⟩ to the right side. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colframe=red,colback=yellow!25!white,
  frame style={opacity=0.25},interior style={opacity=0.5},
  nobeforeafter,tcbox raise base,shrink tight,extrude by=2mm}

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit,
vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis.
\tcbox[extrude right by=1cm]{Curabitur} dictum gravida mauris.
Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.
```

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.

/tcb/extrude top by=⟨*length*⟩ (style, no default, initially unset)

The (upper part of the) colored box is extruded by the given ⟨*length*⟩ to the top side. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colframe=red,colback=yellow!25!white,
  frame style={opacity=0.25},interior style={opacity=0.5},
  nobeforeafter,tcbox raise base,shrink tight,extrude by=2mm}

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit,
vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis.
\tcbox[extrude top by=1cm]{Curabitur} dictum gravida mauris.
Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.
```

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.

/tcb/extrude bottom by=⟨*length*⟩ (style, no default, initially unset)

The (upper part of the) colored box is extruded by the given ⟨*length*⟩ to the bottom side. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colframe=red,colback=yellow!25!white,
  frame style={opacity=0.25},interior style={opacity=0.5},
  nobeforeafter,tcbox raise base,shrink tight,extrude by=2mm}

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit,
vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis.
\tcbox[extrude bottom by=1cm]{Curabitur} dictum gravida mauris.
Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.
```

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.

/tcb/extrude by=⟨*length*⟩ (style, no default, initially unset)

The (upper part of the) colored box is extruded by the given ⟨*length*⟩ to all sides. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colframe=red,colback=yellow!25!white,
  frame style={opacity=0.25},interior style={opacity=0.5},
  nobeforeafter,tcbox raise base,shrink tight,extrude by=2mm}

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit,
vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. \tcbox{Curabitur} dictum
gravida mauris. \tcbox[colframe=Green,interior style={opacity=0.0}]{Nam}
arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, \tcbox{vulputate} a, magna. Donec
vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus
et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. \tcbox{Mauris ut leo.}
```

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo.

4.16 Layered Boxes and Every Box Settings

A `tcolorbox` may contain another `tcolorbox` and so on. The package takes track of the nesting level using a counter `tcblayer`. Counter values may be used for doing some fancy things, but you should never change the counter value yourself.

The package takes special care for the first four layers or nesting levels, called managed layers. Here, footnote texts are administrated to find their intended place and specific layer dependent options may be set by changing `/tcb/every box on layer n` → P. 103. If needed, the number of managed layers can be increased by setting `\tcbsetmanagedlayers` → P. 103 to a higher value than 4.

The following styles have a considerable influence on how layered boxes are processed. Note especially that nested boxes are getting a `/tcb/reset` → P. 119 by default. You can change this, but be prepared for surprises if you do.

If the defaults are *not changed*, a `tcolorbox` gets its options in the following order. Following options overwrite preceding options.

1. On package load, all options are set to default values.
2. Every `\tcbset` → P. 13 command adds or changes options for the following boxes inside the current TEX group.
3. While entering a `tcolorbox`, a `/tcb/every box on layer n` → P. 103 or `/tcb/every box on higher layers` → P. 103 option list is applied. With default settings this means:
   - For layer 1 (lowest layer), the `/tcb/every box` option list is applied. Not overwritten options given by a preceding `\tcbset` → P. 13 survive.
   - For layer 2 and above (nested boxes), a `/tcb/reset` → P. 119 followed by `/tcb/every box` option list is applied. Every resettable options given by a preceding `\tcbset` → P. 13 and by the sourrounding box(es) are reset.
4. The ⟨*options*⟩ given to the `tcolorbox` are applied. Or, if the box was generated by `\newtcolorbox` → P. 15 or friends, the ⟨*options*⟩ given there are applied.
5. If the box was generated by `\newtcolorbox` → P. 15 or friends, some automated options are applied.

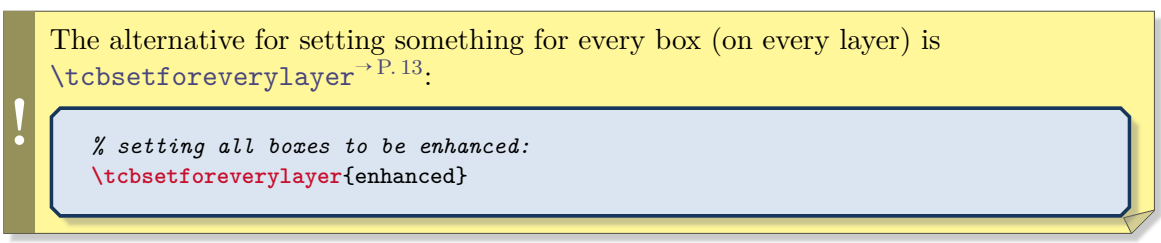
`/tcb/every box` (style)

By default, this style is empty.

```
% default setting:
\tcbset{every box/.style={}}
```

It may be changed by redefining this style.

```
% setting all boxes to be enhanced:
\tcbset{every box/.style={enhanced}}
```



/tcb/every box on layer n (style)

Here, n has to be replaced by a number ranging from 1 to the highest managed layer number (4 by default).

```
% default settings:
\tcbset{
  every box on layer 1/.style={every box},
  every box on layer 2/.style={reset,every box},
  every box on layer 3/.style={reset,every box},
  every box on layer 4/.style={reset,every box},
  }
```

/tcb/every box on higher layers (style)

Higher layers are layers above the highest managed layer number (4 by default).

```
% default setting:
\tcbset{every box on higher layers/.style={reset,every box}}
```

\tcbsetmanagedlayers{⟨*number*⟩}

Replaces the highest managed layer number by ⟨*number*⟩ where 4 is the default. This macro can only be used inside the preamble. Using a ⟨*number*⟩ lower than 4 typically makes no sense, but is not forbidden.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}   \tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\tcbset{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  colback=red!5!white,
  every box/.style={enhanced,watermark text=\thetcblayer,
    before=\par\smallskip,after=\par\smallskip},
  every box on layer 2/.append style={colback=yellow!10!white,drop fuzzy shadow}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,breakable,title=Layer 1 Box]
Here comes a footnote\footnote{Footnote from layer 1 box}.
\lipsum[2]
  \begin{tcolorbox}[title=Layer 2 Box]
  abc\footnote{The footnote of abc}
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another Box,ams equation]
    \tcbhighmath{\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}} = \infty.
  \end{tcolorbox}
Some text\footnote{Footnote from some text}.
  \begin{tcolorbox}[title=Yet Another Box]
    \tcboxfit[height=2cm]{\lipsum[1]}
    My text.
    \begin{tcolorbox}
      Another lipsum text\footnote{A lipsum text}. \lipsum[3]
      \begin{tcolorbox}[title=Layer 4,colframe=blue,colback=white]
        Layer 4\footnote{Layer 4 footnote}
      \end{tcolorbox}
      The End\footnote{Last footnote}.
    \end{tcolorbox}
  \end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Layer 1 Box

Here comes a footnote[a]. Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae

ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

Layer 2 Box

abc[a]

[a]The footnote of abc

Another Box

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \tag{1}$$

Some text[b].

Yet Another Box

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

My text.

Another lipsum text[a]. Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis. Donec nonummy pellentesque ante. Phasellus adipiscing semper elit. Proin fermentum massa ac quam. Sed diam turpis, molestie vitae, placerat a, molestie nec, leo. Maecenas lacinia. Nam ipsum ligula, eleifend at, accumsan nec, suscipit a, ipsum. Morbi blandit ligula feugiat magna. Nunc eleifend consequat lorem. Sed lacinia nulla vitae enim. Pellentesque tincidunt purus vel magna. Integer non enim. Praesent euismod nunc eu purus. Donec bibendum quam in tellus. Nullam cursus pulvinar lectus. Donec et mi. Nam vulputate metus eu enim. Vestibulum pellentesque felis eu massa.

Layer 4

Layer 4[a]

[a]Layer 4 footnote

The End[b].

[a]A lipsum text
[b]Last footnote

[a]Footnote from layer 1 box
[b]Footnote from some text

4.17 Capture Mode

`/tcb/capture`=⟨*mode*⟩ (no default, initially `minipage`)

The capture ⟨*mode*⟩ defines how the box content is processed.
Feasible values for ⟨*mode*⟩ are:

- `minipage`:
  This is the default ⟨*mode*⟩ for `tcolorbox` → P. 12. The content may have an upper and a lower part. Optionally, the box can be `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400. The box content is put into a minipage or into something similar to a minipage.
- `hbox`:
  This is the default ⟨*mode*⟩ for `\tcbox` → P. 14. The content cannot have a lower part and cannot be broken. The colored box is sized according to the dimensions of the content. A shortcut to set this mode is `/tcb/hbox`.
- `fitbox`: (needs the LIB fitting library)
  This is the default ⟨*mode*⟩ for `\tcboxfit` → P. 449. The content cannot have a lower part and cannot be broken. The content is sized according to the dimensions of the colored box. A shortcut to set this mode is `/tcb/fit` → P. 454.

```
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}

\begin{tcolorbox}[capture=minipage]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[capture=hbox]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[capture=fitbox,height=9mm]% needs the `fitting' library
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

This is a tcolorbox.

This is a tcolorbox.

`/tcb/hbox` (style, no default)

Shortcut for `capture=hbox`.

```
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}

\begin{tcolorbox}[hbox]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

`/tcb/minipage` (style, no default)

Shortcut for `capture=minipage`.

4.18 Text Characteristics

U 2015-10-14 `/tcb/parbox=true|false` (default `true`, initially `true`)

The text inside a `tcolorbox` is formatted using a LaTeX `minipage` if the box is unbreakable. If breakable, the box tries a mimicry of a `minipage`. In a `minipage` or `parbox`, paragraphs are formatted slightly different as the main text. If the key value is set to `false`, the normal main text behavior is restored. In some situations, this has some unwanted side effects. It is recommended that you use this **experimental setting** only where you really want to have this feature.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}  % preamble
\tcbset{width=(\linewidth-2mm)/2,nobeforeafter,arc=1mm,
  colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,fonttitle=\bfseries,fontupper=\small,
  left=2mm,right=2mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,equal height group=parbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[parbox,adjusted title={parbox=true (normal)}]
  \lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}\hfill%
\begin{tcolorbox}[parbox=false,adjusted title={parbox=false}]
  \lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}%
```

parbox=true (normal)

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

parbox=false

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

`/tcb/hyphenationfix=true|false` (default `true`, initially `false`)

Long words at the beginning of paragraphs in very narrow boxes will not be hyphenated using `pdflatex`. This problem is circumvented by applying the `hyphenationfix` option.

```
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,
  fontupper=\normalsize,
  colback=blue!5!white,width=4cm}

\begin{tcolorbox}
Rechnungsadjunktentochter.\par
Statthaltereikonzipist.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[hyphenationfix]
Rechnungsadjunktentochter.\par
Statthaltereikonzipist.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Rechnungsadjunktentochter.
Statthaltereikonzipist.

Rechnungsad-
junktentochter.
Statthal-
tereikonzipist.

! `parbox=false` and `hyphenationfix` should not be used together. They are targeting different box types and they do not blend very well.

4.19 Files

`/tcb/tempfile=`⟨*file name*⟩ (no default, initially `\jobname.tcbtemp`)

Sets ⟨*file name*⟩ as name for the temporary file which is used inside `tcbwritetemp` → P. 144 and `\tcbusetemp` → P. 144 implicitely.

4.20 \tcbox Specials

The following options are applicable for \tcbox→P. 14 and \tcboxmath→P. 374 only.

/tcb/tcbox raise=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially 0pt)

Raises the \tcbox→P. 14 by the given ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\tcbset{colframe=blue!50!black,colback=white,colupper=red!50!black,
        fonttitle=\bfseries,nobeforeafter,center title}

Test\dotfill
\tcbox[tcbox raise base]{Hello World 1}\dotfill
\tcbox{Hello World 2}\dotfill
\tcbox[tcbox raise=5mm]{Hello World 3}
```

Test ..... Hello World 1 ..... Hello World 2 ..... Hello World 3

/tcb/tcbox raise base (style, no value, initially unset)

Raises the \tcbox→P. 14 such that the base of its content matches the base of the environmental line; see example above.

/tcb/on line (style, no value, initially unset)

Combines /tcb/tcbox raise base with /tcb/nobeforeafter→P. 86. The resulting box behaves analogue to \fbox.

/tcb/verbatim (style, no value)

Sets options for a *verbatim* style \tcbox→P. 14. Since the indented boxes may contain only very few words, the dimensions are made smaller and /tcb/nobeforeafter→P. 86 and /tcb/tcbox raise base are set.

```
\DeclareTotalTCBox{\myverb}{ v }{verbatim,
  colframe=red!75!black,colupper=blue}{#1}

\myverb{\textbf} is a \myverb{\LaTeX} command.
```

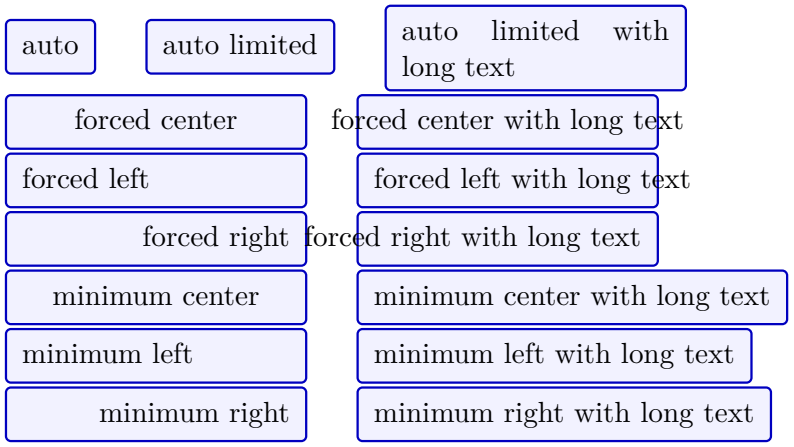
\textbf is a \LaTeX command.

N 2015-03-23 **/tcb/tcbox width=**⟨*mode*⟩ (no default, initially **auto**)

Controls how \tcbox→ P. 14 respects a /tcb/width→ P. 39 setting. Feasible values for ⟨*mode*⟩ are:

- **auto** (initial setting): ignore /tcb/width→ P. 39 and set box width according to its content.
- **auto limited**: Set box width according to its content, if it is smaller than /tcb/width→ P. 39. Otherwise, the content is set like in a tcolorbox→ P. 12 with line breaks.
- **forced center**: Set box width according to /tcb/width→ P. 39. The content is centered and may overlap the box borders.
- **forced left**: Set box width according to /tcb/width→ P. 39. The content is left aligned and may overlap the box borders.
- **forced right**: Set box width according to /tcb/width→ P. 39. The content is right aligned and may overlap the box borders.
- **minimum center**: Set box width according to /tcb/width→ P. 39, if the content fits into. The content is centered and the box width may grow beyond /tcb/width→ P. 39.
- **minimum left**: Set box width according to /tcb/width→ P. 39, if the content fits into. The content is left aligned and the box width may grow beyond /tcb/width→ P. 39.
- **minimum right**: Set box width according to /tcb/width→ P. 39, if the content fits into. The content is right aligned and the box width may grow beyond /tcb/width→ P. 39.

```
\tcbset{size=small,on line,before upper=\strut,
  colframe=blue!75!black,colback=blue!5!white,
  fontupper=\normalsize,width=4cm}

\tcbox[tcbox width=auto]{auto}\qquad
\tcbox[tcbox width=auto limited]{auto limited}\qquad
\tcbox[tcbox width=auto limited]{auto limited with long text}\\
\tcbox[tcbox width=forced center]{forced center}\qquad
\tcbox[tcbox width=forced center]{forced center with long text}\\
\tcbox[tcbox width=forced left]{forced left}\qquad
\tcbox[tcbox width=forced left]{forced left with long text}\\
\tcbox[tcbox width=forced right]{forced right}\qquad
\tcbox[tcbox width=forced right]{forced right with long text}\\
\tcbox[tcbox width=minimum center]{minimum center}\qquad
\tcbox[tcbox width=minimum center]{minimum center with long text}\\
\tcbox[tcbox width=minimum left]{minimum left}\qquad
\tcbox[tcbox width=minimum left]{minimum left with long text}\\
\tcbox[tcbox width=minimum right]{minimum right}\qquad
\tcbox[tcbox width=minimum right]{minimum right with long text}
```



4.21 Counters, Labels, and References

`/tcb/phantom`=⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

The ⟨*code*⟩ is put in a box at the upper left corner of the `tcolorbox`. If the `tcolorbox` is breakable, the ⟨*code*⟩ is executed for the first box of the break sequence only. If there already was some phantom code given, the new ⟨*code*⟩ is appended.
The ⟨*code*⟩ is intended to be used for counter stepping, labelling, and related operations which do not produce visible text.

- The ⟨*code*⟩ is executed before the title and box content, i. e. counter values are ensured to be increased before usage.
- Labels are ensured to reference the correct page number.
- The ⟨*code*⟩ is executed only once even during fitting operations for title and box content.
- In combination with the `hyperref` package, the hyper anchor is set to the upper left corner of the `tcolorbox`, i. e. links inside the pdf document will jump to the box pleasantly.
- Since the ⟨*code*⟩ is executed inside a TEX group, only global operations can survive this group.

Examples for the `phantom` usage are given in Section 17.11 from page 365, e. g. Example 17.1 on page 366.

`/tcb/nophantom` (no value, initially set)

Removes the phantom code if set before.

N 2023-02-08 `/tcb/label is label` (no value, initially set)

Sets `\label` as labelling for `tcolorbox` (global or per box). When `/tcb/label` and friends are used, the underlying labeling macro is `\label`. References can be made by `\ref`, `\pageref`, and similar macros. This is the default LATEX behaviour. Note that this option is not getting reset by `/tcb/reset` → P. 119.

N 2023-02-08 `/tcb/label is zlabel` (no value, initially unset)

Sets `\zlabel` as labelling for `tcolorbox` (global or per box). When `/tcb/label` and friends are used, the underlying labeling macro is `\zlabel`. This needs the `zref` package [13] or packages building upon `zref` to be loaded. References can be made by `\zref`. If the `zref-clever` package [2] is loaded, `\zcref`, `\zcpageref`, and similar macros can be applied. Note that this option is not getting reset by `/tcb/reset` → P. 119.

U 2023-02-08 `/tcb/label`=⟨*marker*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

The ⟨*marker*⟩ is set as label text with `\label` for a reference with the `\ref` macro, if `/tcb/label is label` is active, or as label text with `\zlabel` for a reference with the `\zref` macro and similar, if `/tcb/label is zlabel` is active. Typically, this option is used for numbered boxes, see Subsection 5.1 from page 124, e. g. `/tcb/new/auto counter` → P. 124.

N 2014-11-28 `/tcb/phantomlabel`=⟨*marker*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Equivalent to `/tcb/label` for an *unnumbered* box. A `\phantomsection` from the package `hyperref` [17] is used to set a correct hyperlink target. This is not needed for a numbered box.

`/tcb/step`=⟨*counter*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Shortcut for `phantom={\refstepcounter{#1}}`. The given ⟨*counter*⟩ is increased and ready for labelling. This option is not needed when using the convenient automated numbering introduced with version 2.40, see Subsection 5.1 from page 124.

`/tcb/step and label`={⟨*counter*⟩}{⟨*marker*⟩} (no default, initially unset)

Shortcut for using `/tcb/step` and `/tcb/label` →P. 110. This option is not needed when using the convenient automated numbering introduced with version 2.40, see Subsection 5.1 from page 124.

U 2023-02-09 `/tcb/label type`=⟨*type*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This option has a different meaning based upon the chosen labeling mechanism.

- If `/tcb/label is label` →P. 110 is active:
  The option key `/tcb/label type` can be used only in conjunction with the `cleveref` package [6] which has to be loaded separately. ⟨*type*⟩ has to be a cross-reference type *known* to `cleveref` like `theorem`, `algorithm`, `result`, etc. References made with `cleveref` will use this type. Note that using `label type` will result in compilation errors, if `cleveref` is not loaded. For an example, see Theorem 18.3.5 on page 394.
- If `/tcb/label is zlabel` →P. 110 is active:
  The option key `/tcb/label type` can be used only in conjunction with the `zref-clever` package [2] which has to be loaded separately. ⟨*type*⟩ has to be a cross-reference type *known* to `zref-clever`. This ⟨*type*⟩ is bound to an automatic `tcolorbox` counter which has to be set up using `/tcb/new/auto counter` →P. 124, `/tcb/new/use counter from` →P. 125, `/tcb/new/use counter` →P. 125, or `/tcb/new/use counter*` →P. 125. If `/tcb/label is zlabel` →P. 110 is set, but `zref-clever` is not loaded, using `zref-clever countertype` will be silently ignored.

U 2023-02-09 `/tcb/no label type` (no value, initially set)

Removes a `/tcb/label type`, if set before.

N 2016-06-22
U 2023-02-08

/tcb/nameref=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the **nameref** package is loaded, the given ⟨*text*⟩ is used for corresponding **\nameref** macros. If the **zref-titleref** package is loaded, the given ⟨*text*⟩ is used to set the reference text for **\ztitleref**. Typically, the ⟨*text*⟩ will be chosen to be identical or nearly identical to the one for /tcb/title → P. 23.

Definition in the preamble:

```
\newtcolorbox[auto counter,number within=section]{pabox}[2][]{%
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title=Examp.~\thetcbcounter: #2,#1}
```

```
\begin{pabox}[label={mynamelabel},nameref={Title or anything else}]{Title text}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{pabox}
This box is automatically numbered with \ref{mynamelabel} on page
\pageref{mynamelabel}.

The box is titled \enquote{\nameref{mynamelabel}}.
```

Examp. 4.1: Title text

This is a tcolorbox.

This box is automatically numbered with 4.1 on page 112.
The box is titled “Title or anything else”.

/tcb/nameref is used automatically inside \newtcbtheorem → P. 371.

N 2022-07-18

/tcb/short title=⟨*text*⟩ (style, no default)

Sets both /tcb/list entry → P. 133 and /tcb/nameref to ⟨*text*⟩. The most likely use case is to set a *short title* for the «list of tcolorbox(es)» and for box referencing.

N 2017-02-03 **/tcb/hypertarget=**⟨*marker*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

A `\hypertarget` from the package `hyperref` [17] is used to create an internal link of an anchor ⟨*marker*⟩. This ⟨*marker*⟩ can be referenced by `\hyperlink` or `/tcb/hyperlink` → P. 220.

```
% \usepackage{hyperref}%
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,
  colback=red!10,colframe=red!50!black,
  hypertarget=hypertwinA,
  hyperlink=hypertwinB,
  title=Box A]
Click me to jump to Box B.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Box A

Click me to jump to Box B.

N 2017-02-10 **/tcb/bookmark=**⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Sets a PDF bookmark with the given ⟨*text*⟩, if the package `bookmark` [12] is loaded. This bookmark is set with an automated destination (the current box) and is set one level below the current bookmark level.

```
% \usepackage{bookmark}%
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=blue!10,colframe=blue!50!black,
  bookmark=Example for using a bookmark,
  title=Example for using a bookmark]
Open the bookmark view of the previewer
to see the bookmark.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Example for using a bookmark

Open the bookmark view of the previewer to see the bookmark.

N 2017-02-10 **/tcb/bookmark*=**{⟨*options*⟩}{⟨*text*⟩} (no default, initially unset)

Identical to `/tcb/bookmark`, but additional ⟨*options*⟩ from the package `bookmark` [12] can be given.

```
% \usepackage{bookmark}%
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!10,colframe=red!50!black,
  bookmark*={color=red,italic,bold}%
            {Another bookmark example},
  title=Red and bold bookmark]
Open the bookmark view of the previewer
to see the bookmark.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Red and bold bookmark

Open the bookmark view of the previewer to see the bookmark.

N 2018-07-26 **/tcb/index=**⟨*entry*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Adds an index ⟨*entry*⟩ for the box. This is a shortcut for setting `\index{`⟨*entry*⟩`}` to `/tcb/phantom` → P. 110.

N 2018-07-26 **/tcb/index*=**{⟨*name*⟩}{⟨*entry*⟩} (no default, initially unset)

Adds an ⟨*entry*⟩ to an index with a specific ⟨*name*⟩. This is a shortcut for setting `\index[`⟨*name*⟩`]{`⟨*entry*⟩`}` to `/tcb/phantom` → P. 110. An index extension package like `imakeidx` has to be loaded to use this option key.

4.22 Even and Odd Pages

Also see /tcb/toggle left and right → P. 51 and /tcb/toggle enlargement → P. 97 for further even/odd options.

U 2015-11-13 **/tcb/check odd page=true|false** (default **true**, initially **false**)

If set to **true**, a precise even/odd page testing for the current box is applied. This is done by using labels. If a box moves to another page, the document has to be compiled twice for the correct settings. If set to **false**, even/odd page tests may give wrong results for the first box of a page.
/tcb/toggle left and right → P. 51, /tcb/toggle enlargement → P. 97, and /tcb/if odd page automatically set **check odd page**, but for \tcbifoddpage → P. 116 this option has to be set explicitely.

N 2015-11-13 **/tcb/if odd page={**⟨*odd options*⟩**}{**⟨*even options*⟩**}** (style, no default)

If the current box is on an odd page, the ⟨*odd options*⟩ are applied. On an even page, the ⟨*even options*⟩ are applied. /tcb/check odd page is automatically set for precise even/odd page testing.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[if odd page={colback=yellow!50}{colback=red!50}]
  This box is colored in yellow on an odd page
  and is colored in red on an even page.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This box is colored in yellow on an odd page and is colored in red on an even page.

If a box is /tcb/breakable → P. 400, using /tcb/if odd page only acts upon the *first* box. If the setting should be repeated for every partial box of the break sequence, the option should be packed into /tcb/extras → P. 407. In this case, /tcb/check odd page has to be set explicitely! Also see /tcb/if odd page* → P. 115.

N 2016-11-18 **/tcb/if odd page or oneside={**⟨*odd options*⟩**}{**⟨*even options*⟩**}** (style, no default)

For onesided documents, the ⟨*odd options*⟩ are applied always. For twosided documents, this style is identical to /tcb/if odd page.

N 2015-11-13 **/tcb/if odd page*={⟨*odd options*⟩}{⟨*even options*⟩}** (style, no default)

> ! This option needs the LIB breakable library, see Section 19 on page 398.

For breakable boxes, if the current partial box is on an odd page, the ⟨*odd options*⟩ are applied. On an even page, the ⟨*even options*⟩ are applied. /tcb/check odd page →P. 114 is automatically set for precise even/odd page testing.
In contrast to /tcb/if odd page →P. 114, /tcb/if odd page* is used on *every* partial box of a break sequences and not only on the *first* box. Another difference is that /tcb/if odd page* is applied quite *late* during option processing, while /tcb/if odd page →P. 114 is applied immediately.
/tcb/if odd page* is implemented as /tcb/if odd page →P. 114 packed into /tcb/extras →P. 407.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{breakable}
\begin{tcolorbox}[breakable,if odd page*={colback=yellow!50}{colback=red!50}]
  This breakable box is colored in yellow on an odd page
  and is colored in red on an even page. For every partial box, the
  test is repeated, i.e. this would give a yellow, red, yellow, red, \ldots\
  sequence for a long content.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This breakable box is colored in yellow on an odd page and is colored in red on an even page. For every partial box, the test is repeated, i.e. this would give a yellow, red, yellow, red, . . . sequence for a long content.

N 2016-11-18 **/tcb/if odd page or oneside*={⟨*odd options*⟩}{⟨*even options*⟩}** (style, no default)

For onesided documents, the ⟨*odd options*⟩ are applied always. For twosided documents, this style is identical to /tcb/if odd page*.

N 2015-11-13 `\tcbifoddpage{⟨odd code⟩}{⟨even code⟩}`

If the current box is on an odd page, the ⟨*odd code*⟩ is executed. On an even page, the ⟨*even code*⟩ is executed. For precise even/odd page testing, the `/tcb/check odd page` → P. 114 has to be set manually inside the box options.

The macro `\tcbifoddpage` can be used inside underlay, overlay, or watermark code to test if the box is on an odd page. This will work also for boxes in a break sequence.

The macro can also be used inside the box **content text**. For unbreakable boxes, the correct page test is applied. But for `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 boxes, `\tcbifoddpage` will always give the result for the page of the *first* box inside the box **content text**. If needed, the methods from the packages `changepage` or `ifoddpage` could be used here.

```
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,check odd page,
  title={Example for a box on an \tcbifoddpage{odd}{even} page},
  watermark text={\tcbifoddpage{Odd}{Even} page!}]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Example for a box on an even page

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

Even page!

N 2016-11-18 `\tcbifoddpageoroneside{⟨odd code⟩}{⟨even code⟩}`

For onesided documents, the ⟨*odd code*⟩ is executed always. For twosided documents, this macro is identical to `\tcbifoddpage`.

N 2015-11-13 **\thetcolorboxnumber**

This is a unique identifier (arabic number) for a tcolorbox. It is locally defined inside boxes and has no meaning outside. It is used for precise even/odd page testing, but may also be valuable for elaborate user code.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=yellow!5,title=Box \thetcolorboxnumber]
  This box is \thetcolorboxnumber.
  \tcbox[on line,size=fbox]{This box is \thetcolorboxnumber} and
  \tcbox[on line,size=fbox]{this box is \thetcolorboxnumber}.
  This box is \thetcolorboxnumber.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Box 1240

This box is 1240. This box is 1241 and this box is 1242. This box is 1240.

N 2015-11-13 **\thetcolorboxpage**

This macro contains the expanded arabic page number of the current tcolorbox. It is locally defined inside boxes and has no meaning outside. It is precise only, if /tcb/check odd page → P. 114 was set.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=yellow!5,check odd page,
    title=Box on page~\thetcolorboxpage]
  This box is located on page~\thetcolorboxpage.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Box on page 117

This box is located on page 117.

4.23 Externalization

See Section 25 on page 476 for the LIB external library of tcolorbox.

If the *externalization* library of the tikz package is used and /tcb/graphical environment → P. 154 is set to tikzpicture, a tcolorbox could trigger the externalization process which will arise a compilation error.

To avoid this, there are two possible strategies:

- Ensure, that \tikzexternaldisable is set before a tcolorbox is used. If you typically use the pattern \tikzexternalenable *some picture* \tikzexternaldisable, there is nothing to care about.
- If *externalization* is enabled globally, use /tcb/shield externalize to shield any tcolorbox. The preamble code could look like this:

```
\usetikzlibrary{external}
\tikzexternalize
\tcbset{shield externalize}
```

/tcb/shield externalize=true|false (default true, initially false)

If set to true, the drawing part of the tcolorbox is not being externalized which is a good thing at the current state of art. Nevertheless, if the tcolorbox contains a tikzpicture, this picture is still externalized. Pictures drawn with help of /tcb/tikz upper → P. 77 or alike are *not* externalized.

If a tcolorbox is used inside a node of an encircling tikzpicture which is externalized, do *not* use \tikzexternaldisable in front of the tcolorbox. /tcb/shield externalize is deactivated automatically inside a tikzpicture.

/tcb/shield externalize is applied for every following tcolorbox inside the current TEX group and is not affected by /tcb/reset → P. 119.

/tcb/external=⟨*file name*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Convenience option which calls \tikzsetnextfilename{⟨*file name*⟩}. Typically, it may be used inside the option list of a tcolorbox to set the externalization ⟨*file name*⟩ for the first tikzpicture which is discovered *inside* the box content. The package tikz [24] or the library LIB skins has to be loaded to use this option. Additionally, \usetikzlibrary{external} has to be used.

/tcb/remake=true|false (default true, initially false)

Convenience option which calls /tikz/external/remake next. Typically, it may be used inside the option list of a tcolorbox to force the remake of the first tikzpicture which is discovered *inside* the box content. The package tikz [24] or the library LIB skins has to be loaded to use this option. Additionally, \usetikzlibrary{external} has to be used.

4.24 Miscellaneous

`/tcb/reset` (no value, initially set)

Sets (nearly) all `tcolorbox` settings (including loaded libraries) back to their default values *plus* any settings given by `\tcbsetforeverylayer` → P. 13. `/tcb/savedelimiter` → P. 31, `/tcb/capture` → P. 105, and `/tcb/shield externalize` → P. 118 keep their values. Also, all raster values (see Section 16 on page 304) are not resetted.
This option is useful for boxes in boxes where the inner box should not inherit the settings of the outer box. Note that for boxes inside boxes the `reset` is done automatically, if the standard settings of the package are used (v2.40 and above), see Section 4.16 from page 102.

`/tcb/code`=⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

The given ⟨*code*⟩ is executed immediately. This option is useful to place some arbitrary code into an option list.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  code={Useless at this spot but functional.},
  fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[code={\newcommand{\mycommand}{\textit{working}}},
  title=My \mycommand\ title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Useless at this spot but functional.

My *working* title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

N 2022-05-25 **/tcb/IfBlankTF**={⟨*token list*⟩}{⟨*true options*⟩}{⟨*false options*⟩} (no default)
N 2022-05-25 **/tcb/IfBlankT**={⟨*token list*⟩}{⟨*true options*⟩} (no default)
N 2022-05-25 **/tcb/IfBlankF**={⟨*token list*⟩}{⟨*false options*⟩} (no default)

Wraps the `\tl_if_blank:n(TF)` command(s) of expl3 for option setting. If the ⟨*token list*⟩ consists only of blank spaces or is entirely empty, the ⟨*true options*⟩ are set. Otherwise, the ⟨*false options*⟩ are set.

```
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1]{ IfBlankF={#1}{title=`#1'} }

\begin{mybox}{My title}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}{    }
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
```

‘My title’

This is a tcolorbox.

This is a tcolorbox.

N 2022-05-25 **/tcb/IfEmptyTF**={⟨*token list*⟩}{⟨*true options*⟩}{⟨*false options*⟩} (no default)
N 2022-05-25 **/tcb/IfEmptyT**={⟨*token list*⟩}{⟨*true options*⟩} (no default)
N 2022-05-25 **/tcb/IfEmptyF**={⟨*token list*⟩}{⟨*false options*⟩} (no default)

Wraps the `\tl_if_empty:n(TF)` command(s) of expl3 for option setting. If the ⟨*token list*⟩ is entirely empty, the ⟨*true options*⟩ are set. Otherwise, the ⟨*false options*⟩ are set.

```
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1]{ IfEmptyTF={#1}{colframe=red}{title=`#1'} }

\begin{mybox}{My title}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}{}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
```

‘My title’

This is a tcolorbox.

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/IfNoValueTF={⟨*argument*⟩}{⟨*true options*⟩}{⟨*false options*⟩} (no default)

N 2020-09-16 /tcb/IfNoValueT={⟨*argument*⟩}{⟨*true options*⟩} (no default)

N 2020-09-16 /tcb/IfNoValueF={⟨*argument*⟩}{⟨*false options*⟩} (no default)

Wraps the `\IfNoValue(TF)` command(s) of `xparse` for option setting. If the ⟨*argument*⟩ has no value, the ⟨*true options*⟩ are set. Otherwise, the ⟨*false options*⟩ are set.

```
\DeclareTColorBox{mybox}{ o }{colframe=red!75!black,
  IfNoValueTF={#1}{colback=red!5!white}{enhanced,interior style image=#1}}

\begin{mybox}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}[goldshade.png]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/IfValueTF={⟨*argument*⟩}{⟨*true options*⟩}{⟨*false options*⟩} (no default)

N 2020-09-16 /tcb/IfValueT={⟨*argument*⟩}{⟨*true options*⟩} (no default)

N 2020-09-16 /tcb/IfValueF={⟨*argument*⟩}{⟨*false options*⟩} (no default)

Wraps the `\IfValue(TF)` command(s) of `xparse` for option setting. If the ⟨*argument*⟩ has a value, the ⟨*true options*⟩ are set. Otherwise, the ⟨*false options*⟩ are set.

```
\DeclareTColorBox{mybox}{ o }{colframe=red!75!black,colback=red!5!white,
  IfValueT={#1}{title={\flqq #1\frqq},fonttitle=\bfseries}}

\begin{mybox}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}[My title]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

«My title»

This is a tcolorbox.

`/tcb/IfBooleanTF={⟨argument⟩}{⟨true options⟩}{⟨false options⟩}` (no default)

N 2020-09-16 `/tcb/IfBooleanT={⟨argument⟩}{⟨true options⟩}` (no default)

N 2020-09-16 `/tcb/IfBooleanF={⟨argument⟩}{⟨false options⟩}` (no default)

Wraps the `\IfBoolean(TF)` command(s) of `xparse` for option setting. If the ⟨*argument*⟩ is `\BooleanTrue`, the ⟨*true options*⟩ are set. If the ⟨*argument*⟩ is `\BooleanFalse`, the ⟨*false options*⟩ are set.

```
\DeclareTColorBox{mybox}{ s }{colframe=red!75!black,
  IfBooleanTF={#1}{colback=yellow!50!red}{colback=red!5!white}}

\begin{mybox}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}*
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

This is a tcolorbox.

N 2016-10-21 **/tcb/void** (no value, initially unset)

Annihilates the current `tcolorbox` as far as possible. Basically, this comments out the whole `tcolorbox` by using a key. If the option list of the current `tcolorbox` contains arbitrary code with global impact (like counter settings), these actions are not undone automatically. Nevertheless, the effects of `/tcb/phantom` → P. 110, `/tcb/step` → P. 111, `/tcb/new/auto counter` → P. 124, etc., are removed by `/tcb/void`.

```
A%
  \begin{tcolorbox}[
      title=This box is completely removed by the following key,
      void
    ]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
  \end{tcolorbox}
B
```

AB

! This option key cannot be applied for every situation. For example, if several box environments with the same environment name are nested, for the outer environment `/tcb/void` cannot be used, since the end of the inner environment will be misinterpreted as end of the outer environment. Also, `/tcb/void` cannot be used for environments wrapped with `\tcolorboxenvironment` → P. 22.

N 2019-03-01 **/tcb/nirvana** (no value, initially unset)

The contents of the current `tcolorbox` are processed including counter settings, but the box is just not drawn. Therefore, `/tcb/nirvana` is less radical than `/tcb/void` and several box environments can be nested without problems.

```
A%
  \begin{tcolorbox}[
      title=This box is completely removed by the following key,
      nirvana
    ]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
    \begin{tcolorbox}
    Nested Box
    \end{tcolorbox}
  \end{tcolorbox}%
B
```

AB

5 Initialization Option Keys

The *initialization* options are only applicable for the generation of new environments and commands based on `tcolorbox` and friends. Particularly, they can be used for

- \newtcolorbox→ P. 15, \NewTColorBox→ P. 16, \NewTotalTColorBox→ P. 18,
- \newtcbox→ P. 19, \NewTCBox→ P. 20, \NewTotalTCBox→ P. 21,
- \newtcblisting→ P. 330, \NewTCBListing→ P. 332,
- \newtcbinputlisting→ P. 334, \NewTCBInputListing→ P. 335,
- \newtcbtheorem→ P. 371, \NewTcbTheorem→ P. 371,
- \newtcboxfit→ P. 451, \NewTCBoxFit→ P. 452, \NewTotalTCBoxFit→ P. 453,

and friends like \renewtcolorbox→ P. 15, etc.

! Typically, these options may generate counters and alike. It is **strongly** recommended that you use initialization options inside the preamble only. Otherwise, you may get trouble when using LaTeX's `\include` features. Also, it is recommended to generate new environments and commands with these options *after* `hyperref` is loaded to avoid warnings about *duplicate identifiers*.

5.1 Numbered Boxes

Counters assigned using the initialization options are administrated automatically. Especially, they are increased for each new box. Independent from the real counter name, the counter value can be referenced by `\thetcbcounter`, e. g. inside the title of the box. The real counter name is stored inside `\tcbcounter`.

`/tcb/new/auto counter` (no value, initially unset)

Creates a new counter automatically. With `/tcb/new/number format`→ P. 126 and `/tcb/new/number within`→ P. 126, the appearance and behavior of the counter can be changed. The counter value is referenced by `\thetcbcounter`.

Definition in the preamble:

```
\newtcolorbox[auto counter,number within=section]{pabox}[2][]{%
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title=Examp.~\thetcbcounter: #2,#1}
```

```
\begin{pabox}[label={myautocounter}]{Title with number}
This box is automatically numbered with \ref{myautocounter} on page
\pageref{myautocounter}. Inside the box, the \thetcbcounter\ can
also be referenced by |\thetcbcounter|.
The real counter name is \texttt{\tcbcounter}.
\end{pabox}
```

Examp. 5.1: Title with number

This box is automatically numbered with 5.1 on page 124. Inside the box, the 5.1 can also be referenced by `\thetcbcounter`. The real counter name is `tcb@cnt@pabox`.

`/tcb/new/use counter from=`⟨*tcolorbox*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Here, a counter from another ⟨*tcolorbox*⟩ is reused. Note that the settings for `/tcb/new/number format` → P. 126 and `/tcb/new/number within` → P. 126 are inherited and cannot be changed. The counter value is referenced by `\thetcbcounter`.

```
\newtcolorbox[use counter from=pabox]{mybox}[2][]{%
colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
title=Some Box \thetcbcounter: #2,#1}

\begin{mybox}[label={myusecounterfrom}]{Title with continued number}
This box is automatically numbered with \ref{myusecounterfrom} on page
\pageref{myusecounterfrom}. Inside the box, the \thetcbcounter\ can
also be referenced by |\thetcbcounter|.
The real counter name is \texttt{\tcbcounter}.
\end{mybox}
```

Some Box 5.2: Title with continued number

This box is automatically numbered with 5.2 on page 125. Inside the box, the 5.2 can also be referenced by `\thetcbcounter`. The real counter name is `tcb@cnt@pabox`.

`/tcb/new/use counter=`⟨*counter*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Here, an ordinary existing LaTeX ⟨*counter*⟩ is used for numbering. With `/tcb/new/number format` → P. 126 and `/tcb/new/number within` → P. 126, the appearance and behavior of the counter can be changed. The counter value is referenced by `\thetcbcounter`.

```
% \newcounter{myexample}%  preamble
\newtcolorbox[use counter=myexample,number format=\Alph]{mybox}[2][]{%
colback=green!5!white,colframe=green!55!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
title=Some Box \thetcbcounter: #2,#1}

\begin{mybox}[label={myusecounter}]{Title with \LaTeX\ number}
This box is automatically numbered with \ref{myusecounter} on page
\pageref{myusecounter}. Inside the box, the \thetcbcounter\ can
also be referenced by |\thetcbcounter|.
The real counter name is \texttt{\tcbcounter}.
\end{mybox}
```

Some Box A: Title with LaTeX number

This box is automatically numbered with A on page 125. Inside the box, the A can also be referenced by `\thetcbcounter`. The real counter name is `myexample`.

N 2014-09-19 `/tcb/new/use counter*=`⟨*counter*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

An existing LaTeX ⟨*counter*⟩ is used for numbering. In contrast to `/tcb/new/use counter`, the options `/tcb/new/number format` → P. 126 and `/tcb/new/number within` → P. 126 are ignored. Use this for counters which are already configured outside the `tcolorbox` package, e. g. the standard `figure` counter.

`/tcb/new/no counter` (no value, initially set)

The created boxes are not numbered. This is the default. The option may be used to overrule a previous option.

N 2019-10-18 `/tcb/new/reset counter on overlays=true|false` (default `true`, initially `false`)

For `beamer` slides, this invokes the `\resetcounteronoverlays` command for the box counter. The counter is automatically reset on subsequent overlay slides of a frame. Thereby, the counter will be the same on all slides of every frame.

`/tcb/new/number within`=⟨*counter*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

The automatic counter is set to zero, if ⟨*counter*⟩ is increased. Additionally, during output, the value of ⟨*counter*⟩ is prepended to the value of the automatic counter.
To prepend the automatic counter with the chapter number and to reset it with every new chapter, use:

```
number within=chapter
```

See `/tcb/new/use counter` → P. 125 for a complete example.

`/tcb/new/number format`=⟨*format macro*⟩ (no default, initially `\arabic`)

Declares the format of the automatic counter. The ⟨*format macro*⟩ can be any valid LaTeX number formatting macro like `\arabic`, `\roman`, etc.
To display the counter value in large roman numbers, use:

```
number format=\Roman
```

See `/tcb/new/auto counter` → P. 124 for a complete example.

`/tcb/new/number freestyle`=⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Allows advanced control over the complete number format. This option overrules the format given by `/tcb/new/number within` and `/tcb/new/number format`. Nevertheless, you can combine it with `/tcb/new/number within` to get the desired reset property.
The ⟨*code*⟩ is some formatting code which should contain `\tcbcounter` to reference the automated counter. Since this ⟨*code*⟩ is expanded, you have to secure each macro with `\noexpand` with *exception* of `\tcbcounter`.

Definition in the preamble:

```
\newtcolorbox[auto counter,number within=section,
  number freestyle={(Q/\noexpand\thesection/\noexpand\Alph{\tcbcounter})},
  ]{phbox}[2][]{%
  colback=yellow!15!white,colframe=blue!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title=Question~\thetcbcounter: #2,#1}
```

```
\begin{phbox}[label={myfreestyle}]{Title with freestyle number}
This box is automatically numbered with \ref{myfreestyle} on page
\pageref{myfreestyle}. Inside the box, the \thetcbcounter\ can
also be referenced by |\thetcbcounter|.
The real counter name is \texttt{\tcbcounter}.
\end{phbox}
```

Question (Q/5/A): Title with freestyle number

This box is automatically numbered with (Q/5/A) on page 126. Inside the box, the (Q/5/A) can also be referenced by `\thetcbcounter`. The real counter name is `tcb@cnt@phbox`.

The following options /tcb/new/crefname and /tcb/new/Crefname need to be set inside the preamble.

U 2014-12-01 **/tcb/new/crefname**={⟨*singular*⟩}{⟨*plural*⟩} (no default, initially unset)

This option key can be used only in conjunction with the `cleveref` package [6] which has to be loaded separately. It creates a cross-reference type for the new `tcolorbox`'es, where the lowercase ⟨*singular*⟩ and ⟨*plural*⟩ forms of the cross-reference are given. This type is the environment or macro name and /tcb/label type → P. 111 is set automatically. See /tcb/label type → P. 111 and [6] for more information.

U 2014-12-01 **/tcb/new/Crefname**={⟨*singular*⟩}{⟨*plural*⟩} (no default, initially unset)

This option key can be used only in conjunction with the `cleveref` package [6] which has to be loaded separately. It creates a cross-reference type for the new `tcolorbox`'es, where the uppercase ⟨*singular*⟩ and ⟨*plural*⟩ forms of the cross-reference are given. This type is the environment or macro name and /tcb/label type → P. 111 is set automatically. See /tcb/label type → P. 111 and [6] for more information.

Definition in the preamble:

```
% \usepackage{cleveref}
\newtcolorbox[auto counter,number within=section,
  crefname={bluebox}{blueboxes}]%
  {mybluebox}[2][]{colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
     title=Bluebox \thetcbcounter: #2,#1}
```

```
% \usepackage{varioref}
% \usepackage{cleveref}
\begin{mybluebox}[label={myreference}]{My title}
This is an example.
\end{mybluebox}

\Cref{myreference}, \cref{myreference}.\\
\Cpageref{myreference}, \cpageref{myreference}.\\
\nameCref{myreference}, \namecref{myreference}.\\
\labelcref{myreference}, \labelcpageref{myreference}.\\
With \texttt{varioref}:\\
\Vref{myreference}, \vref{myreference}.\\
\Vref*{myreference}, \vref*{myreference}.
```

Bluebox 5.1: My title

This is an example.

Bluebox 5.1, bluebox 5.1.
Page 127, page 127.
Bluebox, bluebox.
5.1, 127.
With `varioref`:
Bluebox 5.1, bluebox 5.1.
Bluebox 5.1, bluebox 5.1.

N 2014-09-19 **/tcb/new/blend into=**⟨*name*⟩ (style, no default, initially unset)

Used to comfortably blend into an existing schema of naming and numbering for some selected cases. For example, a **tcolorbox** can be used to display and entitle an image pretending to be a standard **figure** environment. Here, /tcb/title → P. 23 is used instead of the standard **\caption** and /tcb/list text → P. 133 can be used instead of the optional parameter of the standard **\caption**.

Feasible values for ⟨*name*⟩ are:

- **figures**: blend into the standard **figure** environment.
- **tables**: blend into the standard **table** environment.
- **listings**: blend into the standard **lstlisting** environment of the package **listings** [7].

> ! Note that **blend into=listings** can only be used in the document content or, preferably, inside a **\AtBeginDocument** clause! Using it without **\AtBeginDocument** inside the preamble does not work since the **listings** packages initializes its counter also inside **\AtBeginDocument**.

```
\begin{figure}[htb]
  \centering\includegraphics[height=4cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}
  \caption{A standard figure}
\end{figure}

\newtcolorbox[blend into=figures]{myfigure}[2][]{float=htb,capture=hbox,
  title={#2},every float=\centering,#1}

\begin{myfigure}{A tcolorbox figure}
  \includegraphics[height=4cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\end{myfigure}
```

Figure 1: A standard figure

Figure 2: A tcolorbox figure

N 2015-03-13 **/tcb/blend before title=**⟨*value*⟩ (no default, initially **colon**)

This option formats the title output of /tcb/new/blend into → P. 128. Note that this is a common tcolorbox option which should be set globally or in the normal option part of \newtcolorbox → P. 15.

Feasible values for ⟨*value*⟩ are:

- **colon**: use name/number plus colon.
- **dash**: use name/number plus dash.
- **colon hang**: use name/number plus colon with hanging indent.
- **dash hang**: use name/number plus dash with hanging indent.

```
\newtcolorbox[blend into=figures]{myfigure}[2][]{float=htb,capture=hbox,
  blend before title=dash hang,title={#2},every float=\centering,#1}

\begin{myfigure}{A tcolorbox figure with quite a long title}
  \includegraphics[height=5cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\end{myfigure}
```

Figure 3 – A tcolorbox figure with quite a long title

N 2015-03-13 **/tcb/blend before title code=**⟨*code*⟩ (no default)

This option formats the title output of /tcb/new/blend into → P. 128. The ⟨*code*⟩ takes one parameter, the name/number. Use this, if /tcb/blend before title → P. 129 is not flexible enough.

```
\newtcolorbox[blend into=figures]{myfigure}[2][]{float=htb,capture=hbox,
  blend before title code={\fbox{##1}\ },title={#2},every float=\centering,#1}

\begin{myfigure}{A tcolorbox figure}
  \includegraphics[height=6cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\end{myfigure}
```

Figure 4 A tcolorbox figure

5.2 Lists of tcolorboxes

For figures and tables, LaTeX provides the `\listoffigures` and `\listoftables` commands to create lists of these numbered entities. Also, a `tcolorbox` can be part of such a kind of list.

1. Assign a list ⟨*name*⟩ by the *initialization* option `/tcb/new/list inside`.
2. Optionally, a new ⟨*type*⟩ for list entries may be assigned by the *initialization* option `/tcb/new/list type`.
3. List entries a generated automatically within each new `tcolorbox` using the above initialization.
   - If `/tcb/list entry` → P. 133 is set, the entry is generated with it.
   - Otherwise, if `/tcb/title` → P. 23 is set, the entry is generated with it.
   - Otherwise, the entry is generated with the current number and the environment name.
4. The generated list is displayed by `\tcblistof` → P. 132.

`/tcb/new/list inside`=⟨*name*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Assigns a list or contents file to the generated `tcolorbox`es. Entries to this list are saved to a file which gets the ⟨*name*⟩ as file name extension. The list is referenced by this name in `\tcblistof` → P. 132. For example:

```
list inside=exam
```

See Section 17.11 from page 365 for a complete example.

`/tcb/new/list type`=⟨*type*⟩ (no default, initially `tcolorbox`)

Optionally, some ⟨*type*⟩ can be assigned to the list entries. For a new ⟨*type*⟩, a macro `\l@`⟨*type*⟩ has to exist which controls the format of the list entry. The default type is defined by

```
\newcommand*\l@tcolorbox{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}
```

This is identical to the `\l@section` setting of LaTeX. `\l@tcolorbox` can be redefined or a new ⟨*type*⟩ can be assigned.

U 2021-05-20 `\tcblistof[⟨macro⟩]{⟨name⟩}[⟨short⟩]{⟨title text⟩}`

Displays the generated list of `tcolorbox`es with the given ⟨*name*⟩. The heading is generated by ⟨*macro*⟩`[`⟨*short*⟩`]{`⟨*title text*⟩`}` where `\section` is the default setting for ⟨*macro*⟩. Here, as usual, ⟨*title text*⟩ is the title of the section or chapter while ⟨*short*⟩ is a shorter title for headings and table of contents.

- If ⟨*macro*⟩ ends with a `*`, `\tcblistof` mimics the behavior of `\listoffigures` from the standard LaTeX classes and adds the title to the left and right mark for headings.
- If ⟨*macro*⟩ starts with `\chapter`, a possible two column document setting is restored to one column (as standard LaTeX classes do for `\listoffigures`).

To display the list inside a subsection, use for example:

```
\tcblistof[\subsection]{exam}{List of Exercises}
```

The result of the example is found as Subsection 17.12 on page 368.

To apply the list similar to `\listoffigures` for a report or book, use for example:

```
\tcblistof[\chapter*]{exam}{List of Exercises}
```

To set a short title for headings with the default `\section` setting, use for example:

```
\tcblistof{exam}[List of Exercises]{Elaborate List of Fine Exercises
                                    for all Students of my Course}
```

! The core of the list is generated by `\@starttoc{`⟨*name*⟩`}` which can be wrapped into an own macro.

The following options are not initialization options, but common options, which are typically reasonable in connection with lists of `tcolorboxes`.

`/tcb/list entry`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the «list of tcolorbox(es)» feature described in the current subsection is used, this key describes the ⟨*text*⟩ for an entry into the generated list, e. g.

```
list entry={\protect\numberline{\thetcbcounter}My beautiful Example}
```

See Section 17.11 from page 365 for a complete example.
If `\thetcbcounter` is omitted, `/tcb/list entry` could be used for unnumbered boxes too.

This is a customization option. For numbered boxes, `/tcb/list entry` typically has not to be given, because this entry will be generated automatically.

N 2014-09-19 `/tcb/list text`=⟨*text*⟩ (style, no default)

This is a shortcut for setting `/tcb/list entry` to `\protect\numberline{\thetcbcounter}`⟨*text*⟩. So, the following settings are identical:

```
list text={My beautiful Example},
list entry={\protect\numberline{\thetcbcounter}My beautiful Example}
```

See Section 17.11 from page 365 for a complete example.

`/tcb/add to list`={⟨*list*⟩}{⟨*type*⟩} (no default, initially unset)

If the «list of tcolorbox(es)» feature described in the current subsection is used, list entries are generated automatically. With this key, you can enforce an entry to the given ⟨*list*⟩ with the given ⟨*type*⟩. This issues:
`\addcontentsline{`⟨*list*⟩`}{`⟨*type*⟩`}{`⟨*entry text*⟩`}`
⟨*entry text*⟩ may be given by `/tcb/list entry`.

This is a customization option. For numbered boxes, this feature is configured automatically, where ⟨*list*⟩ is set by `/tcb/new/list inside` → P. 131 and ⟨*type*⟩ is set by `/tcb/new/list type` → P. 131

6 Side by Side

A *side by side* box is a special tcolorbox→ P. 12 where the upper and lower part of the box are set side by side. All boxes of this kind are unbreakable.

! Further side by side options for code examples are /tcb/listing side text→ P. 346, /tcb/text side listing→ P. 346, /tcb/listing outside text→ P. 346, and /tcb/text outside listing→ P. 347.

6.1 Basic Settings

/tcb/sidebyside=true|false (default true, initially false)

Normally, the upper part and the lower part of the box have their positions as their names suggest. If sidebyside is set to true, the upper part is drawn *left-handed* and the lower part is drawn *right-handed*. Both parts are drawn together with the geometry settings of the upper part but the space is divided horizontally according to the following options. Colors, fonts, and box content additions are used individually. The resulting box is unbreakable.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,sidebyside]
  This is the upper (\textit{left-handed}) part.
\tcblower
  This is the lower (\textit{right-handed}) part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

This is the upper (*left-handed*) part.

This is the lower (*right-handed*) part.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\begin{tcolorbox}[bicolor,sidebyside,righthand width=3cm,
    sharp corners,boxrule=.4pt,colback=green!5,colbacklower=green!50!black!50]
  \lipsum[2]
\tcblower
  \includegraphics[width=\linewidth]{goldshade}%
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

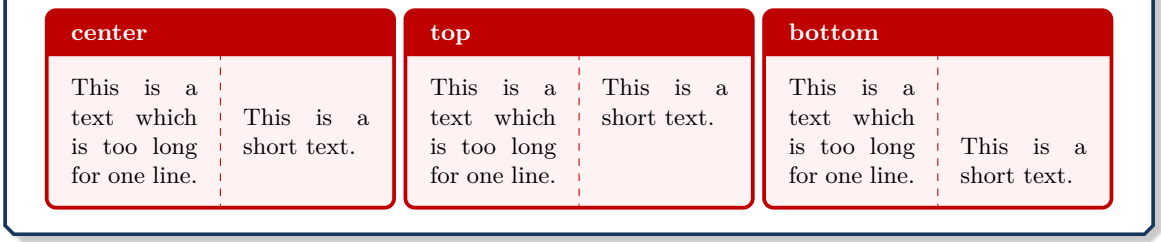
U 2015-02-06 **/tcb/sidebyside align=**⟨*alignment*⟩ (no default, initially **center**)

Sets the vertical ⟨*alignment*⟩ for the left-handed and right-handed part.

Feasible values for ⟨*alignment*⟩ are:

- **center**: identical to **minipage** option **c**.
- **top**: identical to **minipage** option **t** (aligns the top lines of the left-handed and right-handed side according to their baselines).
- **bottom**: identical to **minipage** option **b** (aligns the bottom lines of the left-handed and right-handed side according to their baselines).
- **center seam**: aligns the center of the left-handed and right-handed side.
- **top seam**: aligns the very top seam of the left-handed and right-handed side.
- **bottom seam**: aligns the very bottom seam of the left-handed and right-handed side.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,nobeforeafter,
  left=2mm,right=2mm,sidebyside,sidebyside gap=6mm,width=(\linewidth-2mm)/3}

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=center,sidebyside align=center]
This is a text which is too long for one line.
\tcblower
This is a short text.
\end{tcolorbox}\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=top,sidebyside align=top]
This is a text which is too long for one line.
\tcblower
This is a short text.
\end{tcolorbox}\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=bottom,sidebyside align=bottom]
This is a text which is too long for one line.
\tcblower
This is a short text.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



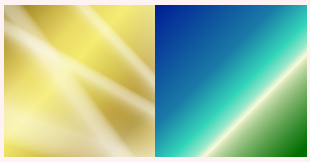
center, **top**, and **bottom** are identical to the known corresponding **minipage** options. While this is the preferred approach for text content, the result for boxed content like tables or images may not be as expected.

For such content, one may use **center seam**, **top seam**, and **bottom seam**. For example, **top seam** aligns the very top seam of the left-handed and right-handed side.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  size=small,righthand width=4cm,sidebyside,sidebyside gap=6mm,lower separated=false}

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=center seam,sidebyside align=center seam]
  This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.
  \tcblower
  \includegraphics[width=\linewidth/2]{goldshade}%
  \includegraphics[width=\linewidth/2]{blueshade}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=top seam,sidebyside align=top seam]
  This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.
  \tcblower
  \includegraphics[width=\linewidth/2]{goldshade}%
  \includegraphics[width=\linewidth/2]{blueshade}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=bottom seam,sidebyside align=bottom seam]
  This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.
  \tcblower
  \includegraphics[width=\linewidth/2]{goldshade}%
  \includegraphics[width=\linewidth/2]{blueshade}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

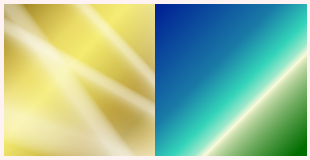
center seam

This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.



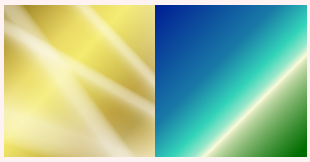
top seam

This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.



bottom seam

This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.



`/tcb/sidebyside gap=`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `10mm`)

Sets the horizontal distance between the left-handed and right-handed part to ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,nobeforeafter,
  sidebyside,width=(\linewidth-2mm)/2}

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=Wide gap,sidebyside gap=30mm]
This is a text which is too long for one line.
\tcblower
This is a short text.
\end{tcolorbox}\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=Narrow gap,sidebyside gap=1mm]
This is a text which is too long for one line.
\tcblower
This is a short text.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Wide gap

This is a text which is too long for one line.

This is a short text.

Narrow gap

This is a text which is too long for one line.

This is a short text.

`/tcb/lefthand width=`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Sets the width of the left-handed part to the given ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,sidebyside,lefthand width=3cm]
This is the upper (\textit{left-handed}) part.
\tcblower
This is the lower (\textit{right-handed}) part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

This is the upper (*left-handed*) part.

This is the lower (*right-handed*) part.

`/tcb/righthand width=`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Sets the width of the right-handed part to the given ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,sidebyside,righthand width=3cm]
This is the upper (\textit{left-handed}) part.
\tcblower
This is the lower (\textit{right-handed}) part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

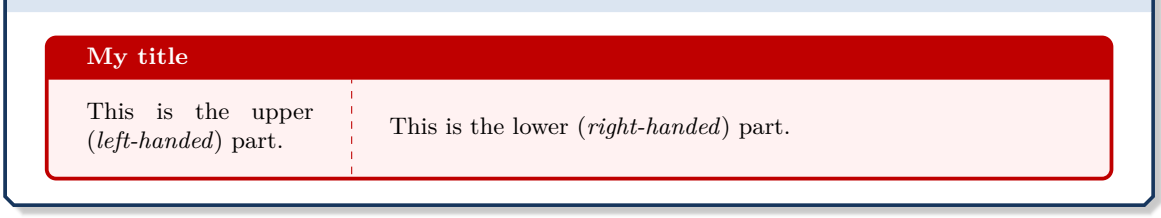
This is the upper (*left-handed*) part.

This is the lower (*right-handed*) part.

`/tcb/lefthand ratio`=⟨*fraction*⟩ (no default, initially `0.5`)

Sets the width of the left-handed part to the given ⟨*fraction*⟩ of the available space. ⟨*fraction*⟩ is a value between `0` and `1`.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,sidebyside,lefthand ratio=0.25]
This is the upper (\textit{left-handed}) part.
\tcblower
This is the lower (\textit{right-handed}) part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/righthand ratio`=⟨*fraction*⟩ (no default, initially `0.5`)

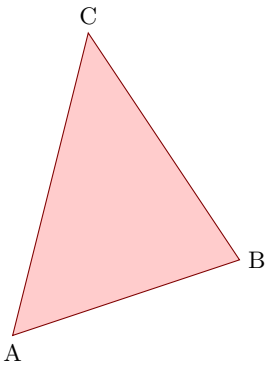
Sets the width of the right-handed part to the given ⟨*fraction*⟩ of the available space. ⟨*fraction*⟩ is a value between `0` and `1`.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,sidebyside,righthand ratio=0.25]
This is the upper (\textit{left-handed}) part.
\tcblower
This is the lower (\textit{right-handed}) part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

If one side of a side-by-side box should be adapted to the width of its content, this width has to be computed beforehand. The following example uses a savebox `\mysavebox` to store the picture to determine its width. A more convenient way to handle this task is to use the methods from Section 6.2 on page 140.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
% \usepackage{lipsum}
% \newsavebox\mysavebox  % preamble
\DeclareTotalTColorBox{\mysidebox}{ O{} +m +m }{
  bicolor,colback=white,colbacklower=yellow!10,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,center title,
  sidebyside,
  code={\sbox{\mysavebox}{#2}},
  lefthand width=\wd\mysavebox,
  drop lifted shadow,
  #1
}
{\usebox{\mysavebox}\tcblower#3}

\mysidebox[title=The Triangle]{%
  \begin{tikzpicture}
    \path[fill=red!20,draw=red!50!black]
      (0,0) node[below]{A} -- (3,1) node[right]{B}
      -- (1,4) node[above]{C} -- cycle;
  \end{tikzpicture}%
}{%
  \lipsum[1]
}
```

The Triangle



Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

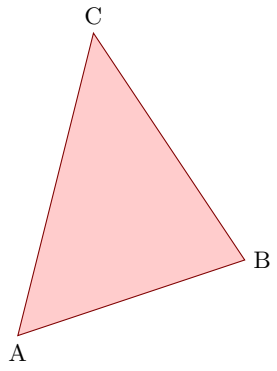
6.2 Advanced Settings

N 2015-11-20 `\tcbsidebyside[⟨options⟩]{⟨left-handed content⟩}{⟨right-handed content⟩}`

Creates a colored box using more or less arbitrary ⟨*options*⟩ for a `tcolorbox` → P. 12. The `/tcb/sidebyside` → P. 134 option is set to `true` and the ⟨*left-handed content*⟩ and ⟨*right-handed content*⟩ is filled into the box appropriately. The resulting box is unbreakable. `\tcbsidebyside` is not only a shortcut for using a normal `tcolorbox` → P. 12 with `/tcb/sidebyside` → P. 134, but allows setting further options like `/tcb/sidebyside adapt` → P. 141 and `/tcb/sidebyside switch` → P. 143.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\tcbsidebyside[title=The Triangle,
  sidebyside adapt=left,
  bicolor,colback=white,colbacklower=yellow!10,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,center title,drop lifted shadow,
]{%
  \begin{tikzpicture}
    \path[fill=red!20,draw=red!50!black]
      (0,0) node[below]{A} -- (3,1) node[right]{B}
      -- (1,4) node[above]{C} -- cycle;
  \end{tikzpicture}%
}{%
  \lipsum[1]
}
```

The Triangle



Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

N 2015-11-20 **/tcb/sidebyside adapt=**⟨*side(s)*⟩ (no default, initially **none**)

The option allows the left-handed and/or right-handed side to determine the dimensions of the box. This option is only valid inside \tcbsidebyside → P. 140.
Feasible values for ⟨*side(s)*⟩ are:

- **none**: no measurement of left-handed and right-handed side.
- **left**: the actual width of the left-handed content is used to set /tcb/lefthand width → P. 137.
- **right**: the actual width of the right-handed content is used to set /tcb/righthand width → P. 137.
- **both**: the actual width of the left-handed and right-handed content is used to set /tcb/lefthand width → P. 137, /tcb/righthand width → P. 137, and the overall /tcb/width → P. 39.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\tcbsidebyside[sidebyside adapt=left,
  title=Very important table,
  beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10,
  lower separated=false,sidebyside gap=5mm
]{%
  \begin{tabular}{|l|c|r|}\hline
    left & center & right\\\hline
    A & B & C\\\hline
    D & E & F\\\hline
  \end{tabular}
}{%
  This table contains the most important figures for
  all future actions. You may notice that B follows A,
  C follows B, and so on.
}
```

Very important table

left	center	right
A	B	C
D	E	F

This table contains the most important figures for all future actions. You may notice that B follows A, C follows B, and so on.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\tcbsidebyside[sidebyside adapt=right,
  blanker,sidebyside gap=5mm
]{%
  \lipsum[2]
}{%
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \path[fill=yellow,draw=yellow!75!red] (0,0) circle (1cm);
  \fill[red] (45:5mm) circle (1mm);
  \fill[red] (135:5mm) circle (1mm);
  \draw[line width=1mm,red] (215:5mm) arc (215:325:5mm);
\end{tikzpicture}
}
```

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\tcbsidebyside[sidebyside adapt=both,
  enhanced,center,
  title=Both sides adapted,
  attach boxed title to top center={yshift=-2mm},
  coltitle=black,boxed title style={colback=red!25},
  segmentation style=solid,colback=red!5,colframe=red!50
]{%
  \begin{tabular}{|l|c|r|}\hline
    left & center & right\\\hline
    A & B & C\\\hline
    D & E & F\\\hline
  \end{tabular}
}{%
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \path[fill=yellow,draw=yellow!75!red] (0,0) circle (1cm);
  \fill[red] (45:5mm) circle (1mm);
  \fill[red] (135:5mm) circle (1mm);
  \draw[line width=1mm,red] (215:5mm) arc (215:325:5mm);
\end{tikzpicture}
}
```

Both sides adapted

left	center	right
A	B	C
D	E	F

N 2015-11-20 **/tcb/sidebyside switch=true|false** (default `true`, initially `false`)

If set to `true`, the ⟨*left-handed content*⟩ and ⟨*right-handed content*⟩ of `\tcbsidebyside` → P. 140 are switched. Obviously, this option is only valid inside `\tcbsidebyside` → P. 140.

The side switching can be made even/odd page sensitive, if used inside `/tcb/if odd page` → P. 114.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\tcbsidebyside{Left}{Right}

\tcbsidebyside[sidebyside switch]{Left}{Right}

\tcbsidebyside[title=Very important table,
  if odd page={sidebyside switch,sidebyside adapt=right,flushright title}%
              {sidebyside adapt=left},
  beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10,
  lower separated=false,sidebyside gap=5mm
]{%
  \begin{tabular}{|l|c|r|}\hline
    left & center & right\\\hline
    A & B & C\\\hline
    D & E & F\\\hline
  \end{tabular}
}{%
  This table contains the most important figures for
  all future actions. You may notice that B follows A,
  C follows B, and so on.
}
```

Left | Right

Right | Left

Very important table

This table contains the most important figures for all future actions. You may notice that B follows A, C follows B, and so on.

left	center	right
A	B	C
D	E	F

7 Saving and Loading of Verbatim Texts

The following macros are slightly modified versions of the original macros from the known packages `moreverb` and `verbatim`. They are used implicitly inside of a `tcolorbox` environment, but they can be used outside also.

`\begin{tcbverbatimwrite}{`⟨*file name*⟩`}`
⟨*environment content*⟩
`\end{tcbverbatimwrite}`

Saves the ⟨*environment content*⟩ to a file named by ⟨*file name*⟩. TEX macros inside the environment are not expanded.

```
\begin{tcbverbatimwrite}{\jobname_verbexp.tex}
  This text is saved \textit{as is}.
\end{tcbverbatimwrite}

Now, we are using the file:\par
\input{\jobname_verbexp.tex}
```

Now, we are using the file:
This text is saved *as is*.

This environment may be used inside an own environment. Note, that inside the environment definition `\tcbverbatimwrite` has to be used instead of `\begin{tcbverbatimwrite}` and `\endtcbverbatimwrite` instead of `\end{tcbverbatimwrite}`.

```
\newenvironment{myverbatim}{%
  \begingroup\tcbverbatimwrite{\jobname_myverb.tex}}%
  {\endtcbverbatimwrite\endgroup}

\begin{myverbatim}
  This is the text which is saved by my own environment.
\end{myverbatim}

Now, we are using the file:\par
\input{\jobname_myverb.tex}
```

Now, we are using the file:
This is the text which is saved by my own environment.

`\begin{tcbwritetemp}`
⟨*environment content*⟩
`\end{tcbwritetemp}`

Has the same function as `tcbverbatimwrite`, but uses the key value of `tempfile` for the file name.

```
\begin{tcbwritetemp}
  This text is saved \textit{as is}.
\end{tcbwritetemp}

Now, we are using the file:\par
\tcbusetemp
```

Now, we are using the file:
This text is saved *as is*.

`\tcbusetemp`

Loads the current temporary file which was saved by `tcbwritetemp`.

N 2017-07-05 `/tcb/verbatim ignore percent=true|false` (default `true`, initially `false`)

If this option is set to be `true`, the percent sign % is silently ignored for `tcbverbatimwrite` → P. 144 and all macros and environments which are built using `tcbverbatimwrite` → P. 144, e.g. `tcbwritetemp` → P. 144, `tcblisting` → P. 327, or `dispExample` → P. 496.

This option may be useful for creating some special effects, but mainly it is intended to be applied for documentation with DocStrip. The creation of this option was motivated by Yudai Nakata. Note that this option is not getting reset by `/tcb/reset` → P. 119.

```
Normal usage:
\begin{tcbwritetemp}
%\begin{center}\bfseries
This is my text.
%\end{center}
\end{tcbwritetemp}

\tcbusetemp

\tcbset{verbatim ignore percent}
\bigskip Option applied:
\begin{tcbwritetemp}
%\begin{center}\bfseries
This is my text.
%\end{center}
\end{tcbwritetemp}

\tcbusetemp
```

Normal usage:
This is my text.

Option applied:
This is my text.

! Note that *every* percent sign is removed, also escaped ones.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{listings}
\def\percent{\%}

\begin{tcblisting}{title=Normal}
%\begin{center}\bfseries
This is my 5\percent\ text
and this is my 10\% text.
%\end{center}
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcblisting}{
  title=Option applied,
  verbatim ignore percent}
%\begin{center}\bfseries
This is my 5\percent\ text
and this is my 10\% text.
%\end{center}
\end{tcblisting}
```

Normal

```
%\begin{center}\bfseries
This is my 5\percent\ text
and this is my 10\% text.
%\end{center}
```

This is my 5% text and this is my 10% text.

Option applied

```
\begin{center}\bfseries
This is my 5\percent\ text
and this is my 10\ text.
\end{center}
```

This is my 5% text and this is my 10 text.

N 2023-02-10 **/tcb/verbatim ignore indention at end=true|false** (default `true`, initially `true`)

If this option is set to be `true`, spaces and tabs before `\end{tcbverbatimwrite}` on the same line are ignored. The same is true for all environments based on `tcbverbatimwrite` → P. 144. If anything else precedes `\end{tcbverbatimwrite}` on the same line, the complete content is written.
If this option is set to be `false`, everything preceding `\end{tcbverbatimwrite}` is written. This was the default behavior before version 6.0.0.
The idea of `/tcb/verbatim ignore indention at end` is that the environment can be indented. The creation of this option was inspired by Yukai Chou.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{minted}
\texttt{verbatim ignore indention at end=false}

    \begin{tcblisting}{listing engine=minted, listing only,
                       verbatim ignore indention at end=false}
      int a;
    \end{tcblisting}

    \begin{tcblisting}{listing engine=minted, listing only,
                       verbatim ignore indention at end=false}
      int a;
      int b;  \end{tcblisting}

\texttt{verbatim ignore indention at end=true}

    \begin{tcblisting}{listing engine=minted, listing only,
                       verbatim ignore indention at end}
      int a;
    \end{tcblisting}

    \begin{tcblisting}{listing engine=minted, listing only,
                       verbatim ignore indention at end}
      int a;
      int b;  \end{tcblisting}
```

verbatim ignore indention at end=false

```
int a;
```

```
int a;
int b;
```

verbatim ignore indention at end=true

```
int a;
```

```
int a;
int b;
```

8 Recording

The package provides some macros and options to take *records* during compilation. This is done by LaTeX file operations to save some data to a file for later usage. The main application scenario is depicted in Section 8.3 on the next page where information about example solutions is recorded and read again in Section 8.4 on page 151.

8.1 Macros

N 2014-11-28 `\tcbstartrecording[⟨file name⟩]`

Opens a file denoted by ⟨*file name*⟩ for writing the records. The default file name is `\jobname.records`. See Section 8.3 on the next page for an example application.

! In some situations, a not existing optional parameter may cause parsing problems. If this happens (or just for precaution), use

```
\tcbstartrecording\relax
```

or

```
\tcbstartrecording[\jobname.records]
```

N 2014-11-28 `\tcbrecord{⟨content⟩}`

Records any ⟨*content*⟩ to the record file. `\tcbrecord` is implemented as `\immediate\write`. `\tcbstartrecording` has to be called before; otherwise, `\tcbrecord` is silently ignored.

```
\tcbrecord{\string\solution{\thetcbcounter}{solutions/exercise-\thetcbcounter.tex}}
```

N 2014-11-28 `\tcbstoprecording`

Closes the current record file which was opened by `\tcbstartrecording` before.

N 2014-11-28 `\tcbinputrecords[⟨file name⟩]`

Opens a file denoted by ⟨*file name*⟩ for reading the records via `\input`. The default file name is the name of the last used record file for saving. `\tcbstoprecording` has to be called before.

8.2 Options

N 2014-11-28 `/tcb/record=⟨content⟩` (style, no default)

Records any ⟨*content*⟩ to the record file, see `\tcbrecord`. This key can be used several times to write several lines.

```
record={\string\solution{\thetcbcounter}{solutions/exercise-\thetcbcounter.tex}}
```

N 2014-11-28 `/tcb/no recording`

Disables `\tcbrecord` and `/tcb/record` inside the current group.

8.3 Example: Exercises

The following application example creates exercises and their corresponding solutions. Each pair is generated inside a single `tcolorbox` where the solution is given below `\tcblower` → P. 12. For every example, the solution part is saved by `/tcb/savelowerto` → P. 29 to a file. The saving is recorded using `/tcb/record` → P. 147. To enlighten the possibilities, the second exercise has no solution. Finally, the solutions are input in Section 8.4 on page 151.

Definition in the preamble:

```
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}

\NewTColorBox[auto counter,number within=section]{exercise}{+!O{}}{%
  enhanced,colframe=green!20!black,colback=yellow!10!white,coltitle=green!40!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,
  underlay={\begin{tcbclipinterior}
    \shade[inner color=green!80!yellow,outer color=yellow!10!white]
      (interior.north west) circle (2cm);
    \draw[help lines,step=5mm,yellow!80!black,shift={(interior.north west)}]
      (interior.south west) grid (interior.north east);
    \end{tcbclipinterior}},
  title={Exercise~\thetcbcounter:},
  label={exercise@\thetcbcounter},
  attach title to upper=\quad,
  after upper={\par\hfill\textcolor{green!40!black}{%
    {\itshape Solution on page~\pageref{solution@\thetcbcounter}}}},
  lowerbox=ignored,
  savelowerto=solutions/exercise-\thetcbcounter.tex,
  record={\string\solution{\thetcbcounter}{solutions/exercise-\thetcbcounter.tex}},
  #1
}

\NewTotalTColorBox{\solution}{mm}{%
  enhanced,colframe=red!20!black,colback=yellow!10!white,coltitle=red!40!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,
  underlay={\begin{tcbclipinterior}
    \shade[inner color=red!50!yellow,outer color=yellow!10!white]
      (interior.north west) circle (2cm);
    \draw[help lines,step=5mm,yellow!80!black,shift={(interior.north west)}]
      (interior.south west) grid (interior.north east);
    \end{tcbclipinterior}},
  title={Solution of Exercise~\ref{exercise@#1} on page~\pageref{exercise@#1}:},
  phantomlabel={solution@#1},
  attach title to upper=\par,
}{\input{#2}}

\tcbset{no solution/.style={no recording,after upper=}}
```

```
\tcbstartrecording\relax

\begin{exercise}
  Compute the derivative of the following function:
  \begin{equation*}
    f(x)=\sin((\sin x)^2)
  \end{equation*}
\tcblower
  The derivative is:
  \begin{align*}
    f'(x) &= \left( \sin((\sin x)^2) \right)'
    =\cos((\sin x)^2) 2\sin x \cos x.
  \end{align*}
\end{exercise}
```

```
\begin{exercise}[no solution]
  It holds:
  \begin{equation*}
    \frac{d}{dx}\left(\ln|x|\right) = \frac{1}{x}.
  \end{equation*}
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
  Compute the derivative of the following function:
  \begin{equation*}
    f(x)=(\sin(\sin x))^2
  \end{equation*}
\tcblower
  The derivative is:
  \begin{align*}
    f'(x) &= \left( (\sin(\sin x))^2 \right)'
    =2\sin(\sin x)\cos(\sin x)\cos x.
  \end{align*}
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
  Compute the derivative of the following function:
  \begin{equation*}
    f(x)=\sqrt{x^3-6x^2+2x}
  \end{equation*}
\tcblower
  The derivative is:
  \begin{align*}
    f'(x) &= \left( \sqrt{x^3-6x^2+2x} \right)'
    = \frac{3x^2-12x+2}{2\sqrt{x^3-6x^2+2x}}.
  \end{align*}
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
  Compute the derivative of the following function:
  \begin{equation*}
    f(x)=\left(\frac{2+3x}{1-2x}\right)^3
  \end{equation*}
\tcblower
  The derivative is:
  \begin{align*}
    f'(x) &= \left( \left(\frac{2+3x}{1-2x}\right)^3 \right)'
    = 3 \left(\frac{2+3x}{1-2x}\right)^2 \frac{(1-2x)3-(2+3x)(-2)}{(1-2x)^2}
    = \frac{21(2+3x)^2}{(1-2x)^4}.
  \end{align*}
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
  Compute the derivative of the following function:
  \begin{equation*}
    f(x)=\frac{\cos x}{(\tan 2x)^2}
  \end{equation*}
\tcblower
  The derivative is:
  \begin{align*}
    f'(x) &= \left( \frac{\cos x}{(\tan 2x)^2} \right)'
    = \left( \frac{\cos x (\cos 2x)^2}{(\sin 2x)^2} \right)'\\
    &= \frac{(\sin 2x)^2 [(-\sin x)(\cos 2x)^2+(\cos x)4\cos 2x (-\sin 2x)]
       - \cos x (\cos 2x)^2 4\sin 2x \cos 2x}{(\sin 2x)^4}\\
    &= -\frac{\cos(2x) [\sin x \sin 2x \cos 2x+ 4\cos x(\sin 2x)^2
       + 4 \cos x (\cos 2x)^2]}{(\sin 2x)^3}\\
    &= -\frac{\cos(2x) [\sin x \sin 2x \cos 2x+ 4\cos x]}{(\sin 2x)^3}.
```

```
  \end{align*}
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
  Compute the derivative of the following function:
  \begin{equation*}
    f(x)=\cos((2x^2+3)^3)
  \end{equation*}
\tcblower
  The derivative is:
  \begin{align*}
    f'(x) &= \left( \cos((2x^2+3)^3) \right)'
    =-\sin((2x^2+3)^3) 3(2x^2+3)^2 2\cdot 2x\\
    &=-12x(2x^2+3)^2\sin((2x^2+3)^3).
  \end{align*}
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
  Compute the derivative of the following function:
  \begin{equation*}
    f(x)=(x^2+1)\sqrt{x^4+1}
  \end{equation*}
\tcblower
  The derivative is:
  \begin{align*}
    f'(x) &= \left( (x^2+1)\sqrt{x^4+1} \right)'
    = 2x\sqrt{x^4+1} + \frac{2x^3(x^2+1)}{\sqrt{x^4+1}}.
  \end{align*}
\end{exercise}

\tcbstoprecording
```

Exercise 8.1: Compute the derivative of the following function:

$$f(x) = \sin((\sin x)^2)$$

Solution on page 151

Exercise 8.2: It holds:

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\ln \mathtt{x}) = \frac{1}{x}.$$

Exercise 8.3: Compute the derivative of the following function:

$$f(x) = (\sin(\sin x))^2$$

Solution on page 151

Exercise 8.4: Compute the derivative of the following function:

$$f(x) = \sqrt{x^3 - 6x^2 + 2x}$$

Solution on page 151

Exercise 8.5: Compute the derivative of the following function:

$$f(x) = \left(\frac{2+3x}{1-2x}\right)^3$$

Solution on page 152

Exercise 8.6: Compute the derivative of the following function:

$$f(x) = \frac{\cos x}{(\tan 2x)^2}$$

Solution on page 152

Exercise 8.7: Compute the derivative of the following function:

$$f(x) = \cos((2x^2+3)^3)$$

Solution on page 152

Exercise 8.8: Compute the derivative of the following function:

$$f(x) = (x^2+1)\sqrt{x^4+1}$$

Solution on page 152

8.4 Example: Solutions

This concludes the example given in Section 8.3 on page 148. Now, the saved and recorded solutions are included.

```
\tcbinputrecords
```

Solution of Exercise 8.1 on page 150:
The derivative is:

$$f'(x) = \Big(\sin((\sin x)^2)\Big)' = \cos((\sin x)^2)2\sin x\cos x.$$

Solution of Exercise 8.3 on page 150:
The derivative is:

$$f'(x) = \Big((\sin(\sin x))^2\Big)' = 2\sin(\sin x)\cos(\sin x)\cos x.$$

Solution of Exercise 8.4 on page 150:
The derivative is:

$$f'(x) = \Big(\sqrt{x^3-6x^2+2x}\Big)' = \frac{3x^2-12x+2}{2\sqrt{x^3-6x^2+2x}}.$$

Solution of Exercise 8.5 on page 151:
The derivative is:

$$f'(x) = \left(\left(\frac{2+3x}{1-2x}\right)^3\right)' = 3\left(\frac{2+3x}{1-2x}\right)^2 \frac{(1-2x)3-(2+3x)(-2)}{(1-2x)^2} = \frac{21(2+3x)^2}{(1-2x)^4}.$$

Solution of Exercise 8.6 on page 151:
The derivative is:

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= \left(\frac{\cos x}{(\tan 2x)^2}\right)' = \left(\frac{\cos x(\cos 2x)^2}{(\sin 2x)^2}\right)' \\ &= \frac{(\sin 2x)^2[(-\sin x)(\cos 2x)^2 + (\cos x)4\cos 2x(-\sin 2x)] - \cos x(\cos 2x)^2 4\sin 2x\cos 2x}{(\sin 2x)^4} \\ &= -\frac{\cos(2x)[\sin x \sin 2x \cos 2x + 4\cos x(\sin 2x)^2 + 4\cos x(\cos 2x)^2]}{(\sin 2x)^3} \\ &= -\frac{\cos(2x)[\sin x \sin 2x \cos 2x + 4\cos x]}{(\sin 2x)^3}. \end{aligned}$$

Solution of Exercise 8.7 on page 151:
The derivative is:

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= \left(\cos((2x^2+3)^3)\right)' = -\sin((2x^2+3)^3)3(2x^2+3)^2 2\cdot 2x \\ &= -12x(2x^2+3)^2\sin((2x^2+3)^3). \end{aligned}$$

Solution of Exercise 8.8 on page 151:
The derivative is:

$$f'(x) = \left((x^2+1)\sqrt{x^4+1}\right)' = 2x\sqrt{x^4+1} + \frac{2x^3(x^2+1)}{\sqrt{x^4+1}}.$$

9 Technical Overview and Customization

This section provides a technical overview of the skin concept of `tcolorbox`. For most applications of `tcolorbox`, one will not need to know the bells and whistles described herein. You may proceed to Section 10 on page 168 where the customization options for most users are documented.

The following explanations also cover options and settings from the LIB skins library, see Section 10 on page 168.

9.1 Skins and Drawing Engines

From a technical point of view, a *skin* is a style definition for the appearance of a `tcolorbox`. The core package provides some additional option keys for skins but only two skins called `standard` → P. 228 and `standard jigsaw` → P. 229. The LIB skins library adds several more skins. To change to a skin, only one option from the core package has to be set.

`/tcb/skin`=⟨*name*⟩ (style, no default, initially `standard`)

Sets the current skin to ⟨*name*⟩. This is a style definition which sets all the following keys, i. e. for many use cases there is nothing more to do.

```
\tcbset{colback=Salmon!50!white,colframe=FireBrick!75!black,
  width=(\linewidth-8mm)/2,before=,after=\hfill,equal height group=ske}

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=My title]
  This is my content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer,adjusted title=My title]
  This is my content.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

`/tcb/skin first`=⟨*name*⟩ (style, no default, initially `standard`)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 and *is* broken actually, then the skin for the *first* part of the break sequence is set to ⟨*name*⟩, see Subsection 19.8 on page 414. Typically, this key is set by a `/tcb/skin`.

`/tcb/skin middle`=⟨*name*⟩ (style, no default, initially `standard`)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 and *is* broken actually, then the skin for the *middle* parts (if any) of the break sequence is set to ⟨*name*⟩, see Subsection 19.8 on page 414. Typically, this key is set by a `/tcb/skin`.

`/tcb/skin last`=⟨*name*⟩ (style, no default, initially `standard`)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 and *is* broken actually, then the skin for the *last* part of the break sequence is set to ⟨*name*⟩, see Subsection 19.8 on page 414. Typically, this key is set by a `/tcb/skin`.

`/tcb/graphical environment`=⟨*name*⟩ (no default, initially `pgfpicture`)

Sets the graphical environment for the `tcolorbox` to ⟨*name*⟩. Feasible values are `pgfpicture` and `tikzpicture` or environments which inherit from one of these two. This key is set by a `/tcb/skin` → P. 153 and may seldom be used directly.

The skin of a `tcolorbox` is drawn by up to four *engines*. Afterwards, the text content is drawn which is not part of a skin. The four steps are:

1. The *frame* of the box, drawn by `/tcb/frame engine`.
2. The *interior* of the box. The interior of a box with title is drawn differently from a box without title. `/tcb/interior titled engine` or `/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155 is used to draw the interior.
3. The *segmentation* (line) of the box, if there is a lower part; drawn by `/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155.
4. The *title area* of the box, if there is a title and `/tcb/title filled` → P. 32 is set to `true`; drawn by `/tcb/title engine` → P. 155.

`/tcb/frame engine`=⟨*name*⟩ (no default, initially `standard`)

Sets the *frame* drawing engine for a box to ⟨*name*⟩. Typically, this key is set by a `/tcb/skin` → P. 153. Feasible values for ⟨*name*⟩ are:

- `standard`: the original code from the core package,
- `path`: a `tikz` path which is controlled by `/tcb/frame style` → P. 168,
- `pathjigsaw`: a `tikz` path which is controlled by `/tcb/frame style` → P. 168,
- `pathfirst`: a `tikz` path which is controlled by `/tcb/frame style` → P. 168,
- `pathfirstjigsaw`: a `tikz` path which is controlled by `/tcb/frame style` → P. 168,
- `pathmiddle`: a `tikz` path which is controlled by `/tcb/frame style` → P. 168,
- `pathmiddlejigsaw`: a `tikz` path which is controlled by `/tcb/frame style` → P. 168,
- `pathlast`: a `tikz` path which is controlled by `/tcb/frame style` → P. 168,
- `pathlastjigsaw`: a `tikz` path which is controlled by `/tcb/frame style` → P. 168,
- `freelance`: deprecated.
- `spartan`: a quite spartan code.
- `empty`: draw nothing.

`/tcb/interior titled engine`=⟨*name*⟩ (no default, initially `standard`)

Sets the *interior* drawing engine for a titled box to ⟨*name*⟩. Typically, this key is set by a `/tcb/skin` → P. 153. Feasible values for ⟨*name*⟩ are:

- `standard`: the original code from the core package,
- `path`: a `tikz` path which is controlled by `/tcb/interior style` → P. 169,
- `pathfirst`: a `tikz` path which is controlled by `/tcb/interior style` → P. 169,
- `pathmiddle`: a `tikz` path which is controlled by `/tcb/interior style` → P. 169,
- `pathlast`: a `tikz` path which is controlled by `/tcb/interior style` → P. 169,
- `freelance`: deprecated.
- `spartan`: a quite spartan code.
- `empty`: draw nothing.

`/tcb/interior engine`=⟨*name*⟩ (no default, initially `standard`)

Sets the *interior* drawing engine for an untitled box to ⟨*name*⟩. Typically, this key is set by a `/tcb/skin` → P. 153. Feasible values for ⟨*name*⟩ are:

- `standard`: the original code from the core package,
- `path`: a `tikz` path which is controlled by `/tcb/interior style` → P. 169,
- `pathfirst`: a `tikz` path which is controlled by `/tcb/interior style` → P. 169,
- `pathmiddle`: a `tikz` path which is controlled by `/tcb/interior style` → P. 169,
- `pathlast`: a `tikz` path which is controlled by `/tcb/interior style` → P. 169,
- `freelance`: deprecated.
- `spartan`: a quite spartan code.
- `empty`: draw nothing.

`/tcb/segmentation engine`=⟨*name*⟩ (no default, initially `standard`)

Sets the *segmentation* (line) drawing engine for a box to ⟨*name*⟩. Typically, this key is set by a `/tcb/skin` → P. 153. Feasible values for ⟨*name*⟩ are:

- `standard`: the original code from the core package,
- `path`: a `tikz` path which is controlled by `/tcb/segmentation style` → P. 171,
- `freelance`: deprecated.
- `spartan`: a quite spartan code.
- `empty`: draw nothing.

`/tcb/title engine`=⟨*name*⟩ (no default, initially `standard`)

Sets the *title area* drawing engine for a titled box to ⟨*name*⟩. Typically, this key is set by a `/tcb/skin` → P. 153. Feasible values for ⟨*name*⟩ are:

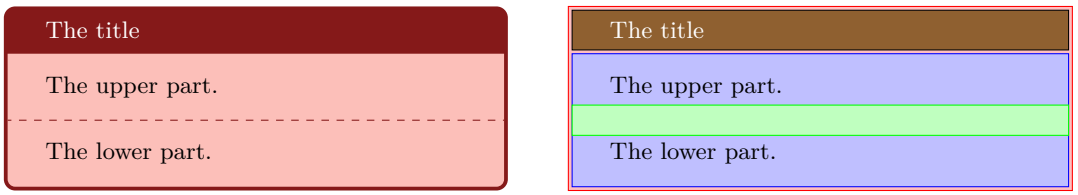
- `standard`: the original code from the core package,
- `path`: a `tikz` path which is controlled by `/tcb/title style` → P. 171,
- `pathfirst`: a `tikz` path which is controlled by `/tcb/title style` → P. 171,
- `pathmiddle`: a `tikz` path which is controlled by `/tcb/title style` → P. 171,
- `pathlast`: a `tikz` path which is controlled by `/tcb/title style` → P. 171,
- `freelance`: deprecated.
- `spartan`: a quite spartan code.
- `empty`: draw nothing.

After an engine is set to an initializing value, the resulting graphical code can be changed using code option keys, see Section 9.2 on page 157.

`/tcb/geometry nodes=true|false` (default `true`, initially `false`)

If set to `true`, up to four `tikz` nodes are defined for a `tcolorbox` which are named `frame`, `interior`, `segmentation`, and `title`. These nodes describe the boundaries of the equally named parts of a `tcolorbox`. They are used by most engines based on Ti*k*Z. Typically, this key is set automatically by a `/tcb/skin` → P. 153.

```
\tcbset{colback=Salmon!50!white,colframe=FireBrick!75!black,
  width=(\linewidth-8mm)/2,before=,after=\hfill,equal height group=geon}

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=The title]
  The upper part.\tcblower The lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,adjusted title=The title,
  frame code={\path[draw=red,fill=red!25]
      (frame.south west) rectangle (frame.north east);},
  interior titled code={\path[draw=blue,fill=blue!25]
      (interior.south west) rectangle (interior.north east);},
  segmentation code={\path[draw=green,fill=green!25]
      (segmentation.south west) rectangle (segmentation.north east);},
  title code={\path[draw=black,fill=brown!75!black]
      (title.south west) rectangle (title.north east);}]
  The upper part.\tcblower The lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



9.2 Code Option Keys

The following code options are applicable for all skins. The used ⟨*graphical code*⟩ can be any `pgf` code. For all skins with exception of `standard` → P. 228 and `standard jigsaw` → P. 229, the ⟨*graphical code*⟩ can also be any Ti*k*Z code.

`/tcb/frame code=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (code, default from `standard`)

The given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is used for drawing the *frame* of the box.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,frame code={
  \foreach \n in {north east,north west,south east,south west}
  {\path [fill=red!75!black] (interior.\n) circle (3mm); } }]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is the lower part.

`/tcb/frame empty` (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for setting `/tcb/frame code` to empty. This option removes the drawing of the frame. Alternatively, use `/tcb/frame hidden` → P. 169.

`/tcb/interior titled code=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (code, default from `standard`)

The given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is used for drawing the *interior* of the box, if the box comes with a title.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,interior titled code={
  \path[draw=red!5!white,line width=5mm,line cap=round]
    ([xshift=3mm,yshift=-3mm]interior.north west)
    --([xshift=-3mm,yshift=3mm]interior.south east)
    ([xshift=3mm,yshift=3mm]interior.south west)
    --([xshift=-3mm,yshift=-3mm]interior.north east);}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is the lower part.

`/tcb/interior titled empty` (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for setting `/tcb/interior titled code` to empty. This option removes the drawing of the untitled interior. Alternatively, use `/tcb/interior hidden` → P. 170.

`/tcb/interior code=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (code, default from `standard`)

The given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is used for drawing the *interior* of the box, if the box is without a title.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,interior code={
  \path[draw=red!5!white,line width=5mm,line cap=round]
    ([xshift=3mm,yshift=-3mm]interior.north west)
    --([xshift=-3mm,yshift=3mm]interior.south east)
    ([xshift=3mm,yshift=3mm]interior.south west)
    --([xshift=-3mm,yshift=-3mm]interior.north east);}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is the lower part.

`/tcb/interior empty` (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for setting `/tcb/interior code` to empty. This option removes the drawing of the interior. Alternatively, use `/tcb/interior hidden` → P. 170.

`/tcb/segmentation code=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (code, default from `standard`)

The given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is used for drawing the *segmentation* area of the box.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,segmentation code={
  \path[top color=red!5!white,bottom color=red!5!white,middle color=blue]
  (segmentation.south west) rectangle (segmentation.north east);}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is the lower part.

`/tcb/segmentation empty` (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for setting `/tcb/segmentation code` to empty. This option removes the drawing of the segmentation line. Alternatively, use `/tcb/segmentation hidden` → P. 171.

`/tcb/title code=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (code, default from `standard`)

The given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is used for drawing the *title* area of the box.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  coltitle=black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,title code={
  \path[draw=yellow,solid,decorate,line width=2mm,
    decoration={coil,aspect=0,segment length=10.1mm}]
    ([xshift=1mm]title.west) -- ([xshift=-1mm]title.east);}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is the lower part.

`/tcb/title empty` (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for setting `/tcb/title code` to empty. This option removes the drawing of the title area. Alternatively, use `/tcb/title hidden` → P. 172.

9.3 Subskins

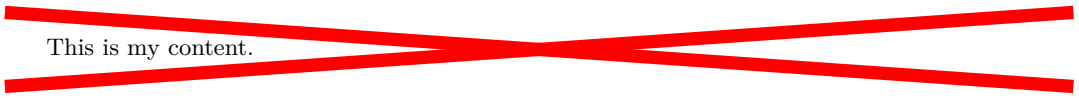
A subskin is a new /tcb/skin → P. 153 based on an existing skin which is extended or changed.

> **!** Never use geometry settings or bounding box options inside a subskin definition! If one skin is replaced by another skin, the overall bounding box should stay constant. Especially, if a skin is used for a breakable box, unpredictable and unpleasant results could arise otherwise. If you want to change the geometry also, use an additional style. See the skin beamer → P. 257 and the style /tcb/beamer → P. 257 as pattern.

\tcbsubskin{⟨*name*⟩}{⟨*base skin*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩}

Creates a new skin ⟨*name*⟩ which inherits all properties of an existing ⟨*base skin*⟩ plus the given ⟨*options*⟩. The new skin ⟨*name*⟩ can be used as value for the keys /tcb/skin → P. 153, /tcb/skin first → P. 153, /tcb/skin middle → P. 153, and /tcb/skin last → P. 153. As ⟨*base skin*⟩, one can take standard → P. 228, empty → P. 264, enhanced → P. 230, or any skin from the LIB skins library, see Section 10 on page 168.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\tcbsubskin{mycross}{empty}{frame code={%
  \draw[red,line width=5pt] (frame.south west)--(frame.north east);
  \draw[red,line width=5pt] (frame.north west)--(frame.south east);},
  skin first=mycross,skin middle=mycross,skin last=mycross }

\begin{tcolorbox}[skin=mycross]
  This is my content.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



/tcb/skin first is subskin of={⟨*base skin*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩} (no default, initially unset)

Creates a new unnamed skin which inherits all properties of an existing ⟨*base skin*⟩ plus the given ⟨*options*⟩. This skin is set as /tcb/skin first → P. 153.
See a detailed example on page 270.

/tcb/skin middle is subskin of={⟨*base skin*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩} (no default, initially unset)

Creates a new unnamed skin which inherits all properties of an existing ⟨*base skin*⟩ plus the given ⟨*options*⟩. This skin is set as /tcb/skin middle → P. 153.
See a detailed example on page 270.

/tcb/skin last is subskin of={⟨*base skin*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩} (no default, initially unset)

Creates a new unnamed skin which inherits all properties of an existing ⟨*base skin*⟩ plus the given ⟨*options*⟩. This skin is set as /tcb/skin last → P. 153.
See a detailed example on page 270.

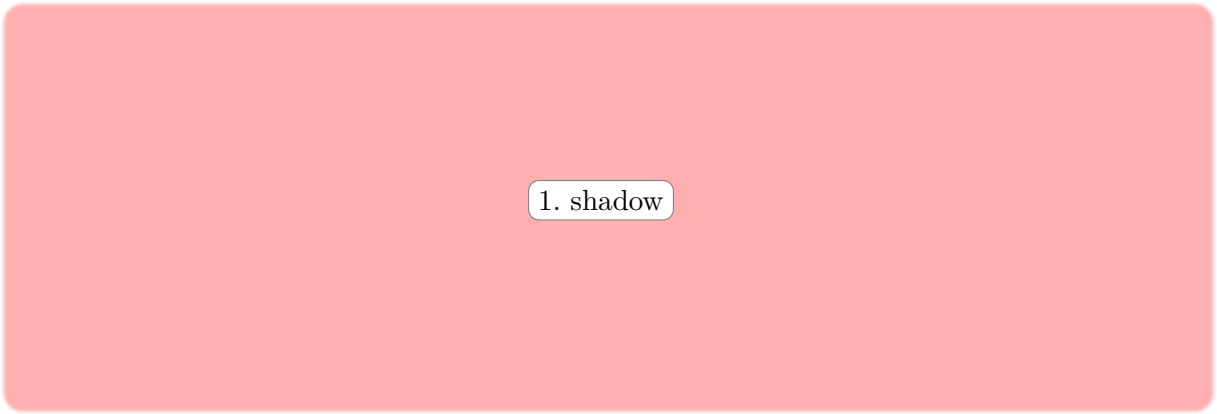
9.4 Drawing Scheme

Depending on the complexity of a `tcolorbox` definition, the resulting box is drawn in a more or less complex series of steps.

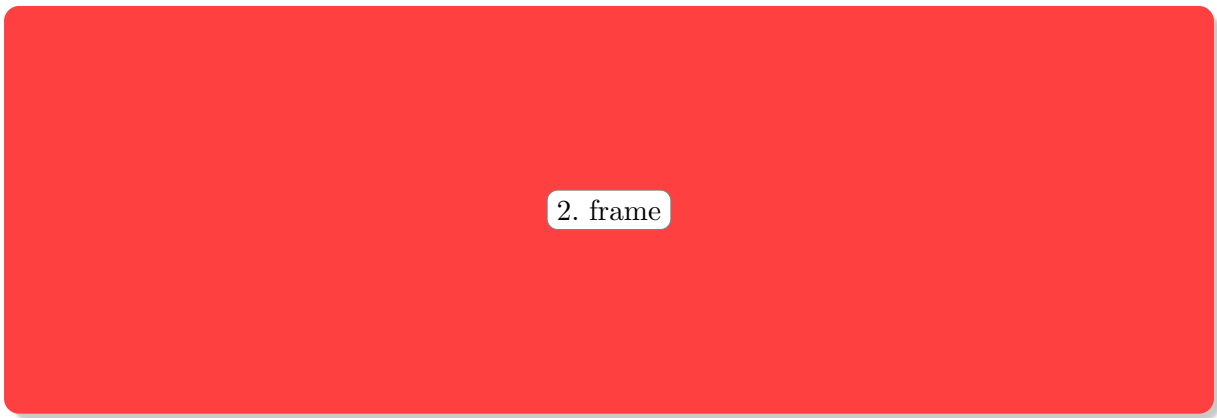
To document and demonstrate these drawing steps, we consider the following box definition:

```
\newtcolorbox{testbox}[1][]{enhanced,title=Test Box,
  boxrule=1mm,titlerule=0.5mm,colframe=blue!50!black,
  interior style={top color=blue!20!green!50!white,bottom color=blue!20!yellow!50!white},
  colbacktitle=blue!50!green!90!white,segmentation style={solid},
  fonttitle=\bfseries,drop fuzzy shadow,borderline={0.3mm}{0.35mm}{yellow!50!white},
  underlay={\path[fill image opacity=0.15,fill image scale=0.9,
    fill stretch picture={\draw[blue,line width=2mm] circle (1);}]
    (interior.south west) rectangle (interior.north east);},
  watermark text={Watermark},watermark color={green!20!white},
  finish={\begin{tcbclipframe}
    \path[bottom color=black,top color=black!50!white,opacity=0.1]
      (frame.south west) -- (frame.south east) -- (frame.north east) -- cycle;
    \path[top color=white,bottom color=black!50!white,opacity=0.1]
      (frame.south west) -- (frame.north east) -- (frame.north west) -- cycle;
    \end{tcbclipframe}},#1}
```

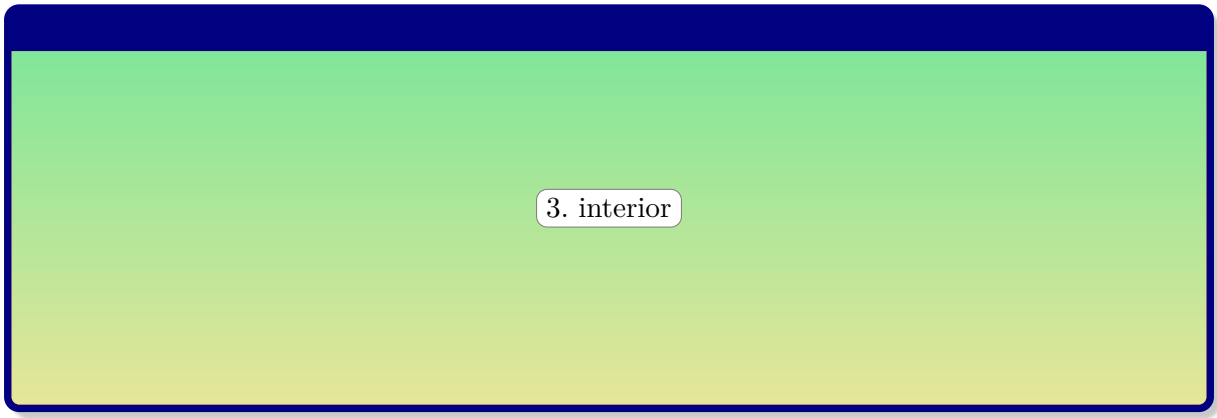
For this definition, we get the maximal number of drawing steps:



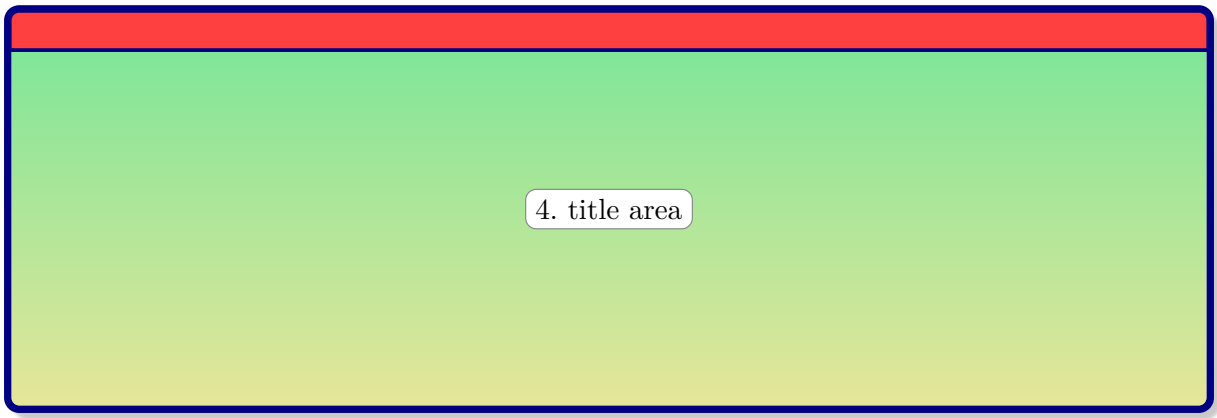
- Section 10.6 on page 203.



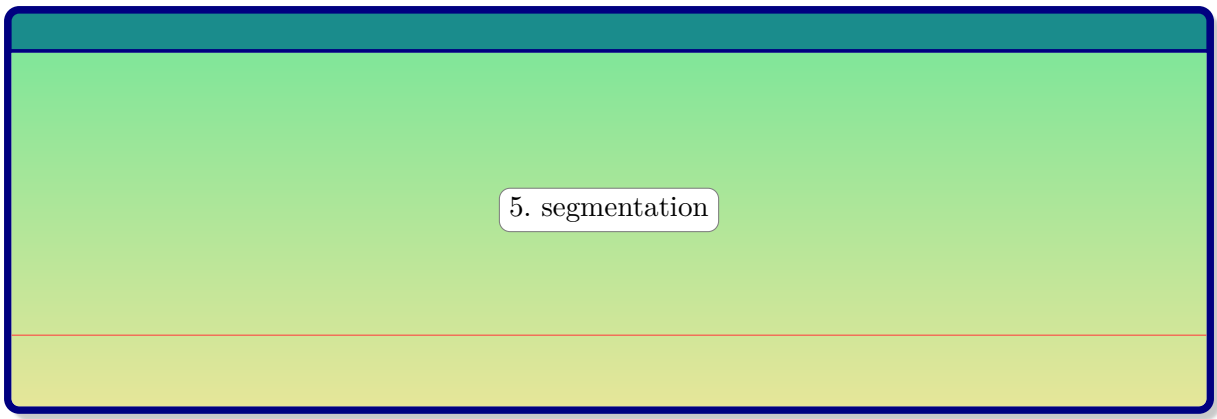
- `/tcb/colframe` → P. 32, `/tcb/opacityframe` → P. 56
- `/tcb/frame code` → P. 157
- `/tcb/frame style` → P. 168



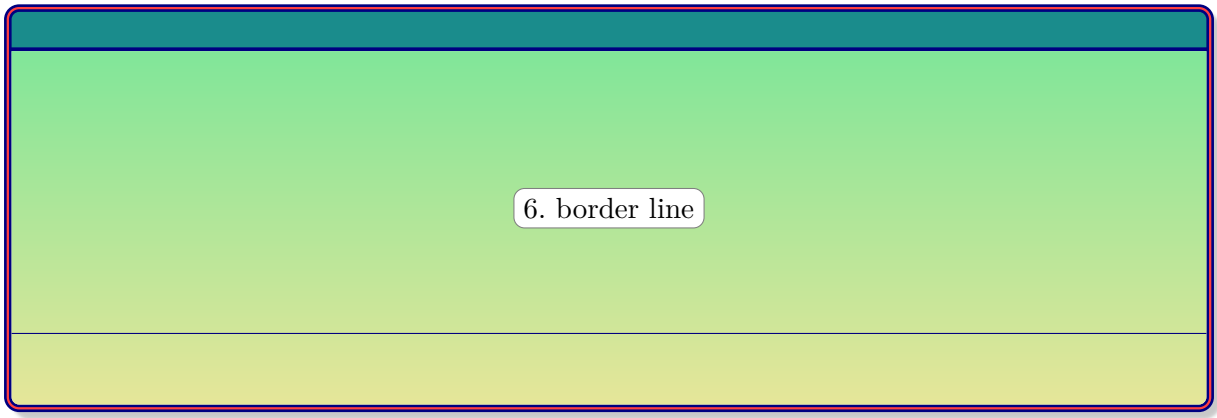
- /tcb/colback → P. 32, /tcb/opacityback → P. 56
- /tcb/interior code → P. 158, /tcb/interior titled code → P. 157
- /tcb/interior style → P. 169



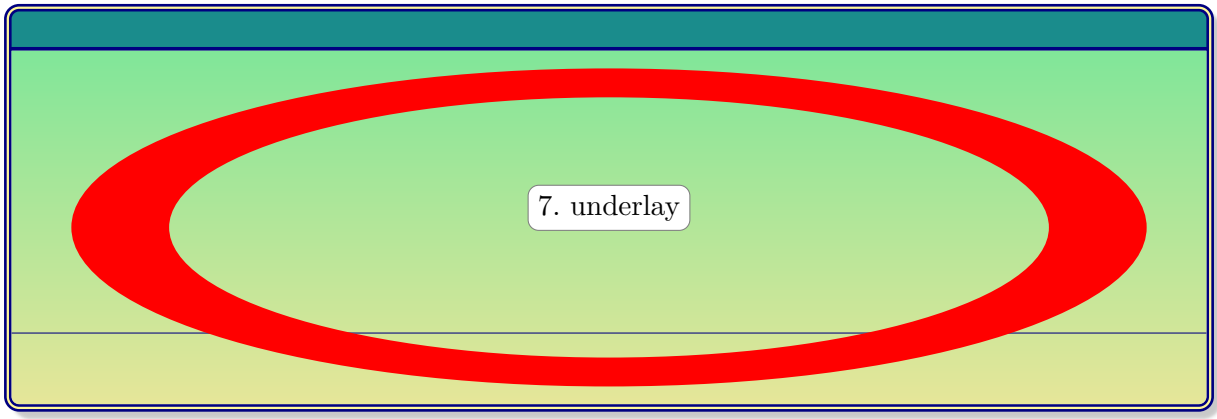
- /tcb/colbacktitle → P. 32, /tcb/opacitybacktitle → P. 56
- /tcb/title code → P. 159
- /tcb/title style → P. 171



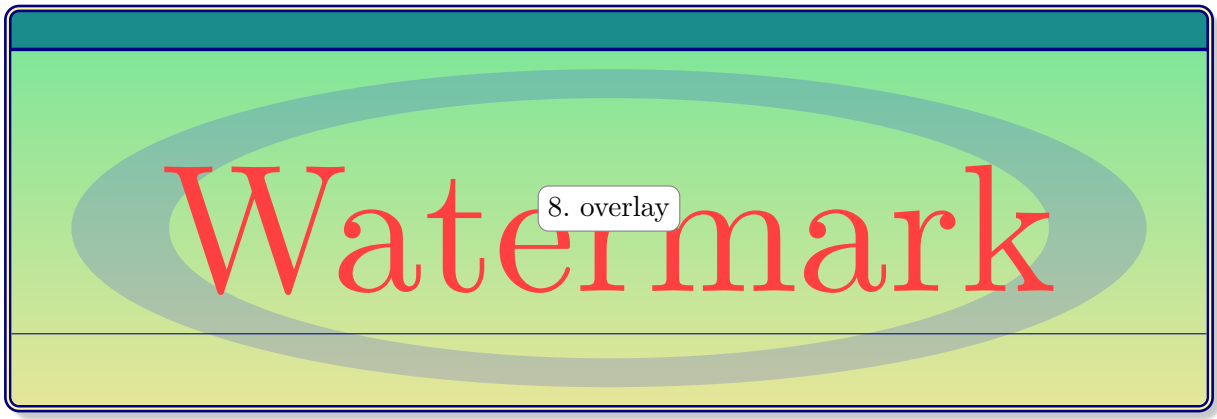
- /tcb/lower separated → P. 30
- /tcb/segmentation code → P. 158
- /tcb/segmentation style → P. 171



- Section 10.5 on page 198



- Section 10.2 on page 175
- Section 10.8 on page 216



- Section 4.12 on page 79
- Section 10.3 on page 186

Test Box

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. S[illegible] massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

9. text content

Lower part

- `/tcb/colupper` → P. 33, `/tcb/collower` → P. 33, `/tcb/coltitle` → P. 33
- `/tcb/fontupper` → P. 34, `/tcb/fontlower` → P. 34, `/tcb/fonttitle` → P. 34
- `/tcb/opacityupper` → P. 57, `/tcb/opacitylower` → P. 57, `/tcb/opacitytitle` → P. 57

Test Box

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. S[illegible] ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

10. finish

Lower part

- Section 10.9 on page 218

All together, the box is drawn:

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\begin{testbox}
\lipsum[2]
\tcblower
Lower part
\end{testbox}
```

Test Box

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

Lower part

9.5 Color Names

N 2019-01-18

Color settings for a `tcolorbox` are saved into named colors which may be used inside a box, e.g. for an overlay. These color names are

- `tcbcolframe` set by `/tcb/colframe` → P. 32 (frame color)
- `tcbcolback` set by `/tcb/colback` → P. 32 (background color)
- `tcbcolbacktitle` set by `/tcb/colbacktitle` → P. 32 (background color of the title)
- `tcbcolbacklower` set by `/tcb/colbacklower` → P. 244 (skin dependend background color of the lower part; needs LIB skins to be loaded)
- `tcbcolupper` set by `/tcb/colupper` → P. 33 (text color upper part)
- `tcbcollower` set by `/tcb/collower` → P. 33 (text color lower part)
- `tcbcoltitle` set by `/tcb/coltitle` → P. 33 (text color title)

```
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Color names,
    colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!5,
    colbacktitle=blue!50,colupper=red!35!black]
  \foreach \name in {tcbcolframe,tcbcolback,tcbcolbacktitle,tcbcolbacklower,
    tcbcolupper,tcbcollower,tcbcoltitle}
  {\tikz\path[draw,fill=\name]
    (0,0) rectangle node[right=4mm,font=\ttfamily]{\name} (0.8,0.8);\par}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Color names

tcbcolframe

tcbcolback

tcbcolbacktitle

tcbcolbacklower

tcbcolupper

tcbcollower

tcbcoltitle

9.6 Useful Properties

The following macros describe certain *properties* which may be used for the drawing scheme, see Section 9.4 on page 161. Sometimes, they are even available inside the box content. All of them are considered to be *read-only* and should never be redefined by the user.

N 2016-02-16 **\tcbheightspace**

If the height of a `tcolorbox` is not the natural height, the space difference between the forced and the natural size is hold by `\tcbheightspace`. This macro is not usable inside the box content, but for skins or inside `/tcb/underlay` → P. 216, `/tcb/overlay` → P. 79, etc. If such a space information is needed inside the box content, see `/tcb/space to` → P. 64 instead.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\newtcolorbox{testbox}[2][]{enhanced,size=fbox,
  colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=#2,
  underlay={\node[above,inner sep=3pt] at (interior.south){%
    \includegraphics[width=\tcbtextwidth,height=\tcbheightspace-3pt]{goldshade.png}};
    },
  #1}
\begin{testbox}{3cm}
  This is my box. The space is filled with a picture.
\end{testbox}
\begin{testbox}{2cm}
  This is my box. The space is filled with a picture.
\end{testbox}
```

This is my box. The space is filled with a picture.

This is my box. The space is filled with a picture.

N 2016-02-16 **\tcbtextwidth**

This property describes the box content width.

- If there also is a lower part, it describes the width of the upper part.
- For `/tcb/sidebyside` → P. 134 boxes, it describes the combined text width plus segmentation.
- This property can be used inside the box content text with exception of `/tcb/fit` → P. 454 boxes.
- `\tcbtextwidth` can be used for all box types for skins or inside `/tcb/underlay` → P. 216, `/tcb/overlay` → P. 79, etc.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue!75!black]
  Inside a box: \tcbtextwidth\ (=\the\linewidth).
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Inside a box: 370.74823pt (=370.74823pt).

N 2016-02-16 **\tcbtextheight**

This property describes the designated box content height. If the box is larger than the natural height, the actual content will be smaller than \tcbtextheight.

- For boxes with a fixed /tcb/height → P. 58, this property can be used inside the box content text. For other boxes, it denotes 0pt inside the box content.
- \tcbtextheight can be used for all box types for skins or inside /tcb/underlay → P. 216, /tcb/overlay → P. 79, etc.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,colframe=blue!75!black,
    underlay={\node[left,red] at (frame.east) {Here: \tcbtextheight};}]
  Inside a box with natural height: \tcbtextheight.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,colframe=blue!75!black,height=1cm,
    underlay={\node[left,red] at (frame.east) {Here: \tcbtextheight};}]
  Inside a box with fixed height: \tcbtextheight.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Inside a box with natural height: 0pt. Here: 7.95pt

Inside a box with fixed height: 8.5359pt. Here: 8.5359pt

N 2017-04-25 **\tcbsegmentstate**

This macro contains 0, 1, or 2. It is set for every unbroken box and every broken partial box with the following meaning:

- 0: The current (partial) box contains only an upper part.
- 1: The current (partial) box contains an upper and a lower part. The segmentation node can be used for positioning.
- 2: The current (partial) box contains only a lower part. This can only be true for parts of breakable boxes.

Skins like bicolor → P. 242 use this property to paint the (partial) boxes.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{skins,raster}
\begin{tcbraster}[raster equal height,enhanced,
    watermark text=\tcbsegmentstate]
  \begin{tcolorbox}Upper part\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}Upper part\tcblower Lower part\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
```

Upper part 0

Upper part

Lower part 1

10 Library LIB skins

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```
\tcbuselibrary{skins}
```

This also loads the package `tikz` [24]. Typically but not necessarily, the following skins use `tikz` instead of `pgf`.

In the following, general settings and options of the library are documented. The actual catalog of skins is found in Section 11 on page 226.

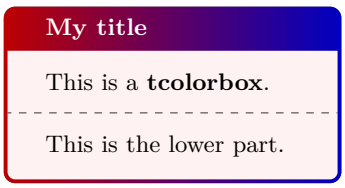
10.1 Style Option Keys

The following style options are applicable for all skins which use engines of type `path`, `pathfirst`, `pathmiddle`, or `pathlast`. Especially, the skin `enhanced` → P. 230 supports *all* of them and `standard` → P. 228 *none*.

`/tcb/frame style`=⟨`tikz` *keys*⟩ (style, no default)

The ⟨`tikz` *keys*⟩ are used inside the `tikz` path command for drawing the *frame* of the box. This option is available if the `/tcb/frame engine` → P. 154 is set to `path`, `pathfirst`, `pathmiddle`, or `pathlast`. It is *not* available for `standard`.

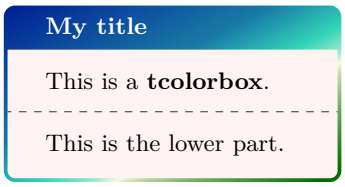
```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  frame style={left color=red!75!black,
               right color=blue!75!black}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/frame style image`=⟨*file name*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Fills the frame with an external image referenced by ⟨*file name*⟩.

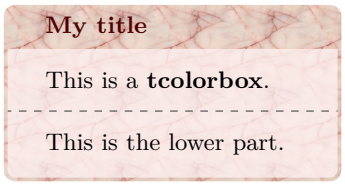
```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  frame style image=blueshade.png]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/frame style tile={`⟨*graphics options*⟩`}{`⟨*file name*⟩`}` (no default, initially unset)

Fills the frame with a tile pattern based on an external image referenced by ⟨*file name*⟩. The ⟨*graphics options*⟩ are given to the underlying `\includegraphics` command.

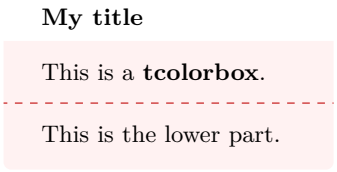
```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,coltitle=red!30!black,
  opacityback=0.75,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  frame style tile={width=1cm}{pink_marble.png}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/frame hidden` (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for `frame style={draw=none,fill=none}`. Depending on the skin, this option switches off the drawing of the frame. Alternatively, use `/tcb/frame empty` → P. 157.

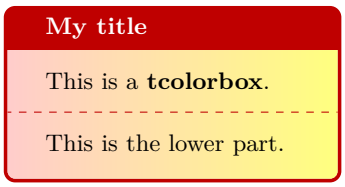
```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,coltitle=black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  frame hidden]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/interior style=`⟨`tikz` *keys*⟩ (style, no default)

The ⟨`tikz` *keys*⟩ are used inside the `tikz` path command for drawing the *interior* of the box. They are used for the titled and for the untitled version as well.
This option is available if the `/tcb/interior titled engine` → P. 154 or `/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155 is set to `path`, `pathfirst`, `pathmiddle`, or `pathlast`. It is *not* available for `standard`.

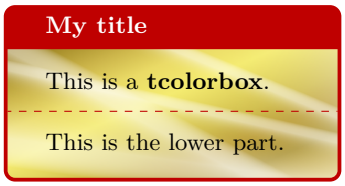
```
\tcbset{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  interior style={left color=red!20!white,
                  right color=yellow!50!white}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/interior style image=`⟨*file name*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Fills the interior with an external image referenced by ⟨*file name*⟩.

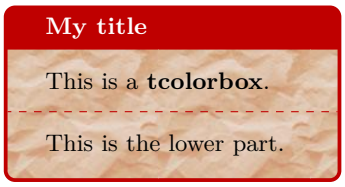
```
\tcbset{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  interior style image=goldshade.png]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/interior style tile=`{⟨*graphics options*⟩}{⟨*file name*⟩} (no default, initially unset)

Fills the interior with a tile pattern based on an external image referenced by ⟨*file name*⟩. The ⟨*graphics options*⟩ are given to the underlying `\includegraphics` command.

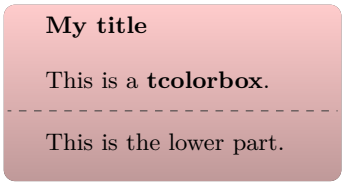
```
\tcbset{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  interior style tile={width=2cm}{crinklepaper.png}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/interior hidden` (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for `interior style={draw=none,fill=none}`. Depending on the skin, this option switches off the drawing of the interior. Alternatively, use `/tcb/interior empty` → P. 158 and/or `/tcb/interior titled empty` → P. 157.

```
\tcbset{frame style={top color=red!20!white,
  bottom color=red!20!white!75!black},
  fonttitle=\bfseries,coltitle=black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  interior hidden]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

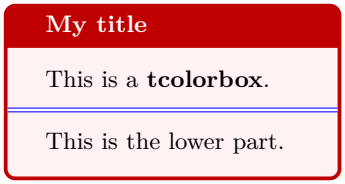


`/tcb/segmentation style=`⟨`tikz` *keys*⟩ (style, no default)

The ⟨`tikz` *keys*⟩ are used inside the `tikz` path command for drawing the *segmentation* line of the box.

This option is available if the `/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155 is set to `path`. It is *not* available for `standard`.

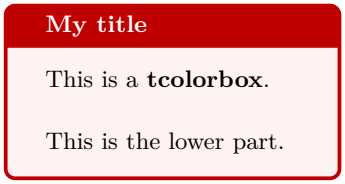
```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  segmentation style={double=white,draw=blue,
                  double distance=1pt,solid}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/segmentation hidden` (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for `segmentation style={draw=none,fill=none}`. Depending on the skin, this option switches off the drawing of the segmentation line. See also `/tcb/lower separated` → P. 30 which has the same effect for most skins. Alternatively, use `/tcb/segmentation empty` → P. 158.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,
  enhanced,segmentation hidden]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

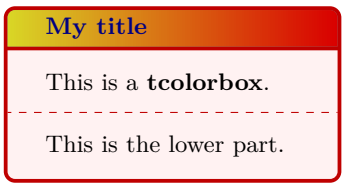


`/tcb/title style=`⟨`tikz` *keys*⟩ (style, no default)

The ⟨`tikz` *keys*⟩ are used inside the `tikz` path command for drawing the *title area* of the box.

This option is available if the `/tcb/title engine` → P. 155 is set to `path`, `pathfirst`, `pathmiddle`, or `pathlast`. It is *not* available for `standard`.

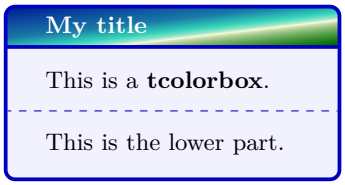
```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  coltitle=blue!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  title style={left color=blue!15!yellow,
               right color=red!85!black}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/title style image=`⟨*file name*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Fills the title area with an external image referenced by ⟨*file name*⟩.

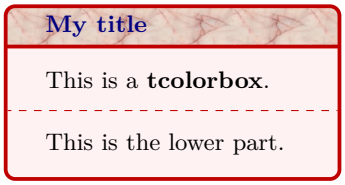
```
\tcbset{colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  title style image=blueshade.png]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/title style tile=`{⟨*graphics options*⟩}{⟨*file name*⟩} (no default, initially unset)

Fills the title area with a tile pattern based on an external image referenced by ⟨*file name*⟩. The ⟨*graphics options*⟩ are given to the underlying `\includegraphics` command.

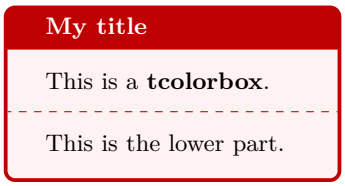
```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  coltitle=blue!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  title style tile={width=1cm}{pink_marble.png}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/title hidden` (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for `title style={draw=none,fill=none}`. Depending on the skin, this option switches off the drawing of the title background. See also `/tcb/title filled` → P. 32 for a similar effect. Alternatively, use `/tcb/title empty` → P. 159.

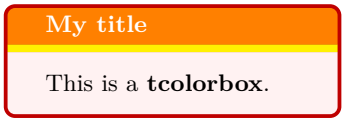
```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,
  enhanced,title hidden]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



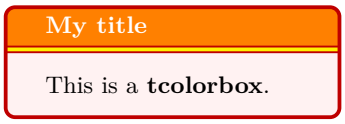
N 2015-01-14 **/tcb/titlerule style=⟨tikz *keys*⟩** (style, no default)

The ⟨tikz *keys*⟩ are used to draw a title rule, i.e. a rule below the optional title. The width of the rule is controlled by /tcb/titlerule→ P. 41. It may be set directly to a smaller width to create mixed effects with the standard rule. This option is implemented as an /tcb/underlay→ P. 216. Thus, it is not available for standard→ P. 228 and standard jigsaw→ P. 229, but for all other skins, e.g. enhanced→ P. 230. As an underlay, this option can be used multiple times and is removed by /tcb/no underlay→ P. 216.

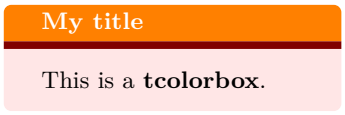
```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  colbacktitle=red!50!yellow,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title=My title,
  titlerule=1mm,
  titlerule style=yellow  ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



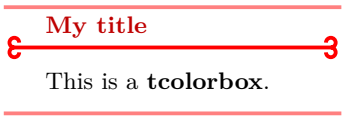

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  colbacktitle=red!50!yellow,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title=My title,
  titlerule=1mm,
  titlerule style={yellow,line width=0.5mm}  ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```




```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,
  colback=red!10!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  colbacktitle=red!50!yellow,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  frame hidden,
  title=My title,
  boxrule=0pt,titlerule=1mm,
  titlerule style=red!50!black  ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```




```
%\usetikzlibrary{arrows.meta}
\begin{tcolorbox}[empty,
  coltitle=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  borderline horizontal={0.5mm}{0pt}{red!50!white},
  title=My title,
  titlerule style={red,
    arrows = {Hooks[arc=270]-Hooks[arc=270]}} ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

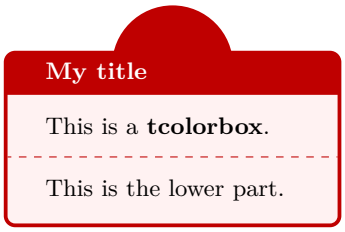


The combined Ti*k*Z style applied to frame, interior, and title background can used by authors in customizing code.

/tikz/tcb fill frame (style, no value)

This is a Ti*k*Z style which is finally applied to the *frame* of the box.

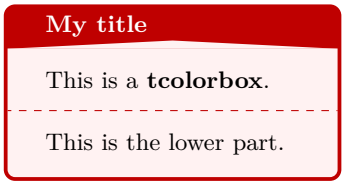
```
% \tcbuselibrary{hooks}
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  frame code app={\path[tcb fill frame]
    ([yshift=-2mm]frame.north)
        circle (8mm); }  }

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



/tikz/tcb fill interior (style, no value)

This is a Ti*k*Z style which is finally applied to the *interior* of the box.

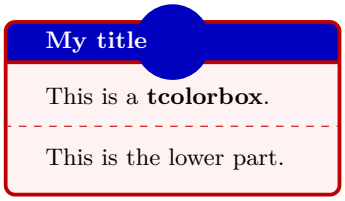
```
% \tcbuselibrary{hooks}
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  interior titled code app={\path[tcb fill interior]
      ([yshift=-0.1pt]interior.north east)
    --([yshift=3pt]interior.north)
    --([yshift=-0.1pt]interior.north west)
    --cycle;}  }

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



/tikz/tcb fill title (style, no value)

This is a Ti*k*Z style which is finally applied to the *title area* of the box.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{hooks}
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  colbacktitle=blue!75!black,
  title code app={\path[tcb fill title]
    (title) circle (5mm); }  }

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



10.2 Boxed Title Option Keys

10.2.1 Boxed Title Placement

The following options place the title text into an own \tcbox→P. 14. This boxed title can be customized independently from the main box using /tcb/boxed title style→P. 180. The placement can be influenced by ⟨*boxtitle options*⟩.

/tcb/attach boxed title to top left={⟨*boxtitle options*⟩} (style, default empty)

The title is boxed with a \tcbox→P. 14 and attached to the top left corner of the main box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  attach boxed title to top left]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

N 2021-07-30 /tcb/attach boxed title to top text left={⟨*boxtitle options*⟩} (style, default empty)

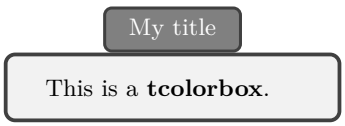
The title is boxed with a \tcbox→P. 14 and attached to the top left corner of the main box and shifted to match title text and box text.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  attach boxed title to top text left]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

/tcb/attach boxed title to top center={⟨*boxtitle options*⟩} (style, default empty)

The title is boxed with a \tcbox→P. 14 and attached to the top of the main box.

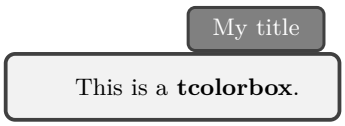
```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  attach boxed title to top center]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



N 2021-07-30 /tcb/attach boxed title to top text right={⟨*boxtitle options*⟩} (style, default empty)

The title is boxed with a \tcbox→P. 14 and attached to the top right corner of the main box and shifted to match title text and box text.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  halign=right,
  attach boxed title to top text right]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



/tcb/attach boxed title to top right={⟨*boxtitle options*⟩} (style, default empty)

The title is boxed with a \tcbox→P. 14 and attached to the top right corner of the main box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  attach boxed title to top right]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

`/tcb/attach boxed title to bottom left={⟨boxtitle options⟩}` (style, default empty)

The title is boxed with a `\tcbox` → P. 14 and attached to the bottom left corner of the main box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  attach boxed title to bottom left]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

N 2021-07-30 `/tcb/attach boxed title to bottom text left={⟨boxtitle options⟩}` (style, default empty)

The title is boxed with a `\tcbox` → P. 14 and attached to the bottom left corner of the main box and shifted to match title text and box text. Note that this matches the *upper* part, even, if there is a *lower* part.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  attach boxed title to bottom text left]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

`/tcb/attach boxed title to bottom center={⟨boxtitle options⟩}` (style, default empty)

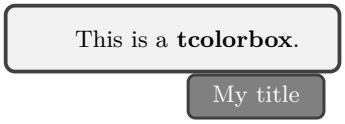
The title is boxed with a `\tcbox` → P. 14 and attached to the bottom of the main box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  attach boxed title to bottom center]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

N 2021-07-30 `/tcb/attach boxed title to bottom text right={⟨boxtitle options⟩}` (style, default empty)

The title is boxed with a `\tcbox` → P. 14 and attached to the bottom right corner of the main box and shifted to match title text and box text. Note that this matches the *upper* part, even, if there is a *lower* part.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  halign=right,
  attach boxed title to bottom text right]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/attach boxed title to bottom right={⟨boxtitle options⟩}` (style, default empty)

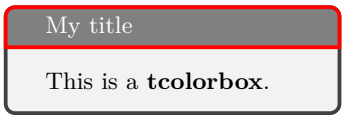
The title is boxed with a `\tcbox` → P. 14 and attached to the bottom right corner of the main box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  attach boxed title to bottom right]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

N 2016-02-26 **/tcb/attach boxed title to top={⟨*boxtitle options*⟩}** (style, default empty)

This is a convenient style to mimic a standard title. It uses /tcb/attach boxed title to top center → P. 175, /tcb/minipage boxed title → P. 184, and sizes the boxed title to match the base box.

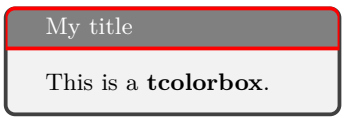
```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  attach boxed title to top,
  boxed title style={colframe=red}]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



N 2016-02-26 **/tcb/attach boxed title to top*={⟨*boxtitle options*⟩}** (style, default empty)

In contrast to /tcb/attach boxed title to top, this style uses smaller left and right rules to avoid previewer glitches. Typically, one would not use different colors for the frame as in the example below.

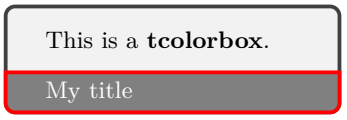
```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  attach boxed title to top*,
  boxed title style={colframe=red}]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



N 2016-02-26 **/tcb/attach boxed title to bottom={⟨*boxtitle options*⟩}** (style, default empty)

This is a convenient style to produce a standard-like title at the bottom of the box. It uses /tcb/attach boxed title to bottom center → P. 176, /tcb/minipage boxed title → P. 184, and sizes the boxed title to match the base box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  attach boxed title to bottom,
  boxed title style={colframe=red}]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



N 2016-02-26 **/tcb/attach boxed title to bottom*={⟨*boxtitle options*⟩}** (style, default empty)

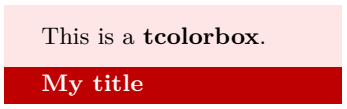
In contrast to /tcb/attach boxed title to top, this style uses smaller left and right rules to avoid previewer glitches.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  attach boxed title to bottom*]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

N 2016-02-26 **/tcb/flip title={⟨*options*⟩}** (style, default empty)

This style combines /tcb/attach boxed title to bottom* with /tcb/boxed title style → P. 180. The ⟨*options*⟩ are given to /tcb/boxed title style → P. 180.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[tile,flip title={sharp corners},
  title=My title,colback=red!10,
  colbacktitle=red!75!black]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



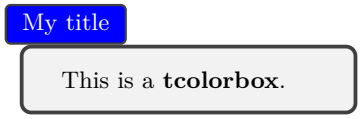
10.2.2 Options for the Boxed Title Placement

The ⟨*boxtitle options*⟩ of the keys described above are shift values. The dimensions of the boxed title are stored into two macros **\tcboxedtitleheight** and **\tcboxedtitlewidth**. These macros can be used inside the following ⟨*boxtitle options*⟩:

/tcb/boxtitle/xshift=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially 0pt)

The boxed title is shifted by ⟨*length*⟩ in the horizontal direction.

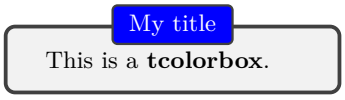
```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  attach boxed title to top left={xshift=-2mm},
  boxed title style={size=small,colback=blue}]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



/tcb/boxtitle/yshift=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially 0pt)

The boxed title is shifted by ⟨*length*⟩ in the vertical direction.

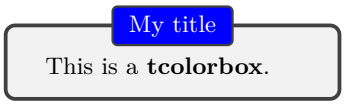
```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  attach boxed title to top center=
    {yshift=-\tcboxedtitleheight/2},
  boxed title style={size=small,colback=blue}]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



/tcb/boxtitle/yshifttext=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially 0pt)

The text inside the main box is shifted by ⟨*length*⟩ to give room for e. g. a sunken title.

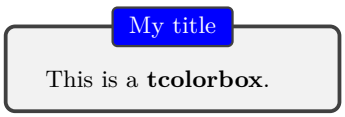
```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  attach boxed title to top center=
    {yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm},
  boxed title style={size=small,colback=blue}]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



/tcb/boxtitle/yshift*=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially 0pt)

Sets /tcb/boxtitle/yshift and /tcb/boxtitle/yshifttext the same time. /tcb/boxtitle/yshifttext is only set if necessary.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  attach boxed title to top center={yshift*=-3mm},
  boxed title style={size=small,colback=blue}]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



The bounding box of the resulting total **tcolorbox** is adapted automatically to the *vertical* dimensions of the boxed title. Possible horizontal enlargements are *not* automatically computed.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  attach boxed title to top left=
    {xshift=-2mm,yshift=-2mm},
  boxed title style={size=small,colback=blue},
  show bounding box]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

10.2.3 Options for the Boxed Title Box

! The boxed title options are implemented as an underlay, see Section 10.8 on page 216. Therefore, a boxed title is not drawn, if a skin does not support underlays like `standard`→P. 228. Still, the room for the boxed titles gets reserved in these cases.

! A Ti*k*Z node `title` is produced by a boxed title which can be used inside `/tcb/frame code`→P. 157, `/tcb/interior code`→P. 158, underlays, overlays, and finishes.

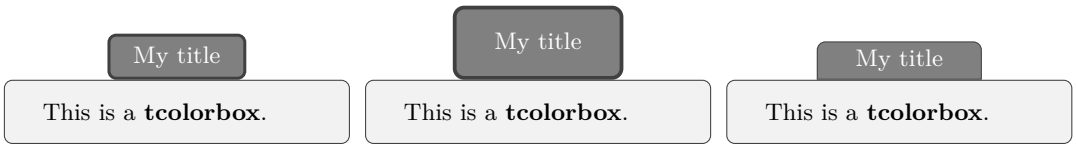
! A boxed title is almost always the first underlay. The only exceptions are underlays defined by `/tcb/underlay boxed title`→P. 217 which are drawn before. Additionally, underlays defined by `/tcb/underlay boxed title`→P. 217 are only drawn, if a boxed title is actually set. They are ignored, if there is no boxed title.

N 2016-02-26 `/tcb/boxed title size=`⟨*size*⟩ (no default, initially `title`)

This setting defines the basic size for the title box. Further settings can be applied using `/tcb/boxed title style`→P. 180. Feasible values for ⟨*size*⟩ are:

- `title`: Sets the size according to `/tcb/size`→P. 49`=title`.
- `standard`: No size setting. Typically, this is identical to `/tcb/size`→P. 49`=normal`.
- `copy`: The size values for a title of the base box are copied for the title box.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,enhanced,boxrule=0.4pt,
    title=My title,attach boxed title to top center]
  \begin{tcolorbox}[boxed title size=title]
    This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[boxed title size=standard]
    This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[boxed title size=copy]
    This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
  \end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
```



U 2016-02-26 **/tcb/boxed title style=⟨*options*⟩** (style, initially empty)

By default, a boxed title is dimensioned with /tcb/size→ P. 49=title and inherits the /tcb/skin→ P. 153 and /tcb/colframe→ P. 32 of the main box. Also, the /tcb/colback→ P. 32 is inherited from the main /tcb/colbacktitle→ P. 32. Font and color of the title text are set as usual. All other ⟨*options*⟩ are set by the /tcb/boxed title style key. Since a boxed title is set by \tcbox→ P. 14, all tcolorbox options are applicable here. If /tcb/boxed title style is used several times, the ⟨*options*⟩ are is appended.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,coltitle=green!25!black,
  attach boxed title to top center=
    {yshift=-2mm,yshifttext=-1mm},
  boxed title style={colframe=green!75!black,
    colback=yellow!50!green}]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,
  arc=1mm,colbacktitle=red!10!white,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,coltitle=red!50!black,
  attach boxed title to top text left=
    {yshift=-0.50mm},
  boxed title style={skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw,
    size=small,arc=1mm,bottom=-1mm,
    interior style={fill=none,
      top color=red!30!white,
      bottom color=red!20!white}}]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white,colbacktitle=blue!5!yellow!10!white,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,coltitle=black,attach boxed title to top center=
    {yshift=-0.25mm-\tcboxedtitleheight/2,yshifttext=2mm-\tcboxedtitleheight/2},
  boxed title style={boxrule=0.5mm,
    frame code={ \path[tcb fill frame] ([xshift=-4mm]frame.west)
    -- (frame.north west) -- (frame.north east) -- ([xshift=4mm]frame.east)
    -- (frame.south east) -- (frame.south west) -- cycle; },
    interior code={ \path[tcb fill interior] ([xshift=-2mm]interior.west)
    -- (interior.north west) -- (interior.north east)
    -- ([xshift=2mm]interior.east) -- (interior.south east) -- (interior.south west)
    -- cycle;}  }]
  \lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

```
% \usepackage{varwidth}
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[2][]{enhanced,skin=enhancedlast jigsaw,
  attach boxed title to top left={xshift=-4mm,yshift=-0.5mm},
  fonttitle=\bfseries\sffamily,varwidth boxed title=0.7\linewidth,
  colbacktitle=blue!45!white,colframe=red!50!black,
  interior style={top color=blue!10!white,bottom color=red!10!white},
  boxed title style={empty,arc=0pt,outer arc=0pt,boxrule=0pt},
  underlay boxed title={
    \fill[blue!45!white] (title.north west) -- (title.north east)
      -- +(\tcboxedtitleheight-1mm,-\tcboxedtitleheight+1mm)
      -- ([xshift=4mm,yshift=0.5mm]frame.north east) -- +(0mm,-1mm)
      -- (title.south west) -- cycle;
    \fill[blue!45!white!50!black] ([yshift=-0.5mm]frame.north west)
      -- +(-0.4,0) -- +(0,-0.3) -- cycle;
    \fill[blue!45!white!50!black] ([yshift=-0.5mm]frame.north east)
      -- +(0,-0.3) -- +(0.4,0) -- cycle;  },
  title={#2},#1}

\begin{mybox}{My title}
  \lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}
```

My title

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

```
% \usepackage{varwidth}
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[2][]{enhanced,
  attach boxed title to top left={xshift=1cm,yshift=-2mm},
  fonttitle=\bfseries,varwidth boxed title=0.7\linewidth,
  colbacktitle=green!45!white,coltitle=green!10!black,colframe=green!50!black,
  interior style={top color=yellow!10!white,bottom color=green!10!white},
  boxed title style={boxrule=0.75mm,colframe=white,
    borderline={0.1mm}{0mm}{green!50!black},
    borderline={0.1mm}{0.75mm}{green!50!black},
    interior style={top color=green!10!white,bottom color=green!10!white,
      middle color=green!50!white},
    drop fuzzy shadow},
  title={#2},#1}

\begin{mybox}{My title}
  \lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}
```

My title

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

```
\newtcolorbox{flipbox}[2][]{
  enhanced,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=yellow!5,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  flip title={interior hidden},title={#2},#1}

\begin{flipbox}{My title}
\lipsum[2]
\end{flipbox}
```

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

My title

```
% \usepackage{varwidth}
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[2][]{skin=enhancedlast jigsaw,interior hidden,
  boxsep=0pt,top=0pt,colframe=red,coltitle=red!50!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries\sffamily,
  attach boxed title to bottom center,
  boxed title style={empty,boxrule=0.5mm},
  varwidth boxed title=0.5\linewidth,
  underlay boxed title={
    \draw[white,line width=0.5mm]
      ([xshift=0.3mm-\tcboxedtitleheight*2,yshift=0.3mm]title.north west)
      --([xshift=-0.3mm+\tcboxedtitleheight*2,yshift=0.3mm]title.north east);
    \path[draw=red,top color=white,bottom color=red!50!white,line width=0.5mm]
    ([xshift=0.25mm-\tcboxedtitleheight*2,yshift=0.25mm]title.north west)
    cos +(\tcboxedtitleheight,-\tcboxedtitleheight/2)
    sin +(\tcboxedtitleheight,-\tcboxedtitleheight/2)
    -- ([xshift=0.25mm,yshift=0.25mm]title.south west)
    -- ([yshift=0.25mm]title.south east)
    cos +(\tcboxedtitleheight,\tcboxedtitleheight/2)
    sin +(\tcboxedtitleheight,\tcboxedtitleheight/2); },
  title={#2},#1}

\begin{mybox}{My title}
  \lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}
```

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

My title

```
% \usepackage{varwidth}
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[2][]{enhanced,
  before skip=2mm,after skip=2mm,
  colback=black!5,colframe=black!50,boxrule=0.2mm,
  attach boxed title to top left={xshift=1cm,yshift*=1mm-\tcboxedtitleheight},
  varwidth boxed title*=-3cm,
  boxed title style={frame code={
    \path[fill=tcbcolback!30!black]
      ([yshift=-1mm,xshift=-1mm]frame.north west)
        arc[start angle=0,end angle=180,radius=1mm]
      ([yshift=-1mm,xshift=1mm]frame.north east)
        arc[start angle=180,end angle=0,radius=1mm];
    \path[left color=tcbcolback!60!black,right color=tcbcolback!60!black,
      middle color=tcbcolback!80!black]
      ([xshift=-2mm]frame.north west) -- ([xshift=2mm]frame.north east)
      [rounded corners=1mm]-- ([xshift=1mm,yshift=-1mm]frame.north east)
      -- (frame.south east) -- (frame.south west)
      -- ([xshift=-1mm,yshift=-1mm]frame.north west)
      [sharp corners]-- cycle;
    },interior engine=empty,
  },
  fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title={#2},#1}

\begin{mybox}[colbacktitle=green]{My title}
\lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[colbacktitle=red]{My title}
\lipsum[3]
\end{mybox}
```

My title

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

My title

Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis. Donec nonummy pellentesque ante. Phasellus adipiscing semper elit. Proin fermentum massa ac quam. Sed diam turpis, molestie vitae, placerat a, molestie nec, leo. Maecenas lacinia. Nam ipsum ligula, eleifend at, accumsan nec, suscipit a, ipsum. Morbi blandit ligula feugiat magna. Nunc eleifend consequat lorem. Sed lacinia nulla vitae enim. Pellentesque tincidunt purus vel magna. Integer non enim. Praesent euismod nunc eu purus. Donec bibendum quam in tellus. Nullam cursus pulvinar lectus. Donec et mi. Nam vulputate metus eu enim. Vestibulum pellentesque felis eu massa.

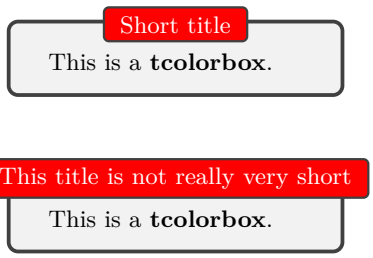
N 2016-02-26 **/tcb/no boxed title style** (style, initially set)

Removes all options which were set by `/tcb/boxed title style` → P. 180.

/tcb/hbox boxed title (no value, initially set)

The title text content is captured with a horizontal box. Especially, there are no linebreak possible.

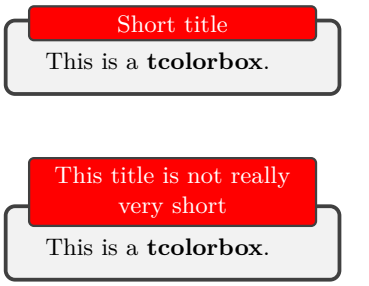
```
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1]{hbox boxed title,
  enhanced,attach boxed title to top center=
    {yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm},
  boxed title style={size=small,colback=red},
  title={#1}}

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}\bigskip

\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
```



/tcb/minipage boxed title=⟨*length*⟩ (initially unset)

The title text content is captured with a minipage with a width of ⟨*length*⟩. By default, the resulting boxed title is somewhat smaller than the main box.

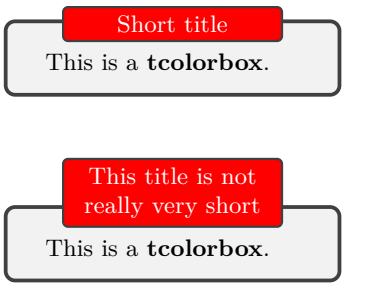
```
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1]{minipage boxed title,
  enhanced,attach boxed title to top center=
    {yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm},
  boxed title style={size=small,colback=red},
  center title,title={#1}}

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}\bigskip

\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
```



/tcb/minipage boxed title*=⟨*length*⟩ (initially unset)

The title text content is captured with a minipage with a width of main box width plus ⟨*length*⟩. By default, the resulting boxed title is somewhat smaller than the main box.

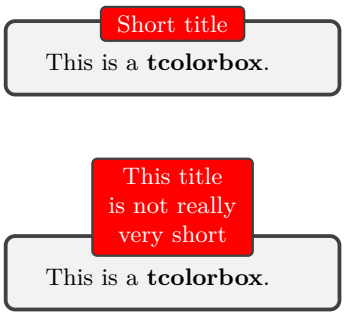
```
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1]{minipage boxed title*=-2cm,
  enhanced,attach boxed title to top center=
    {yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm},
  boxed title style={size=small,colback=red},
  center title,title={#1}}

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}\bigskip

\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
```



`/tcb/tikznode boxed title=`⟨*options*⟩ (initially unset)

The title text content is captured with a Ti*k*Z node with given Ti*k*Z ⟨*options*⟩. The text is centered by default

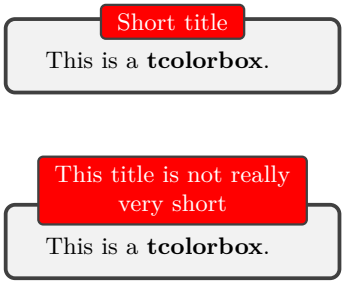
```
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1]{tikznode boxed title,
  enhanced,attach boxed title to top center=
    {yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm},
  boxed title style={size=small,colback=red},
  title={#1}}

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}\bigskip

\begin{mybox}{This title\\is not really\\very short}
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
```



`/tcb/varwidth boxed title=`⟨*length*⟩ (initially unset)

The title text content is captured with a `varwidth` environment with a width of ⟨*length*⟩. This style needs the `varwidth` package [1] to be loaded manually. By default, the resulting boxed title is somewhat smaller than the main box.

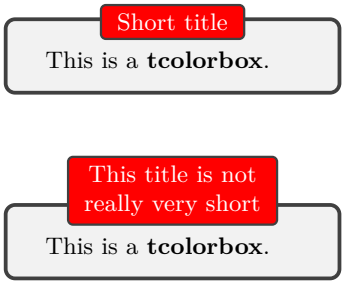
```
% \usepackage{varwidth}
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1]{varwidth boxed title,
  enhanced,attach boxed title to top center=
    {yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm},
  boxed title style={size=small,colback=red},
  center title,title={#1}}

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}\bigskip

\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
```



`/tcb/varwidth boxed title*=`⟨*length*⟩ (initially unset)

The title text content is captured with a `varwidth` environment with a width of main box width plus ⟨*length*⟩. This style needs the `varwidth` package [1] to be loaded manually. By default, the resulting boxed title is somewhat smaller than the main box.

```
% \usepackage{varwidth}
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1]{varwidth boxed title*=-2cm,
  enhanced,attach boxed title to top center=
    {yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm},
  boxed title style={size=small,colback=red},
  center title,title={#1}}

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}\bigskip

\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
```



10.3 Watermark Option Keys

The following watermark options are applicable for all skins which use `tikzpicture` as `/tcb/graphical environment`→ P. 154. Therefore, the skin `standard`→ P. 228 does not support these watermarks, but all other skins, e. g. `enhanced`→ P. 230.

> ! The watermark options rely on the more general overlay options described in Section 4.12 from page 79. Therefore, *watermarks* and *overlays* cannot be used mixed. But a mixture is possible with the lib hooks library, see Section 23.

`/tcb/watermark text=`⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Writes some ⟨*text*⟩ in the center of the interior region of a `tcolorbox`. This ⟨*text*⟩ is written *after* the frame and interior are drawn and *before* the text content is drawn. It is zoomed or stretched according the values of `/tcb/watermark zoom`→ P. 189 or `/tcb/watermark stretch`→ P. 191.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,watermark text=My Watermark]
\lipsum[1]
\tcblower
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

My Watermark

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

`/tcb/watermark text on=`⟨*part*⟩ `is` ⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This option writes some ⟨*text*⟩ in the center of the interior region of a `tcolorbox` as described for `/tcb/watermark text`. But this is done only for boxes named ⟨*part*⟩ of a break sequence, see `/tcb/breakable`→ P. 400.

Feasible values for ⟨*part*⟩ are:

- `broken`: all broken box parts,
- `unbroken`: unbroken boxes only,
- `first`: first parts of a break sequence,
- `middle`: middle parts of a break sequence,
- `last`: last parts of a break sequence,
- `unbroken and first`: unbroken boxes and first parts of a break sequence,
- `middle and last`: middle and last parts of a break sequence.
- `first and middle`: first and middle parts of a break sequence.

`/tcb/watermark graphics`=⟨*file name*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Draws an external picture referenced by ⟨*file name*⟩ in the center of the interior region of a `tcolorbox`. The picture is drawn *after* the frame and interior are drawn and *before* the text content is drawn. It is zoomed or stretched according the values of `/tcb/watermark zoom` → P. 189 or `/tcb/watermark stretch` → P. 191.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,watermark graphics=Basilica_5.png,
  watermark opacity=0.15]
\lipsum[1-2]
\tcblower
This example uses a public domain picture from\\
\url{http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Basilica_5.png}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

This example uses a public domain picture from
http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Basilica_5.png

`/tcb/watermark graphics on`=⟨*part*⟩ `is` ⟨*file name*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This option draws a picture referenced by ⟨*file name*⟩ in the center of the interior region of a `tcolorbox` as described for `/tcb/watermark graphics`. But this is done only for boxes named ⟨*part*⟩ of a break sequence, see `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400.

Feasible values for ⟨*part*⟩ are:

- `broken`: all broken box parts,
- `unbroken`: unbroken boxes only,
- `first`: first parts of a break sequence,
- `middle`: middle parts of a break sequence,
- `last`: last parts of a break sequence,
- `unbroken and first`: unbroken boxes and first parts of a break sequence,
- `middle and last`: middle and last parts of a break sequence.

`/tcb/watermark tikz=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Draws the given `tikz` ⟨*graphical code*⟩ in the center of the interior region of a `tcolorbox`. The code is executed *after* the frame and interior are drawn and *before* the text content is drawn. The result is zoomed or stretched according the values of `/tcb/watermark zoom` → P. 189 or `/tcb/watermark stretch` → P. 191.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  watermark tikz={\draw[line width=2mm] circle (1cm)
    node{\fontfamily{ptm}\fontseries{b}\fontsize{20mm}{20mm}\selectfont ?};}]
\lipsum[1]
\tcblower
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

`/tcb/watermark tikz on=`⟨*part*⟩ `is` ⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This option draws the given `tikz` ⟨*graphical code*⟩ in the center of the interior region of a `tcolorbox` as described for `/tcb/watermark tikz`. But this is done only for boxes named ⟨*part*⟩ of a break sequence, see `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400.

Feasible values for ⟨*part*⟩ are:

- `broken`: all broken box parts,
- `unbroken`: unbroken boxes only,
- `first`: first parts of a break sequence,
- `middle`: middle parts of a break sequence,
- `last`: last parts of a break sequence,
- `unbroken and first`: unbroken boxes and first parts of a break sequence,
- `middle and last`: middle and last parts of a break sequence.

`/tcb/no watermark` (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the watermark if set before. This is an alias for `/tcb/no overlay` → P. 80.

`/tcb/watermark opacity=`⟨*fraction*⟩ (no default, initially `1.00`)

Sets the opacity value ∈ [0, 1] for a watermark.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  watermark text=Watermark,nobeforeafter,width=(\linewidth-2mm)/2}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Opacity 1.00,watermark opacity=1.00]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}\hfill%
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Opacity 0.50,watermark opacity=0.50]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}%
```

Opacity 1.00

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

Opacity 0.50

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

U 2022-07-21 `/tcb/watermark zoom=`⟨*fraction*⟩ (default `1`, initially `0.75`)

Sets the zoom value for a watermark. The zoom respects the aspect ratio. The value 1.0 means to fill the whole box until the watermark touches the frame.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  watermark text=Watermark,nobeforeafter,width=(\linewidth-2mm)/2}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Zoom 1.0,watermark zoom=1.0]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}\hfill%
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Zoom 0.5,watermark zoom=0.5]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}%
```

Zoom 1.0

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

Zoom 0.5

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

U 2022-07-21 **/tcb/watermark shrink=⟨*fraction*⟩** (default 1, initially unset)

Identically to /tcb/watermark zoom → P. 189, but the watermark never gets enlarged. Thus, the watermark keeps its original size or is shrunk.

U 2022-07-21 **/tcb/watermark overzoom=⟨*fraction*⟩** (default 1, initially unset)

Sets the overzoom value for a watermark. The overzoom respects the aspect ratio. The value 1.0 means to fill the whole box until the watermark touches all four sides of the frame.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=white,colframe=blue!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  watermark opacity=0.5,
  watermark graphics=lichtspiel.jpg,nobeforeafter,width=(\linewidth-2mm)/2}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Zoom 1.0,watermark zoom=1.0]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}\hfill%
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Overzoom 1.0,watermark overzoom=1.0]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}%
```

Zoom 1.0

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

Overzoom 1.0

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

! If a /tcb/watermark overzoom value of 1.0 is used in connection with invisible top and bottom rules which still have a thickness greater than 0pt, the space of these invisible rules may not be covered by the watermark. For example, this situation may occur during the breaking of /tcb/enhanced → P. 230 boxes. To avoid this optical glitch, just set /tcb/pad at break → P. 405 to any desired value.

U 2022-07-21 **/tcb/watermark stretch=**⟨*fraction*⟩ (default 1, initially unset)

Sets the stretch value for a watermark. The stretch value is applied to width and height in relation to the box dimensions. It does not respect the aspect ratio. The value 1.0 means to fill the whole box.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=white,colframe=blue!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  watermark graphics=lichtspiel.jpg,watermark opacity=0.5,
  nobeforeafter,width=(\linewidth-2mm)/2}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Stretch 1.00,watermark stretch=1.00]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}\hfill%
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Stretch 0.50,watermark stretch=0.50]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}%
```

Stretch 1.00

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

Stretch 0.50

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

/tcb/watermark color=⟨*color*⟩ (no default, initially mixed background and frame color)

Sets the color for the watermark.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,watermark text=My Watermark,
  watermark color=yellow!50!red]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

My Watermark

`/tcb/clip watermark=true|false` (default `true`, initially `true`)

Sets the watermark to be clipped to the interior area.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=white,colframe=blue!50!white,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  watermark opacity=0.5,watermark stretch=1.00,arc=3mm,
  watermark graphics=lichtspiel.jpg}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Clip (default),clip watermark]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=No clip,clip watermark=false]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}%
```

Clip (default)

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

No clip

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

! Removing the clipping should be necessary only in very rare situations. Until version 5.1.1 (2022/06/24), theoretically, the watermark could be extended over the boundaries of the box without limit. Newer versions restrict the watermark to a box scaled 4 times the actual `tcolorbox`. If you really need to extend further, you are strongly advised to implement this by using `/tcb/overlay` → P. 79 or `/tcb/underlay` → P. 216 directly where no restrictions apply. Note that a watermark is just a special `/tcb/overlay` → P. 79.

10.4 Clip Environments

The following clip environments are applicable for all skins which use engines of type `path`, `pathfirst`, `pathmiddle`, or `pathlast`. Especially, the skin `enhanced` → P. 230 supports *all* of them and `standard` → P. 228 *none*. The typical area of application is inside overlay code, see Section 4.12 from page 79.

```
\begin{tcbclipframe}
  ⟨environment content⟩
\end{tcbclipframe}
```

Defines a `Tikz` scope which clips to the frame area path.

```
\makeatletter
\newtcolorbox{picturebox}[2][]{%
  enhanced,frame hidden,interior hidden,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  overlay={\begin{tcbclipframe}\node at (frame)
    {\includegraphics[width=\tcb@width,height=\tcb@height]{#2}};\end{tcbclipframe}%
    \begin{tcbclipinterior}\fill[white,opacity=0.75]
    (frame.south west) rectangle (frame.north east);\end{tcbclipinterior}},#1}
\makeatother

\begin{picturebox}[title=My Picture Box]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\lipsum[1]
\end{picturebox}
```

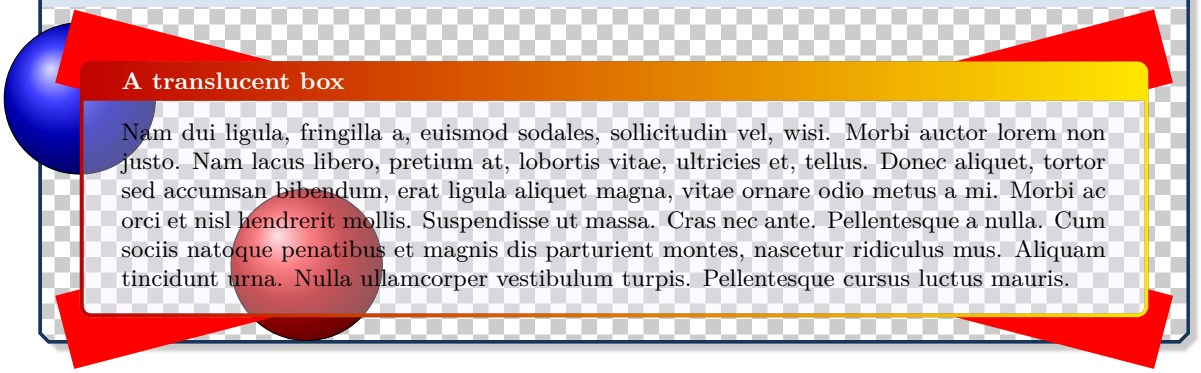
My Picture Box

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

```
\begin{tcbinvclipframe}
  ⟨environment content⟩
\end{tcbinvclipframe}
```

Defines a Tikz scope which clips to the *outside* of the frame area path.

```
\tcbset{enhanced jigsaw,fonttitle=\bfseries,opacityback=0.35,colback=blue!5!white,
  frame style={left color=red!75!black,right color=red!10!yellow}}

\begin{tikzpicture}% draw two balls
  \path[use as bounding box] (0,0.8) rectangle +(0.1,0.1);
  \shadedraw [shading=ball] (0,0) circle (1cm);
  \shadedraw [ball color=red] (3,-2.2) circle (1cm);
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=A translucent box,
  overlay={\begin{tcbinvclipframe}
    \draw[red,line width=1cm] ([xshift=-2mm,yshift=2mm]frame.north west)
      --([xshift=2mm,yshift=-2mm]frame.south east);
    \draw[red,line width=1cm] ([xshift=-2mm,yshift=-2mm]frame.south west)
      --([xshift=2mm,yshift=2mm]frame.north east);
  \end{tcbinvclipframe}}]
  \lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```



```
\begin{tcbclipinterior}
  ⟨environment content⟩
\end{tcbclipinterior}
```

Defines a `Tikz` scope which clips to the interior area path.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My Title,
  overlay={\begin{tcbclipinterior}
    \draw[red,line width=1cm] (interior.north west)--(interior.south east);
    \draw[red,line width=1cm] (interior.south west)--(interior.north east);
  \end{tcbclipinterior}}]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My Title

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

```
\begin{tcbcliptitle}
  ⟨environment content⟩
\end{tcbcliptitle}
```

Defines a `Tikz` scope which clips to the title area path.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My Title,colframe=blue,colback=yellow!10!white,
  overlay={\begin{tcbcliptitle}\node at (title)
  {\includegraphics[width=\linewidth]{lichtspiel.jpg}};\end{tcbcliptitle}}]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My Title

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

`/tcb/clip title=true|false` (default `true`, initially `false`)

Sets the title to be clipped to the title area.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,width=5cm,colframe=red!50!white,coltitle=black,
  colbacktitle=yellow!50!white}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=\mbox{This is a title which is unbreakable and far too long}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=\mbox{This is a title which is unbreakable and far too long},
  clip title]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a title which is unbreakable and far too long

This is a tcolorbox.

This is a title which is unbreak

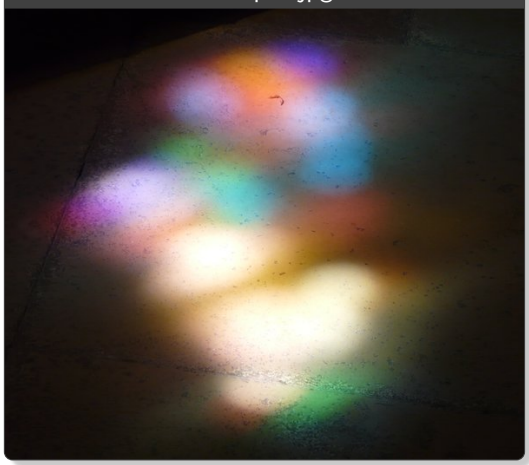
This is a tcolorbox.

`/tcb/clip upper=true|false` (default `true`, initially `false`)

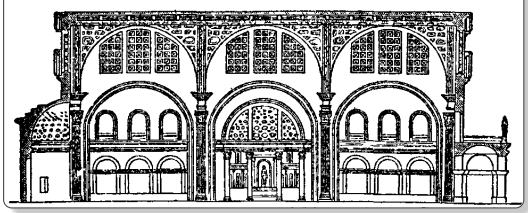
Sets the upper part to be clipped to the interior area.

```
\newcommand{\mygraphics}[2][]{%
  \tcbox[enhanced,boxsep=0pt,top=0pt,bottom=0pt,left=0pt,
    right=0pt,boxrule=0.4pt,drop fuzzy shadow,clip upper,
    colback=black!75!white,toptitle=2pt,bottomtitle=2pt,nobeforeafter,
    center title,fonttitle=\small\sffamily,title=\detokenize{#2}]
  {\includegraphics[width=\the\dimexpr(\linewidth-4mm)/2\relax]{#2}}}

\mygraphics{lichtspiel.jpg}\hfill
\mygraphics{Basilica_5.png}
```

lichtspiel.jpg



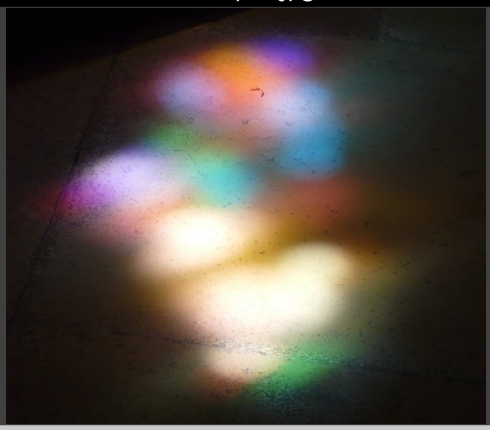
Basilica_5.png



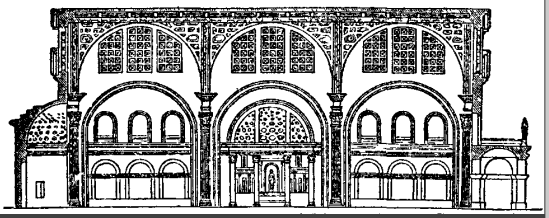
The example for /tcb/clip upper → P. 196 sizes the box according to the dimensions of the picture. To do it the other way around, the watermark options provide an easy solution.

```
\newcommand{\mygraphics}[2][]{%
  \tcbox[enhanced,capture=minipage,boxsep=0pt,top=0pt,bottom=0pt,left=0pt,
    right=0pt,boxrule=0.4pt,drop fuzzy shadow,nobeforeafter,
    colback=black!75!white,toptitle=2pt,bottomtitle=2pt,
    center title,fonttitle=\small\sffamily,title=\detokenize{#2},
    width=(\linewidth-4mm)/2,height=6cm,colbacktitle={black},
    watermark zoom=1.0,watermark graphics={#2}]{}}

\mygraphics{lichtspiel.jpg}\hfill
\mygraphics{Basilica_5.png}
```

lichtspiel.jpg



Basilica_5.png



/tcb/clip lower=true|false (default `true`, initially `false`)

Sets the lower part to be clipped to the interior area.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,width=5cm,colframe=red!50!black,text and listing}

\begin{tcblisting}{}
Donau\-dampf\-schiff\-fahrts\-ka\-pi\-t\"ans\-m\"ut\-zen\-fran\-sen
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcblisting}{clip lower}
Donau\-dampf\-schiff\-fahrts\-ka\-pi\-t\"ans\-m\"ut\-zen\-fran\-sen
\end{tcblisting}
```

Donaudampfschifffahrtska-
pitänsmützenfransen

```
Donau\-dampf\-schiff\-fahrts\-ka\-pi\-t\"ans\-m\"ut\-zen\-fran\-sen
```

Donaudampfschifffahrtska-
pitänsmützenfransen

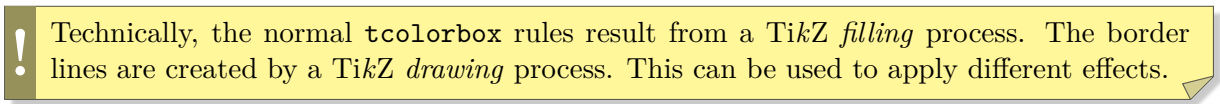
```
Donau\-dampf\-schiff\-fa
```

10.5 Border Line Option Keys

The following borderline options are applicable for most skins which use `tikzpicture` as `/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154. Therefore, the skin `standard` → P. 228 does not support these border lines, but most other skins, e. g. `enhanced` → P. 230.

The borderlines are independent from the normal `tcolorbox` rules. They may be used with or without the `/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155.

The borderlines are stackable, i. e. several different border lines can be used on the same `tcolorbox`. They are drawn *after* the box frame and box interior and *before* overlays or watermarks.



Technically, the normal `tcolorbox` rules result from a Ti*k*Z *filling* process. The border lines are created by a Ti*k*Z *drawing* process. This can be used to apply different effects.

`/tcb/borderline={`⟨*width*⟩`}{`⟨*offset*⟩`}{`⟨*options*⟩`}` (no default, initially unset)

Adds a new borderline to the stack of border lines. This border line is drawn with the given ⟨*width*⟩ and gets an ⟨*offset*⟩ computed from the frame outline. A positive ⟨*offset*⟩ value moves the borderline inside the `tcolorbox` and a negative ⟨*offset*⟩ value moves it outside without changing the bounding box.
The border line is drawn along a Ti*k*Z path with the given Ti*k*Z ⟨*options*⟩. Note that the Ti*k*Z `line width` option should not be used here.
The border lines adapt to the rounded corners of the `tcolorbox`. An inside borderline will switch to sharp corners if necessary, an outside borderline will always be rounded except for `/tcb/sharp corners` → P. 53.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=Rounded corners,fonttitle=\bfseries,boxsep=5pt,
  arc=8pt,
  borderline={0.5pt}{0pt}{red},
  borderline={0.5pt}{5pt}{blue,dotted},
  borderline={0.5pt}{-5pt}{green} ]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=Sharp corners,fonttitle=\bfseries,boxsep=5pt,
  arc=8pt,sharp corners=downhill,
  borderline={0.5pt}{0pt}{red},
  borderline={0.5pt}{5pt}{blue,dotted},
  borderline={0.5pt}{-5pt}{green} ]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Rounded corners

This is a tcolorbox.

Sharp corners

This is a tcolorbox.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,arc=3mm,boxrule=1.5mm,boxsep=1.5mm,
  colback=yellow!20!white,
  colframe=blue,
  borderline={1mm}{1mm}{white},
  borderline={1mm}{2mm}{red} ]
  \lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,arc=3mm,boxrule=1.5mm,
  frame hidden,colback=blue!10!white,
  borderline={1mm}{0mm}{blue,dotted} ]
  \lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,skin=enhancedmiddle,
  frame hidden,interior hidden,top=0mm,bottom=0mm,boxsep=0mm,
  borderline={0.75mm}{0mm}{red},
  borderline={0.75mm}{0.75mm}{red!50!yellow},
  borderline={0.75mm}{1.5mm}{yellow}, ]
  \lipsum[3]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis. Donec nonummy pellentesque ante. Phasellus adipiscing semper elit. Proin fermentum massa ac quam. Sed diam turpis, molestie vitae, placerat a, molestie nec, leo. Maecenas lacinia. Nam ipsum ligula, eleifend at, accumsan nec, suscipit a, ipsum. Morbi blandit ligula feugiat magna. Nunc eleifend consequat lorem. Sed lacinia nulla vitae enim. Pellentesque tincidunt purus vel magna. Integer non enim. Praesent euismod nunc eu purus. Donec bibendum quam in tellus. Nullam cursus pulvinar lectus. Donec et mi. Nam vulputate metus eu enim. Vestibulum pellentesque felis eu massa.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\newtcolorbox{mygreenbox}[2][]{%
  enhanced,width=\linewidth-6pt,
  enlarge top by=3pt,enlarge bottom by=3pt,
  enlarge left by=3pt,enlarge right by=3pt,
  title={#2},frame hidden,boxrule=0pt,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,
  colframe=green!30!black, colbacktitle=green!50!yellow,
  coltitle=black, colback=green!25!white,
  borderline={0.5pt}{-0.5pt}{green!75!blue},
  borderline={1pt}{-3pt}{green!50!blue},#1}

\begin{mygreenbox}{My title}
  \lipsum[4]
\end{mygreenbox}
```

My title

Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt ultrices. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Integer tempus convallis augue. Etiam facilisis. Nunc elementum fermentum wisi. Aenean placerat. Ut imperdiet, enim sed gravida sollicitudin, felis odio placerat quam, ac pulvinar elit purus eget enim. Nunc vitae tortor. Proin tempus nibh sit amet nisl. Vivamus quis tortor vitae risus porta vehicula.

/tcb/no borderline (no default, initially set)

Removes all borderlines if set before.

/tcb/show bounding box=⟨*color*⟩ (default **red**, initially unset)

Displays the bounding box borderline of a **tcolorbox**. Its intended use is debugging and fine tuning. It should not be part of a final document. The optional ⟨*color*⟩ is the base color for the bounding box borderline.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,nobeforeafter,width=4cm,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[show bounding box,title=Normal]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}%
\begin{tcolorbox}[show bounding box=blue,title=Shadow,drop fuzzy shadow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}%
\begin{tcolorbox}[show bounding box=green,title=Enlarged,drop fuzzy shadow,
  enlarge by=2mm]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Normal
This is a tcolorbox.

Shadow
This is a tcolorbox.

Enlarged
This is a tcolorbox.

The following *partial* borderlines act slightly different from the complete borderlines described before. They ignore rounded corner settings, their length is not modified by their ⟨*offset*⟩, they ignore skin settings but adapt to breakable boxes.

N 2014-10-20 **/tcb/borderline north={⟨*width*⟩}{⟨*offset*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

Adds a new borderline with the given ⟨*width*⟩ to the north of the `tcolorbox`. A positive ⟨*offset*⟩ value moves the borderline inside the `tcolorbox` and a negative ⟨*offset*⟩ value moves it outside without changing the bounding box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,
  borderline north={2pt}{-2pt}{red}]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

N 2014-10-20 **/tcb/borderline south={⟨*width*⟩}{⟨*offset*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

Adds a new borderline with the given ⟨*width*⟩ to the south of the `tcolorbox`. A positive ⟨*offset*⟩ value moves the borderline inside the `tcolorbox` and a negative ⟨*offset*⟩ value moves it outside without changing the bounding box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,
  borderline south={2pt}{-2pt}{red}]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

N 2014-10-20 **/tcb/borderline east={⟨*width*⟩}{⟨*offset*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

Adds a new borderline with the given ⟨*width*⟩ to the east of the `tcolorbox`. A positive ⟨*offset*⟩ value moves the borderline inside the `tcolorbox` and a negative ⟨*offset*⟩ value moves it outside without changing the bounding box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,
  borderline east={2pt}{-2pt}{red}]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

N 2014-10-20 **/tcb/borderline west={⟨*width*⟩}{⟨*offset*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

Adds a new borderline with the given ⟨*width*⟩ to the west of the `tcolorbox`. A positive ⟨*offset*⟩ value moves the borderline inside the `tcolorbox` and a negative ⟨*offset*⟩ value moves it outside without changing the bounding box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,
  borderline west={2pt}{-2pt}{red}]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

N 2014-10-20 **/tcb/borderline horizontal={⟨*width*⟩}{⟨*offset*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

Adds a new borderline with the given ⟨*width*⟩ to the north and south of the `tcolorbox`. A positive ⟨*offset*⟩ value moves the borderlines inside the `tcolorbox` and a negative ⟨*offset*⟩ value moves them outside without changing the bounding box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[blanker,top=3mm,bottom=3mm,
   borderline horizontal={2pt}{0pt}{red}]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.

N 2014-10-20 **/tcb/borderline vertical={⟨*width*⟩}{⟨*offset*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

Adds a new borderline with the given ⟨*width*⟩ to the east and west of the `tcolorbox`. A positive ⟨*offset*⟩ value moves the borderlines inside the `tcolorbox` and a negative ⟨*offset*⟩ value moves them outside without changing the bounding box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[blanker,left=3mm,right=3mm,
   borderline vertical={2pt}{0pt}{red}]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.\\
  My second line.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.
My second line.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,colback=yellow!10!white,boxrule=0pt,frame hidden,
  borderline north={1mm}{-2mm}{red},
  borderline south={1mm}{-2mm}{blue},
  borderline west={1mm}{-2mm}{green},
  borderline east={1mm}{-2mm}{yellow}]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

10.6 Shadow Option Keys

The following shadow options are applicable for most skins which use `tikzpicture` as `/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154. Therefore, the skin `standard` → P. 228 does not support these shadows, but most other skins, e. g. `enhanced` → P. 230.

The shadows are stackable, i. e. several different shadows can be used on the same `tcolorbox`. They are drawn *before* the box frame is drawn.

`/tcb/no shadow` (no default)

Removes all shadows if set before.

10.6.1 Common Shadows and Halos

`/tcb/drop shadow=`⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the ⟨*color*⟩ for the shadow can be changed.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}\par\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow,
  drop shadow=blue]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

Another shadow

This is a tcolorbox.

`/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow=`⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the ⟨*color*⟩ for the shadow can be changed.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}\par\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow,
  drop fuzzy shadow=blue]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

Another shadow

This is a tcolorbox.

`/tcb/drop midday shadow=`⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the ⟨*color*⟩ for the shadow can be changed.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop midday shadow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}\par\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow,
  drop midday shadow=blue]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

Another shadow

This is a tcolorbox.

`/tcb/drop fuzzy midday shadow=`⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the ⟨*color*⟩ for the shadow can be changed.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy midday shadow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}\par\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow,
  drop fuzzy midday shadow=blue]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

Another shadow

This is a tcolorbox.

`/tcb/halo=`⟨*size*⟩ `with` ⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `0.9mm with yellow`)

Adds a new halo shadow with the given ⟨*color*⟩ which overlaps the colorbox an all sides by ⟨*size*⟩.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own halo,halo]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par\bigskip\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another halo,
  halo=2mm with green]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My own halo

This is a tcolorbox.

Another halo

This is a tcolorbox.

`/tcb/fuzzy halo=`⟨*size*⟩ `with` ⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `0.9mm with yellow`)

Adds a new fuzzy halo shadow with the given ⟨*color*⟩ which overlaps the colorbox an all sides by ⟨*size*⟩ plus `0.48mm`.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own halo,fuzzy halo]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par\bigskip\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another halo,
  fuzzy halo=2mm with green]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My own halo

This is a tcolorbox.

Another halo

This is a tcolorbox.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[blank,enhanced jigsaw,boxsep=2pt,arc=2pt,
  fuzzy halo=2mm with red!50!white,
  fuzzy halo=1mm with white]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

For all following shadows, the optionally given ⟨*color*⟩ for the shadow can be changed equivalent to the preceding examples.

/tcb/drop shadow southeast=⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. This shadow is identical to `/tcb/drop shadow` → P. 203.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow southeast,
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/drop shadow south=⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. This shadow is identical to `/tcb/drop midday shadow` → P. 203.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow south,
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/drop shadow southwest=⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow southwest,
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/drop shadow west=⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow west,
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/drop shadow northwest=⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow northwest,
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/drop shadow north=⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow north,
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/drop shadow northeast=⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow northeast,
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/drop shadow east=⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow east,
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow southeast=⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. This shadow is identical to `/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow` → P. 203.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow southeast,
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow south=⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. This shadow is identical to `/tcb/drop fuzzy midday shadow` → P. 204.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow south,
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow southwest=⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow southwest,
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow west=⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

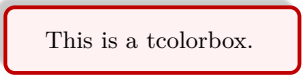
```
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow west,
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

`/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow northwest=`⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

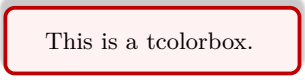
```
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow northwest,
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow north=`⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

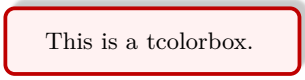
```
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow north,
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow northeast=`⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

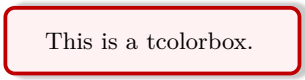
```
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow northeast,
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow east=`⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow east,
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



10.6.2 Lifted Shadows

`/tcb/drop lifted shadow=`⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new lifted shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the ⟨*color*⟩ for the shadow can be changed.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  boxrule=0.4pt,sharp corners,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop lifted shadow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}\par\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow,
  drop lifted shadow=blue]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

Another shadow

This is a tcolorbox.

`/tcb/drop small lifted shadow=`⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new small lifted shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the ⟨*color*⟩ for the shadow can be changed.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  boxrule=0.4pt,sharp corners,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\tcbox[drop small lifted shadow,size=fbox]
  {This is a tcolorbox.}
\par\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow,
  drop small lifted shadow=black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

Another shadow

This is a tcolorbox.

`/tcb/drop large lifted shadow=`⟨*color*⟩ (style, default `black!50!white`)

Adds a new large lifted shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the ⟨*color*⟩ for the shadow can be changed.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop large lifted shadow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}\par\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow,
  drop large lifted shadow=blue]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

Another shadow

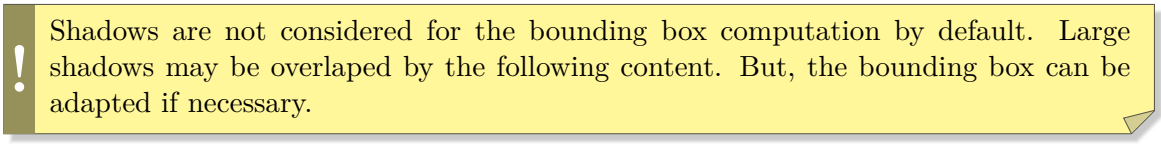
This is a tcolorbox.

10.6.3 Generic Shadows

`/tcb/shadow={⟨xshift⟩}{⟨yshift⟩}{⟨offset⟩}{⟨options⟩}` (no default)

Adds a new shadow to the stack of shadows. This shadow follows the outline of the `tcolorbox` but is shifted by ⟨*xshift*⟩ and ⟨*yshift*⟩. The ⟨*offset*⟩ value is a distance value from the frame outline. A positive ⟨*offset*⟩ value shrinks the shadow and a negative ⟨*offset*⟩ value enlarges the shadow. The shadow is filled along a Ti*k*Z path with the given Ti*k*Z ⟨*options*⟩.

The shadows adapt to the rounded corners of the `tcolorbox`. An shrinked shadow will switch to sharp corners if necessary, an enlarged shadow may become more rounded depending on several factors. But `/tcb/sharp corners` → P. 53 have sharp shadows.



Shadows are not considered for the bounding box computation by default. Large shadows may be overlaped by the following content. But, the bounding box can be adapted if necessary.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own shadow,
  shadow={2mm}{-1mm}{0mm}{black!50!white}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow,
  shadow={-1mm}{-2mm}{0mm}{fill=blue,
    opacity=0.5}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Double shadow,
  shadow={-1.5mm}{-1.5mm}{0mm}{fill=blue,
    opacity=0.25},
  shadow={1.5mm}{-1.5mm}{0mm}{fill=red,
    opacity=0.25}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Far shadow,
  shadow={5.5mm}{-3.5mm}{2mm}{fill=black,
    opacity=0.25}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par\bigskip\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Halo shadow,
  shadow={0mm}{0mm}{-1.5mm}%
    {fill=yellow!75!red,opacity=0.5}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My own shadow
This is a tcolorbox.

Another shadow
This is a tcolorbox.

Double shadow
This is a tcolorbox.

Far shadow
This is a tcolorbox.

Halo shadow
This is a tcolorbox.

`/tcb/fuzzy shadow={⟨xshift⟩}{⟨yshift⟩}{⟨offset⟩}{⟨step⟩}{⟨options⟩}` (no default)

Adds a new fuzzy shadow to the stack of shadows. Actually, this option adds several shadows which appear like a shadow with a fuzzy border. This fuzzy shadow follows the outline of the `tcolorbox` but is shifted by ⟨*xshift*⟩ and ⟨*yshift*⟩. The ⟨*offset*⟩ value is a distance value from the frame outline. A positive ⟨*offset*⟩ value shrinks the shadow and a negative ⟨*offset*⟩ value enlarges the shadow. The `{`⟨*step*⟩`}` value describes a shrink offset used for the combination of the partial shadows. The shadow is filled along a Ti*k*Z path with the given Ti*k*Z ⟨*options*⟩ but any `opacity` value will be ignored.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own shadow,
  fuzzy shadow={2mm}{-1mm}{0mm}{0.1mm}%
               {black!50!white}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow,
  fuzzy shadow={-1mm}{-2mm}{0mm}{0.2mm}%
               {fill=blue}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Double shadow,
  fuzzy shadow={-1.5mm}{-1.5mm}{0mm}{0.1mm}%
               {blue},
  fuzzy shadow={1.5mm}{-1.5mm}{0mm}{0.1mm}%
               {red}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Far shadow,
  fuzzy shadow={5.5mm}{-3.5mm}{0mm}{0.3mm}%
               {black}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par\bigskip\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Glow shadow,
  fuzzy shadow={0mm}{0mm}{-1.5mm}{0.15mm}%
               {yellow!75!red}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My own shadow

This is a tcolorbox.

Another shadow

This is a tcolorbox.

Double shadow

This is a tcolorbox.

Far shadow

This is a tcolorbox.

Glow shadow

This is a tcolorbox.

```
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1][]{enhanced,
  fuzzy shadow={1.0mm}{-1.0mm}{0.12mm}{0mm}{blue!50!white},
  fuzzy shadow={-1.0mm}{-1.0mm}{0.12mm}{0mm}{red!50!white},
  fuzzy shadow={-1.0mm}{1.0mm}{0.12mm}{0mm}{green!50!white},
  fuzzy shadow={1.0mm}{1.0mm}{0.12mm}{0mm}{yellow!50!white},#1
}

\begin{mybox}[title=A multi shadow box]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
```

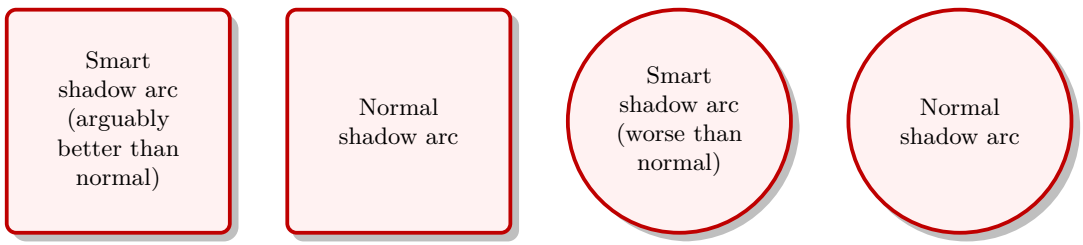
A multi shadow box

This is a tcolorbox.

N 2015-05-05 **/tcb/smart shadow arc=true|false** (default `true`, initially `true`)

If set to `true`, the shadow drawing algorithm tries to do a somewhat smart calculation of the arc for the shadow. The result is pleasing for typical boxes with rounded corners, but gives strange results for circular boxes.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,nobeforeafter,colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,width=3cm,square,halign=center,valign=center
  }

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow]
Smart shadow arc (arguably better than normal)
\end{tcolorbox}
\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[smart shadow arc=false, drop shadow]
Normal shadow arc
\end{tcolorbox}
\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[circular arc, drop shadow]
Smart shadow arc (worse than normal)
\end{tcolorbox}
\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[circular arc, smart shadow arc=false, drop shadow]
Normal shadow arc
\end{tcolorbox}
```



/tcb/lifted shadow={⟨*xshift*⟩}{⟨*yshift*⟩}{⟨*bend*⟩}{⟨*step*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩} (no default)

Adds a new lifted shadow to the stack of shadows. Actually, this option adds several shadows which appear like a shadow with a fuzzy border. This lifted shadow follows the outline of the `tcolorbox` but is shifted by ⟨*xshift*⟩ and ⟨*yshift*⟩ on the lower left corner and by −⟨*xshift*⟩ and ⟨*yshift*⟩ on the lower right corner. Additionally, there is a ⟨*bend*⟩ in the middle. The {⟨*step*⟩} value describes a shrink offset used for the combination of the partial shadows. The shadow is filled along a Ti*k*Z path with the given Ti*k*Z ⟨*options*⟩ but any `opacity` value will be ignored.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  boxrule=0.1pt,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own shadow,
  lifted shadow={1mm}{-2mm}{3mm}{0.1mm}%
                {black!50!white}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

10.6.4 Ti*k*Z Shadows

Alternativ to the package shadow options described before, shadows from the «Shadows Library» of Ti*k*Z can be used. Such shadows can be added directly to the frame path using `/tcb/frame style` → P. 168.

```
% \usetikzlibrary{shadows}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  frame style={drop shadow} ]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

```
% \usetikzlibrary{shadows}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,height=3cm,
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  halign=center,valign=center,
  frame style={circular drop shadow} ]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

```
% \usetikzlibrary{shadows}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,width=2.5cm,
  square,circular arc,
  halign=center,valign=center,
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  frame style={circular glow={fill=red}} ]
  tcolorbox
\end{tcolorbox}
```

tcolorbox

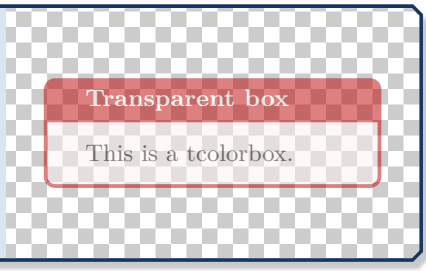
10.7 TikZ Picture Option Keys

The following general options are applicable for skins which use `tikzpicture` as `/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154. Therefore, the skin `standard` → P. 228 does not support these options, but most other skins, e. g. `enhanced` → P. 230.

`/tcb/tikz`=⟨*tikz option list*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Adds the given ⟨*tikz option list*⟩ to the main `tikzpicture` environment used to draw the color box, see [24]. If this option is applied a second time, the new ⟨*tikz option list*⟩ is appended to the current option list.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Transparent box,
  tikz={opacity=0.5,transparency group}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```




```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  fontupper=\bfseries\Huge,
  halin title=center,halign=center}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Rotated box,
  tikz={rotate=30}]
Sold!
\end{tcolorbox}
```

`/tcb/tikz reset` (initially set)

Removes all options given by `/tcb/tikz`.

`/tcb/at begin tikz`=⟨*tikz code*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

The given ⟨*tikz code*⟩ is executed at the beginning of the `tikzpicture` environment after the TikZ option `execute at begin picture` was applied. If this option is applied a second time, the new ⟨*tikz code*⟩ is appended to the current code.

`/tcb/at begin tikz reset` (initially set)

Removes all code given by `/tcb/at begin tikz`.

`/tcb/at end tikz`=⟨*tikz code*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

The given ⟨*tikz code*⟩ is executed at the ending of the `tikzpicture` environment before the TikZ option `execute at end picture` was applied. If this option is applied a second time, the new ⟨*tikz code*⟩ is appended to the current code.

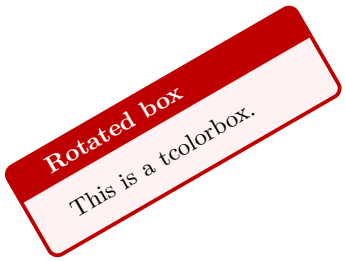
`/tcb/at end tikz reset` (initially set)

Removes all code given by `/tcb/at end tikz`.

/tcb/rotate=⟨*angle*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Rotates the `tcolorbox` by the given ⟨*angle*⟩. Note that this is a Ti*k*Z coordinate transformation i.e. not all graphical elements like shadings will really be rotated.

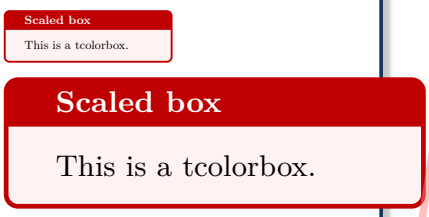
```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Rotated box,rotate=30]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



/tcb/scale=⟨*fraction*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Scales the `tcolorbox` by the given ⟨*fraction*⟩. Note that this is a Ti*k*Z coordinate transformation i.e. not all graphical elements like line widths will really be scaled.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Scaled box,scale=0.5]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Scaled box,scale=1.25]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



/tcb/remember (style, initially unset)

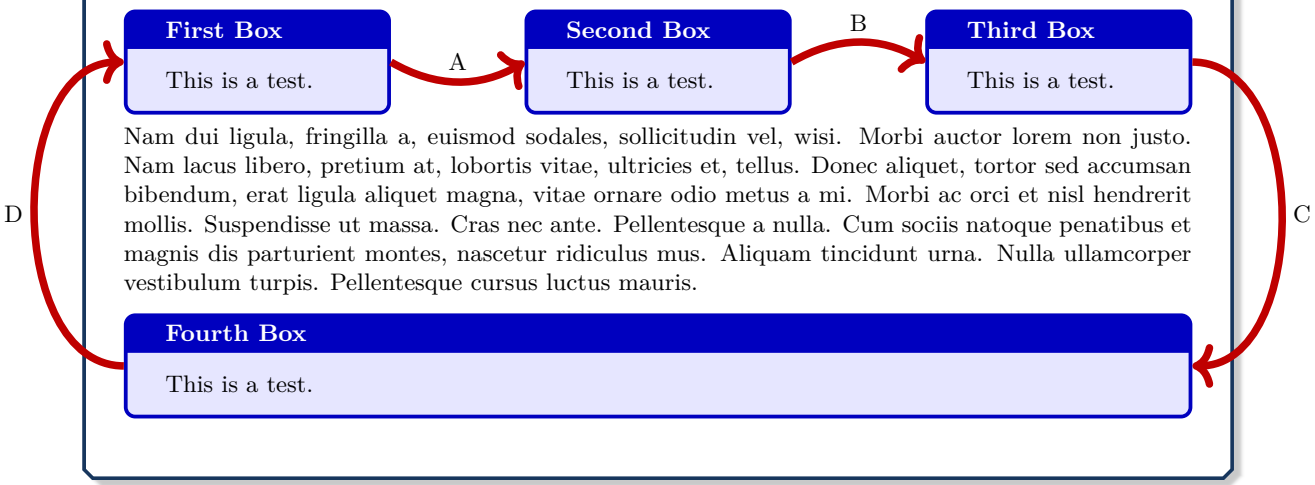
Shortcut for `tikz={remember picture}`. This allows one to reference nodes in other Ti*k*Z pictures.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,remember,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,title=The four corners of a paper,
  overlay={\draw[red!50!white,line width=1mm,opacity=0.5,shorten >=3mm]
    (frame.north west) edge[->] (current page.north west)
    (frame.north east) edge[->] (current page.north east)
    (frame.south west) edge[->] (current page.south west)
    (frame.south east) edge[->] (current page.south east);}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

`/tcb/remember as=`⟨*name*⟩ (style, no default, initially unset)

The `frame` node will be remembered by the given ⟨*name*⟩ to be referenced in other TikZ pictures.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1][]{enhanced,colframe=blue!75!black,colback=blue!10!white,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,#1}

\begin{mybox}[title=First Box,nobeforeafter,width=\linewidth/4,remember as=one]
This is a test.
\end{mybox}
\hfill
\begin{mybox}[title=Second Box,nobeforeafter,width=\linewidth/4,remember as=two]
This is a test.
\end{mybox}
\hfill
\begin{mybox}[title=Third Box,nobeforeafter,width=\linewidth/4,remember as=three]
This is a test.
\end{mybox}

\lipsum[2]

\begin{mybox}[title=Fourth Box,remember as=four]
This is a test.
\end{mybox}

\begin{tikzpicture}[overlay,remember picture,line width=1mm,draw=red!75!black]
  \draw[->] (one.east) to[bend right] node[above] {A} (two.west);
  \draw[->] (two.east) to[bend left] node[above] {B} (three.west);
  \draw[->] (three.east) to[bend left=90] node[right] {C} (four.east);
  \draw[->] (four.west) to[bend left=90] node[left] {D} (one.west);
\end{tikzpicture}
```



Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

10.8 Underlay Option Keys

Underlays are quite similar to overlays described in Section 4.12 on page 79. Underlays are drawn *after* the frame and interior are drawn and *before* overlays and the text content is drawn; see Section 9.4 on page 161 for the general drawing scheme.

The differences between underlays and overlays are:

- Underlays are not applicable for the skins `standard`→ P. 228 and `standard jigsaw`→ P. 229, whereas overlays are applicable also for these skins. The skin `spartan`→ P. 274 supports underlays but no overlays.

  ! If an underlay is used with the `standard`→ P. 228 skin, it is silently ignored.

- Underlays are stackable, i. e. several different underlays can be used on the same `tcolorbox`. Overlays are not stackable by default (but with some help of the library LIB hooks).
- Boxed titles are implemented with underlays (Section 10.2 on page 175), watermarks are implemented with overlays (Section 10.3 on page 186).

`/tcb/underlay`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Adds ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to the box drawing process. This ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is drawn *after* the frame and interior and *before* the text content.

```
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1][]{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  colbacktitle=red!85!black!50!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,watermark color=yellow!50!white,
  underlay={\begin{tcbclipinterior}
    \draw[red!40!white,line width=1cm] (interior.south west)--(interior.north east);
    \end{tcbclipinterior}},
  attach boxed title to top center={yshift=-2mm},#1}

\begin{mybox}[title=My box,watermark text=My Watermark]
\lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}
```

My box

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

My Watermark

`/tcb/no underlay` (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the underlay if set before.

`/tcb/underlay broken`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` →P. 400 and *is* broken actually, then the ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is added to the box drawing process. `/tcb/underlay` →P. 216 overwrites this key.

`/tcb/underlay unbroken`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` →P. 400 but *is not* broken actually or if the box is set to be `/tcb/unbreakable` →P. 401, then the ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is added to the box drawing process. `/tcb/underlay` →P. 216 overwrites this key.

`/tcb/no underlay unbroken` (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the unbroken underlay if set before.

`/tcb/underlay first`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` →P. 400 and *is* broken actually, then the ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is added to the box drawing process for the *first* part of the break sequence. `/tcb/underlay` →P. 216 overwrites this key.

`/tcb/no underlay first` (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the first underlay if set before.

`/tcb/underlay middle`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` →P. 400 and *is* broken actually, then the ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is added to the box drawing process for the *middle* parts (if any) of the break sequence. `/tcb/underlay` →P. 216 overwrites this key.

`/tcb/no underlay middle` (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the middle underlay if set before.

`/tcb/underlay last`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` →P. 400 and *is* broken actually, then the ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is added to the box drawing process for the *last* part of the break sequence. `/tcb/underlay` →P. 216 overwrites this key.

`/tcb/no underlay last` (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the last underlay if set before.

`/tcb/underlay boxed title`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box has a *boxed title*, see Section 10.2 on page 175, then the ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is added to the box drawing process *before* the boxed title is drawn.

`/tcb/no underlay boxed title` (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the boxed title underlay if set before.

`/tcb/underlay unbroken and first`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting `/tcb/underlay unbroken` and `/tcb/underlay first` together. `/tcb/underlay` →P. 216 overwrites this key.

`/tcb/underlay middle and last`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting `/tcb/underlay middle` and `/tcb/underlay last` together. `/tcb/underlay` →P. 216 overwrites this key.

`/tcb/underlay unbroken and last`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting `/tcb/underlay unbroken` and `/tcb/underlay last` together. `/tcb/underlay` →P. 216 overwrites this key.

N 2014-09-19 `/tcb/underlay first and middle`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting `/tcb/underlay first` and `/tcb/underlay middle` together. `/tcb/underlay` →P. 216 overwrites this key.

10.9 Finish Option Keys

Finishes are quite similar to underlays described in Section 10.8 on page 216 and overlays described in Section 4.12 on page 79. Finishes are drawn *after* the text content is drawn; see Section 9.4 on page 161 for the general drawing scheme. Therefore, a finish will reduce the readability of the text content.

Finishes are intended for special effects like highlights or glosses or text over text.

- Finishes are only applicable for the skins `enhanced` → P. 230, `empty` → P. 264, `freelance` → P. 277, `bicolor` → P. 242, `beamer` → P. 257, and `widget` → P. 261.

  ! If a finish is used with the `standard` → P. 228 skin, it is silently ignored.

- Finishes are stackable, i. e. several different finishes can be used on the same `tcolorbox`.

`/tcb/finish`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Adds ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to the box drawing process. This ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is drawn *after* the text content.

```
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1][]{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  colbacktitle=red!85!black!50!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  finish={\begin{tcbclipframe}
    \path[bottom color=black,top color=black!50!white,opacity=0.1]
      (frame.south west) -- (frame.south east) -- (frame.north east) -- cycle;
    \path[top color=white,bottom color=black!50!white,opacity=0.1]
      (frame.south west) -- (frame.north east) -- (frame.north west) -- cycle;
    \end{tcbclipframe}},#1}

\begin{mybox}[title=My box]
\lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}
```

My box

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

```
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1][]{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  colbacktitle=red!85!black!50!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  finish={\node[draw,fill=white,fill opacity=0.85,inner sep=5mm,
    rounded corners] at (frame.center) {\Huge\bfseries Finish!};},#1}

\begin{mybox}[title=My box]
\lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}
```

My box

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

Finish!

`/tcb/no finish` (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the finish if set before.

`/tcb/finish broken`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 and *is* broken actually, then the ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is added to the box drawing process. `/tcb/finish` → P. 218 overwrites this key.

`/tcb/finish unbroken`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 but *is not* broken actually or if the box is set to be `/tcb/unbreakable` → P. 401, then the ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is added to the box drawing process. `/tcb/finish` → P. 218 overwrites this key.

`/tcb/no finish unbroken` (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the unbroken finish if set before.

`/tcb/finish first`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 and *is* broken actually, then the ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is added to the box drawing process for the *first* part of the break sequence. `/tcb/finish` → P. 218 overwrites this key.

`/tcb/no finish first` (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the first finish if set before.

`/tcb/finish middle`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 and *is* broken actually, then the ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is added to the box drawing process for the *middle* parts (if any) of the break sequence. `/tcb/finish` → P. 218 overwrites this key.

`/tcb/no finish middle` (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the middle finish if set before.

`/tcb/finish last`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 and *is* broken actually, then the ⟨*graphical code*⟩ is added to the box drawing process for the *last* part of the break sequence. `/tcb/finish` → P. 218 overwrites this key.

`/tcb/no finish last` (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the last finish if set before.

`/tcb/finish unbroken and first`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting `/tcb/finish unbroken` and `/tcb/finish first` together. `/tcb/finish` → P. 218 overwrites this key.

`/tcb/finish middle and last`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting `/tcb/finish middle` and `/tcb/finish last` together. `/tcb/finish` → P. 218 overwrites this key.

`/tcb/finish unbroken and last`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting `/tcb/finish unbroken` and `/tcb/finish last` together. `/tcb/finish` → P. 218 overwrites this key.

N 2014-09-19 `/tcb/finish first and middle`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting `/tcb/finish first` and `/tcb/finish middle` together. `/tcb/finish` → P. 218 overwrites this key.

10.10 Hyper Option Keys

All options of this section need the package `hyperref` [17] to be loaded separately. All these options are implemented as `/tcb/finish` → P. 218 and can be disabled by `/tcb/no finish` → P. 219.

> **!** If the package `hyperref` [17] is not loaded or if the `standard` → P. 228 skin is used, all hyper option are silently ignored.

N 2017-02-03 **`/tcb/hyperref`=⟨*marker*⟩** (no default, initially unset)

The whole *frame* of a `tcolorbox` is make an active hyperlink for a ⟨*marker*⟩ which was given by `\label` or `/tcb/label` → P. 110 or `/tcb/phantomlabel` → P. 110. Such, the `tcolorbox` is made a clickable button (depending on the previewer).

```
% \section{Library skins}\label{sec:skins}%
\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer,colback=red!50,
  hyperref=sec:skins]
Jump to the heading of Section~\ref*{sec:skins}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Jump to the heading of Section 10.

N 2017-02-03 **`/tcb/hyperref interior`=⟨*marker*⟩** (no default, initially unset)

Identical to `/tcb/hyperref`, but only the *interior* of a `tcolorbox` is made a hyperlink (without frame and title).

N 2017-02-03 **`/tcb/hyperref title`=⟨*marker*⟩** (no default, initially unset)

Identical to `/tcb/hyperref`, but only the *title* of a `tcolorbox` is made a hyperlink.

N 2017-02-03 **`/tcb/hyperref node`={⟨*marker*⟩}{⟨*node*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

Identical to `/tcb/hyperref`, but only the given Ti*k*Z ⟨*node*⟩ is made a hyperlink. This ⟨*node*⟩ may be `frame`, `interior`, `title`, or any other named node used for drawing the `tcolorbox`. The ⟨*node*⟩ may be defined inside `/tcb/underlay` → P. 216, `/tcb/overlay` → P. 79 or `/tcb/finish` → P. 218. If the later is used, define the node *before* `/tcb/hyperref node` is applied.

```
% \section{Library skins}\label{sec:skins}%
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,colback=yellow!10,
  underlay={\node[red,fill=red!30,inner sep=3mm]
   (click) at (frame.center) {X};},
  hyperref node={sec:skins}{click}]
Jump to the heading of Section~\ref*{sec:skins}
(X marks the click point).
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Jump to the heading of Section 10 (X marks the click point).

N 2017-02-03 **`/tcb/hyperlink`=⟨*marker*⟩** (no default, initially unset)

The whole *frame* of a `tcolorbox` is make an active hyperlink for a ⟨*marker*⟩ which was given by `\hypertarget` or `/tcb/hypertarget` → P. 113. Such, the `tcolorbox` is made a clickable button (depending on the previewer).

```
% \usepackage{hyperref}%
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,
  colback=blue!10,colframe=blue!50!black,
  hypertarget=hypertwinB,
  hyperlink=hypertwinA,
  title=Box B]
Click me to jump to Box A.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Box B

Click me to jump to Box A.

N 2017-02-03 **/tcb/hyperlink interior=⟨*marker*⟩** (no default, initially unset)

Identical to /tcb/hyperlink → P. 220, but only the *interior* of a `tcolorbox` is made a hyperlink (without frame and title).

N 2017-02-03 **/tcb/hyperlink title=⟨*marker*⟩** (no default, initially unset)

Identical to /tcb/hyperlink → P. 220, but only the *title* of a `tcolorbox` is made a hyperlink.

N 2017-02-03 **/tcb/hyperlink node={⟨*marker*⟩}{⟨*node*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

Identical to /tcb/hyperlink → P. 220, but only the given TikZ ⟨*node*⟩ is made a hyperlink. This ⟨*node*⟩ may be `frame`, `interior`, `title`, or any other named node used for drawing the `tcolorbox`. The ⟨*node*⟩ may be defined inside /tcb/underlay → P. 216, /tcb/overlay → P. 79 or /tcb/finish → P. 218. If the later is used, define the node *before* /tcb/hyperlink node is applied.

N 2017-02-03 **/tcb/hyperurl=⟨*url*⟩** (no default, initially unset)

The whole *frame* of a `tcolorbox` is make an active hyperlink for an ⟨*url*⟩ in the same manner as using `\href` or `\url`. Such, the `tcolorbox` is made a clickable button (depending on the previewer).

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,colback=red!50,
  hyperurl=https://www.ctan.org/pkg/tcolorbox]
View CTAN with a browser.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

View CTAN with a browser.

N 2017-02-03 **/tcb/hyperurl interior=⟨*url*⟩** (no default, initially unset)

Identical to /tcb/hyperurl, but only the *interior* of a `tcolorbox` is made a hyperlink (without frame and title).

N 2017-02-03 **/tcb/hyperurl title=⟨*url*⟩** (no default, initially unset)

Identical to /tcb/hyperurl, but only the *title* of a `tcolorbox` is made a hyperlink.

N 2017-02-03 **/tcb/hyperurl node={⟨*url*⟩}{⟨*node*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

Identical to /tcb/hyperurl, but only the given TikZ ⟨*node*⟩ is made a hyperlink. This ⟨*node*⟩ may be `frame`, `interior`, `title`, or any other named node used for drawing the `tcolorbox`. The ⟨*node*⟩ may be defined inside /tcb/underlay → P. 216, /tcb/overlay → P. 79 or /tcb/finish → P. 218. If the later is used, define the node *before* /tcb/hyperurl node is applied.

N 2017-02-03 **/tcb/hyperurl*={⟨*options*⟩}{⟨*url*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

Identical to /tcb/hyperurl, but additional `hyperref` [17] ⟨*options*⟩ are applied.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,colback=green!50,
  hyperurl*={page=3,pdfnewwindow=true}%
            {tcolorbox-example.pdf}]
Open example file on Page~3.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Open example file on Page 3.

N 2017-02-03 **/tcb/hyperurl* interior={⟨*options*⟩}{⟨*url*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

Identical to /tcb/hyperurl interior, but additional `hyperref` [17] ⟨*options*⟩ are applied.

N 2017-02-03 **/tcb/hyperurl* title={⟨*options*⟩}{⟨*url*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

Identical to /tcb/hyperurl title, but additional `hyperref` [17] ⟨*options*⟩ are applied.

N 2017-02-03 **/tcb/hyperurl* node={⟨*options*⟩}{⟨*url*⟩}{⟨*node*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

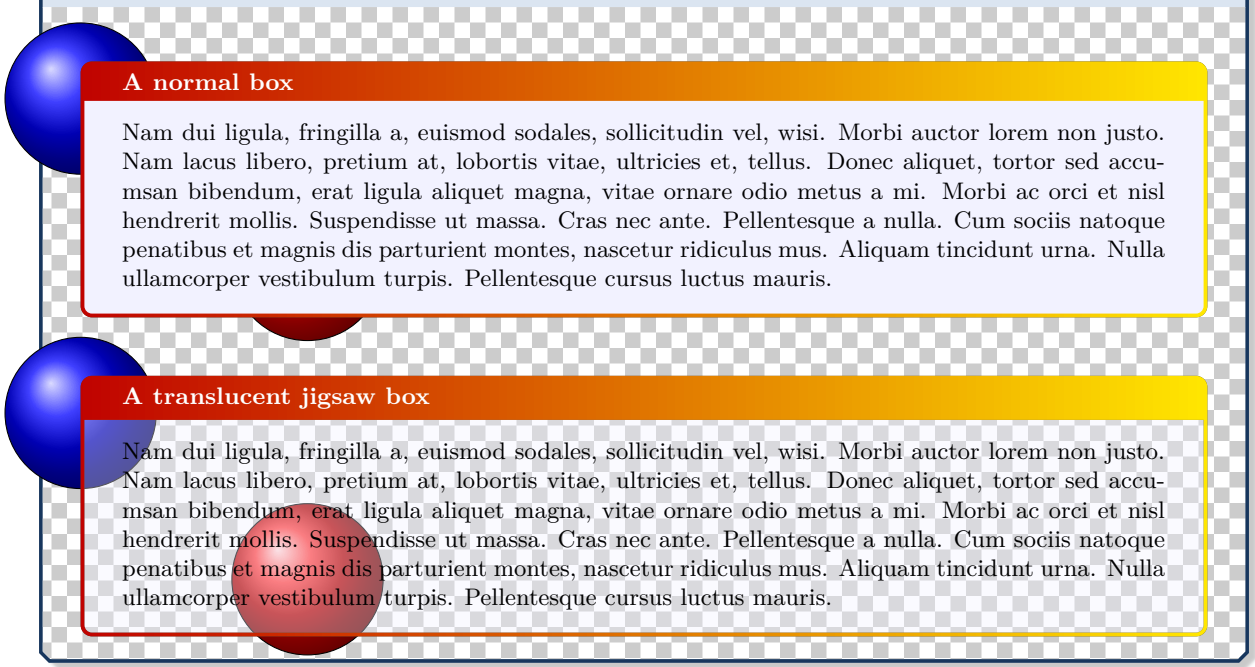
Identical to /tcb/hyperurl node, but additional `hyperref` [17] ⟨*options*⟩ are applied.

10.11 Jigsaw Skin Variants

As described in Section 9.1 on page 153, a `tcolorbox` is drawn by up to four *engines*. Typically, the *frame* engine fills the complete box area with color and the other engines fill certain areas with other colors. Finally, only the area which you see as *frame* of the box will display the frame color. For most applications, this is a good approach.

For certain boxes, a more delicate procedure is needed. E.g., if the box should be translucent, an already painted area cannot be made unpainted. Therefore, more elaborate frame engines saw holes into the frame where the interior area and optionally the title area will be painted. The resulting skins are called *jigsaw* skins. For `standard`→ P. 228, `enhanced`→ P. 230, and `bicolor`→ P. 242, there are variants called `standard jigsaw`→ P. 229, `enhanced jigsaw`→ P. 236, and `bicolor jigsaw`→ P. 249.

```
\newcommand{\ballexample}{\begin{tikzpicture}
  \path[use as bounding box] (0,0.8) rectangle +(0.1,0.1);
  \shadedraw [shading=ball] (0,0) circle (1cm);
  \shadedraw [ball color=red] (3,-2.2) circle (1cm);
\end{tikzpicture}}

\tcbset{enhanced,colback=blue!5!white,
  frame style={left color=red!75!black,right color=red!10!yellow},
  fonttitle=\bfseries }

\ballexample

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=A normal box]
  \lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\ballexample

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=A translucent jigsaw box,
  enhanced jigsaw,opacityback=0.35]
  \lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```



```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!10!white,coltitle=black,
  frame style={left color=red!75!black,right color=red!10!yellow},
  fonttitle=\bfseries,interior hidden,title hidden}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=A normal box with hidden interior and title]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,
  title=A jigsaw box with hidden interior and title]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

A normal box with hidden interior and title

This is a tcolorbox.

A jigsaw box with hidden interior and title

This is a tcolorbox.

```
\newtcolorbox{mybox}{skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw,leftrule=5mm,rightrule=5mm,
  boxsep=0mm,top=0mm,bottom=0mm,
  frame style={top color=blue,bottom color=red},interior hidden}

\begin{mybox}
  \lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}
```

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

10.12 Draft Mode

To reduce the compiliation time while drafting a document, the *draft mode* can be applied. Basically, it changes all skins to `spartan` → P. 274 and sets the `/tcb/fit algorithm` → P. 460 to `squeeze`. Especially, when fuzzy shadows are used, the speedup will be considerable high.

> **!** It is strongly recommended that the draft mode is *not* used for the final document. Use `spartan` → P. 274 directly, if you want to stay with it. The draft mode implementation may change in future.

> **!** Normally, switching to the draft mode should not alter the geometry of your document. Since overlays are deactivated, any code placed there (e.g. counter changes) is not executed anymore! Also, `/tcb/remember as` → P. 215 will not have any effect. You may exclude critical code with `\tcbinterruptdraftmode` / `\tcbcontinuedraftmode` from converting to draft mode.

`\tcbstartdraftmode`

Any following `tcolorbox` code is put into *draft mode*. All skin settings are overruled with `spartan` → P. 274. Overlays, watermarks, shadows, borderlines, and rounded corners are deactivated for all `tcolorbox` layers.

`\tcbstopdraftmode`

The *draft mode* is deactivated for the following code.

`\tcbinterruptdraftmode`

If the compilation is in *draft mode*, the *draft mode* is deactivated until a following `\tcbcontinuedraftmode` is detected.

If the compilation is not in *draft mode*, nothing happens and a following `\tcbcontinuedraftmode` will not start the *draft mode*.

> **!** The pair `\tcbinterruptdraftmode` and `\tcbcontinuedraftmode` cannot be used nested.

`\tcbcontinuedraftmode`

Continues the *draft mode* which was suspended by a preceding `\tcbinterruptdraftmode`. Nothing happens, if there was no draft mode before `\tcbinterruptdraftmode`.

> **!** Code, which is place between `\tcbinterruptdraftmode` and `\tcbcontinuedraftmode` is shielded from *draft mode*.

`/tcb/draftmode=true|false` (default `true`, initially `false`)

If set to `true`, the *draft mode* is started. If set to `false`, the *draft mode* is stopped.

```
\newtcolorbox{mybeamer}[2][]{beamer,colback=Salmon!50!white,
  colframe=FireBrick!75!black,adjusted title={#2},#1}

\begin{mybeamer}{Beamer box}
This box looks like a box provided by the \texttt{beamer} class.
\end{mybeamer}\par\medskip
\begin{mybeamer}[draftmode]{Beamer box}
This box looks like a box provided by the \texttt{beamer} class.
\end{mybeamer}
```

Beamer box

This box looks like a box provided by the `beamer` class.

Beamer box

This box looks like a box provided by the `beamer` class.

11 Library LIB skins - Catalog of Skins

The LIB skins library provides a catalog of skins to choose from which is documented in the following. The LIB skins library has to be loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```
\tcbuselibrary{skins}
```

See Section 10 on page 168 for the documentation of all other options of the LIB skins library.

- In principle, a skin is applied by choosing a value for `/tcb/skin` → P. 153, e.g. `enhanced`. Since the parts of a breakable box should look different, there are individual skins for breakable boxes, also see Section 19.8 on page 414. Skins for breakable boxes derived from a base skin are called a skin family in the following.
- Instead of setting values for `/tcb/skin` → P. 153, equally named options can be used which are shortcuts and which sometimes also change some geometry or style settings. These are the intended options for normal users. Typically, one of the following options is sufficient to select a skin:
  - `/tcb/standard` → P. 228
  - `/tcb/standard jigsaw` → P. 229
  - `/tcb/enhanced` → P. 230
  - `/tcb/enhanced jigsaw` → P. 236
  - `/tcb/enhanced standard` → P. 232
  - `/tcb/enhanced standard jigsaw` → P. 236
  - `/tcb/bicolor` → P. 243
  - `/tcb/tile` → P. 253
  - `/tcb/beamer` → P. 257
  - `/tcb/widget` → P. 261
  - `/tcb/empty` → P. 264
  - `/tcb/spartan` → P. 274
  - `/tcb/draft` → P. 275

  Additionally, there are some special applications:
  - `/tcb/marker` → P. 238
  - `/tcb/blank` → P. 232
  - `/tcb/blanker` → P. 265
  - `/tcb/blankest` → P. 266

The auxiliary macro **\skinExampleSet** is used for the following examples to display skin applications. Note that **\skinExampleSet** is not part of the package, but is defined just for this documentation.

```
\NewDocumentCommand{\skinExampleSet}{m}{%
  \begin{tcbraster}[raster equal height,raster columns=3,
      colback=LightGreen,colframe=DarkGreen,colbacktitle=LimeGreen!75!DarkGreen,
      #1,
      left=1mm,right=1mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,middle=1mm,
      sidebyside gap=4mm]
    \begin{tcolorbox}
      This is my content.
    \end{tcolorbox}
    \begin{tcolorbox}
      This is my content.
      \tcblower
      More content.
    \end{tcolorbox}
    \begin{tcolorbox}[sidebyside]
      My content.
      \tcblower
      More content.
    \end{tcolorbox}
    \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=My title]
      This is my content.
    \end{tcolorbox}
    \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=My title]
      This is my content.
      \tcblower
      More content.
    \end{tcolorbox}
    \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=My title,sidebyside]
      My content.
      \tcblower
      More content.
    \end{tcolorbox}
  \end{tcbraster}
}
```

11.1 Skin Family “standard”

Note that the option keys /tcb/frame style →P. 168, /tcb/interior style →P. 169, /tcb/segmentation style →P. 171, and /tcb/title style →P. 171 are not be applicable to the standard skin. Also, watermarks (see Subsection 10.3) are not usable with the standard skin.

/tcb/skin=standard (skin)

This is the standard skin from the core package. All drawing engines are set to type standard. The drawing is based on pgf commands and does not need the tikz package.

Environment and engines for the skin “standard”

/tcb/graphical environment →P. 154:	pgfpicture
/tcb/frame engine →P. 154:	standard
/tcb/interior titled engine →P. 154:	standard
/tcb/interior engine →P. 155:	standard
/tcb/segmentation engine →P. 155:	standard
/tcb/title engine →P. 155:	standard

/tcb/standard (style, no value)

This is an abbreviation for setting skin=standard.

```
\skinExampleSet{standard}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.
More content.

My content. | More content.

My title
This is my content.

My title
This is my content.
More content.

My title
My content. | More content.

/tcb/skin=standard jigsaw (skin)

This is the standard jigsaw skin from the core package. It differs from the skin standard → P. 228 by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 222.

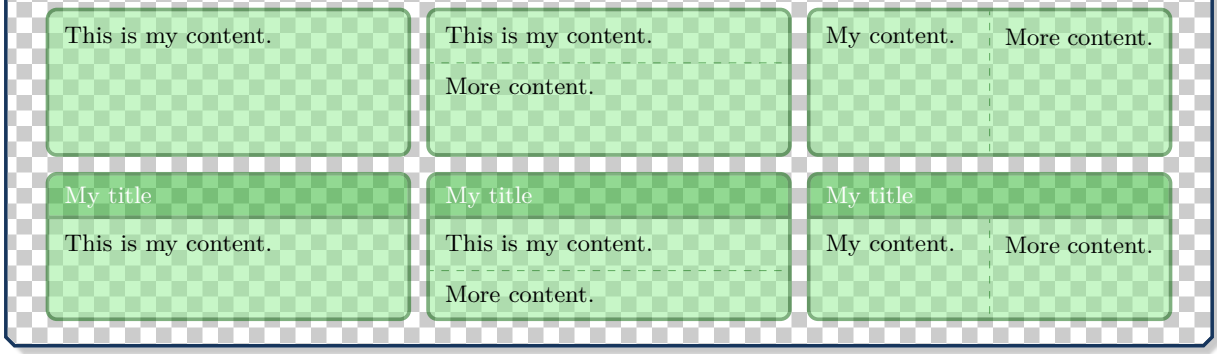
Environment and engines for the skin "standard jigsaw"

/tcb/graphical environment → P. 154:	pgfpicture
/tcb/frame engine → P. 154:	standardjigsaw
/tcb/interior titled engine → P. 154:	standard
/tcb/interior engine → P. 155:	standard
/tcb/segmentation engine → P. 155:	standard
/tcb/title engine → P. 155:	standard

/tcb/standard jigsaw (style, no value)

This is an abbreviation for setting skin=standard jigsaw.

```
\skinExampleSet{standard jigsaw,
  opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,
}
```



11.2 Skin Family “enhanced”

If you like the standard appearance of a `tcolorbox` but you want to have some “enhanced” features, the `enhanced` skin is what you are looking for.

`/tcb/skin=enhanced` (skin)

This skin translates the drawing commands of the core package into `tikz` path commands. Therefore, it allows all `tikz` high level options for these paths and has more flexibility compared to the `standard` → P. 228 skin. You pay for this with some prolonged compilation time. The `tikz` path options can be given with the option keys `/tcb/frame style` → P. 168, `/tcb/interior style` → P. 169, `/tcb/segmentation style` → P. 171, and `/tcb/title style` → P. 171.

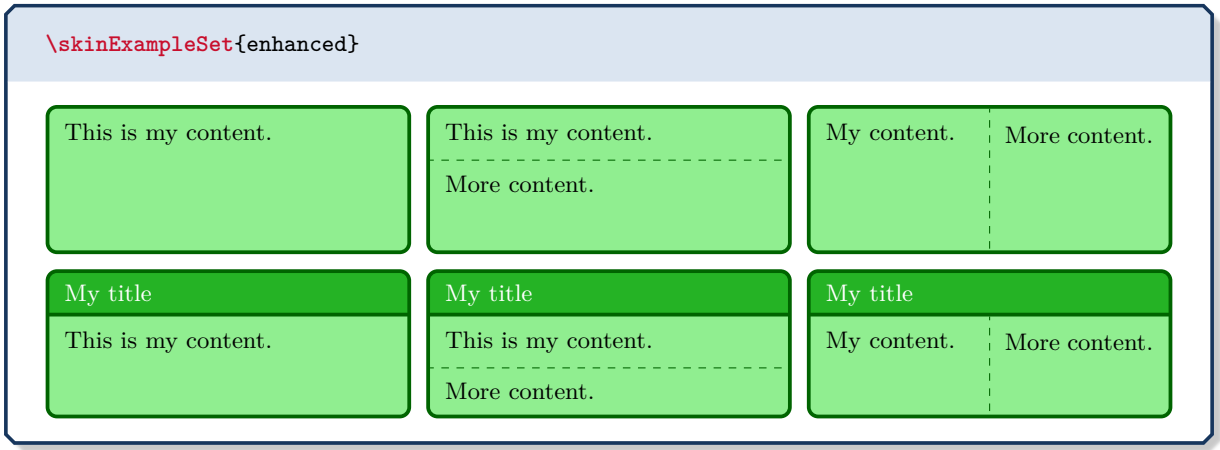
Environment and engines for the skin “enhanced”

`/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154:	`tikzpicture`
`/tcb/frame engine` → P. 154:	`path`
`/tcb/interior titled engine` → P. 154:	`path`
`/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155:	`path`
`/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155:	`path`
`/tcb/title engine` → P. 155:	`path`

`/tcb/enhanced` (style, no value)

This is an abbreviation for setting `skin=enhanced`.

```
\skinExampleSet{enhanced}
```



```
% \usetikzlibrary{shadings}          % preamble
\tcbset{skin=enhanced,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  frame style={upper left=blue,upper right=red,lower left=yellow,lower right=green},
  interior style={white,opacity=0.5},
  segmentation style={black,solid,opacity=0.2,line width=1pt}}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Nice box in rainbow colors]
  With the \enquote{enhanced} skin, it is quite easy to produce fancy looking effects.
  \tcblower
  Note that this is still a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Nice box in rainbow colors

With the “enhanced” skin, it is quite easy to produce fancy looking effects.

Note that this is still a `tcolorbox`.

```
% \usetikzlibrary{decorations.pathmorphing} % preamble
\tcbset{skin=enhanced,fonttitle=\bfseries,boxrule=1mm,
  frame style={draw=FireBrick,fill=Salmon},drop fuzzy shadow,
  interior style={draw=FireBrick,top color=Salmon!10,bottom color=Salmon!20},
  segmentation style={draw=FireBrick,solid,decorate,
        decoration={coil,aspect=0,segment length=10.1mm}}}

\begin{tcblisting}{title=A listing box with shadow and some specials}
Of course, skins can be used for listings also.
\begin{equation}
  \int\limits_1^2 \frac{1}{x}~dx = \ln(2).
\end{equation}
\end{tcblisting}
```

A listing box with shadow and some specials

```
Of course, skins can be used for listings also.
\begin{equation}
  \int\limits_1^2 \frac{1}{x}~dx = \ln(2).
\end{equation}
```

Of course, skins can be used for listings also.

$$\int_1^2 \frac{1}{x}\,dx = \ln(2). \tag{2}$$

`/tcb/enhanced standard` (style, no value)

For unbreakable boxes, this is identical to using `/tcb/enhanced` → P. 230. But, for breakable boxes, the *break sequence* is identical to the `standard` → P. 228 skin, see Section 19.8 from page 414.

`/tcb/blank` (style, initially unset)

This style relies on the skin `enhanced` → P. 230. All drawing operations are hidden and all margins are set to `0pt`. See `/tcb/blanker` → P. 265 for switching off the drawing engines.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[blank,watermark text=A blank box]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

A blank box

\tcbline

Sometimes, a line is only a line. With \tcblower → P. 12 you separate the box content into two functional units. **\tcbline** draws only a line which looks like the segmentation line between upper and lower part. Furthermore, you can use **\tcbline** more than just once. **\tcbline** always uses the **path** drawing engine. Therefore, the /tcb/segmentation style → P. 171 can be applied.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=white}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colupper=red!50!black,collower=green!50!black]
\lipsum[1]
\tcbline
\lipsum[2]
\tcblower
\lipsum[3]
\tcbline
\lipsum[4]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis. Donec nonummy pellentesque ante. Phasellus adipiscing semper elit. Proin fermentum massa ac quam. Sed diam turpis, molestie vitae, placerat a, molestie nec, leo. Maecenas lacinia. Nam ipsum ligula, eleifend at, accumsan nec, suscipit a, ipsum. Morbi blandit ligula feugiat magna. Nunc eleifend consequat lorem. Sed lacinia nulla vitae enim. Pellentesque tincidunt purus vel magna. Integer non enim. Praesent euismod nunc eu purus. Donec bibendum quam in tellus. Nullam cursus pulvinar lectus. Donec et mi. Nam vulputate metus eu enim. Vestibulum pellentesque felis eu massa.

Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt ultrices. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Integer tempus convallis augue. Etiam facilisis. Nunc elementum fermentum wisi. Aenean placerat. Ut imperdiet, enim sed gravida sollicitudin, felis odio placerat quam, ac pulvinar elit purus eget enim. Nunc vitae tortor. Proin tempus nibh sit amet nisl. Vivamus quis tortor vitae risus porta vehicula.

\tcbline*

Equivalent to \tcbline, but in a breakable box, \tcbline* is removed if at a page/box break. Also, it is removed at the end of a box.

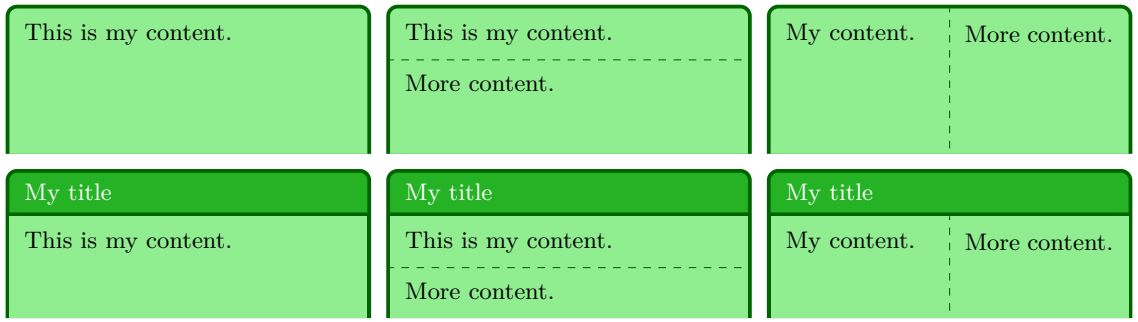
/tcb/skin=enhancedfirst (skin)

This is a flavor of enhanced → P. 230 which is used as a *first* part in a break sequence for enhanced → P. 230. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin "enhancedfirst"

/tcb/graphical environment → P. 154:	tikzpicture
/tcb/frame engine → P. 154:	pathfirst
/tcb/interior titled engine → P. 154:	pathfirst
/tcb/interior engine → P. 155:	pathfirst
/tcb/segmentation engine → P. 155:	path
/tcb/title engine → P. 155:	pathfirst

```
\skinExampleSet{skin=enhancedfirst}
```



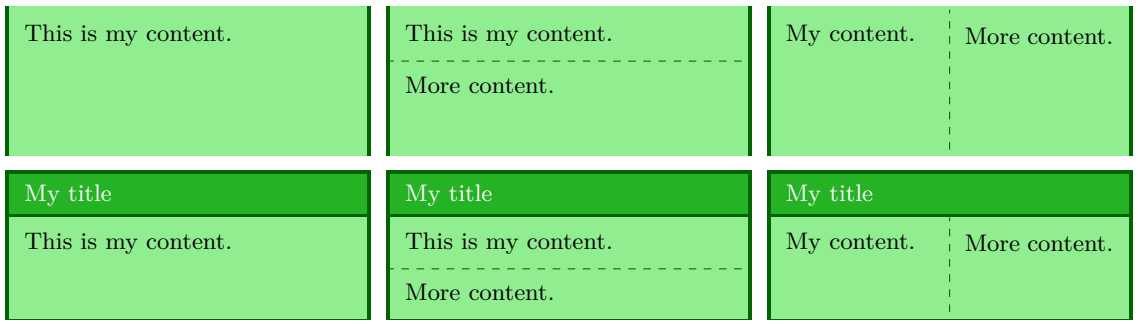
/tcb/skin=enhancedmiddle (skin)

This is a flavor of enhanced → P. 230 which is used as a *middle* part in a break sequence for enhanced → P. 230. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin "enhancedmiddle"

/tcb/graphical environment → P. 154:	tikzpicture
/tcb/frame engine → P. 154:	pathmiddle
/tcb/interior titled engine → P. 154:	pathmiddle
/tcb/interior engine → P. 155:	pathmiddle
/tcb/segmentation engine → P. 155:	path
/tcb/title engine → P. 155:	pathmiddle

```
\skinExampleSet{skin=enhancedmiddle}
```



`/tcb/skin=enhancedlast` (skin)

This is a flavor of `enhanced` → P. 230 which is used as a *last* part in a break sequence for `enhanced` → P. 230. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin "`enhancedlast`"

`/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154:	`tikzpicture`
`/tcb/frame engine` → P. 154:	`pathlast`
`/tcb/interior titled engine` → P. 154:	`pathlast`
`/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155:	`pathlast`
`/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155:	`path`
`/tcb/title engine` → P. 155:	`pathlast`

```
\skinExampleSet{skin=enhancedlast}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

My content. More content.

`/tcb/skin=enhanced jigsaw` (skin)

This is the jigsaw variant of skin `enhanced` → P. 230. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 222.

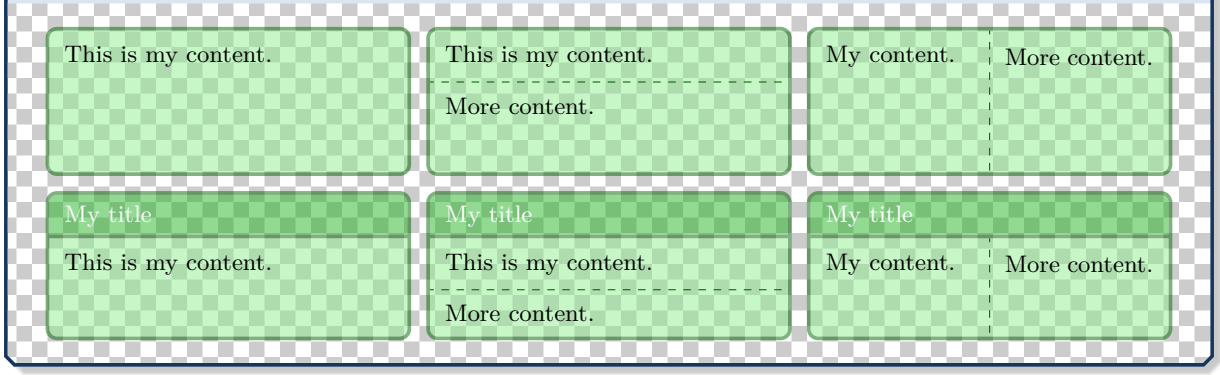
Environment and engines for the skin "enhanced jigsaw"

`/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154:	`tikzpicture`
`/tcb/frame engine` → P. 154:	`pathjigsaw`
`/tcb/interior titled engine` → P. 154:	`path`
`/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155:	`path`
`/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155:	`path`
`/tcb/title engine` → P. 155:	`path`

`/tcb/enhanced jigsaw` (style, no value)

This is an abbreviation for setting `skin=enhanced jigsaw`.

```
\skinExampleSet{enhanced jigsaw,
  opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,
}
```



N 2017-07-01 `/tcb/enhanced standard jigsaw` (style, no value)

For unbreakable boxes, this is identical to using `/tcb/enhanced jigsaw`. But, for breakable boxes, the *break sequence* is identical to the `standard jigsaw` → P. 229 skin, see Section 19.8 from page 414.

`/tcb/skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw` (skin)

This is the jigsaw variant of skin `enhancedfirst` → P. 234. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 222.

Environment and engines for the skin "enhancedfirst jigsaw"

`/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154:	`tikzpicture`
`/tcb/frame engine` → P. 154:	`pathfirstjigsaw`
`/tcb/interior titled engine` → P. 154:	`pathfirst`
`/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155:	`pathfirst`
`/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155:	`path`
`/tcb/title engine` → P. 155:	`pathfirst`

```
\skinExampleSet{skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw,
  opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,
}
```

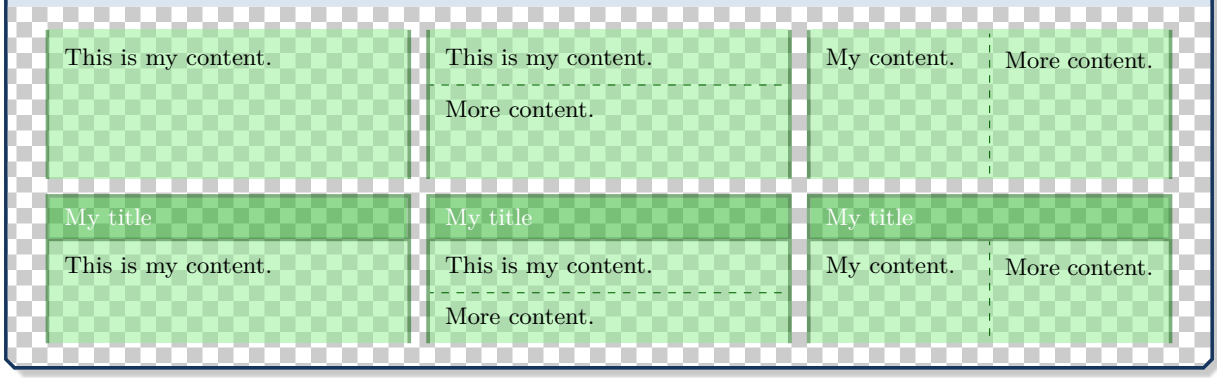
/tcb/skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw (skin)

This is the jigsaw variant of skin enhancedmiddle → P. 234. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 222.

Environment and engines for the skin "enhancedmiddle jigsaw"

/tcb/graphical environment → P. 154:	tikzpicture
/tcb/frame engine → P. 154:	pathmiddlejigsaw
/tcb/interior titled engine → P. 154:	pathmiddle
/tcb/interior engine → P. 155:	pathmiddle
/tcb/segmentation engine → P. 155:	path
/tcb/title engine → P. 155:	pathmiddle

```
\skinExampleSet{skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw,
  opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,
}
```



/tcb/marker (style, no value)

This styles relies on the skin enhancedmiddle jigsaw. It is intended to be used as an optical marker like a highlighter pen.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[marker]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

This examples demonstrates the creation of several *text marker* environments based on enhancedmiddle → P. 234.

```
\tcbset{textmarker/.style={%
    skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw,breakable,parbox=false,
    boxrule=0mm,leftrule=5mm,rightrule=5mm,boxsep=0mm,arc=0mm,outer arc=0mm,
    left=3mm,right=3mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,toptitle=1mm,bottomtitle=1mm,oversize}}

\newtcolorbox{yellow}{textmarker,colback=yellow!5!white,colframe=yellow}
\newtcolorbox{orange}{textmarker,colback=DarkOrange!5!white,
                      colframe=DarkOrange!75!yellow}
\newtcolorbox{red}{textmarker,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red}
\newtcolorbox{blue}{textmarker,colback=DeepSkyBlue!5!white,colframe=DeepSkyBlue}
\newtcolorbox{green}{textmarker,colback=Chartreuse!5!white,colframe=Chartreuse}
\newtcolorbox{rainbow}{textmarker,interior hidden,
  frame style={top color=blue,bottom color=red,middle color=green}}

\begin{yellow}
  \lipsum[1-3]
\end{yellow}

\begin{orange}
  \lipsum[4]
\end{orange}

\begin{red}
  \lipsum[5]
\end{red}

\begin{green}
  \lipsum[6]
\end{green}

\begin{blue}
  \lipsum[7]
\end{blue}

\begin{rainbow}
  \lipsum[8]
\end{rainbow}
```

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique,

libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis. Donec nonummy pellentesque ante. Phasellus adipiscing semper elit. Proin fermentum massa ac quam. Sed diam turpis, molestie vitae, placerat a, molestie nec, leo. Maecenas lacinia. Nam ipsum ligula, eleifend at, accumsan nec, suscipit a, ipsum. Morbi blandit ligula feugiat magna. Nunc eleifend consequat lorem. Sed lacinia nulla vitae enim. Pellentesque tincidunt purus vel magna. Integer non enim. Praesent euismod nunc eu purus. Donec bibendum quam in tellus. Nullam cursus pulvinar lectus. Donec et mi. Nam vulputate metus eu enim. Vestibulum pellentesque felis eu massa.

Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt ultrices. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Integer tempus convallis augue. Etiam facilisis. Nunc elementum fermentum wisi. Aenean placerat. Ut imperdiet, enim sed gravida sollicitudin, felis odio placerat quam, ac pulvinar elit purus eget enim. Nunc vitae tortor. Proin tempus nibh sit amet nisl. Vivamus quis tortor vitae risus porta vehicula.

Fusce mauris. Vestibulum luctus nibh at lectus. Sed bibendum, nulla a faucibus semper, leo velit ultricies tellus, ac venenatis arcu wisi vel nisl. Vestibulum diam. Aliquam pellentesque, augue quis sagittis posuere, turpis lacus congue quam, in hendrerit risus eros eget felis. Maecenas eget erat in sapien mattis porttitor. Vestibulum porttitor. Nulla facilisi. Sed a turpis eu lacus commodo facilisis. Morbi fringilla, wisi in dignissim interdum, justo lectus sagittis dui, et vehicula libero dui cursus dui. Mauris tempor ligula sed lacus. Duis cursus enim ut augue. Cras ac magna. Cras nulla. Nulla egestas. Curabitur a leo. Quisque egestas wisi eget nunc. Nam feugiat lacus vel est. Curabitur consectetuer.

Suspendisse vel felis. Ut lorem lorem, interdum eu, tincidunt sit amet, laoreet vitae, arcu. Aenean faucibus pede eu ante. Praesent enim elit, rutrum at, molestie non, nonummy vel, nisl. Ut lectus eros, malesuada sit amet, fermentum eu, sodales cursus, magna. Donec eu purus. Quisque vehicula, urna sed ultricies auctor, pede lorem egestas dui, et convallis elit erat sed nulla. Donec luctus. Curabitur et nunc. Aliquam dolor odio, commodo pretium, ultricies non, pharetra in, velit. Integer arcu est, nonummy in, fermentum faucibus, egestas vel, odio.

Sed commodo posuere pede. Mauris ut est. Ut quis purus. Sed ac odio. Sed vehicula hendrerit sem. Duis non odio. Morbi ut dui. Sed accumsan risus eget odio. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Pellentesque non elit. Fusce sed justo eu urna porta tincidunt. Mauris felis odio, sollicitudin sed, volutpat a, ornare ac, erat. Morbi quis dolor. Donec pellentesque, erat ac sagittis semper, nunc dui lobortis purus, quis congue purus metus ultricies tellus. Proin et quam. Class aptent taciti sociosqu ad litora torquent per conubia nostra, per inceptos hymenaeos. Praesent sapien turpis, fermentum vel, eleifend faucibus, vehicula eu, lacus.

Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Donec odio elit, dictum in, hendrerit sit amet, egestas sed, leo. Praesent feugiat sapien aliquet odio. Integer vitae justo. Aliquam vestibulum fringilla lorem. Sed neque lectus, consectetuer at, consectetuer sed, eleifend ac, lectus. Nulla facilisi. Pellentesque eget lectus. Proin eu metus. Sed porttitor. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Suspendisse eu lectus. Ut mi mi, lacinia sit amet, placerat et, mollis vitae, dui. Sed ante tellus, tristique ut, iaculis eu, malesuada ac, dui. Mauris nibh leo, facilisis non, adipiscing quis, ultrices a, dui.

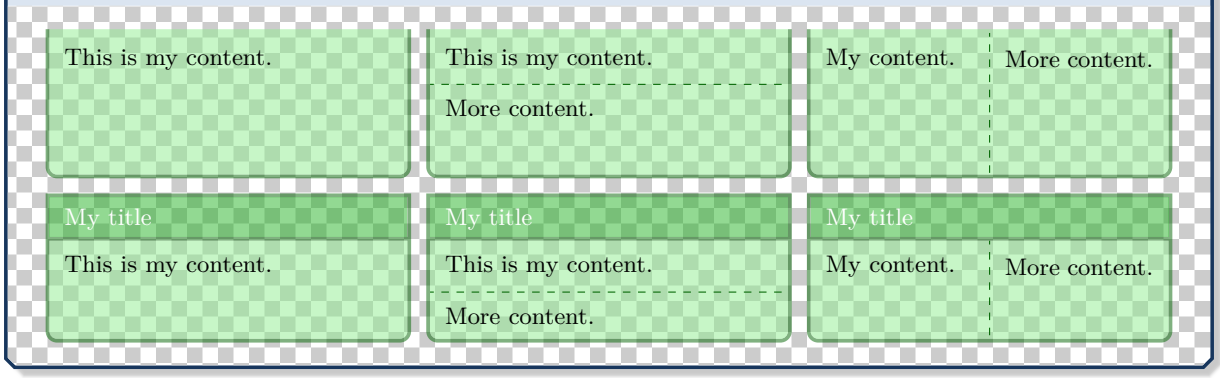
`/tcb/skin=enhancedlast jigsaw` (skin)

This is the jigsaw variant of skin `enhancedlast` → P. 235. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 222.

Environment and engines for the skin "enhancedlast"

`/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154:	`tikzpicture`
`/tcb/frame engine` → P. 154:	`pathlastjigsaw`
`/tcb/interior titled engine` → P. 154:	`pathlast`
`/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155:	`pathlast`
`/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155:	`path`
`/tcb/title engine` → P. 155:	`pathlast`

```
\skinExampleSet{skin=enhancedlast jigsaw,
  opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,
}
```



11.3 Skin Family “bicolor”

/tcb/skin=bicolor (skin)

This skin is quite similar to the standard → P. 228 and enhanced → P. 230 skin. But instead of a segmentation line, the optional lower part of the box is filled with a different color or drawn with a different style.

Environment and engines for the skin “bicolor”

/tcb/graphical environment → P. 154:	tikzpicture
/tcb/frame engine → P. 154:	path
/tcb/interior titled engine → P. 154:	*special*
/tcb/interior engine → P. 155:	*special*
/tcb/segmentation engine → P. 155:	*special*
/tcb/title engine → P. 155:	path

- The most basic usage of this skin is to set the background color of the lower part by /tcb/colbacklower → P. 244 and all other options like for the standard → P. 228 skin.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[skin=bicolor,title=The title,
    colframe=FireBrick!75!black,colback=Salmon!50!white,colbacklower=Salmon]
  The upper part.
  \tcblower
  The lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

The title

The upper part.

The lower part.

- The more advanced usage of this skin is to apply the /tcb/frame style → P. 168 and the /tcb/interior style → P. 169 like for the enhanced → P. 230 skin. Also, the /tcb/segmentation style → P. 171 can be used, but it is applied to the whole lower part.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[skin=bicolor,title=The title,
    frame style={top color=FireBrick,
                 bottom color=FireBrick!15!white,draw=black},
    interior style={left color=Salmon,right color=Salmon!50!white},
    segmentation style={right color=Salmon,left color=Salmon!50!white}]
  The upper part.
  \tcblower
  The lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

The title

The upper part.

The lower part.

/tcb/bicolor (style, no value)

This is an abbreviation for setting `skin=bicolor`.

```
\skinExampleSet{bicolor,
  colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,
}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

My content. More content.

! The following options /tcb/colbacklower and /tcb/opacitybacklower are executed before /tcb/segmentation style →P. 171, i.e. /tcb/segmentation style →P. 171 overrules them.

/tcb/colbacklower=⟨*color*⟩ (no default, initially black!15!white)

Sets the background ⟨*color*⟩ of the lower part. It depends on the skin, if this value is used.

```
\tcbset{gitexample/.style={listing and comment,comment={#1},
  skin=bicolor,boxrule=1mm,fonttitle=\bfseries,coltitle=black,
  frame style={draw=black,left color=Gold,right color=Goldenrod!50!Gold},
  colback=black,colbacklower=Goldenrod!75!Gold,
  colupper=white,collower=black,
  listing options={language={bash},aboveskip=0pt,belowskip=0pt,nolol,
  basicstyle=\ttfamily\bfseries,extendedchars=true}}}

\begin{tcblisting}{title={Snapshot of the staging area},
  gitexample={The option `-a' automatically stages all tracked and modified
              files before the commit.\par
              This can be combined with the message option `-m'
              as seen in the third line.}}
git commit
git commit -a
git commit -am 'changes to my example'
\end{tcblisting}
```

Snapshot of the staging area

```
git commit
git commit -a
git commit -am 'changes␣to␣my␣example'
```

The option '-a' automatically stages all tracked and modified files before the commit.
This can be combined with the message option '-m' as seen in the third line.

N 2021-05-21 /tcb/opacitybacklower=⟨*fraction*⟩ (no default, initially 1.0)

Sets the background opacity of the lower part to the given ⟨*fraction*⟩. It depends on the skin, if this value is used.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[bicolor,
  frame style={preaction={fill=blue!50!black},
    pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=blue!50!gray},
  fonttitle=\bfseries, overlaplower=0mm,
  colback=blue!10, colbacklower=white, opacitybacklower=0.65,
  title={Example for a semilucent lower part}]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
And that is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Example for a semilucent lower part

This is the upper part.

And that is the lower part.

N 2022-01-11 `/tcb/overlaplower`=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0.1mm`)

The backgrounds of the lower parts for the skin families “bicolor”, “tile”, and “beamer” are drawn differently than the backgrounds of the upper parts. If the distance between these backgrounds of upper and lower parts is `0pt`, some previewers show the frame color as thin line between upper and lower part. To avoid this glitch, the lower part is drawn with an overlap of ⟨*length*⟩ over the upper part.

This value can be adapted for special applications. For example, semilucent lower parts better use `0pt`, see `/tcb/opacitybacklower` → P. 244. Also see `\tcboverlaplower` for using a larger value.

N 2022-01-11 `\tcboverlaplower`

Macro which contains the length value set by `/tcb/overlaplower`. May be used for fine positioning at the segmentation between upper and lower part and should be seen *read-only*.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[bicolor, sharp corners,
    colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!10, colbacklower=red!10,
    top=5mm, bottom=2mm, middle=3.5mm, overlaplower=1.5mm,
    underlay={
      \node[minimum width=1cm,minimum height=0.5cm,outer sep=auto,
        anchor=north east,fill=white] at (interior.north east)
        {\itshape\small upper};
      \node[minimum width=1cm,minimum height=0.5cm,outer sep=auto,
        anchor=north east,fill=white]
        at ([yshift=\tcboverlaplower]segmentation.east)
        {\itshape\small lower};
    }
  ]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
And that is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

upper

This is the upper part.

lower

And that is the lower part.

`/tcb/skin=bicolorfirst` (skin)

This is a flavor of `bicolor` → P. 242 which is used as a *first* part in a break sequence for `bicolor` → P. 242. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin "`bicolorfirst`"

`/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154:	`tikzpicture`
`/tcb/frame engine` → P. 154:	`pathfirst`
`/tcb/interior titled engine` → P. 154:	*special*
`/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155:	*special*
`/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155:	*special*
`/tcb/title engine` → P. 155:	`pathfirst`

```
\skinExampleSet{skin=bicolorfirst,
  colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,
}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

My content. More content.

`/tcb/skin=bicolormiddle` (skin)

This is a flavor of `bicolor` → P. 242 which is used as a *middle* part in a break sequence for `bicolor` → P. 242. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin "`bicolormiddle`"

`/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154:	`tikzpicture`
`/tcb/frame engine` → P. 154:	`pathmiddle`
`/tcb/interior titled engine` → P. 154:	*special*
`/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155:	*special*
`/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155:	*special*
`/tcb/title engine` → P. 155:	`pathmiddle`

```
\skinExampleSet{skin=bicolormiddle,
  colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,
}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

My content. More content.

`/tcb/skin=bicolorlast` (skin)

This is a flavor of `bicolor` → P. 242 which is used as a *last* part in a break sequence for `bicolor` → P. 242. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin "`bicolorlast`"

`/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154:	`tikzpicture`
`/tcb/frame engine` → P. 154:	`pathlast`
`/tcb/interior titled engine` → P. 154:	*special*
`/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155:	*special*
`/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155:	*special*
`/tcb/title engine` → P. 155:	`pathlast`

```
\skinExampleSet{skin=bicolorlast,
  colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,
}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

My content. More content.

N 2021-05-21 **/tcb/skin=bicolor jigsaw** (skin)

This is the jigsaw variant of skin `bicolor` → P. 242. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 222.

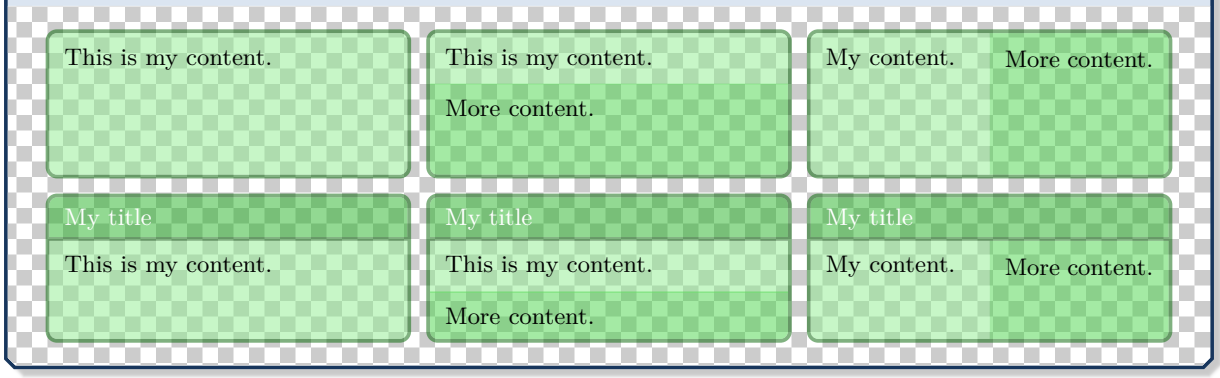
Environment and engines for the skin "bicolor jigsaw"

/tcb/graphical environment → P. 154:	tikzpicture
/tcb/frame engine → P. 154:	pathjigsaw
/tcb/interior titled engine → P. 154:	*special*
/tcb/interior engine → P. 155:	*special*
/tcb/segmentation engine → P. 155:	*special*
/tcb/title engine → P. 155:	path

/tcb/bicolor jigsaw (style, no value)

This is an abbreviation for setting `skin=enhanced jigsaw`.

```
\skinExampleSet{bicolor jigsaw,
  colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,
  opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,
  opacitybacklower=0.5,
}
```



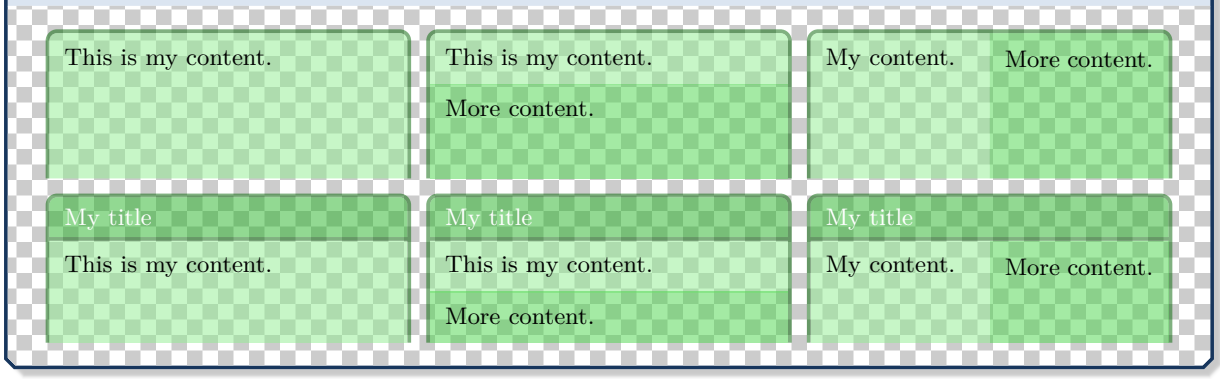
N 2021-05-21 `/tcb/skin=bicolorfirst jigsaw` (skin)

This is the jigsaw variant of skin `bicolorfirst` → P. 246. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 222.

Environment and engines for the skin "`bicolorfirst jigsaw`"

`/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154:	`tikzpicture`
`/tcb/frame engine` → P. 154:	`pathfirstjigsaw`
`/tcb/interior titled engine` → P. 154:	*special*
`/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155:	*special*
`/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155:	*special*
`/tcb/title engine` → P. 155:	`pathfirst`

```
\skinExampleSet{skin=bicolorfirst jigsaw,
  colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,
  opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,
  opacitybacklower=0.5,
}
```



N 2021-05-21 **/tcb/skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw** (skin)

This is the jigsaw variant of skin bicolormiddle → P. 247. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 222.

Environment and engines for the skin "bicolormiddle jigsaw"

/tcb/graphical environment → P. 154:	tikzpicture
/tcb/frame engine → P. 154:	pathmiddlejigsaw
/tcb/interior titled engine → P. 154:	*special*
/tcb/interior engine → P. 155:	*special*
/tcb/segmentation engine → P. 155:	*special*
/tcb/title engine → P. 155:	pathmiddle

```
\skinExampleSet{skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw,
  colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,
  opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,
  opacitybacklower=0.5,
}
```

N 2021-05-21 `/tcb/skin=bicolorlast jigsaw` (skin)

This is the jigsaw variant of skin `bicolorlast` → P. 248. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 222.

Environment and engines for the skin "bicolorlast jigsaw"

`/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154:	`tikzpicture`
`/tcb/frame engine` → P. 154:	`pathlastjigsaw`
`/tcb/interior titled engine` → P. 154:	*special*
`/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155:	*special*
`/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155:	*special*
`/tcb/title engine` → P. 155:	`pathlast`

```
\skinExampleSet{skin=bicolorlast jigsaw,
  colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,
  opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,
  opacitybacklower=0.5,
}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

My content. More content.

11.4 Skin Family “tile”

N 2016-02-25 `/tcb/skin=tile` (skin)

This skin is a variant of skin `bicolor` → P. 242. Especially, the optional lower part of the box is colored by `/tcb/colbacklower` → P. 244. The main difference to `bicolor` → P. 242 is that `tile` has no frame.

Environment and engines for the skin “tile”

`/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154:	`tikzpicture`
`/tcb/frame engine` → P. 154:	`empty`
`/tcb/interior titled engine` → P. 154:	*special*
`/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155:	*special*
`/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155:	*special*
`/tcb/title engine` → P. 155:	`path`

N 2016-02-25 `/tcb/tile` (style, initially `skin=tile,boxrule=0pt,sharp corners,title filled,fonttitle=\bfseries`)

This key applies `skin=tile` and in addition changes the geometry and some style options.

```
\skinExampleSet{tile,
  colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,
}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

My content. More content.

N 2016-02-25 **/tcb/skin=tilefirst** (skin)

This is a flavor of tile [→ P. 253] which is used as a *first* part in a break sequence for tile [→ P. 253]. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin "tilefirst"

/tcb/graphical environment [→ P. 154]:	tikzpicture
/tcb/frame engine [→ P. 154]:	empty
/tcb/interior titled engine [→ P. 154]:	*special*
/tcb/interior engine [→ P. 155]:	*special*
/tcb/segmentation engine [→ P. 155]:	*special*
/tcb/title engine [→ P. 155]:	pathfirst

```
\skinExampleSet{skin=tilefirst,
  colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,
  boxrule=0pt,
}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

My content. More content.

N 2016-02-25 **/tcb/skin=tilemiddle** (skin)

This is a flavor of tile → P. 253 which is used as a *middle* part in a break sequence for tile → P. 253. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin "tilemiddle"

/tcb/graphical environment → P. 154:	tikzpicture
/tcb/frame engine → P. 154:	empty
/tcb/interior titled engine → P. 154:	*special*
/tcb/interior engine → P. 155:	*special*
/tcb/segmentation engine → P. 155:	*special*
/tcb/title engine → P. 155:	pathmiddle

```
\skinExampleSet{skin=tilemiddle,
  colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,
  boxrule=0pt,
}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

My content. More content.

N 2016-02-25 **/tcb/skin=tilelast** (skin)

This is a flavor of tile [→ P. 253] which is used as a *last* part in a break sequence for tile [→ P. 253]. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin "tilelast"

/tcb/graphical environment [→ P. 154]:	tikzpicture
/tcb/frame engine [→ P. 154]:	empty
/tcb/interior titled engine [→ P. 154]:	*special*
/tcb/interior engine [→ P. 155]:	*special*
/tcb/segmentation engine [→ P. 155]:	*special*
/tcb/title engine [→ P. 155]:	pathlast

```
\skinExampleSet{skin=tilelast,
  colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,
  boxrule=0pt,
}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

My content. More content.

11.5 Skin Family “beamer”

`/tcb/skin=beamer` (skin)

This skin resembles boxes known from the `beamer` class and therefore is called “beamer”. It uses the normal colors from the core package but shades them a little bit.

Environment and engines for the skin “beamer”

`/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154:	`tikzpicture`
`/tcb/frame engine` → P. 154:	`path`
`/tcb/interior titled engine` → P. 154:	*special*
`/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155:	*special*
`/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155:	*special*
`/tcb/title engine` → P. 155:	`path`

`/tcb/beamer` (style, initially `skin=beamer,boxrule=0mm,titlerule=1mm,toptitle=0.5mm,arc=2mm,fonttitle=\bfseries,drop fuzzy shadow`)

This key applies `skin=beamer` and in addition changes the geometry and some style options.

```
\skinExampleSet{beamer,title filled=false}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

My content. More content.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer,colback=Salmon!50!white,colframe=FireBrick!75!black,
  adjusted title=A colored box with the \enquote{beamer} skin]
This box looks like a box provided by the \texttt{beamer} class.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

A colored box with the “beamer” skin

This box looks like a box provided by the `beamer` class.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer,colframe=blue,colback=black,
  watermark graphics=lichtspiel.jpg,
  coltext=white,watermark opacity=0.75,watermark stretch=1.0,
  title=Beamer Box with background picture]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Beamer Box with background picture

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

```
\newtcolorbox{myblock}[2][]{%
  beamer,breakable,colback=LightBlue,colframe=DarkBlue,#1,title={#2}}%

\begin{myblock}{Beamerish \texttt{block}: \texttt{myblock}}
\lipsum[1]
\end{myblock}
```

Beamerish `block`: `myblock`

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

/tcb/skin=beamerfirst (skin)

This is a flavor of beamer → P. 257 which is used as a *first* part in a break sequence for beamer → P. 257. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin "beamerfirst"

/tcb/graphical environment → P. 154:	tikzpicture
/tcb/frame engine → P. 154:	pathfirst
/tcb/interior titled engine → P. 154:	*special*
/tcb/interior engine → P. 155:	*special*
/tcb/segmentation engine → P. 155:	*special*
/tcb/title engine → P. 155:	pathfirst

```
\skinExampleSet{beamer,title filled=false,skin=beamerfirst}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.
More content.

My content. | More content.

My title
This is my content.

My title
This is my content.
More content.

My title
My content. | More content.

/tcb/skin=beamermiddle (skin)

This is a flavor of beamer → P. 257 which is used as a *middle* part in a break sequence for beamer → P. 257. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin "beamermiddle"

/tcb/graphical environment → P. 154:	tikzpicture
/tcb/frame engine → P. 154:	pathmiddle
/tcb/interior titled engine → P. 154:	*special*
/tcb/interior engine → P. 155:	*special*
/tcb/segmentation engine → P. 155:	*special*
/tcb/title engine → P. 155:	pathmiddle

```
\skinExampleSet{beamer,title filled=false,skin=beamermiddle}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.
More content.

My content. | More content.

My title
This is my content.

My title
This is my content.
More content.

My title
My content. | More content.

`/tcb/skin=beamerlast` (skin)

This is a flavor of `beamer` → P. 257 which is used as a *last* part in a break sequence for `beamer` → P. 257. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin "`beamerlast`"

`/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154:	`tikzpicture`
`/tcb/frame engine` → P. 154:	`pathlast`
`/tcb/interior titled engine` → P. 154:	*special*
`/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155:	*special*
`/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155:	*special*
`/tcb/title engine` → P. 155:	`pathlast`

```
\skinExampleSet{beamer,title filled=false,skin=beamerlast}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

My content. More content.

11.6 Skin Family “widget”

`/tcb/skin=widget` (skin)

This skin uses the normal colors from the core package but shades them a little bit. The appearance of the skin can be controlled by `/tcb/frame style` → P. 168, `/tcb/interior style` → P. 169, and `/tcb/segmentation style` → P. 171, if needed.

Environment and engines for the skin “widget”

`/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154:	`tikzpicture`
`/tcb/frame engine` → P. 154:	`path`
`/tcb/interior titled engine` → P. 154:	`path`
`/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155:	`path`
`/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155:	*special*
`/tcb/title engine` → P. 155:	*special*

U 2020-09-23

`/tcb/widget` (style, initially `skin=widget,arc=0.5mm,fonttitle=,titlerule=0mm`)

This key applies `skin=widget` and in addition changes the geometry and some style options.

```
\skinExampleSet{widget}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

My title
This is my content.

My title
This is my content.

More content.

My title
My content. More content.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[widget,colback=Salmon!50!white,colframe=FireBrick!75!black,
  adjusted title=A colored box with the \enquote{widget} skin]
This is my content.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

A colored box with the “widget” skin

This is my content.

/tcb/skin=widgetfirst (skin)

This is a flavor of widget → P. 261 which is used as a *first* part in a break sequence for widget → P. 261. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin "widgetfirst"

/tcb/graphical environment → P. 154:	tikzpicture
/tcb/frame engine → P. 154:	pathfirst
/tcb/interior titled engine → P. 154:	pathfirst
/tcb/interior engine → P. 155:	pathfirst
/tcb/segmentation engine → P. 155:	*special*
/tcb/title engine → P. 155:	*special*

```
\skinExampleSet{widget,skin=widgetfirst}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

My title
This is my content.

My title
This is my content.

More content.

My title
My content. More content.

/tcb/skin=widgetmiddle (skin)

This is a flavor of widget → P. 261 which is used as a *middle* part in a break sequence for widget → P. 261. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin "widgetmiddle"

/tcb/graphical environment → P. 154:	tikzpicture
/tcb/frame engine → P. 154:	pathmiddle
/tcb/interior titled engine → P. 154:	pathmiddle
/tcb/interior engine → P. 155:	pathmiddle
/tcb/segmentation engine → P. 155:	*special*
/tcb/title engine → P. 155:	*special*

```
\skinExampleSet{widget,skin=widgetmiddle}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

My title
This is my content.

My title
This is my content.

More content.

My title
My content. More content.

`/tcb/skin=widgetlast` (skin)

This is a flavor of `widget` → P. 261 which is used as a *last* part in a break sequence for `widget` → P. 261. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin "`widgetlast`"

`/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154:	`tikzpicture`
`/tcb/frame engine` → P. 154:	`pathlast`
`/tcb/interior titled engine` → P. 154:	`pathlast`
`/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155:	`pathlast`
`/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155:	*special*
`/tcb/title engine` → P. 155:	*special*

```
\skinExampleSet{widget,skin=widgetlast}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

My content. More content.

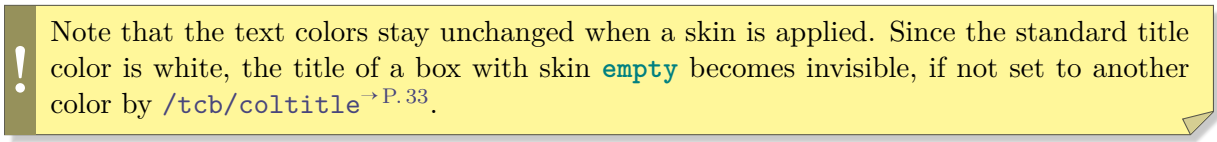
11.7 Skin Family “empty”

`/tcb/skin=empty` (skin)

This skin sets all engines to `empty`, i. e. nothing is drawn at all. Therefore, this skin is a good starting point to create a complete new style by yourself.

Environment and engines for the skin “empty”

`/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154:	`tikzpicture`
`/tcb/frame engine` → P. 154:	`empty`
`/tcb/interior titled engine` → P. 154:	`empty`
`/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155:	`empty`
`/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155:	`empty`
`/tcb/title engine` → P. 155:	`empty`



Note that the text colors stay unchanged when a skin is applied. Since the standard title color is white, the title of a box with skin `empty` becomes invisible, if not set to another color by `/tcb/coltitle` → P. 33.

`/tcb/empty` (style, no value)

This is an abbreviation for setting `skin=empty`.

```
\skinExampleSet{empty,
  coltitle=Navy,borderline={2pt}{0pt}{black!10!white},
}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

My content. More content.

/tcb/blanker (style, initially unset)

This style relies on the skin empty → P. 264. All engines are set to empty and all margins are set to 0pt. In contrast to /tcb/blank → P. 232, the graphical paths are not constructed with exception of the geometry nodes.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[blanker,watermark text=A blank box]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

A blank box

```
% \tcbuselibrary{fitting}
\newtcboxfit{\mybox}[1]{blanker,width=4cm,height=7cm,top=4pt,
  watermark text=#1}

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}\hline
A & B & C\\\hline
\mybox{A}{\lipsum[1]} & \mybox{B}{\lipsum[2]} & \mybox{C}{\lipsum[3]}\\\hline
\end{tabular}
```

A	B	C
Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.	Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.	Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis. Donec nonummy pellentesque ante. Phasellus adipiscing semper elit. Proin fermentum massa ac quam. Sed diam turpis, molestie vitae, placerat a, molestie nec, leo. Maecenas lacinia. Nam ipsum ligula, eleifend at, accumsan nec, suscipit a, ipsum. Morbi blandit ligula feugiat magna. Nunc eleifend consequat lorem. Sed lacinia nulla vitae enim. Pellentesque tincidunt purus vel magna. Integer non enim. Praesent euismod nunc eu purus. Donec bibendum quam in tellus. Nullam cursus pulvinar lectus. Donec et mi. Nam vulputate metus eu enim. Vestibulum pellentesque felis eu massa.

A blank box

`/tcb/blankest` (style, initially unset)

This style extends `/tcb/blanker` → P. 265. All engines are set to empty and all margins are set to `0pt`. In contrast to `/tcb/blanker` → P. 265, also title, shadow, underlay, overlay, finish and borderline are removed.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,raster equal height,
    title=Box \thetcbrasternum,
    enhanced,size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,
    coltitle=yellow!85!black,
    drop fuzzy shadow,watermark text={Box \thetcbrasternum},
    borderline={.25mm}{-0.5mm}{green!40!black},
    finish={\begin{tcbclipframe}\draw[blue,opacity=0.1,line width=1cm]
      (frame.south west) -- (frame.north east);\end{tcbclipframe}},
    ]
  \begin{tcolorbox}\lipsum[4]\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[blanker]\lipsum[4]\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[blankest]\lipsum[4]\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
```

Box 1

Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt ultrices. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Integer tempus convallis augue. Etiam facilisis. Nunc elementum fermentum wisi. Aenean placerat. Ut imperdiet, enim sed gravida sollicitudin, felis odio placerat quam, ac pulvinar elit purus eget enim. Nunc vitae tortor. Proin tempus nibh sit amet nisl. Vivamus quis tortor vitae risus porta vehicula.

Box 2

Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt ultrices. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Integer tempus convallis augue. Etiam facilisis. Nunc elementum fermentum wisi. Aenean placerat. Ut imperdiet, enim sed gravida sollicitudin, felis odio placerat quam, ac pulvinar elit purus eget enim. Nunc vitae tortor. Proin tempus nibh sit amet nisl. Vivamus quis tortor vitae risus porta vehicula.

Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt ultrices. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Integer tempus convallis augue. Etiam facilisis. Nunc elementum fermentum wisi. Aenean placerat. Ut imperdiet, enim sed gravida sollicitudin, felis odio placerat quam, ac pulvinar elit purus eget enim. Nunc vitae tortor. Proin tempus nibh sit amet nisl. Vivamus quis tortor vitae risus porta vehicula.

`/tcb/skin=emptyfirst` (skin)

This is a flavor of `empty` → P. 264 which is used as a *first* part in a break sequence for `empty` → P. 264. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin "`emptyfirst`"

`/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154:	`tikzpicture`
`/tcb/frame engine` → P. 154:	`empty`
`/tcb/interior titled engine` → P. 154:	`empty`
`/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155:	`empty`
`/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155:	`empty`
`/tcb/title engine` → P. 155:	`empty`

```
\skinExampleSet{skin=emptyfirst,
  coltitle=Navy,borderline={2pt}{0pt}{black!10!white},
}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

My content. More content.

`/tcb/skin=emptymiddle` (skin)

This is a flavor of `empty` → P. 264 which is used as a *middle* part in a break sequence for `empty` → P. 264. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin "`emptymiddle`"

`/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154:	`tikzpicture`
`/tcb/frame engine` → P. 154:	`empty`
`/tcb/interior titled engine` → P. 154:	`empty`
`/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155:	`empty`
`/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155:	`empty`
`/tcb/title engine` → P. 155:	`empty`

```
\skinExampleSet{skin=emptymiddle,
  coltitle=Navy,borderline={2pt}{0pt}{black!10!white},
}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

My content. More content.

`/tcb/skin=emptylast` (skin)

This is a flavor of `empty` → P. 264 which is used as a *last* part in a break sequence for `empty` → P. 264. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin "`emptylast`"

`/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154:	`tikzpicture`
`/tcb/frame engine` → P. 154:	`empty`
`/tcb/interior titled engine` → P. 154:	`empty`
`/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155:	`empty`
`/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155:	`empty`
`/tcb/title engine` → P. 155:	`empty`

```
\skinExampleSet{skin=emptylast,
  coltitle=Navy,borderline={2pt}{0pt}{black!10!white},
}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

My content. More content.

This example demonstrates a breakable customized box. Here, we define an environment `freebox`. The first application of `freebox` produces an unbroken `tcolorbox`. The box is drawn by the code given by `/tcb/frame code` → P. 157 and `/tcb/interior code` → P. 158. The second application of `freebox` is broken into several parts which are drawn by the codes given by `/tcb/skin first is subskin of` → P. 160, `/tcb/skin middle is subskin of` → P. 160, and `/tcb/skin last is subskin of` → P. 160.

```
% Preamble:
%\usepackage{tikz,lipsum}
%\tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\tikzset{coltria/.style={fill=red!15!white}}

\newtcolorbox{freebox}[1][]{empty,
  breakable,height fixed for=first and middle,
  leftrule=5mm,left=2mm,
  frame style={fill,top color=red!75!black,bottom color=red!75!black,middle color=red},
  colback=yellow!50!white,
  watermark color=red!50!yellow!75!white,
  watermark text on=unbroken is unbroken box,
  watermark text on=first is first part,
  watermark text on=middle is middle part,
  watermark text on=last is last part,
  % code for unbroken boxes:
  frame code={\path[tcb fill frame] (frame.south west)--(frame.north west)
    --([xshift=-5mm]frame.north east)--([yshift=-5mm]frame.north east)
    --([yshift=5mm]frame.south east)--([xshift=-5mm]frame.south east)--cycle; },
  interior code={\path[tcb fill interior] (interior.south west)--(interior.north west)
    --([xshift=-4.8mm]interior.north east)--([yshift=-4.8mm]interior.north east)
    --([yshift=4.8mm]interior.south east)--([xshift=-4.8mm]interior.south east)
    --cycle; },
  % code for the first part of a break sequence:
  skin first is subskin of={emptyfirst}{%
    frame code={\path[tcb fill frame] (frame.south west)--(frame.north west)
      --([xshift=-5mm]frame.north east)--([yshift=-5mm]frame.north east)
      --(frame.south east)--cycle;
      \path[coltria] ([xshift=2.5mm,yshift=1mm]frame.south west) -- +(120:2mm)
      -- +(60:2mm)-- cycle; },
    interior code={\path[tcb fill interior] (interior.south west|-frame.south)
      --(interior.north west)--([xshift=-4.8mm]interior.north east)
      --([yshift=-4.8mm]interior.north east)--(interior.south east|-frame.south)
      --cycle; },
  },%
  % code for the middle part of a break sequence:
  skin middle is subskin of={emptymiddle}{%
    frame code={\path[tcb fill frame] (frame.south west)--(frame.north west)
      --(frame.north east)--(frame.south east)--cycle;
      \path[coltria] ([xshift=2.5mm,yshift=-1mm]frame.north west) -- +(240:2mm)
        -- +(300:2mm) -- cycle;
      \path[coltria] ([xshift=2.5mm,yshift=1mm]frame.south west) -- +(120:2mm)
        -- +(60:2mm) -- cycle;
      },
    interior code={\path[tcb fill interior] (interior.south west|-frame.south)
      --(interior.north west|-frame.north)--(interior.north east|-frame.north)
      --(interior.south east|-frame.south)--cycle; },
    },
  % code for the last part of a break sequence:
  skin last is subskin of={emptylast}{%
    frame code={\path[tcb fill frame] (frame.south west)--(frame.north west)
      --(frame.north east)--([yshift=5mm]frame.south east)
      --([xshift=-5mm]frame.south east)--cycle;
      \path[coltria] ([xshift=2.5mm,yshift=-1mm]frame.north west) -- +(240:2mm)
      -- +(300:2mm) -- cycle;
```

```
      },
    interior code={\path[tcb fill interior] (interior.south west)
      --(interior.north west|-frame.north)--(interior.north east|-frame.north)
      --([yshift=4.8mm]interior.south east)--([xshift=-4.8mm]interior.south east)
      --cycle; },
    },
  #1}

\begin{freebox}
\lipsum[1]
\end{freebox}

\begin{freebox}
\lipsum[1-12]
\end{freebox}
```

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

unbroken box

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

first part

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis. Donec nonummy pellentesque ante. Phasellus adipiscing semper elit. Proin fermentum massa ac quam. Sed diam turpis, molestie vitae, placerat a, molestie nec, leo. Maecenas lacinia. Nam ipsum ligula, eleifend at, accumsan nec, suscipit a, ipsum. Morbi blandit ligula feugiat magna. Nunc eleifend consequat lorem. Sed lacinia nulla vitae enim. Pellentesque tincidunt purus vel

magna. Integer non enim. Praesent euismod nunc eu purus. Donec bibendum quam in tellus. Nullam cursus pulvinar lectus. Donec et mi. Nam vulputate metus eu enim. Vestibulum pellentesque felis eu massa.

Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt ultrices. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Integer tempus convallis augue. Etiam facilisis. Nunc elementum fermentum wisi. Aenean placerat. Ut imperdiet, enim sed gravida sollicitudin, felis odio placerat quam, ac pulvinar elit purus eget enim. Nunc vitae tortor. Proin tempus nibh sit amet nisl. Vivamus quis tortor vitae risus porta vehicula.

Fusce mauris. Vestibulum luctus nibh at lectus. Sed bibendum, nulla a faucibus semper, leo velit ultricies tellus, ac venenatis arcu wisi vel nisl. Vestibulum diam. Aliquam pellentesque, augue quis sagittis posuere, turpis lacus congue quam, in hendrerit risus eros eget felis. Maecenas eget erat in sapien mattis porttitor. Vestibulum porttitor. Nulla facilisi. Sed a turpis eu lacus commodo facilisis. Morbi fringilla, wisi in dignissim interdum, justo lectus sagittis dui, et vehicula libero dui cursus dui. Mauris tempor ligula sed lacus. Duis cursus enim ut augue. Cras ac magna. Cras nulla. Nulla egestas. Curabitur a leo. Quisque egestas wisi eget nunc. Nam feugiat lacus vel est. Curabitur consectetuer.

Suspendisse vel felis. Ut lorem lorem, interdum eu, tincidunt sit amet, laoreet vitae, arcu. Aenean faucibus pede eu ante. Praesent enim elit, rutrum at, molestie non, nonummy vel, nisl. Ut lectus eros, malesuada sit amet, fermentum eu, sodales cursus, magna. Donec eu purus. Quisque vehicula, urna sed ultricies auctor, pede lorem egestas dui, et convallis elit erat sed nulla. Donec luctus. Curabitur et nunc. Aliquam dolor odio, commodo pretium, ultricies non, pharetra in, velit. Integer arcu est, nonummy in, fermentum faucibus, egestas vel, odio.

Sed commodo posuere pede. Mauris ut est. Ut quis purus. Sed ac odio. Sed vehicula hendrerit sem. Duis non odio. Morbi ut dui. Sed accumsan risus eget odio. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Pellentesque non elit. Fusce sed justo eu urna porta tincidunt. Mauris felis odio, sollicitudin sed, volutpat a, ornare ac, erat. Morbi quis dolor. Donec pellentesque, erat ac sagittis semper, nunc dui lobortis purus, quis congue purus metus ultricies tellus. Proin et quam. Class aptent taciti sociosqu ad litora torquent per conubia nostra, per inceptos hymenaeos. Praesent sapien turpis, fermentum vel, eleifend faucibus, vehicula eu, lacus.

Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Donec odio elit, dictum in, hendrerit sit amet, egestas sed, leo. Praesent feugiat sapien aliquet odio. Integer vitae justo. Aliquam vestibulum fringilla lorem. Sed neque lectus, consectetuer at, consectetuer sed, eleifend ac, lectus. Nulla facilisi. Pellentesque eget lectus. Proin eu metus. Sed porttitor. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Suspendisse eu lectus. Ut mi mi, lacinia sit amet, placerat et, mollis vitae, dui. Sed ante tellus, tristique ut, iaculis eu, malesuada ac, dui. Mauris nibh leo, facilisis non, adipiscing quis, ultrices a, dui.

Morbi luctus, wisi viverra faucibus pretium, nibh est placerat odio, nec commodo wisi enim eget quam. Quisque libero justo, consectetuer a, feugiat vitae, porttitor eu, libero. Suspendisse sed mauris vitae elit sollicitudin malesuada. Maecenas ultricies eros sit amet ante. Ut venenatis velit. Maecenas sed mi eget dui varius euismod. Phasellus aliquet volutpat odio. Vestibulum ante ipsum primis in faucibus orci luctus et ultrices posuere cubilia Curae; Pellentesque sit amet pede ac sem eleifend consectetuer. Nullam elementum, urna vel imperdiet sodales, elit ipsum pharetra ligula, ac pretium ante justo a nulla. Curabitur tristique arcu eu metus. Vestibulum lectus. Proin mauris. Proin eu nunc eu urna hendrerit faucibus. Aliquam auctor, pede consequat laoreet varius, eros tellus scelerisque quam, pellentesque hendrerit ipsum dolor sed augue. Nulla nec lacus.

middle part

Suspendisse vitae elit. Aliquam arcu neque, ornare in, ullamcorper quis, commodo eu, libero. Fusce sagittis erat at erat tristique mollis. Maecenas sapien libero, molestie et, lobortis in, sodales eget, dui. Morbi ultrices rutrum lorem. Nam elementum ullamcorper leo. Morbi dui. Aliquam sagittis. Nunc placerat. Pellentesque tristique sodales est. Maecenas imperdiet lacinia velit. Cras non urna. Morbi eros pede, suscipit ac, varius vel, egestas non, eros. Praesent malesuada, diam id pretium elementum, eros sem dictum tortor, vel consectetuer odio sem sed wisi.

Sed feugiat. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Ut pellentesque augue sed urna. Vestibulum diam eros, fringilla et, consectetuer eu, nonummy id, sapien. Nullam at lectus. In sagittis ultrices mauris. Curabitur malesuada erat sit amet massa. Fusce blandit. Aliquam erat volutpat. Aliquam euismod. Aenean vel lectus. Nunc imperdiet justo nec dolor.

last part

Etiam euismod. Fusce facilisis lacinia dui. Suspendisse potenti. In mi erat, cursus id, nonummy sed, ullamcorper eget, sapien. Praesent pretium, magna in eleifend egestas, pede pede pretium lorem, quis consectetuer tortor sapien facilisis magna. Mauris quis magna varius nulla scelerisque imperdiet. Aliquam non quam. Aliquam porttitor quam a lacus. Praesent vel arcu ut tortor cursus volutpat. In vitae pede quis diam bibendum placerat. Fusce elementum convallis neque. Sed dolor orci, scelerisque ac, dapibus nec, ultricies ut, mi. Duis nec dui quis leo sagittis commodo.

11.8 Skin “spartan”

`/tcb/skin=spartan` (skin)

This skin is quite ... spartan. It supports no rounded corners, no overlays, no shadows, no borderlines, and no finishes. The only exception are underlays. One cannot do very fancy things with this skin, but it compiles very fast. Therefore, the `spartan` skin is used for the draft mode, see Section 10.12 on page 224. Nevertheless, it can be used as a normal skin.

Environment and engines for the skin “spartan”

`/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154:	`tikzpicture`
`/tcb/frame engine` → P. 154:	`spartan`
`/tcb/interior titled engine` → P. 154:	`spartan`
`/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155:	`spartan`
`/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155:	`spartan`
`/tcb/title engine` → P. 155:	`spartan`

`/tcb/spartan` (style, no value)

This is an abbreviation for setting `skin=spartan`.

```
\skinExampleSet{spartan}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content. | More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

My content. | More content.

11.9 Skin “draft”

`/tcb/skin=draft` (skin)

This skin is intended to be used while drafting new geometric settings for a `tcolorbox`.

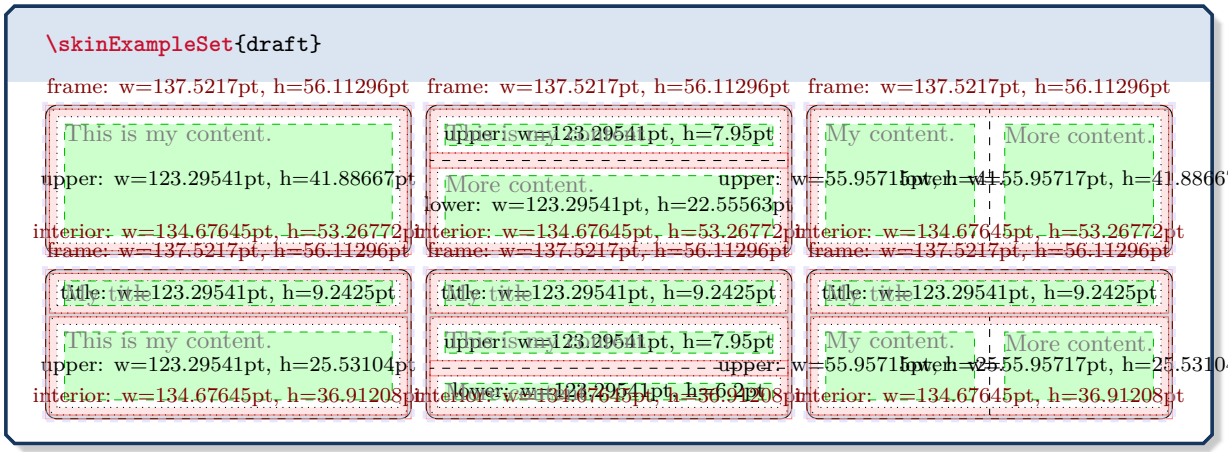
Environment and engines for the skin “draft”

`/tcb/graphical environment` → P. 154:	`tikzpicture`
`/tcb/frame engine` → P. 154:	*special*
`/tcb/interior titled engine` → P. 154:	*special*
`/tcb/interior engine` → P. 155:	*special*
`/tcb/segmentation engine` → P. 155:	`path`
`/tcb/title engine` → P. 155:	`path`

`/tcb/draft` (style, no value)

This is an abbreviation for setting `skin=draft`.

```
\skinExampleSet{draft}
```



```
\vspace*{3mm}
\begin{tcolorbox}[draft,title=A colored box with the \enquote{draft} skin]
\lipsum[1-3]
\tcblower
\lipsum[4-6]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

frame: w=423.94617pt, h=506.20157pt

A colored box with the "draft" skin

title: w=392.64822pt, h=6.2pt

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

upper: w=392.64822pt, h=249.95pt

Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis. Donec nonummy pellentesque ante. Phasellus adipiscing semper elit. Proin fermentum massa ac quam. Sed diam turpis, molestie vitae, placerat a, molestie nec, leo. Maecenas lacinia. Nam ipsum ligula, eleifend at, accumsan nec, suscipit a, ipsum. Morbi blandit ligula feugiat magna. Nunc eleifend consequat lorem. Sed lacinia nulla vitae enim. Pellentesque tincidunt purus vel magna. Integer non enim. Praesent euismod nunc eu purus. Donec bibendum quam in tellus. Nullam cursus pulvinar lectus. Donec et mi. Nam vulputate metus eu enim. Vestibulum pellentesque felis eu massa.

Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt ultrices. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Integer tempus convallis augue. Etiam facilisis. Nunc elementum fermentum wisi. Aenean placerat. Ut imperdiet, enim sed gravida sollicitudin, felis odio placerat quam, ac pulvinar elit purus eget enim. Nunc vitae tortor. Proin tempus nibh sit amet nisl. Vivamus quis tortor vitae risus porta vehicula. Fusce mauris. Vestibulum luctus nibh at lectus. Sed bibendum, nulla a faucibus semper, leo velit ultricies tellus, ac venenatis arcu wisi vel nisl. Vestibulum diam. Aliquam pellentesque, augue quis sagittis posuere, turpis lacus congue quam, in hendrerit risus eros eget felis. Maecenas eget erat in sapien mattis porttitor. Vestibulum porttitor. Nulla facilisi. Sed a turpis eu lacus commodo facilisis. Morbi fringilla, wisi in dignissim interdum, justo lectus sagittis dui, et vehicula libero dui cursus dui. Mauris tempor ligula sed lacus. Duis cursus enim ut augue. Cras ac magna. Cras nulla. Nulla egestas. Curabitur a leo. Quisque egestas wisi eget nunc. Nam feugiat lacus vel est. Curabitur consectetuer.

lower: w=392.64822pt, h=205.95pt

Suspendisse vel felis. Ut lorem lorem, interdum eu, tincidunt sit amet, laoreet vitae, arcu. Aenean faucibus pede eu ante. Praesent enim elit, rutrum at, molestie non, nonummy vel, nisl. Ut lectus eros, malesuada sit amet, fermentum eu, sodales cursus, magna. Donec eu purus. Quisque vehicula, urna sed ultricies auctor, pede lorem egestas dui, et convallis elit erat sed nulla. Donec luctus. Curabitur et nunc. Aliquam dolor odio, commodo pretium, ultricies non, pharetra in, velit. Integer arcu est, nonummy in, fermentum faucibus, egestas vel, odio.

interior: w=421.10092pt, h=490.04318pt

11.10 Skin Family “freelance”

! This skin family “freelance” is deprecated with tcolorbox 3.00. It is not longer needed, because /tcb/frame code → P. 157, /tcb/interior code → P. 158, /tcb/interior titled code → P. 157, and /tcb/title code → P. 159 can be applied to every skin now. In this sense, everything has become *freelance* now.
For users of /tcb/freelance: Old code should continue to work. There may be exceptions for breakable freelance boxes under certain circumstances. For new code, use /tcb/empty → P. 264 or /tcb/enhanced → P. 230 where you would have used /tcb/freelance before.

/tcb/skin=freelance (skin)

This skin gives full freedom for the appearance of the tcolorbox. All drawing engines are set to type freelance; they use the tikz package and compute the /tcb/geometry nodes → P. 156.

Environment and engines for the skin “freelance”

/tcb/graphical environment → P. 154:	tikzpicture
/tcb/frame engine → P. 154:	freelance
/tcb/interior titled engine → P. 154:	freelance
/tcb/interior engine → P. 155:	freelance
/tcb/segmentation engine → P. 155:	freelance
/tcb/title engine → P. 155:	freelance

/tcb/freelance (style, no value)

This is an abbreviation for setting skin=freelance.

/tcb/skin=freelancefirst (skin)

This skin equals freelance with exception of the break sequence, see Section 19.8 on page 414.

/tcb/skin=freelancemiddle (skin)

This skin equals freelance with exception of the break sequence, see Section 19.8 on page 414.

/tcb/skin=freelancelast (skin)

This skin equals freelance with exception of the break sequence, see Section 19.8 on page 414.

/tcb/extend freelance=⟨*options*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

The ⟨*options*⟩ are added to the skin definition of freelance.

/tcb/extend freelancefirst=⟨*options*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

The ⟨*options*⟩ are added to the skin definition of freelancefirst which is used as first part of the break sequence of freelance. See /tcb/skin first is subskin of → P. 160 for a substitute of this key.

/tcb/extend freelancemiddle=⟨*options*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

The ⟨*options*⟩ are added to the skin definition of freelancemiddle which is used as middle part of the break sequence of freelance. See /tcb/skin middle is subskin of → P. 160 for a substitute of this key.

/tcb/extend freelancelast=⟨*options*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

The ⟨*options*⟩ are added to the skin definition of freelancelast which is used as last part of the break sequence of freelance. See /tcb/skin last is subskin of → P. 160 for a substitute of this key.

12 Inclusion of Boxed Image Files

The LIB skins library adds some commands to conveniently include boxed image files. For the following macros and options, the LIB skins library has to be loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```
\tcbuselibrary{skins}
```

See Section 10 on page 168 for the documentation of all other options of the LIB skins library.

12.1 Macros

N 2014-11-14
U 2016-07-13

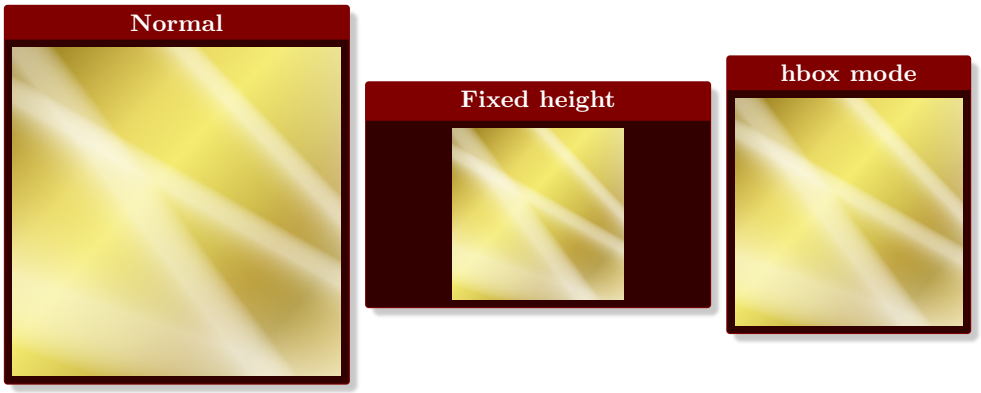
`\tcbincludegraphics[⟨options⟩]{⟨file name⟩}`

In principle, this macro includes an image file denoted by ⟨*file name*⟩ using the standard `\includegraphics` and puts it into a `tcolorbox`[→ P. 12]. The ⟨*options*⟩ are `tcolorbox` keys to set up the colored box. Use `/tcb/graphics options`[→ P. 281] to specify options for the underlying `\includegraphics`. Some `tcolorbox` option keys are automatically set, namely `/tcb/enhanced`[→ P. 230] and options to center the image inside the box.

The sizing of the included image is done depending on the following:

- If a `/tcb/width`[→ P. 39] is specified, but no fixed `/tcb/height`[→ P. 58], the image is sized to fill the inner width of the box. The height of the box adapts to the image.
- If a fixed `/tcb/height`[→ P. 58] is specified, the image is sized to fill the fixed inner area of the box.
- If the `/tcb/capture`[→ P. 105] mode `/tcb/hbox`[→ P. 105] is specified, the image is sized according to given `\includegraphics` options only. The box adapts to the image.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,raster force size=false,size=fbox,
    colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!20!black,
    fonttitle=\bfseries,center title,drop fuzzy shadow]
  \tcbincludegraphics[title=Normal]{goldshade.png}
  \tcbincludegraphics[title=Fixed height,height=3cm]{goldshade.png}
  \tcbincludegraphics[title=hbox mode,hbox,graphics options={width=3cm}]
    {goldshade.png}
\end{tcbraster}
```



The auxiliary macro **\imagename** may be used inside \tcbincludegraphics → P. 278 to display the name of the file. **\imagename** is already partially detokenized and is allowed to contain special characters like the underscore. Note that an appropriate font is required to display such characters.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbraster}[size=fbox,
    colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!20!black,
    fonttitle=\bfseries\ttfamily,center title,drop fuzzy shadow]
  \tcbincludegraphics[title=\imagename]{goldshade.png}
  \tcbincludegraphics[finish={
    \node[fill=white,fill opacity=0.5,text opacity=1]
    at (frame.center) {\bfseries\ttfamily\imagename};}]{blueshade.png}
\end{tcbraster}
```

N 2014-11-14 **\tcbincludepdf**[⟨*options*⟩]{⟨*file name*⟩}

This is a generalized version of \tcbincludegraphics → P. 278 which allows to include a complete PDF file denoted by ⟨*file name*⟩. Every page is boxed into an own tcolorbox → P. 12 customized by the given ⟨*options*⟩. It is reasonable to put such a series of boxes inside a tcbraster → P. 306 for alignment.

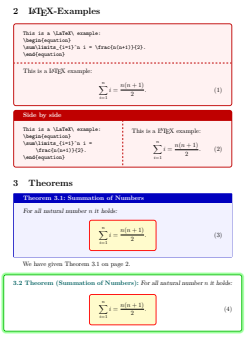
Use /tcb/graphics pages → P. 281 to use a selection of pages instead of using the whole file.

The auxiliary macro **\imagepage** may be used inside \tcbincludepdf to display the current page number.

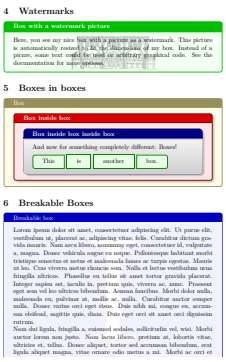
```
% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,colframe=blue,colback=white,
  colbacktitle=blue!50!white,fonttitle=\small\bfseries\ttfamily,
  left=0pt,right=0pt,top=0pt,bottom=0pt,boxsep=0pt,boxrule=0.6pt,
  toptitle=1mm,bottomtitle=1mm,drop lifted shadow,center title,
  graphics pages={1,...,6},title={\imagename\ [\imagepage]}]
\tcbincludepdf{tcolorbox-example.pdf}
\end{tcbraster}
```

tcolorbox-example.pdf [1]

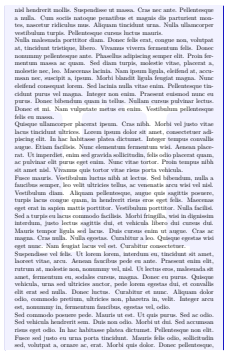
tcolorbox-example.pdf [2]



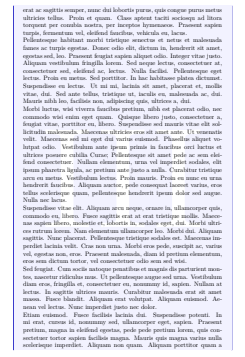
tcolorbox-example.pdf [3]



tcolorbox-example.pdf [4]



tcolorbox-example.pdf [5]



tcolorbox-example.pdf [6]

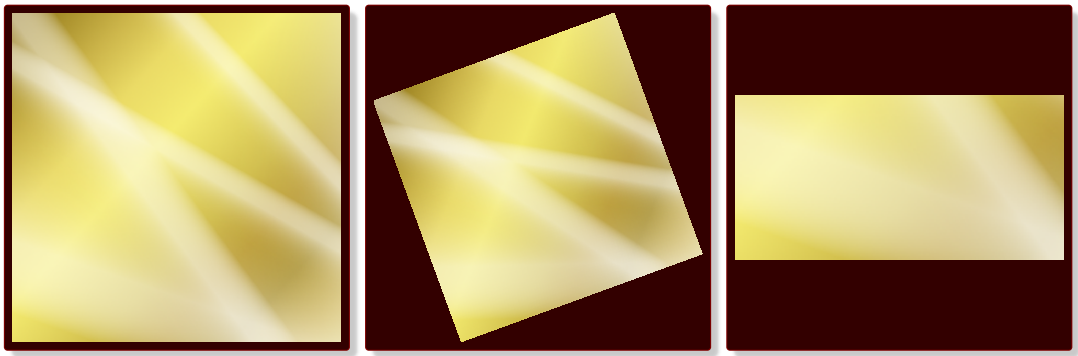
12.2 Option Keys

N 2014-11-14
U 2018-03-18

/tcb/graphics options=⟨*options*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Used for \tcbincludegraphics → P. 278 and \tcbincludepdf → P. 280 to specify \includegraphics ⟨*options*⟩.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,size=fbox,raster equal height,
    colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!20!black,drop fuzzy shadow]
  \tcbincludegraphics{goldshade.png}
  \newcommand{\myangle}{angle=20}%
  \tcbincludegraphics[graphics options=\myangle]{goldshade.png}
  \tcbincludegraphics[graphics options={viewport=0cm 0cm 8cm 4cm,clip}]
    {goldshade.png}
\end{tcbraster}
```



N 2014-11-14

/tcb/graphics directory=⟨*directory*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Used for \tcbincludegraphics → P. 278 and \tcbincludepdf → P. 280 to specify a file system ⟨*directory*⟩ where the image files are located.

```
\tcbset{
  graphics directory={.},
  graphics directory={examples},
  graphics directory={../../pictures},
}
```

The \graphicspath macro from the graphics package is superior to this option. /tcb/graphics directory may be used especially for \tcbincludepdf → P. 280.

N 2014-11-14

/tcb/graphics pages=⟨*selection*⟩ (no default, initially 1,...,\pdfpages)

Used for \tcbincludepdf → P. 280 to specify a ⟨*selection*⟩ of pages to be included. The largest page number is accessible by \pdfpages. The ⟨*selection*⟩ has to be given using the \foreach syntax of Ti*k*Z.

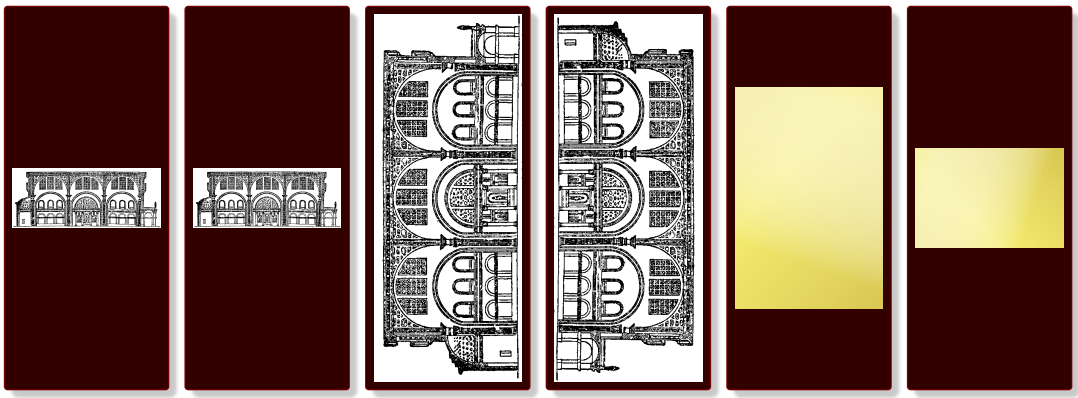
```
\tcbset{
  graphics pages={1,3,7},
  graphics pages={1,...,10},
  graphics pages={1,3,...,18},
  graphics pages={100,...,\pdfpages},
}
```

N 2018-03-21 **/tcb/graphics orientation=**⟨*orientation*⟩ (no default, initially **as-is**)

Used for \tcbincludegraphics → P. 278 and \tcbincludepdf → P. 280 to guarantee a certain ⟨*orientation*⟩ of the included image. After all other options for the image are processed, the result is possibly rotated to be in landscape or portrait mode.
Feasible values for ⟨*orientation*⟩ are:

- **as-is**: no rotation of the processed image.
- **landscape**: the processed image is possibly rotated by 90 degrees to ensure that the final width is not smaller than the final height.
- **landscape***: the processed image is possibly rotated by -90 degrees to ensure that the final width is not smaller than the final height.
- **portrait**: the processed image is possibly rotated by 90 degrees to ensure that the final height is not smaller than the final width.
- **portrait***: the processed image is possibly rotated by -90 degrees to ensure that the final height is not smaller than the final width.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=6,size=fbox,raster equal height,
    colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!20!black,drop fuzzy shadow]
  \tcbincludegraphics{Basilica_5.png}
  \tcbincludegraphics[graphics orientation=landscape]{Basilica_5.png}
  \tcbincludegraphics[graphics orientation=portrait]{Basilica_5.png}
  \tcbincludegraphics[graphics orientation=portrait*]{Basilica_5.png}
  \tcbincludegraphics[graphics options={viewport=0cm 0cm 2cm 3cm,clip}]
    {goldshade.png}
  \tcbincludegraphics[graphics options={viewport=0cm 0cm 2cm 3cm,clip},
    graphics orientation=landscape]{goldshade.png}
\end{tcbraster}
```



13 TikZ Auxiliary Macros

The LIB skins library adds some auxiliary options to the vast option set of TikZ [24]. These options can be used in any `tikzpicture`. For the following options, the LIB skins library has to be loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```
\tcbuselibrary{skins}
```

See Section 10 on page 168 for the documentation of all other options of the LIB skins library.

! Up to version 5.1.1 (2022/06/24) of `tcolorbox`, TikZ image and picture fill extensions were documented here. These extensions are now separate TikZ libraries and part of the `tikzfill` package where they are documented now.

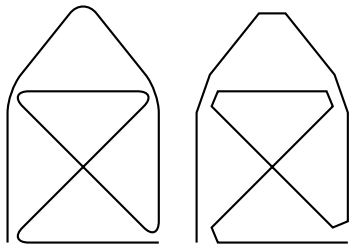
13.1 Straightening of the Arcs

! This patch is considered as an experimental feature. It changes some of the original TikZ code. This change may break with future updates of TikZ.

N 2014-05-05 **`\tcbpatcharcangular`**

The TikZ package provides a nice `rounded corners` option to replace all corners by little arcs. `\tcbpatcharcangular` is a patch which straightens the arcs. To say it more prosaic, the little arcs are replaced by little straight lines.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw[thick,rounded corners=8pt]
    (0,0) -- (0,2) -- (1,3.25) -- (2,2) -- (2,0)
     -- (0,2) -- (2,2) -- (0,0) -- (2,0);
  \tcbpatcharcangular
  \draw[thick,rounded corners=8pt,xshift=2.5cm]
    (0,0) -- (0,2) -- (1,3.25) -- (2,2) -- (2,0)
     -- (0,2) -- (2,2) -- (0,0) -- (2,0);
\end{tikzpicture}
```



N 2014-05-05 **`\tcbpatcharcround`**

This macro reverts `\tcbpatcharcangular`, i.e., the patch from `\tcbpatcharcangular` is replaced by the original code.

13.2 Extracting Node Dimensions

The following auxiliary macros are defined by the LIB skins library. They allow to determine the width and height of an arbitrary TikZ node. To be more specific, they determine the east-to-west and the north-to-south dimensions which may be not the maximal dimensions for a non-rectangular node. Note that the following dimensions are measured exactly including the line width of the border line. If a new rectangle or node with the same dimensions and a border is to be drawn, this border width has to be substracted.

N 2014-09-19 `\tcbsettowidthofnode{⟨register⟩}{⟨node⟩}`

Sets the east-to-west dimension of the given ⟨*node*⟩ to the TEX ⟨*register*⟩.

N 2014-09-19 `\tcbsetmacrotowidthofnode{⟨macro⟩}{⟨node⟩}`

Defines ⟨*macro*⟩ as the east-to-west dimension of the given ⟨*node*⟩.

N 2014-09-19 `\tcbsettoheightofnode{⟨register⟩}{⟨node⟩}`

Sets the north-to-south dimension of the given ⟨*node*⟩ to the TEX ⟨*register*⟩.

N 2014-09-19 `\tcbsetmacrotoheightofnode{⟨macro⟩}{⟨node⟩}`

Defines ⟨*macro*⟩ as the north-to-south dimension of the given ⟨*node*⟩.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node[align=center,draw=red,fill=yellow] (A) {This is my\\example node};
  \tcbsetmacrotowidthofnode\mywidth{A}
  \tcbsetmacrotoheightofnode\myheight{A}
  \path[fill=blue!25!white]           %  rectangle widthout border
    ([xshift=2mm]A.south east)
    rectangle node{Copy} +(\mywidth,\myheight);
  \node[draw=blue,fill=blue!25!white, % standard border width 0.4pt
    minimum width=\mywidth-0.4pt,     % minus width of border
    minimum height=\myheight-0.4pt    % minus height of border
    ]
    at ([xshift=5cm]A) {Copy 2};
\end{tikzpicture}
```

13.3 Hyper Nodes

The following auxiliary macro is defined by the LIB skins library.

N 2016-02-03 U 2023-02-28 `\tcbhypernode{⟨macro⟩}{⟨node⟩}`

Applies a hyperlink creating ⟨*macro*⟩ from the package `hyperref` [17] to an existing `tikz` ⟨*node*⟩. `\tcbhypernode` can only be used inside a `tikzpicture` environment. The last argument of the ⟨*macro*⟩ is to be omitted and should stand for an object (text) which is to be made a hyperlink. For example, use `\hyperref[name]` instead of `\hyperref[name]{text}`.

```
% \usepackage{hyperref}
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node[align=center,draw=red,fill=red!5] (mybutton)
    {Click me to jump to Section~\ref*{sec:tikzimagefilling}};
  \tcbhypernode{\hyperref[sec:tikzimagefilling]}{mybutton}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

14 Beamer Support

The LIB skins library adds some supporting options for the `beamer` package [25]. For the following options, the LIB skins library has to be loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```
\tcbuselibrary{skins}
```

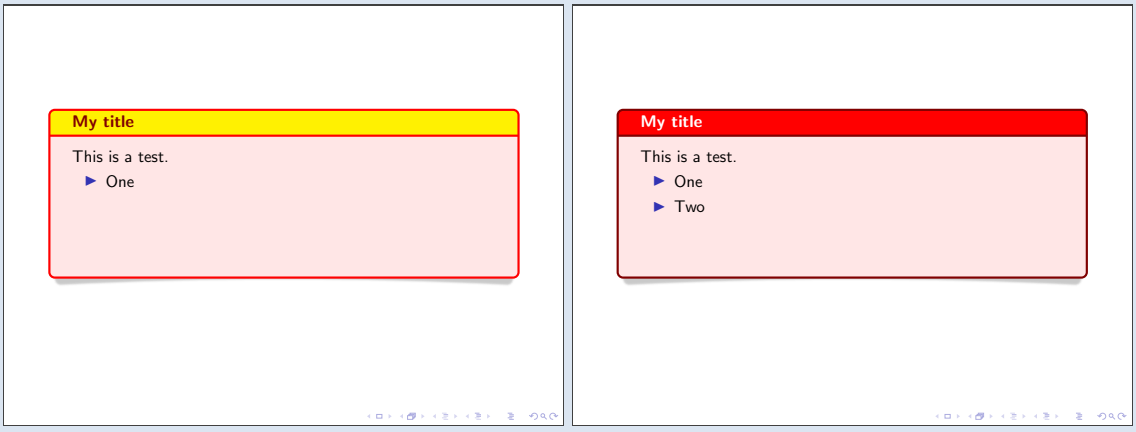
See Section 10 on page 168 for the documentation of all other options of the LIB skins library.

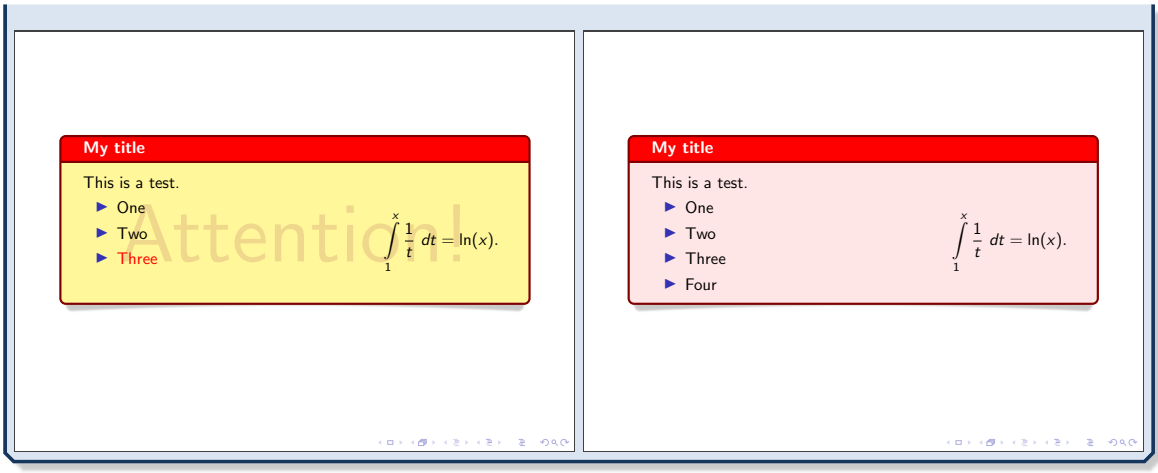
N 2015-01-09
U 2019-03-01

`/tcb/only=<`*overlay specification*`>{`*options*`}` (style, no default, initially unset)

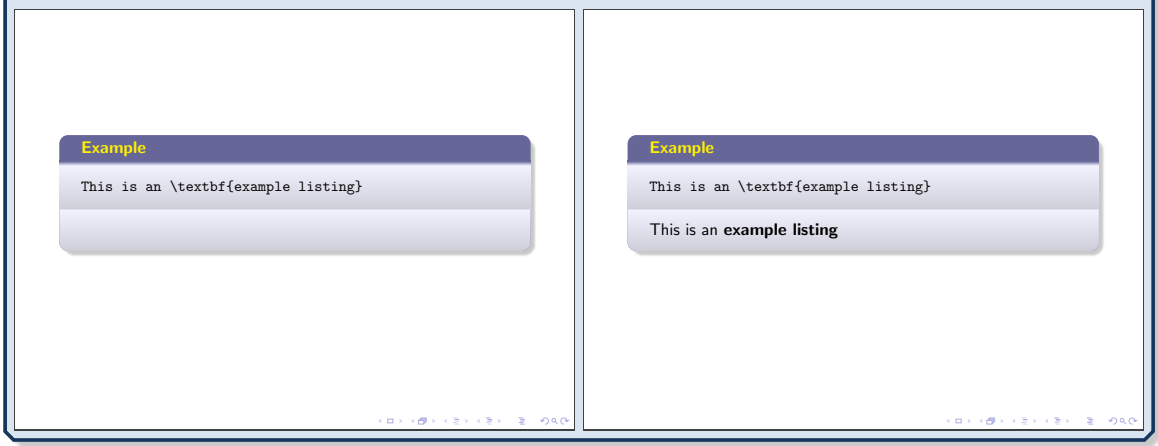
Sets the given `tcolorbox` ⟨*options*⟩ in dependency of a `beamer` ⟨*overlay specification*⟩. Note that this needs the `beamer` class [25]. The ⟨*options*⟩ will only be used on the specified `beamer` frames.

```
\documentclass{beamer}
\usepackage[many]{tcolorbox}
\begin{document}

\begin{frame}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,fonttitle=\bfseries,
      enhanced,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10,colbacktitle=red,
      sidebyside,righthand width=3cm,
      lowerbox=invisible,lower separated=false,
      drop lifted shadow,
      only=<1>{colbacktitle=yellow,coltitle=red!50!black,colframe=red},
      only=<3>{colback=yellow!50,watermark text={Attention!}},
      only=<3->{lowerbox=visible}  ]
    This is a test.
    \begin{itemize}[<+->]
      \item One
      \item Two
      \item \alert<3>{Three}
      \item Four
    \end{itemize}
  \tcblower
    \begin{equation*}
    \int\limits_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t}~dt = \ln(x).
    \end{equation*}
  \end{tcolorbox}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
```






```
\documentclass{beamer}
\usepackage[most]{tcolorbox}
\begin{document}

\begin{frame}[fragile]
  \begin{tcblisting}{beamer,colback=blue!5,colframe=blue!20!gray,coltitle=yellow,
    title=Example,
    only=<1>{lowerbox=invisible},only=<2>{}
  }
This is an \textbf{example listing}
  \end{tcblisting}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
```



The option /tcb/only → P. 285 belonged to the base package before version 4.20.

N 2019-03-01 **/tcb/hide=<*overlay specification*>** (style, no default, initially unset)

Sets the /tcb/beamer hidden style in dependency of a beamer ⟨*overlay specification*⟩. /tcb/beamer hidden can be redefined for customization.

N 2019-03-01 **/tcb/beamer hidden** (style, no options, initially nirvana)

This style is not intended to be used directly, but in concealed way by applying /tcb/hide. The style can be redefined.

```
\tcbset{
  beamer hidden/.style={invisible,interior hidden,colframe=blue!20!gray!15},
}
```

N 2019-03-01 **/tcb/alert=<⟨*overlay specification*⟩>** (style, no default, initially unset)

Sets the /tcb/beamer alerted style in dependency of a beamer ⟨*overlay specification*⟩. /tcb/beamer alerted can be redefined for customization.

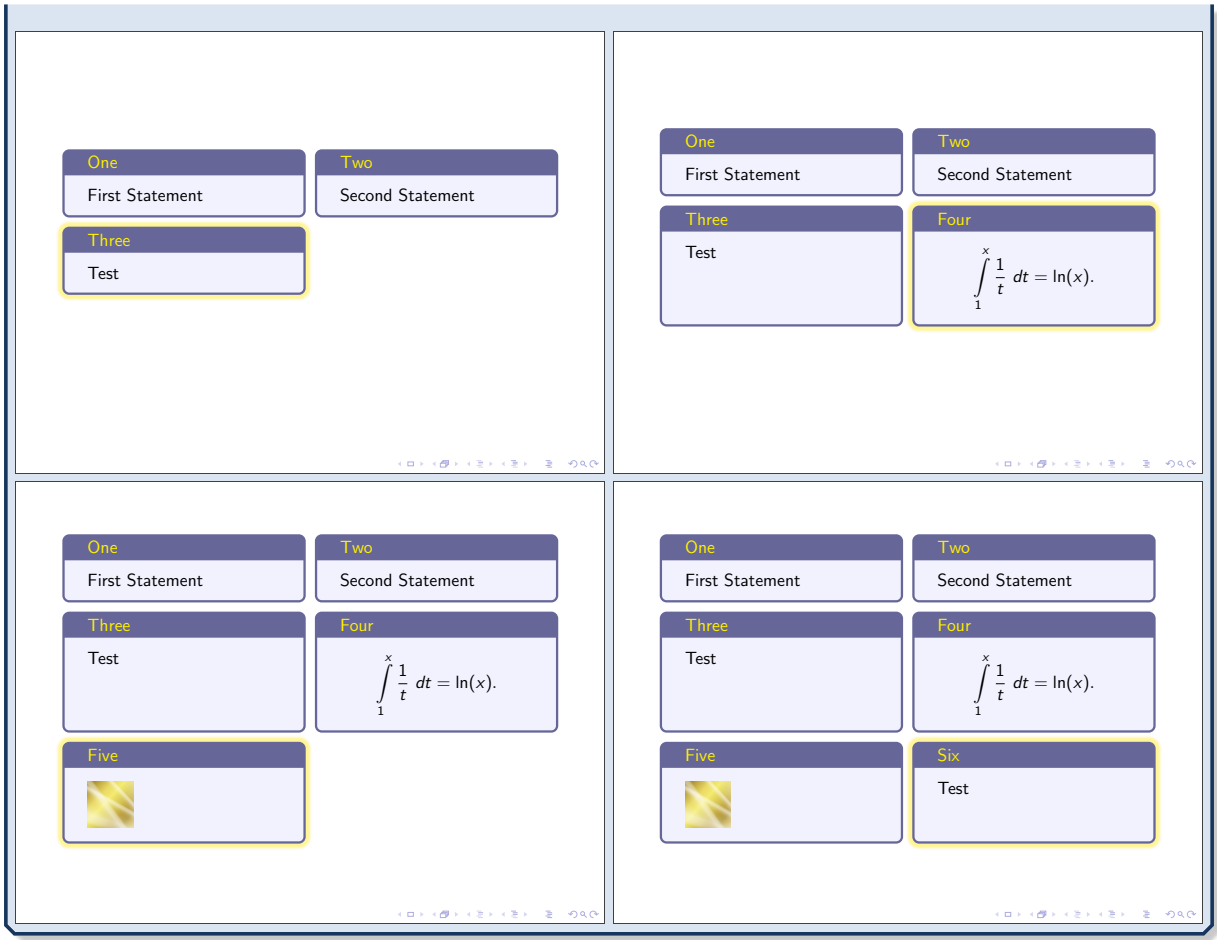
N 2019-03-01 **/tcb/beamer alerted** (style, no options, initially fuzzy halo)

This style is not intended to be used directly, but in concealed way by applying /tcb/alert. The style can be redefined.

```
\tcbset{
  beamer alerted/.style={colframe=red!50!gray},
}
```

The following examples use tcbitemize → P. 307 from LIB raster for convenient use of a list of boxes which are uncovered one by one.

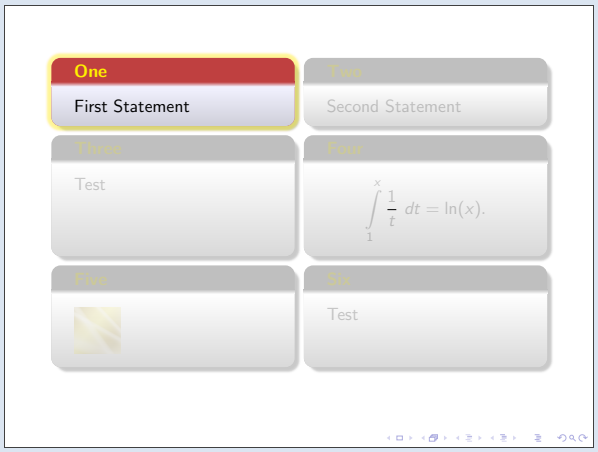
```
\documentclass{beamer}
\usepackage[most]{tcolorbox}
\begin{document}

\begin{frame}
  \begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=rows,
    enhanced,colback=blue!5,colframe=blue!20!gray,coltitle=yellow,
    ]
  \tcbitem[title=One,alert=<1>]
    First Statement
  \tcbitem[title=Two,hide=<-1>,alert=<2>]
    Second Statement
  \tcbitem[title=Three,hide=<-2>,alert=<3>]
    Test
  \tcbitem[title=Four,hide=<-3>,alert=<4>]
    \begin{equation*}
    \int\limits_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t}~dt = \ln(x).
    \end{equation*}
  \tcbitem[title=Five,hide=<-4>,alert=<5>]
    \includegraphics[width=1cm]{goldshade.png}
  \tcbitem[title=Six,hide=<-5>,alert=<6>]
    Test
  \end{tcbitemize}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
```

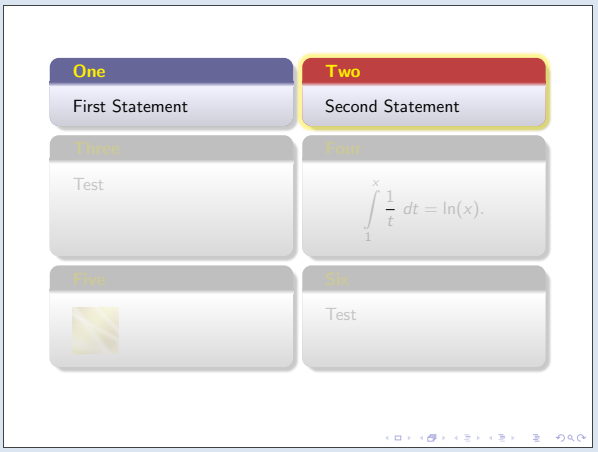


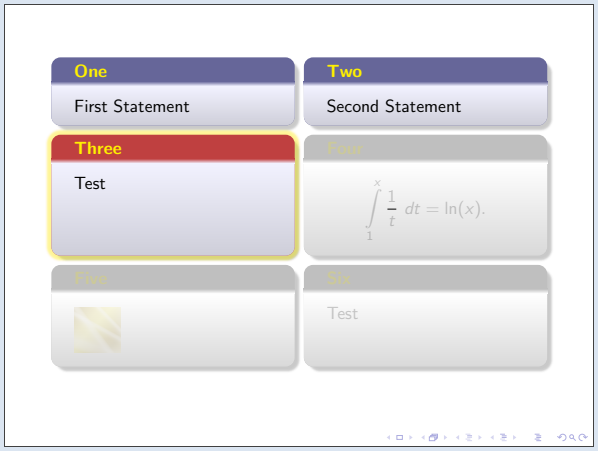

```
\documentclass{beamer}
\usepackage[most]{tcolorbox}
\begin{document}

\begin{frame}
  \begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=rows,
    enhanced,colback=blue!5,colframe=blue!20!gray,coltitle=yellow,
    beamer hidden/.style={invisible,interior hidden,colframe=blue!20!gray!15},
    beamer alerted/.style={colframe=red!50!gray},
    ]
  \tcbitem[title=One,alert=<1>]
    First Statement
  \tcbitem[title=Two,hide=<-1>,alert=<2>]
    Second Statement
  \tcbitem[title=Three,hide=<-2>,alert=<3>]
    Test
  \tcbitem[title=Four,hide=<-3>,alert=<4>]
    \begin{equation*}
    \int\limits_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t}~dt = \ln(x).
    \end{equation*}
  \tcbitem[title=Five,hide=<-4>,alert=<5>]
    \includegraphics[width=1cm]{goldshade.png}
  \tcbitem[title=Six,hide=<-5>,alert=<6>]
    Test
  \end{tcbitemize}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
```

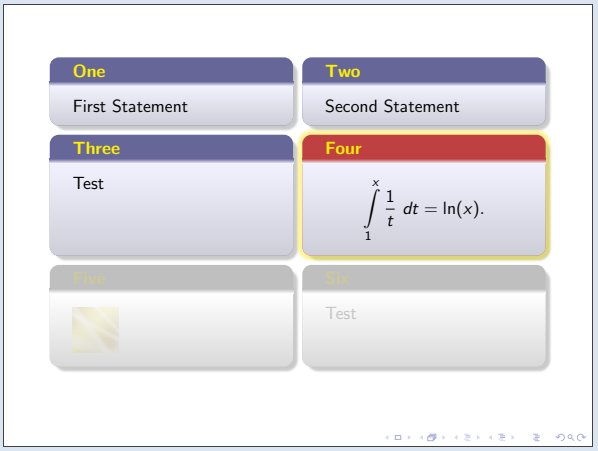
```
\documentclass{beamer}
\usepackage[most]{tcolorbox}
\begin{document}

\begin{frame}
  \begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=rows,
    beamer,colback=blue!5,colframe=blue!20!gray,coltitle=yellow,
    beamer )
      (hidden/.style={colback=white,colframe=gray!50,opacityupper=0.2,opacitytitle=0.2},
    beamer alerted/.style={colframe=red!50!gray,fuzzy halo},
    ]
  \tcbitem[title=One,alert=<1>]
    First Statement
  \tcbitem[title=Two,hide=<-1>,alert=<2>]
    Second Statement
  \tcbitem[title=Three,hide=<-2>,alert=<3>]
```

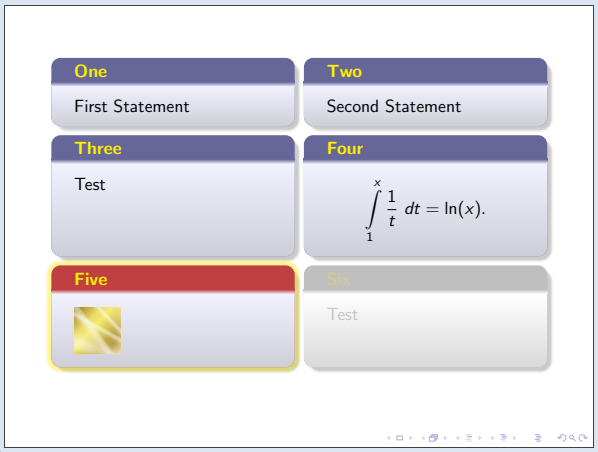
```
    Test
  \tcbitem[title=Four,hide=<-3>,alert=<4>]
    \begin{equation*}
    \int\limits_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t}~dt = \ln(x).
    \end{equation*}
  \tcbitem[title=Five,hide=<-4>,alert=<5>]
    \includegraphics[width=1cm]{goldshade.png}
  \tcbitem[title=Six,hide=<-5>,alert=<6>]
    Test
  \end{tcbitemize}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
```

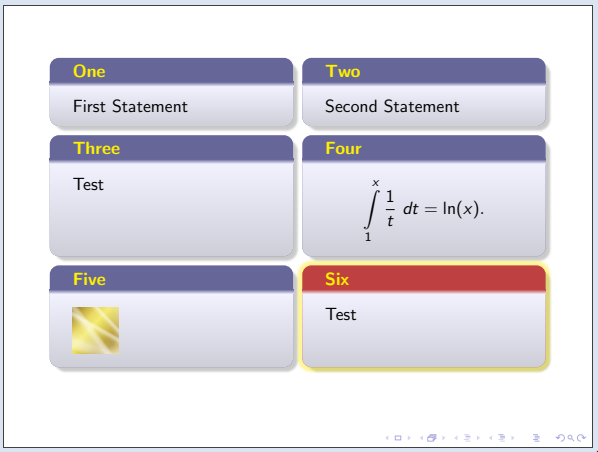












15 Library LIB vignette

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```
\tcbuselibrary{vignette}
```

This also loads the LIB skins library, see Section 10 on page 168, and the `fadings` library of `tikz` [24].

15.1 Vignette Drawing

N 2016-04-22 `\tcbvignette{⟨options⟩}`

In this context, a *vignette* is a four part rectangular frame. It is constructed as several Ti*k*Z paths and, therefore, can only be used inside a `tikzpicture` environment or inside `tcolorbox` → P. 12 options.

The ⟨*options*⟩ control position, size and style settings of the vignette. Theses options have the common key path `/tcb/vig/` and are described in the following.

The next examples show direct `\tcbvignette` usage without a `tcolorbox` → P. 12.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

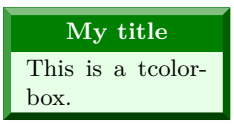
```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node[draw,fill=blue!15!white] (A) {Test};
  \tcbvignette{outside node=A,raised color=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node[draw,fill=blue!15!white] (A) {Another Test};
  \tcbvignette{size=3mm,outside node=A,
    north style=red,east style=yellow,
    south style=blue,west style=green}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node[inner sep=3mm,fill=red!75] (A) {Test};
  \tcbvignette{over node=A,fade in}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

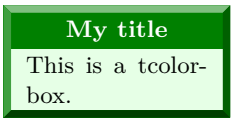
`\tcbvignette` can be used directly inside appropriate options keys for `tcolorbox` → P. 12. Note that options like `/tcb/underlay` → P. 216 need `/tcb/enhanced` → P. 230 or similar settings.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,sharp corners,
  colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black,
  boxrule=1mm,titlerule=0mm,
  title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  underlay={\tcbvignette{size=1mm,inside node=frame,
      raised color=green!50!black}}]
    This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



Mostly, convenient short cuts like /tcb/underlay vignette → P. 299 can be used to add a *vignette* to a tcolorbox → P. 12. Here, \tcbvignette is used internally.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,sharp corners,
  colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black,
  boxrule=1mm,titlerule=0mm,
  title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  underlay vignette]
    This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



15.2 Generic Geometry Settings

N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/xmin=⟨*length*⟩** (no default, initially 0pt)

Sets the lower horizontal limit of a \tcbvignette → P. 291.

N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/xmax=⟨*length*⟩** (no default, initially 1cm)

Sets the upper horizontal limit of a \tcbvignette → P. 291.

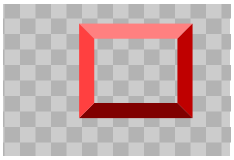
N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/ymin=⟨*length*⟩** (no default, initially 0pt)

Sets the lower vertical limit of a \tcbvignette → P. 291.

N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/ymax=⟨*length*⟩** (no default, initially 1cm)

Sets the upper vertical limit of a \tcbvignette → P. 291.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \fill [black!20] (0,0) rectangle (3,2);
  \path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
    (0,0) rectangle (3,2);
  \tcbvignette{xmin=1cm,xmax=2.5cm,ymin=0.5cm,ymax=1.75cm}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



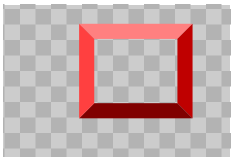
N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/lower left corner=⟨*coordinates*⟩** (style, initially 0,0)

Sets the lower left corner of a \tcbvignette → P. 291. This style sets /tcb/vig/xmin and /tcb/vig/ymin.

N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/upper right corner=⟨*coordinates*⟩** (style, initially 1,1)

Sets the upper right corner of a \tcbvignette → P. 291. This style sets /tcb/vig/xmax and /tcb/vig/ymax.

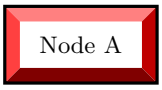
```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \fill [black!20] (0,0) rectangle (3,2);
  \path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
    (0,0) rectangle (3,2);
  \tcbvignette{lower left corner={1,0.5},
               upper right corner={2.5,1.75}}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/inside node=⟨*name*⟩** (style, initally unset)

Places the \tcbvignette → P. 291 inside the node with the given ⟨*name*⟩. The outer limits of the *vignette* are adapted to the node geometry.

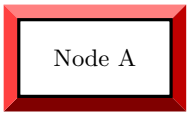
```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node[minimum width=2cm,minimum height=1cm] (A) {Node A};
  \tcbvignette{inside node=A}
  \draw[very thick] (A.south west) rectangle (A.north east);
\end{tikzpicture}
```



N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/outside node=⟨*name*⟩** (style, initally unset)

Places the \tcbvignette → P. 291 outside the node with the given ⟨*name*⟩. The inner limits of the *vignette* are adapted to the node geometry.

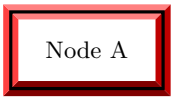
```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node[minimum width=2cm,minimum height=1cm] (A) {Node A};
  \tcbvignette{outside node=A}
  \draw[very thick] (A.south west) rectangle (A.north east);
\end{tikzpicture}
```



N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/over node=⟨*name*⟩** (style, initally unset)

Places the \tcbvignette → P. 291 over the node with the given ⟨*name*⟩. The outer limits of the *vignette* are adapted to the node geometry, but are shifted to the outside by /tcb/vig/over node offset.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node[minimum width=2cm,minimum height=1cm] (A) {Node A};
  \tcbvignette{over node offset=1mm,over node=A}
  \draw[very thick] (A.south west) rectangle (A.north east);
\end{tikzpicture}
```



N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/over node offset=⟨*length*⟩** (no default, initially 0.1mm)

Determines the shift value for /tcb/vig/over node. Note that /tcb/vig/over node offset has to be set *before* /tcb/vig/over node is used.

N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/north size=⟨*length*⟩** (no default, initially 2mm)

Sets the thickness of the north *vignette* part.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{north size=4mm}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/south size=⟨*length*⟩** (no default, initially 2mm)

Sets the thickness of the south *vignette* part.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{south size=4mm}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/east size=⟨*length*⟩** (no default, initially 2mm)

Sets the thickness of the east *vignette* part.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{east size=4mm}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/west size=⟨*length*⟩** (no default, initially 2mm)

Sets the thickness of the west *vignette* part.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{west size=4mm}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

N 2016-04-22 `/tcb/vig/vertical size=`⟨*length*⟩ (style, initially `2mm`)

Sets `/tcb/vig/north size` → P. 293 and `/tcb/vig/south size` → P. 293, to the given ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{vertical size=4mm}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

N 2016-04-22 `/tcb/vig/horizontal size=`⟨*length*⟩ (style, initially `2mm`)

Sets `/tcb/vig/east size` → P. 293 and `/tcb/vig/west size` → P. 293, to the given ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{horizontal size=4mm}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

N 2016-04-22 `/tcb/vig/size=`⟨*length*⟩ (style, initially `2mm`)

Sets `/tcb/vig/north size` → P. 293, `/tcb/vig/south size` → P. 293, `/tcb/vig/east size` → P. 293, and `/tcb/vig/west size` → P. 293 to the given ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{size=4mm}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

! `/tcb/vig/north size` → P. 293, `/tcb/vig/south size` → P. 293, etc. have to be set *before* `/tcb/vig/outside node` → P. 293 is used.

15.3 Generic Color and Style Settings

N 2016-04-22 `/tcb/vig/north style={`⟨*style*⟩`}` (no default, initially `red!50!white`)

Sets TikZ ⟨*style*⟩ options for the north *vignette* part.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{north style=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

N 2016-04-22 `/tcb/vig/south style={`⟨*style*⟩`}` (no default, initially `red!50!black`)

Sets TikZ ⟨*style*⟩ options for the south *vignette* part.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{south style={draw=blue,fill=yellow}}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

N 2016-04-22 `/tcb/vig/east style={`⟨*style*⟩`}` (no default, initially `red!75!black`)

Sets TikZ ⟨*style*⟩ options for the east *vignette* part.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{east style={left color=yellow!75!black,
    right color=blue!75!black}}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/west style=**{⟨*style*⟩} (no default, initially `red!75!white`)

Sets TikZ ⟨*style*⟩ options for the west *vignette* part.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{west style={preaction={fill=black!20},
    pattern=checkerboard,
    pattern color=black!30}}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

N 2016-05-24 **/tcb/vig/scope=**{⟨*style*⟩} (no default, initially empty)

The four *vignette* parts are drawn inside a TikZ `scope` environment which takes the given ⟨*style*⟩ as option.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{scope={transparency group,opacity=0.25}}
\end{tikzpicture}
```


N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/raised color=**⟨*color*⟩ (no default)

Creates a raised frame impression by setting the four style options /tcb/vig/north style →P. 294, /tcb/vig/south style →P. 294, /tcb/vig/east style →P. 294, and /tcb/vig/west style to darkened and lightened variations of the given ⟨*color*⟩.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{raised color=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/lowered color=**⟨*color*⟩ (no default)

Creates a lowered frame impression by setting the four style options /tcb/vig/north style →P. 294, /tcb/vig/south style →P. 294, /tcb/vig/east style →P. 294, and /tcb/vig/west style to darkened and lightened variations of the given ⟨*color*⟩.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{lowered color=green!75!black}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/color from=**⟨*inner*⟩ `to` ⟨*outer*⟩ (no default)

Sets the four style options /tcb/vig/north style →P. 294, /tcb/vig/south style →P. 294, /tcb/vig/east style →P. 294, and /tcb/vig/west style such that the color shades from the ⟨*inner*⟩ color to the ⟨*outer*⟩ color.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{color from=red to blue!50}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/base color=**⟨*color*⟩ (no default)

Sets the base color for /tcb/vig/raised color, /tcb/vig/lowered color, /tcb/finish fading vignette →P. 302. Typically, this value has not to be set directly.

N 2016-04-22 `/tcb/vig/draw method=direct|clipped` (no default, initially `direct`)

Especially, if shadings or fadings are used, the drawn *vignette* graphs are displayed sometimes not as perfect as expected. Glitches and imperfections are very dependent on the previewer software. The `/tcb/vig/draw method` intends to give a choice of alternative drawing methods.

- `direct`: The *vignette* parts are drawn/filled by using a single Ti*k*Z graph. This is the preferred (and default) method for solid color graphs.
- `clipped`: The *vignette* parts are drawn somewhat oversized and are clipped to the intended region. In combination with shadings and fadings this seems to give a better/different optical result (depends on the previewer).

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{color from=red to yellow}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{color from=red to yellow,draw method=clipped}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

This option is a stopgap and may be changed or preferably removed in future.

15.4 Generic Fading Settings

The `fadings` library of `tikz` [24] is loaded automatically by the LIB vignette library. Amongst others, the fadings `west`, `east`, `north`, and `south` are defined inside the `fadings` library.

The LIB vignette library adds some more fadings called `semi west`, `semi east`, `semi north`, and `semi south`. These fadings are much *weaker* than the normal fadings.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \fill [black!20] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
  \path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
    (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
  \fill [path fading=semi west,blue] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

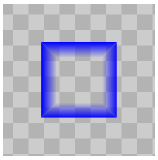
Comparison of the Fadings

`west`	`east`
`north`	`south`
`semi west`	`semi east`
`semi north`	`semi south`

N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/fade in={⟨style⟩}** (style, default **white**)

Sets the four style options /tcb/vig/north style →P. 294, /tcb/vig/south style →P. 294, /tcb/vig/east style →P. 294, and /tcb/vig/west style →P. 295 such that the paths fade from outside to inside.

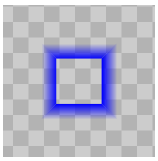
```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
  \path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
    (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
  \tcbvignette{fade in=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/fade out={⟨style⟩}** (style, default **white**)

Sets the four style options /tcb/vig/north style →P. 294, /tcb/vig/south style →P. 294, /tcb/vig/east style →P. 294, and /tcb/vig/west style →P. 295 such that the paths fade from inside to outside.

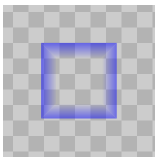
```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
  \path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
    (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
  \tcbvignette{fade out=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/semi fade in={⟨style⟩}** (style, default **white**)

Sets the four style options /tcb/vig/north style →P. 294, /tcb/vig/south style →P. 294, /tcb/vig/east style →P. 294, and /tcb/vig/west style →P. 295 such that the paths fade weak from outside to inside.

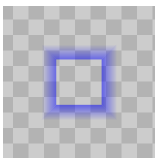
```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
  \path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
    (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
  \tcbvignette{semi fade in=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/vig/semi fade out={⟨style⟩}** (style, default **white**)

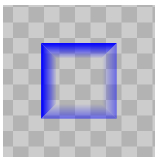
Sets the four style options /tcb/vig/north style →P. 294, /tcb/vig/south style →P. 294, /tcb/vig/east style →P. 294, and /tcb/vig/west style →P. 295 such that the paths fade weak from inside to outside.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
  \path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
    (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
  \tcbvignette{semi fade out=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

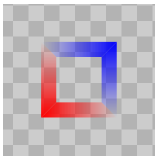


It is possible to assign different fadings for each side of the vignette, if needed. Therefore, the fadings have to be applied individually with the four style options /tcb/vig/north style → P. 294, /tcb/vig/south style → P. 294, /tcb/vig/east style → P. 294, and /tcb/vig/west style → P. 295.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
  \path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
    (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
  \tcbvignette{
    north style={blue,path fading=south},
    east style ={blue,path fading=semi west},
    south style={blue,path fading=semi north},
    west style ={blue,path fading=east}
  }
\end{tikzpicture}
```



```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
  \path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
    (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
  \tcbvignette{
    north style={blue,path fading=west},
    east style ={blue,path fading=south},
    south style={red,path fading=east},
    west style ={red,path fading=north}
  }
\end{tikzpicture}
```



15.5 Vignette as Underlay

N 2016-04-22 `/tcb/underlay vignette={⟨options⟩}` (style, no default)

This puts a `\tcbvignette` → P. 291 with the given ⟨*options*⟩ as `/tcb/underlay` → P. 216 to a `tcolorbox` → P. 12. The dimensions of the *vignette* are matched to the dimensions of the `tcolorbox` → P. 12. For example, `/tcb/leftrule` → P. 40 is used as `/tcb/vig/west size` → P. 293. Also, `/tcb/colframe` → P. 32 is used as `/tcb/vig/raised color` → P. 295.
For a `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 tcolorbox, the *vignette* is also been broken. Alternatively, `\tcbvignette` → P. 291 could be used directly inside an `/tcb/underlay` → P. 216 with appropriate settings.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,sharp corners,
  colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black,
  boxrule=2mm,titlerule=0mm,
  title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  underlay vignette]
    This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title
This is a tcolorbox.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,arc=0pt,
  colback=blue!10,colframe=blue,boxrule=2mm,
  underlay vignette={size=1.5mm}]
    This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,sharp corners,
  colframe=red,interior hidden,boxrule=2mm,
  colupper=white,center upper,fontupper=\bfseries,
  underlay vignette]
    This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,sharp corners,
  colback=red!50!yellow,frame hidden,boxrule=2mm,
  underlay vignette={color from=red!50!yellow to white,
     draw method=clipped,size=2.1mm}]
    This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

```
\tcbox[enhanced,sharp corners,colback=red!10,colframe=red]
  {Test}

\tcbox[enhanced,sharp corners,colback=red!10,colframe=red,
  underlay vignette]{Test}
```

Test

Test

N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/underlay raised shading vignette={⟨*options*⟩}** (style, no default)

This is a special style derived from /tcb/underlay vignette → P. 299, where the frame color is shaded to create a soft raised frame impression.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,sharp corners,
  colback=green!10,
  colframe=green!50!black,
  size=small,boxrule=2mm,titlerule=0mm,
  title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  underlay raised shading vignette]
    This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title
This is a tcolorbox.

N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/underlay raised fading vignette={⟨*options*⟩}** (style, no default)

This style gives a similar effect as /tcb/underlay raised shading vignette, but a path fading is used here. Different optical impression are very previewer-dependent.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,sharp corners,
  colback=green!10,
  colframe=green!50!black,
  size=small,boxrule=2mm,titlerule=0mm,
  title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  underlay raised fading vignette]
    This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title
This is a tcolorbox.

N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/underlay shade in vignette={⟨*options*⟩}** (style, no default)

This is a special style derived from /tcb/underlay vignette → P. 299, where the frame color is shaded into the interior color.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,sharp corners,frame hidden,
  colback=green!10,
  colframe=green!50!black,
  size=small,boxrule=2mm,titlerule=0mm,
  underlay shade in vignette]
    This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

15.6 Vignette as Finish

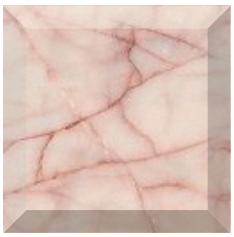
N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/finish vignette={⟨*options*⟩}** (style, no default)

This puts a \tcbvignette → P. 291 with the given ⟨*options*⟩ as /tcb/finish → P. 218 to a tcolorbox → P. 12. The default style settings create a raised frame impression by drawing black and white color parts with reduced opacity.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,
  colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black,
  boxrule=0.5mm,titlerule=0mm,
  title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  finish vignette={size=1mm}]
    This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title
This is a tcolorbox.

```
\tcbincludegraphics[blankest,width=3cm,
  finish vignette={size=3mm}]{pink_marble.png}
```



N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/finish raised fading vignette={⟨*options*⟩}** (style, no default)

This puts a \tcbvignette → P. 291 with the given ⟨*options*⟩ as /tcb/finish → P. 218 to a tcolorbox → P. 12. The default style settings create a soft raised frame impression by drawing fading black and white color parts.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,
  colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black,
  boxrule=0.5mm,titlerule=0mm,
  title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  finish raised fading vignette={size=1mm}]
    This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title
This is a tcolorbox.

```
\tcbincludegraphics[blankest,width=3cm,
  finish raised fading vignette={size=3mm}]{pink_marble.png}
```

N 2016-04-22 **/tcb/finish fading vignette={⟨*options*⟩}** (style, no default)

This puts a \tcbvignette → P. 291 with the given ⟨*options*⟩ as /tcb/finish → P. 218 to a tcolorbox → P. 12. The default style settings fade the box into white from inside to outside. Note that /tcb/vig/over node → P. 293 is used here. /tcb/vig/over node offset → P. 293 can be adapted to overlap the box more or less. The fade color can be set using /tcb/vig/base color → P. 295.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,
  colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black,
  boxrule=0.5mm,titlerule=0mm,
  title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  finish fading vignette={size=2mm}]
    This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

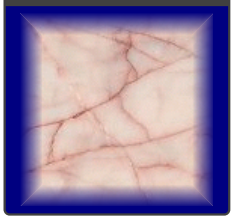
My title

This is a tcolorbox.

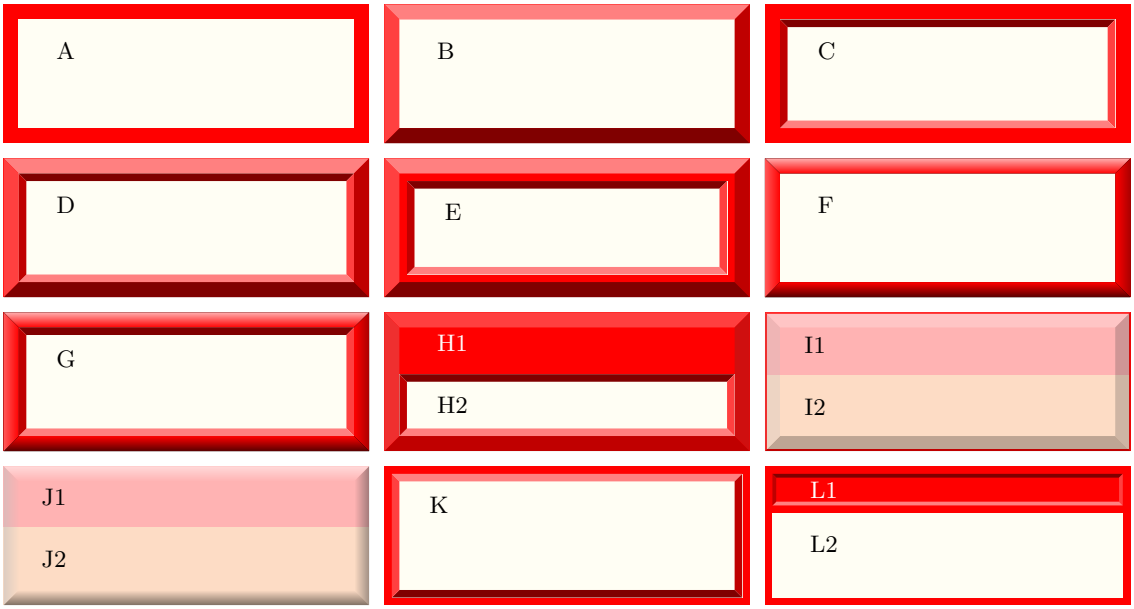
```
\tcbincludegraphics[blankest,width=3cm,
  finish fading vignette={size=3mm}]{pink_marble.png}
```

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=blue!50!black,size=small,
  title=Example]
\tcbincludegraphics[blankest,
  finish fading vignette={base color=blue!50!black,size=3mm,
    over node offset=0.2mm}]{pink_marble.png}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Example



```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3,bicolor,
  raster equal height,sharp corners,boxrule=2mm,
  colframe=red,colback=yellow!5,colbacklower=yellow!25!red!20]
\tcbitem A
\tcbitem[underlay vignette] B
\tcbitem[underlay={\tcbvignette{inside node=interior,
  lowered color=red,size=1mm}}] C
\tcbitem[underlay vignette,
  underlay={\tcbvignette{inside node=interior,
  lowered color=red,size=1mm}}] D
\tcbitem[boxrule=3mm,underlay vignette={size=2mm},
  underlay={\tcbvignette{inside node=interior,
  lowered color=red,size=1mm}}] E
\tcbitem[underlay raised shading vignette] F
\tcbitem[underlay raised shading vignette,
  underlay={\tcbvignette{inside node=interior,
  lowered color=red,size=1mm}}] G
\tcbitem[title=H1,underlay={\tcbvignette{inside node=interior,
  lowered color=red,size=1mm}},finish vignette] H2
\tcbitem[boxrule=0.25mm,colback=red!30,finish vignette] I1 \tcblower I2
\tcbitem[tile,colback=red!30,finish raised fading vignette] J1 \tcblower J2
\tcbitem[boxrule=1mm,underlay={\tcbvignette{inside node=interior,
  raised color=red,size=1mm}}] K
\tcbitem[boxrule=1mm,title=L1,underlay={\tcbvignette{inside node=title,
  lowered color=red,size=0.5mm}}] L2
\end{tcbitemize}
```



16 Library raster

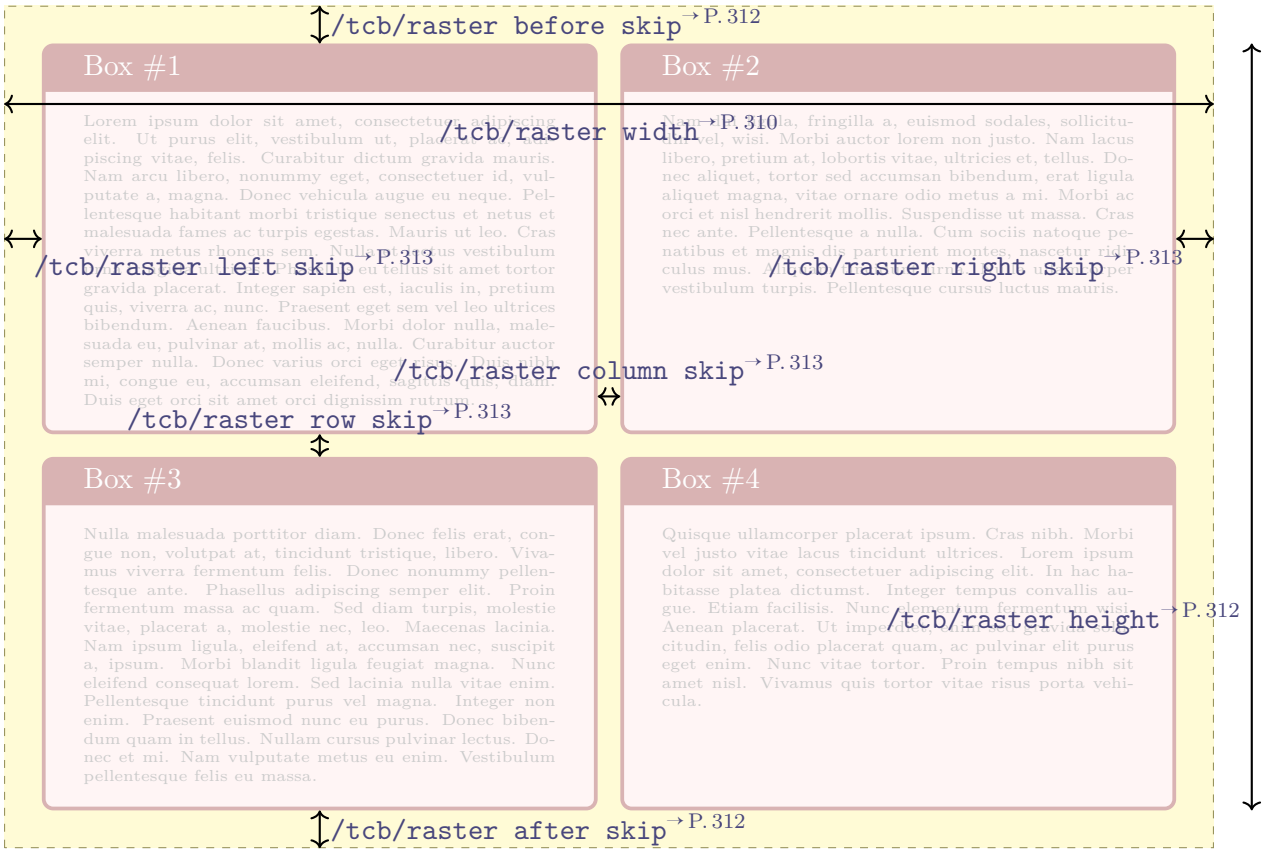
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```
\tcbuselibrary{raster}
```

16.1 Concept of Rasters

A *raster* is used to align several colored boxes in a regular way. It can be seen as a far related counterpart to the `matrix` construct of Ti*k*Z, but it differs in many aspects.

In principle, `tcolorbox`es are arranged in rows and columns when put inside a `tcbraster` → P. 306 environment. The boxes are fluently added to the raster like adding text to a paragraph. Especially, line/row breaks are done automatically and one cannot end a line/row ahead of schedule. Further, a *raster* is not restricted to a single page but may break into an arbitrary series of pages.



```
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,raster rows=3,raster height=\linewidth,
  enhanced,size=small,sharp corners,arc=8mm,colframe=red!50!black,
  colback=yellow!10!white,watermark overzoom=1.0,fit algorithm=hybrid* ]
  \begin{tcolorbox}[rounded corners=northwest,boxrule=0pt,
    watermark graphics=lichtspiel.jpg]\end{tcolorbox}
  \tcboxfit{\lipsum[1]}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[rounded corners=northeast,boxrule=0pt,
    watermark graphics=goldshade.png]\end{tcolorbox}
  \tcboxfit{\lipsum[2]}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[valign=center,halign=center]Nine Boxes.\end{tcolorbox}
  \tcboxfit{\lipsum[3]}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[rounded corners=southwest,boxrule=0pt,
    watermark graphics=goldshade.png]\end{tcolorbox}
  \tcboxfit{\lipsum[4]}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[rounded corners=southeast,boxrule=0pt,
    watermark graphics=lichtspiel.jpg]\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
```

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

Nine Boxes.

Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis. Donec nonummy pellentesque ante. Phasellus adipiscing semper elit. Proin fermentum massa ac quam. Sed diam turpis, molestie vitae, placerat a, molestie nec, leo. Maecenas lacinia. Nam ipsum ligula, eleifend at, accumsan nec, suscipit a, ipsum. Morbi blandit ligula feugiat magna. Nunc eleifend consequat lorem. Sed lacinia nulla vitae enim. Pellentesque tincidunt purus vel magna. Integer non enim. Praesent euismod nunc eu purus. Donec bibendum quam in tellus. Nullam cursus pulvinar lectus. Donec et mi. Nam vulputate metus eu enim. Vestibulum pellentesque felis eu massa.

Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt ultrices. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Integer tempus convallis augue. Etiam facilisis. Nunc elementum fermentum wisi. Aenean placerat. Ut imperdiet, enim sed gravida sollicitudin, felis odio placerat quam, ac pulvinar elit purus eget enim. Nunc vitae tortor. Proin tempus nibh sit amet nisl. Vivamus quis tortor vitae risus porta vehicula.

16.2 Macros of the Library

N 2014-11-10
U 2017-02-01

```
\begin{tcbraster}[⟨options⟩]
  ⟨environment content⟩
\end{tcbraster}
```

A raster arranges enclosed boxes in a regular way, mainly into rows and columns. The ⟨*options*⟩ are used to control the raster parameters and to set the properties for the enclosed boxes.

- The *raster* is only allowed to contain a series of `tcolorbox` → P. 12 environments or derived constructs. With some small restrictions, boxes created with `\tcboxfit` → P. 449 can also be added. Boxes created with `\tcbox` → P. 14 are not reasonable here, but may be used to a certain degree.
- Do not add anything else between the boxes inside the raster with exception of white-space. Especially, do not use `\\` or `\par` to end a row; row breaks are done automatically.
- The boxes inside a raster are numbered automatically. `\thetcbrasternum` may be used inside a box to access this number. The LaTeX counter `tcbrastercolumn` holds the current column, the counter `tcbrasterrow` holds the current row, and the counter `tcbrasternum` holds the current box number.

```
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3, raster equal height,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,colbacktitle=red!50!white,
  title={Box \# \thetcbrasternum}]
  \begin{tcolorbox}First box\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}Second box\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}This is a box\\with a second line\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}Another box\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}A box again\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
```

Box # 1
First box

Box # 2
Second box

Box # 3
This is a box
with a second line

Box # 4
Another box

Box # 5
A box again

```
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=2, raster equal height=rows,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,colbacktitle=red!50!white,
  title={Box \# \thetcbrasternum}]
  \begin{tcolorbox}First box\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}Second box\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}This is a box\\with a second line\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}Another box\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}A box again\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
```

Box # 1
First box

Box # 2
Second box

Box # 3
This is a box
with a second line

Box # 4
Another box

Box # 5
A box again

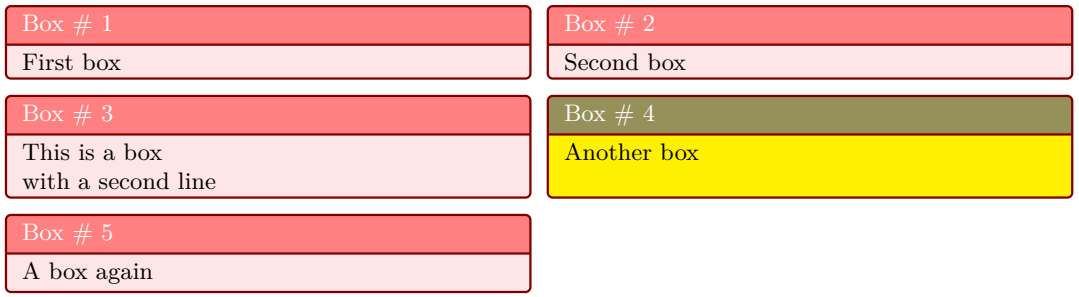
N 2014-11-10 `\begin{tcbitemize}[⟨options⟩]`
`  ⟨environment content⟩`
`\end{tcbitemize}`

This is a special case of a `tcbraster` → P. 306 with the given ⟨*options*⟩.

- Here, the enclosed boxes are created using `\tcbitem`.
- There has to be at least one `\tcbitem`.
- One cannot use anything else than `\tcbitem` to add something to the *raster*.

This leads to a very compact syntax.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=2, raster equal height=rows,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,colbacktitle=red!50!white,
  title={Box \# \thetcbrasternum}]
  \tcbitem First box
  \tcbitem Second box
  \tcbitem This is a box\\with a second line
  \tcbitem[colback=yellow,colbacktitle=yellow!50!black] Another box
  \tcbitem A box again
\end{tcbitemize}
```



! `tcbitemize` has more restrictions than `tcbraster` → P. 306. Especially, the `/tcb/capture` → P. 105 mode has to be **`minipage`**. For example, `/tcb/fit` → P. 454 cannot be used safely. If `/tcb/fit` → P. 454 should be used, turn over to `tcbraster` → P. 306.

N 2014-11-10 `\tcbitem[⟨options⟩]`

Used inside `tcbitemize` to create a new `tcolorbox` → P. 12 with the given ⟨*options*⟩.

N 2016-02-19

```
\begin{tcboxedraster}[⟨raster options⟩]{⟨box options⟩}
  ⟨environment content⟩
\end{tcboxedraster}
```

This is a convenience environment which combines a `tcolorbox` → P. 12 with an embedded `tcbraster` → P. 306. The ⟨*box options*⟩ are given to the outer `tcolorbox` → P. 12, while the ⟨*raster options*⟩ are given to the embedded `tcbraster` → P. 306. This environment is especially useful for rasters inside rasters.

```
\begin{tcboxedraster}[raster columns=3, raster equal height,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,colbacktitle=red!50!white,
  title={Box \# \thetcbrasternum}]
  {colback=yellow!10,fonttitle=\bfseries,title=Boxed Raster}
  \begin{tcolorbox}First box\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}Second box\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}This is a box\\with a second line\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}Another box\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}A box again\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcboxedraster}
```

Boxed Raster

Box # 1	Box # 2	Box # 3
First box	Second box	This is a box with a second line
Box # 4	**Box # 5**	
Another box	A box again	

```
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=2, raster equal height,
  raster every box/.style={size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,
    valign=center,halign=center}]
  \begin{tcolorbox}One\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}Two\end{tcolorbox}
    \begin{tcboxedraster}{blankest}
      \begin{tcolorbox}Three\end{tcolorbox}
      \begin{tcolorbox}Four\end{tcolorbox}
      \begin{tcolorbox}Five\end{tcolorbox}
      \begin{tcolorbox}Six\end{tcolorbox}
    \end{tcboxedraster}
    \begin{tcolorbox}Seven\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
```

One	Two
Three / Four / Five / Six	Seven

N 2016-04-27

```
\begin{tcboxeditemize}[⟨raster options⟩]{⟨box options⟩}
  ⟨environment content⟩
\end{tcboxeditemize}
```

This is a convenience environment which combines a `tcolorbox` → P. 12 with an embedded `tcbitemize` → P. 307. The ⟨*box options*⟩ are given to the outer `tcolorbox` → P. 12, while the ⟨*raster options*⟩ are given to the embedded `tcbitemize` → P. 307. This environment is especially useful for rasters inside rasters.

```
\begin{tcboxeditemize}[raster columns=3, raster equal height,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,colbacktitle=red!50!white,
  title={Box \# \thetcbrasternum}]
  {colback=yellow!10,fonttitle=\bfseries,title=Boxed Itemize}
  \tcbitem First box
  \tcbitem Second box
  \tcbitem This is a box\\with a second line
  \tcbitem Another box
  \tcbitem A box again
\end{tcboxeditemize}
```

Boxed Itemize

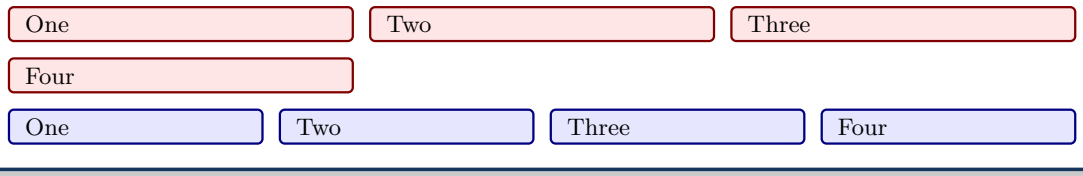
- **Box # 1** — First box
- **Box # 2** — Second box
- **Box # 3** — This is a box with a second line
- **Box # 4** — Another box
- **Box # 5** — A box again

16.3 Option Keys of the Library

N 2014-11-10 **/tcb/raster columns**=⟨*number*⟩ (no default, initially 2)

Sets the ⟨*number*⟩ of columns for a *raster*.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=4,
  size=small,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```



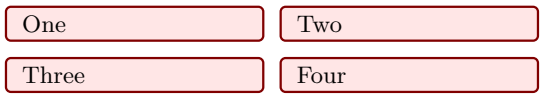
N 2014-11-10 **/tcb/raster rows**=⟨*number*⟩ (no default, initially 2)

Sets the ⟨*number*⟩ of rows for a *raster*. Note that this is only relevant in connection with setting **/tcb/raster height** → P. 312 to a value greater than **0pt**. Then, it defines the number of rows *per* given height.

N 2014-11-10 **/tcb/raster width**=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially **\linewidth**)

Sets the total raster width to the given ⟨*length*⟩. **/tcb/raster left skip** → P. 313 and **/tcb/raster right skip** → P. 313 are part of the total width. Note that both skip values are not changed by this option.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster width=\linewidth/2,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```



N 2018-11-30 **/tcb/raster width flush left=⟨*length*⟩** (style, no default)

Sets the total /tcb/raster width → P. 310 to \linewidth and adapts /tcb/raster left skip → P. 313 and /tcb/raster right skip → P. 313 to place the raster on the left hand side with a visual width of the given ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster width flush left=\linewidth/2,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```

- One
- Two
- Three
- Four

Note that the results of /tcb/raster width → P. 310 and /tcb/raster width flush left look identical, but differ on technical side since the later always fills the available \linewidth.

N 2018-11-30 **/tcb/raster width center=⟨*length*⟩** (style, no default)

Sets the total /tcb/raster width → P. 310 to \linewidth and adapts /tcb/raster left skip → P. 313 and /tcb/raster right skip → P. 313 to center the raster with a visual width of the given ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster width center=\linewidth/2,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```

- One
- Two
- Three
- Four

N 2018-11-30 **/tcb/raster width flush right=⟨*length*⟩** (style, no default)

Sets the total /tcb/raster width → P. 310 to \linewidth and adapts /tcb/raster left skip → P. 313 and /tcb/raster right skip → P. 313 to place the raster on the right hand side with a visual width of the given ⟨*length*⟩.

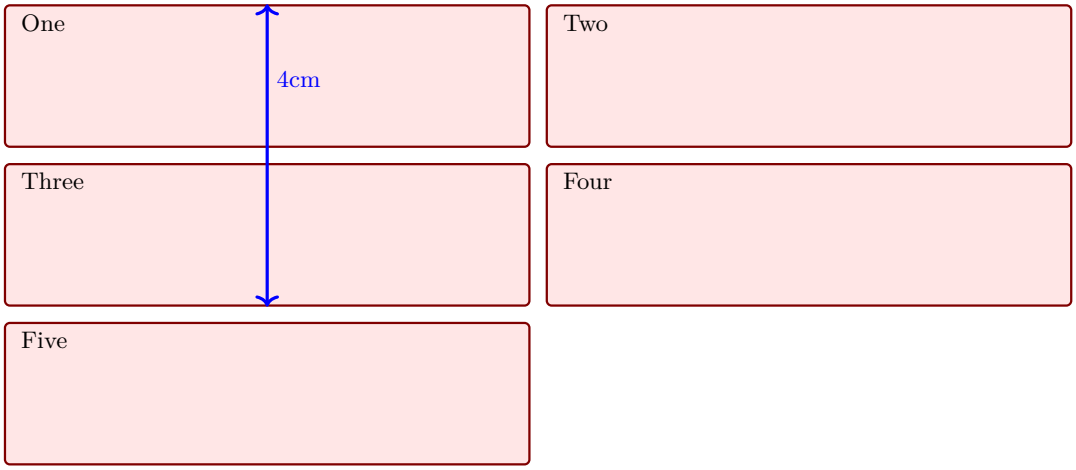
```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster width flush right=\linewidth/2,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```

- One
- Two
- Three
- Four

N 2014-11-10 **/tcb/raster height=⟨*length*⟩** (no default, initially 0pt)

Sets the raster height *per* /tcb/raster rows → P. 310 to the given ⟨*length*⟩. This forces an appropriate height for the enclosed boxes. /tcb/raster before skip and /tcb/raster after skip are not part of this calculation. If the ⟨*length*⟩ is set to 0pt, this feature is deactivated.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster height=4cm, raster rows=2,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem[enhanced,
    finish={\draw[blue,very thick,<->] (frame.south)
      -- node[right,pos=.75]{4cm} +(0,4); }]
    Three
  \tcbitem Four
  \tcbitem Five
\end{tcbitemize}
```



N 2014-11-10
U 2014-12-16 **/tcb/raster before skip=⟨*glue*⟩** (no default, initially 2mm)

Space of the given ⟨*glue*⟩ is inserted vertically before the *raster*. This space is discardable.

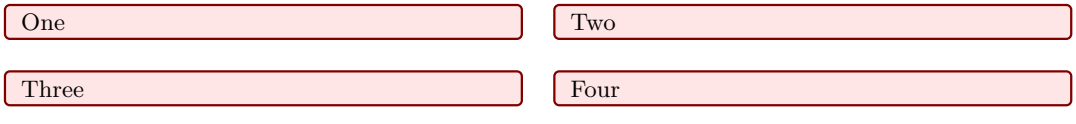
N 2014-11-10
U 2014-12-16 **/tcb/raster after skip=⟨*glue*⟩** (no default, initially 2mm)

Space of the given ⟨*glue*⟩ is inserted vertically after the *raster*. This space is discardable.

N 2015-01-08 **/tcb/raster equal skip=⟨*length*⟩** (style, no default)

Shortcut to set /tcb/raster before skip, /tcb/raster after skip, /tcb/raster column skip → P. 313, and /tcb/raster row skip → P. 313 to the same ⟨*length*⟩ value.

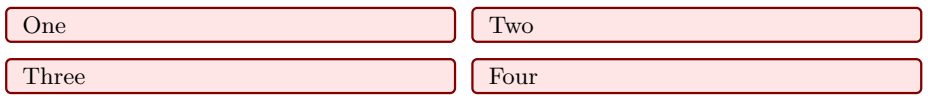
```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal skip=4mm,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```



N 2014-11-10 **/tcb/raster left skip=⟨*length*⟩** (no default, initially 0pt)

Space of the given ⟨*length*⟩ is inserted horizontally left of the *raster*.

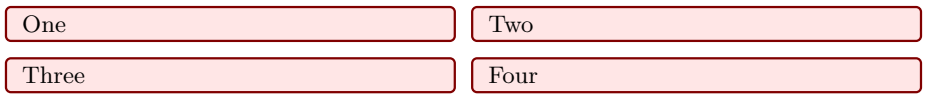
```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster left skip=2cm,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```



N 2014-11-10 **/tcb/raster right skip=⟨*length*⟩** (no default, initially 0pt)

Space of the given ⟨*length*⟩ is inserted horizontally right of the *raster*.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster right skip=2cm,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```



N 2014-11-10 **/tcb/raster column skip=⟨*length*⟩** (no default, initially 2mm)

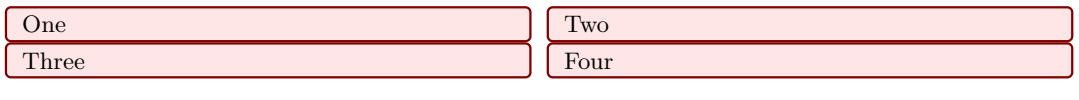
Space of the given ⟨*length*⟩ is inserted horizontally between the columns.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster column skip=2cm,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```

N 2014-11-10 **/tcb/raster row skip=⟨*length*⟩** (no default, initially 2mm)

Space of the given ⟨*length*⟩ is inserted vertically between the rows.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster row skip=0pt,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```



N 2014-11-10 **/tcb/raster halign=**⟨*alignment*⟩ (no default, initially **left**)

Defines the horizontal alignment for the boxes of the rows of a *raster*, if these rows are not completely filled (mainly: the last one).
Feasible values for ⟨*alignment*⟩ are:

- **left**: align to the left side,
- **center**: align to the center,
- **right**: align to the right side.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster halign=center,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}
```

N 2014-11-10 **/tcb/raster valign=**⟨*alignment*⟩ (no default, initially **center**)

Defines the vertical alignment for the boxes of a row, if the boxes do not have equal height. This sets the **/tcb/box align** → P. 91 option.
Feasible values for ⟨*alignment*⟩ are:

- **top**: align to the top side,
- **center**: align to the center,
- **bottom**: align to the bottom side.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster valign=top, raster columns=3,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem \Huge One
  \tcbitem \Large Two
  \tcbitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster valign=center, raster columns=3,
  size=small,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white]
  \tcbitem \Huge One
  \tcbitem \Large Two
  \tcbitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster valign=bottom, raster columns=3,
  size=small,colframe=green!50!black,colback=green!10!white]
  \tcbitem \Huge One
  \tcbitem \Large Two
  \tcbitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}
```

N 2014-11-10
U 2017-02-28

/tcb/raster equal height=⟨*type*⟩ (default **all**, initially **none**)

Puts the enclosed boxes into a common /tcb/equal height group → P. 66. The ⟨*id*⟩ of the equal height group is chosen automatically, but it may be set manually by /tcb/raster equal height group. Also see /tcb/minimum for current equal height group → P. 67.
Feasible values for ⟨*type*⟩ are:

- **none**: no equal height setting,
- **rows**: all boxes in a row are set to equal height,
- **all**: all boxes in the raster are set to equal height.

Note that you have to compile twice to see changes.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=rows,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem \Huge Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```

One

Two

Three

Four

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem \Huge Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```

One

Two

Three

Four

N 2014-11-10

/tcb/raster equal height group=⟨*id*⟩ (no default)

Overwrites the automatically chosen id with the given ⟨*id*⟩. If this is used to share a common height between the *raster* and another raster or box, the /tcb/raster equal height option should be set to **all**.

```
\tcbset{size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[equal height group=raster-manual-id]
  A single box
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height,raster equal height group=raster-manual-id]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem \Huge Two
\end{tcbitemize}
```

A single box

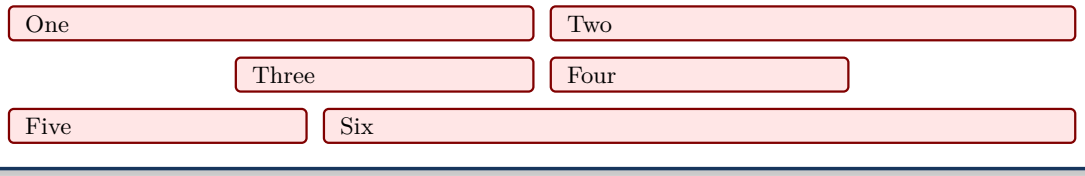
One

Two

N 2014-11-10 **/tcb/raster force size=true|false** (default **true**, initially **true**)

Enforces the raster size computations onto the enclosed boxes. If set to **false**, individual settings can be used (for the better or worse).

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster force size=false, raster halign=center,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem[add to width=-3cm] Three
  \tcbitem[add to width=-3cm] Four
  \tcbitem[add to width=-3cm] Five
  \tcbitem[add to width=3cm] Six
\end{tcbitemize}
```



N 2014-11-10 **/tcb/raster reset** (no value)

Sets all raster settings back to their default values. Note that /tcb/reset → P. 119 does not execute this option. Style settings like /tcb/raster odd column etc. are not touched by /tcb/raster reset.

16.4 Adding Styles for Specific Boxes

The following styles can be defined to address certain boxes inside a *raster*. Note that such style definitions are not removed by /tcb/reset → P. 119 or /tcb/raster reset. The style definitions are used in the order given below.

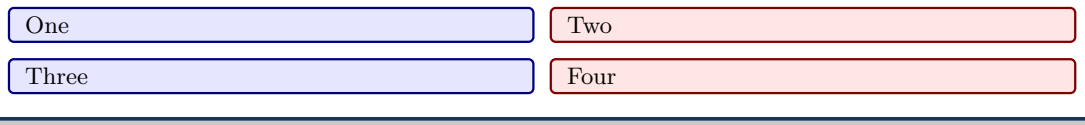
N 2014-11-24 **/tcb/raster every box** (style)

This style is used for every box.

N 2014-11-10 **/tcb/raster odd column** (style)

This style is used for every box in an odd column.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,
  raster odd column/.style={colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white}]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```



N 2014-11-10 **/tcb/raster even column** (style)

This style is used for every box in an even column.

N 2014-11-10 **/tcb/raster column n** (style)

This style is used for every box in the **n**-th column. **n** has to be replaced by a number.

N 2014-11-10 **/tcb/raster odd row** (style)

This style is used for every box in an odd row.

N 2014-11-10 **/tcb/raster even row** (style)

This style is used for every box in an even row.

N 2014-11-10 **/tcb/raster row m** (style)

This style is used for every box in the m-th row. m has to be replaced by a number.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,
  raster row 2/.style={colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white}]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```

One | Two

Three | Four

N 2014-11-10 **/tcb/raster odd number** (style)

This style is used for every box with an odd number.

N 2014-11-10 **/tcb/raster even number** (style)

This style is used for every box with an even number.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,
  raster columns=3,
  raster even number/.style={colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white}]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
  \tcbitem Five
  \tcbitem Six
\end{tcbitemize}
```

One | Two | Three

Four | Five | Six

N 2014-11-10 **/tcb/raster row m column n** (style)

This style is used for the box in the m-th row and n-th column. m and n have to be replaced by numbers.

N 2014-11-10 **/tcb/raster number n** (style)

This style is used for the box with number n. n has to be replaced by a number.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,
  raster number 4/.style={colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white}]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```

One | Two

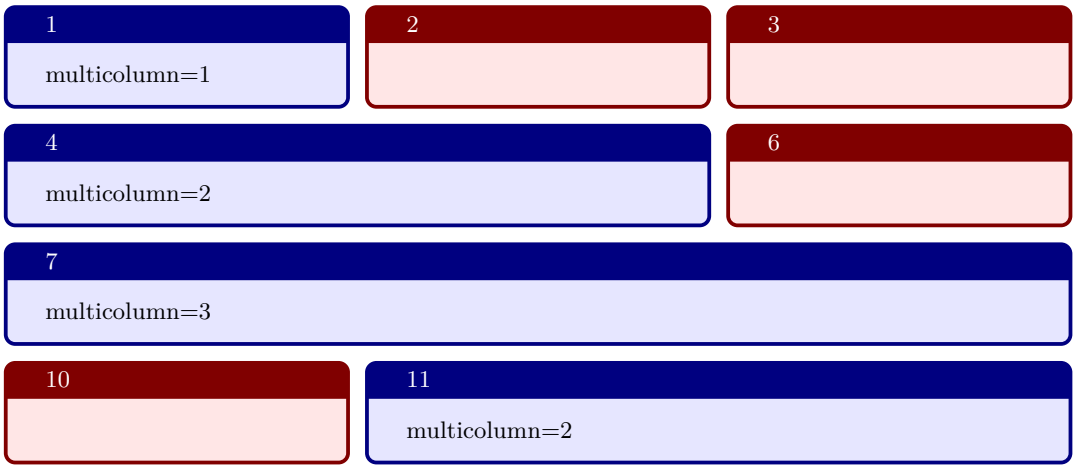
Three | Four

16.5 Combining Columns or Rows

N 2016-02-19 **/tcb/raster multicolumn=**⟨*number*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This option has to be set inside the option list of a tcolorbox → P. 12 inside a tcbraster → P. 306 or inside \tcbitem → P. 307 inside tcbitemize → P. 307. It merges the given ⟨*number*⟩ of boxes into one single box on the same line. The resulting box gets the **\thetcbrasternum** of the first box. If there are not enough boxes available on the current line, this option is ignored and a warning is given.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=rows,raster columns=3,
  title=\thetcbrasternum,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem[colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white,raster multicolumn=1]
  multicolumn=1
\tcbitem
\tcbitem
\tcbitem[colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white,raster multicolumn=2]
  multicolumn=2
\tcbitem
\tcbitem[colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white,raster multicolumn=3]
  multicolumn=3
\tcbitem
\tcbitem[colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white,raster multicolumn=2]
  multicolumn=2
\end{tcbitemize}
```

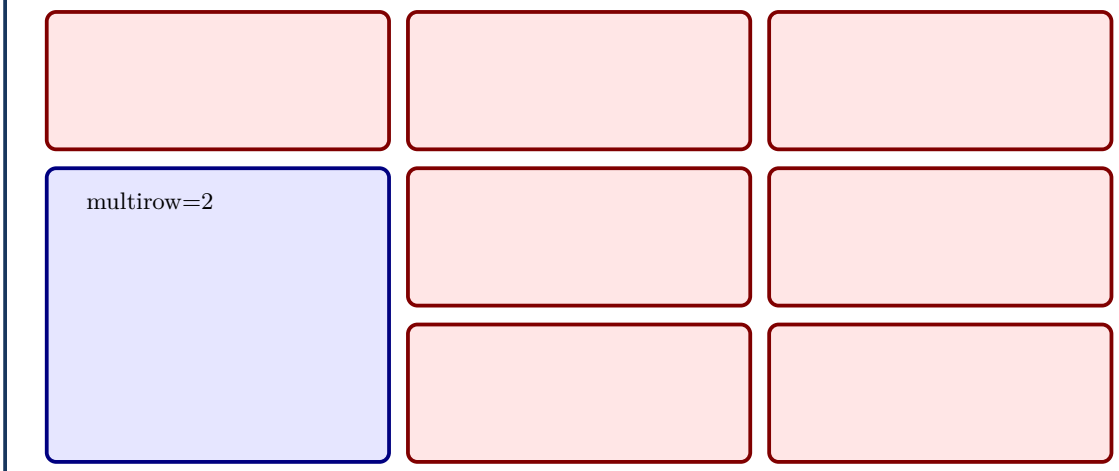


N 2016-02-19 **/tcb/raster multirow=**⟨*number*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This option has to be set inside the option list of a tcolorbox → P. 12 inside a tcbraster → P. 306 or inside \tcbitem → P. 307 inside tcbitemize → P. 307. This option not really merges boxes, but simply sizes the current box to fit the space of ⟨*number*⟩ rows.

! /tcb/raster multirow needs /tcb/raster height → P. 312 to be set. How to achieve a similar result for boxes without fixed /tcb/raster height → P. 312 is shown afterwards.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster rows=3,raster columns=3,raster height=6cm,
  raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
\tcbitem
\tcbitem
\tcbitem
\tcbitem[colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white,raster multirow=2]
  multirow=2
\tcbitem[raster multicolumn=2,raster multirow=2,blankest]
  \begin{tcbitemize}[raster rows=2,raster columns=2,raster height=\tcbtextheight]
  \tcbitem
  \tcbitem
  \tcbitem
  \tcbitem
  \end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbitemize}
```



For rasters without fixed /tcb/raster height → P. 312, /tcb/raster multirow → P. 319 cannot be used. Note that \tcbtextheight → P. 167 also cannot be used like in the previous example.
But, with combination of /tcb/raster equal height → P. 315 and /tcb/space to → P. 64, a similar effect can be created:

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3,raster equal height=rows,
  raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
\tcbitem
\tcbitem
\tcbitem
\tcbitem[colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white]
 \lipsum[2]
\tcbitem[raster multicolumn=2,blankest,space to=\myspace]
  \begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=2]
  \tcbitem This is a box of the inner raster.
  \tcbitem
  \tcbitem[height=\myspace]
  \tcbitem[height=\myspace]
  \end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbitemize}
```

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

This is a box of the inner raster.

16.6 Rasters inside Rasters

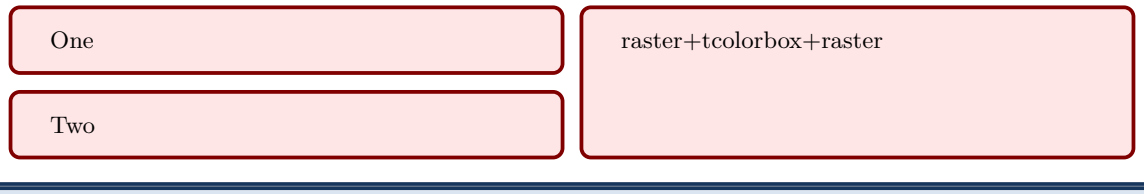
A *raster* inside a *raster* cannot be used directly, because a *raster* can only contain a *tcolorbox* or something derived from a *tcolorbox*. So, a *raster* can be put inside a *tcolorbox* inside a *raster*.

Some examples for such constructions can be found at `tcboxedraster` → P. 308, `/tcb/raster multicolumn` → P. 318, `/tcb/raster multirow` → P. 319.

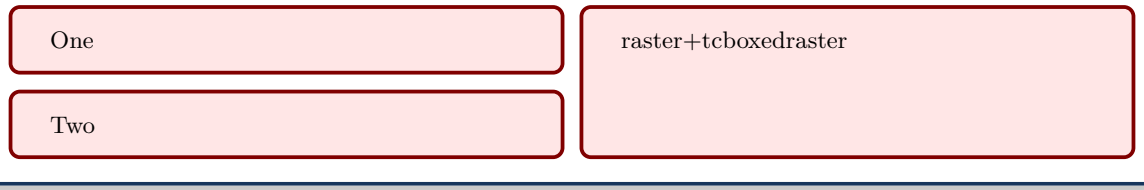
16.6.1 Raster Setup

The intermediating `tcolorbox` → P. 12 can be made invisible by using `/tcb/blankest` → P. 266.

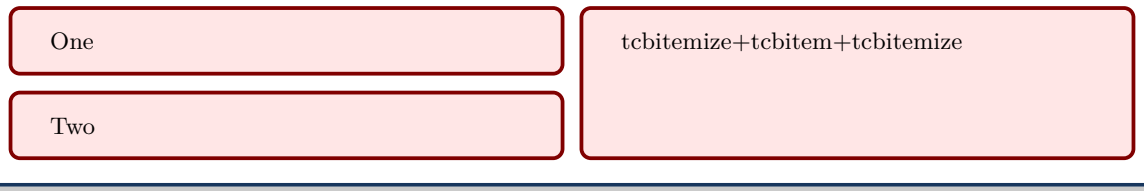
```
\begin{tcbraster}[raster equal height=rows,
  raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
  \begin{tcolorbox}[blankest]
    \begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=1]
      \begin{tcolorbox}One\end{tcolorbox}
      \begin{tcolorbox}Two\end{tcolorbox}
    \end{tcbraster}
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}raster+tcolorbox+raster\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
```




```
\begin{tcbraster}[raster equal height=rows,
  raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
  \begin{tcboxedraster}[raster columns=1]{blankest}
    \begin{tcolorbox}One\end{tcolorbox}
    \begin{tcolorbox}Two\end{tcolorbox}
  \end{tcboxedraster}
  \begin{tcolorbox}raster+tcboxedraster\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
```




```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=rows,
  raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
  \tcbitem[blankest]
    \begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=1]
      \tcbitem One
      \tcbitem Two
    \end{tcbitemize}
  \tcbitem tcbitemize+tcbitem+tcbitemize
\end{tcbitemize}
```



16.6.2 Placing Spaces

If the heights of boxes inside staggered rasters should be matched, the space has to be distributed accordingly.

- For fixed height boxes/rasters using `/tcb/raster height` → P. 312, the height of boxes is available by `\tcbtextheight` → P. 167. This can be used to size deeper layered boxes/rasters.
- For boxes/rasters layed out using `/tcb/raster equal height` → P. 315, space can be distributed by `/tcb/space to` → P. 64. It can take several compilations until all spaces are distributed correctly.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster rows=2,raster height=6cm,
  raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
  \tcbitem[blankest]
    \begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=1,raster rows=2,raster height=\tcbtextheight]
      \tcbitem One
      \tcbitem Two
    \end{tcbitemize}
  \tcbitem This is a fixed height box.
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```

One

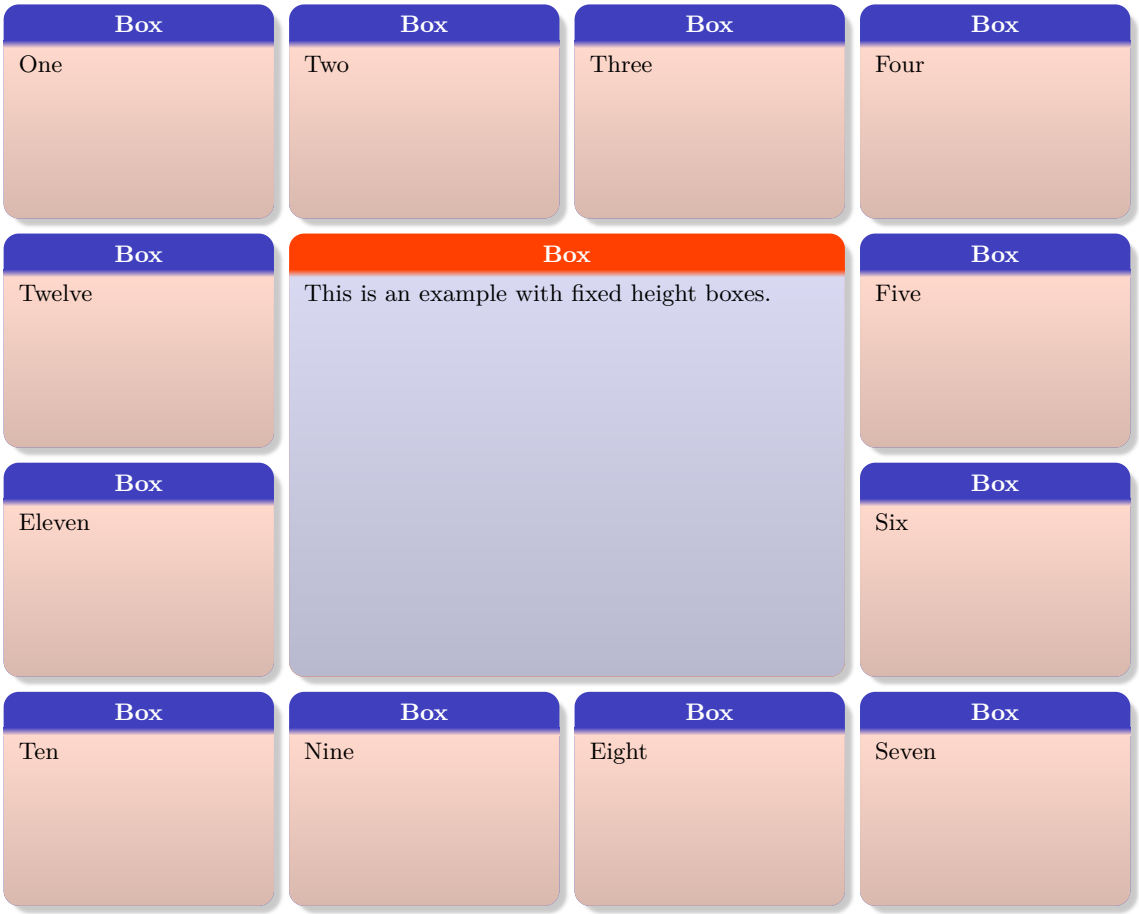
Two

This is a fixed height box.

Three

Four

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=4,raster rows=4,raster height=0.8\linewidth,
  raster every box/.style={size=small,beamer,
    colframe=blue!75!yellow,colback=red!75!yellow!20,
    center title,title=Box}]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
  \tcbitem[raster multirow=2,blankest]
    \begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=1,raster rows=2,raster height=\tcbtextheight]
      \tcbitem Twelve
      \tcbitem Eleven
    \end{tcbitemize}
  \tcbitem[raster multirow=2,raster multicolumn=2,
      colframe=red!75!yellow,colback=blue!75!yellow!20]
    This is an example with fixed height boxes.
  \tcbitem[raster multirow=2,blankest]
    \begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=1,raster rows=2,raster height=\tcbtextheight]
      \tcbitem Five
      \tcbitem Six
    \end{tcbitemize}
  \tcbitem Ten
  \tcbitem Nine
  \tcbitem Eight
  \tcbitem Seven
\end{tcbitemize}
```



```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=rows,
  raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
  \tcbitem[blankest,space to=\myspace]
    \begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=1]
      \tcbitem One
      \tcbitem[add to natural height=\myspace]
        This box will adapt its height.
    \end{tcbitemize}
  \tcbitem This is a flexible height box.
  \tcbitem \lipsum[4]
  \tcbitem[blankest,space to=\myspace]
    \begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=1]
      \tcbitem One
      \tcbitem[add to natural height=\myspace]
        This box will adapt its height.
    \end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbitemize}
```

One

This box will adapt its height.

This is a flexible height box.

Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt ultrices. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Integer tempus convallis augue. Etiam facilisis. Nunc elementum fermentum wisi. Aenean placerat. Ut imperdiet, enim sed gravida sollicitudin, felis odio placerat quam, ac pulvinar elit purus eget enim. Nunc vitae tortor. Proin tempus nibh sit amet nisl. Vivamus quis tortor vitae risus porta vehicula.

One

This box will adapt its height.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=rows,
  raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
  \tcbitem[blankest,space to=\myspace]
    \begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=1]
      \tcbitem One
      \tcbitem[add to natural height=\myspace]
        This box will adapt its height.
      \tcbitem \lipsum[4]
    \end{tcbitemize}
  \tcbitem[blankest,space to=\myspace]
    \begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=1]
      \tcbitem[blankest]\includegraphics[width=\linewidth]{goldshade.png}
      \tcbitem[add to natural height=\myspace]
        This box will adapt its height.
    \end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbitemize}
```

One

This box will adapt its height.

Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt ultrices. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Integer tempus convallis augue. Etiam facilisis. Nunc elementum fermentum wisi. Aenean placerat. Ut imperdiet, enim sed gravida sollicitudin, felis odio placerat quam, ac pulvinar elit purus eget enim. Nunc vitae tortor. Proin tempus nibh sit amet nisl. Vivamus quis tortor vitae risus porta vehicula.

This box will adapt its height.

17 Libraries LIB listings, LIB listingsutf8, and LIB minted

17.1 Loading the Libraries

In contrast to other tcolorbox → P. 12 libraries, the libraries LIB listings, LIB listingsutf8, and LIB minted are concurrent in the sense that they all do the same thing, i. e. displaying listings with or without typesetting the listing in LaTeX parallel. The difference is the underlying LaTeX package which does the core job for displaying a listing. So, typically, you need just *one* of these libraries. If you do not have a clue which one of them you should use and you are using `pdflatex`, you should take LIB listingsutf8. If you are using `xelatex` or `lualatex`, you should take LIB listings as `xelatex` and `lualatex` are not compatible with LIB listingsutf8.

> **!** The order in which the libraries are included influences the default settings and the `/tcb/reset` → P. 119 behavior. The settings of a later loaded library overwrite the settings of a previous loaded library. A library is never loaded twice.

17.1.1 Loading LIB listings

This library uses the package `listings` [7] to typeset listings. It is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```
\tcbuselibrary{listings}
```

This also loads the package `listings` [7].

The `/tcb/listing engine` → P. 341 is set to `listings` by the library. To reactivate this setting, if overwritten by other libraries, use

```
\tcbset{listing engine=listings}
```

17.1.2 Loading LIB listingsutf8

> **!** This library is not needed (and troublesome) when using XeLaTeX or LuaLaTeX. Therefore, loading this library is automatically replaced by loading LIB listings only, if pdfLaTeX is *not* used.

To extend `listings` for UTF-8 encoded sources, you can use the support from the package `listingsutf8` [11] by loading the library variant LIB listingsutf8.

```
\tcbuselibrary{listingsutf8}
\tcbset{listing utf8=latin1}% optional; `latin1' is the default.
```

This also loads the library LIB listings and the packages `listings` [7] and `listingsutf8` [11].

The `/tcb/listing engine` → P. 341 is set to `listings` by the library. To reactivate this setting, if overwritten by other libraries, use

```
\tcbset{listing engine=listings}
```

17.1.3 Loading LIB minted

This library uses the package `minted` [14] to typeset listings. It is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```
\tcbuselibrary{minted}
```

This also loads the package `minted` [14].

> ! The `minted` package uses the external tool `Pygments` [16] to apply syntax highlighting. It has to be installed and set up, before the library can be used, see [14] and [16]. The `tcolorbox` → P. 12 library LIB minted does not work, if the package `minted` [14] does not work.

The `/tcb/listing engine` → P. 341 is set to `minted` by the library. To reactivate this setting, if overwritten by other libraries, use

```
\tcbset{listing engine=minted}
```

17.2 Common Macros of the Libraries

`\begin{tcblisting}{`⟨*options*⟩`}`
⟨*environment content*⟩
`\end{tcblisting}`

Creates a colored box based on a `tcolorbox` → P. 12. Controlled by the given ⟨*options*⟩, the environment content is typeset normally and/or as a listing. Furthermore, the ⟨*options*⟩ control appearance and functions of the `tcolorbox` → P. 12. By default, the listing is interpreted as a LaTeX listing.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code
and in compiled form.
\end{tcblisting}
```

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code
and in compiled form.
```

This is a LaTeX example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{listings} /or/ \tcbuselibrary{listingsutf8}
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=yellow!5,colframe=yellow!50!black,listing only,
    title=This is source code in another language (XML), fonttitle=\bfseries,
  listing options={language=XML,columns=fullflexible,keywordstyle=\color{red}}}
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<project name="Package tcolorbox" default="documentation" basedir=".">
  <description>
    Apache Ant build file (http://ant.apache.org/)
  </description>
</project>
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is source code in another language (XML)

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<project name="Package␣tcolorbox" default="documentation" basedir=".">
  <description>
    Apache Ant build file (http://ant.apache.org/)
  </description>
</project>
```

```
% \tcbuselibrary{minted}
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=yellow!5,colframe=yellow!50!black,listing only,
    title=This is source code in another language (XML), fonttitle=\bfseries,
  listing engine=minted,minted language=xml}
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<project name="Package tcolorbox" default="documentation" basedir=".">
  <description>
    Apache Ant build file (http://ant.apache.org/)
  </description>
</project>
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is source code in another language (XML)

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<project name="Package tcolorbox" default="documentation" basedir=".">
  <description>
    Apache Ant build file (http://ant.apache.org/)
  </description>
</project>
```

```
% This box is as wide as needed (listing only !!)
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=green!5!white,colframe=green!50!black,listing only,
  hbox,enhanced,drop fuzzy shadow,before=\begin{center},after=\end{center}}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill[red] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{tcblisting}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill[red] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

\begin{tcboutputlisting}
  ⟨*environment content*⟩
\end{tcboutputlisting}

Saves the environment content to a file which is named by the key value of /tcb/listing file → P. 341. Later, this file can be loaded by \tcbinputlisting or \tcbuselistingtext or \tcbuselistinglisting.

```
\begin{tcboutputlisting}
This \textbf{text} is written to a standardized file for later usage.
\end{tcboutputlisting}
```

\tcbinputlisting{⟨*options*⟩}

Creates a colored boxed based on a tcolorbox → P. 12. The text content is read from a file named by the key value of /tcb/listing file → P. 341. Apart from that, the function is equal to that of tcblisting → P. 327.

```
\tcbinputlisting{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text only}
\tcbinputlisting{colback=green!5,colframe=green!75!black,listing only}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill[red] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

\tcbuselistingtext

Loads text from a file named by the key value of /tcb/listing file → P. 341.

```
\tcbuselistingtext
```

\tcbuselistinglisting

Typesets text as listing from a file named by the key value of /tcb/listing file → P. 341.

```
\tcbuselistinglisting
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill[red] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

\tcbusetemplisting

Typesets text as listing from a temporary file which was written by tcbwritetemp → P. 144.

17.3 Producing `tcblisting` Environments

> ! If a new sort of `tcblisting` environments should be created with one optional argument only, one is highly recommended to use `\DeclareTCBListing` or `\NewTCBListing` instead of `\newtcblisting` to avoid content scanning problems.

`\newtcblisting`[⟨*init options*⟩]{⟨*name*⟩}[⟨*number*⟩][⟨*default*⟩]{⟨*options*⟩}

Creates a new environment ⟨*name*⟩ based on `tcblisting`. Basically, `\newtcblisting` operates like `\newenvironment`. This means, the new environment ⟨*name*⟩ optionally takes ⟨*number*⟩ arguments, where ⟨*default*⟩ is the default value for the optional first argument. The ⟨*options*⟩ are given to the underlying `tcblisting`. Note that `/tcb/savedelimiter` is set to the given ⟨*name*⟩ automatically. The ⟨*init options*⟩ allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

```
\newtcblisting{mybox}{%
  colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{mybox}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
```

This is my \LaTeX\ box.

This is my LaTeX box.

```
\newtcblisting{mybox}[1]{%
  colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title={#1}}

\begin{mybox}{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
```

Listing Box

This is my \LaTeX\ box.

This is my LaTeX box.

```
\newtcblisting{mybox}[2][]{%
  colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title={#2},#1}

\begin{mybox}[listing only]
  {Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
\bigskip

\begin{mybox}[listing side text]
  {Listing Box}
This is my
\LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
```

Listing Box

This is my \LaTeX\ box.

Listing Box

This is my \LaTeX\ box.

This is my LaTeX box.

Definition in the preamble:

```
\newtcblisting[auto counter]{mycbox}[1]{%
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title=Listing \thetcbcounter: #1}
```

```
\begin{mycbox}{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mycbox}
```

Listing 1: Listing Box

This is my \LaTeX\ box.

This is my LaTeX box.

`\renewtcblisting`[⟨*init options*⟩]{⟨*name*⟩}[⟨*number*⟩][⟨*default*⟩]{⟨*options*⟩}

Operates like `\newtcblisting` → P. 330, but based on `\renewenvironment` instead of `\newenvironment`. An existing environment is redefined.

`\NewTCBListing[⟨init options⟩]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}`

Creates a new environment ⟨*name*⟩ based on `tcblisting` → P. 327.
Basically, `\NewTCBListing` operates like `\NewDocumentEnvironment`. This means, the new environment ⟨*name*⟩ is constructed with the given argument ⟨*specification*⟩. An error is issued if ⟨*name*⟩ has already been defined. The ⟨*options*⟩ are given to the underlying `tcblisting` → P. 327.
Note that `/tcb/savedelimiter` → P. 31 is set to the given ⟨*name*⟩ automatically.
The ⟨*init options*⟩ allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

```
\NewTCBListing{mybox}{ s O{} m }{%
  colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,
  IfBooleanTF={#1}
    {listing side text}
    {text side listing},
  title={#3},#2}

\begin{mybox}{Listing Box}
This is my
\LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
\bigskip

\begin{mybox}*{Listing Box}
This is my
\LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
\bigskip

\begin{mybox}[colback=yellow]
  {Listing Box}
This is my
\LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
```

Listing Box

This is my LaTeX box.

`This is my \LaTeX\ box.`

Listing Box

`This is my \LaTeX\ box.`

This is my LaTeX box.

Listing Box

This is my LaTeX box.

`This is my \LaTeX\ box.`

`\RenewTCBListing[⟨init options⟩]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}`

Operates like `\NewTCBListing`, but based on `\RenewDocumentEnvironment` instead of `\NewDocumentEnvironment`. An existing environment is redefined.

`\ProvideTCBListing[⟨init options⟩]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}`

Operates like `\NewTCBListing`, but based on `\ProvideDocumentEnvironment` instead of `\NewDocumentEnvironment`. The environment ⟨*name*⟩ is only created if it is not already defined.

`\DeclareTCBListing[⟨init options⟩]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}`

Operates like `\NewTCBListing`, but based on `\DeclareDocumentEnvironment` instead of `\NewDocumentEnvironment`. The new environment is always created, irrespective of an already existing environment with the same name.

With date of 2018-05-12, the `xparse` [15] package changed the argument collection process (now part of the LaTeX kernel). Spaces are ignored which leads to a serious change for listing environments ending with an optional argument like `O{}`. The former behavior of respecting spaces can be preserved by adding a «`!`». Note that the following code uses `!O{}` now.

- For older `xparse` versions, the following code is correct when using `O{}`.
- For `xparse` of 2018-05-12, only the first two examples of the following code using `O{}` are really «good» – all others do not work.
- For `xparse` of 2018-05-12 and later, the following code is correct when using `!O{}`.

Caveats of using an environment ending with an optional argument

```
\DeclareTCBListing{mybox}{ !O{} }{listing only,#1}

\begin{mybox}[colframe=red]
\good
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}[colframe=red]\good\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}
\good
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox} \good\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}\bad!\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}
[\good]
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox} [\good]\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}[\bad!]\end{mybox}
```

17.4 Producing \tcbinputlisting Commands

\newtcbinputlisting[⟨*init options*⟩]{\⟨*name*⟩}[⟨*number*⟩][⟨*default*⟩]{⟨*options*⟩}

Creates a new macro \⟨*name*⟩ based on \tcbinputlisting → P. 329. Basically, \newtcbinputlisting operates like \newcommand. The new macro \⟨*name*⟩ optionally takes ⟨*number*⟩ arguments, where ⟨*default*⟩ is the default value for the optional first argument. The ⟨*options*⟩ are given to the underlying \tcbinputlisting → P. 329. The ⟨*init options*⟩ allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

```
\newtcbinputlisting[use counter from=mycbox]{\mylisting}[2][]{%
  listing file={#2},
  title=Listing (\thetcbcounter) of \texttt{#2},
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  listing only,breakable,#1}

\mylisting[before upper=\textit{This is the included file content:}]
          {\jobname.tcbtemp}
```

Listing (2) of tcolorbox.tcbtemp

This is the included file content:

```
\newtcbinputlisting[use counter from=mycbox]{\mylisting}[2][]{%
  listing file={#2},
  title=Listing (\thetcbcounter) of \texttt{#2},
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  listing only,breakable,#1}

\mylisting[before upper=\textit{This is the included file content:}]
          {\jobname.tcbtemp}
```

```
\newtcbinputlisting[use counter from=mycbox]{\mylisting}[2][]{%
  listing engine=minted,minted language=latex,minted style=colorful,
  listing file={#2},
  title=Listing (\thetcbcounter) of \texttt{#2},
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  listing only,breakable,#1}

\mylisting[before upper=\textit{This is the included file content:}]
          {\jobname.tcbtemp}
```

Listing (3) of tcolorbox.tcbtemp

This is the included file content:

```
\newtcbinputlisting[use counter from=mycbox]{\mylisting}[2][]{%
  listing engine=minted,minted language=latex,minted style=colorful,
  listing file={#2},
  title=Listing (\thetcbcounter) of \texttt{#2},
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  listing only,breakable,#1}

\mylisting[before upper=\textit{This is the included file content:}]
          {\jobname.tcbtemp}
```

\renewtcbinputlisting[⟨*init options*⟩]{\⟨*name*⟩}[⟨*number*⟩][⟨*default*⟩]{⟨*options*⟩}

Operates like \newtcbinputlisting, but based on \renewcommand instead of \newcommand. An existing macro is redefined.

\NewTCBInputListing[⟨*init options*⟩]{\⟨*name*⟩}{⟨*specification*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩}

Creates a new command \⟨*name*⟩ based on \tcbinputlisting → P. 329. Basically, \NewTCBInputListing operates like \NewDocumentCommand. This means, the new command \⟨*name*⟩ is constructed with the given argument ⟨*specification*⟩. An error is issued if \⟨*name*⟩ has already been defined. The ⟨*options*⟩ are given to the underlying \tcbinputlisting → P. 329.

The ⟨*init options*⟩ allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

```
% counter from previous example
\NewTCBInputListing[use counter from=pabox]{\mylisting}{ O{} O{red} m }{%
  listing file={#3},title=Listing~\thetcbcounter,
  colback=#2!5!white,colframe=#2!50!black,colbacktitle=#2!75!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,listing only,#1}

\mylisting[before upper=\textit{This is the included file content:}]
  [blue]{\jobname.tcbtemp}
```

Listing 17.1

This is the included file content:

```
% counter from previous example
\NewTCBInputListing[use counter from=pabox]{\mylisting}{ O{} O{red} m
    }{%
  listing file={#3},title=Listing~\thetcbcounter,
  colback=#2!5!white,colframe=#2!50!black,colbacktitle=#2!75!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,listing only,#1}

\mylisting[before upper=\textit{This is the included file content:}]
  [blue]{\jobname.tcbtemp}
```

\RenewTCBInputListing[⟨*init options*⟩]{\⟨*name*⟩}{⟨*specification*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩}

Operates like \NewTCBInputListing, but based on \RenewDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. An existing command is redefined.

\ProvideTCBInputListing[⟨*init options*⟩]{\⟨*name*⟩}{⟨*specification*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩}

Operates like \NewTCBInputListing, but based on \ProvideDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The command \⟨*name*⟩ is only created if it is not already defined.

\DeclareTCBInputListing[⟨*init options*⟩]{\⟨*name*⟩}{⟨*specification*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩}

Operates like \NewTCBInputListing, but based on \DeclareDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The new command is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.

17.5 Option Keys of the LIB listings Library

/tcb/listing options=⟨*key list*⟩ (no default, initially **style=tcblatex**)

Sets the options from the package **listings** [7] which are used during typesetting of the listing. For LaTeX listings, there is a predefined **listings** style named **tcblatex** which can be used.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!25,left=6mm,
listing options={style=tcblatex,numbers=left,numberstyle=\tiny\color{red!75!black}}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code
and in compiled form. Additionally, we use line numbers here.
\end{tcblisting}
```

```
1 This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code
2 and in compiled form. Additionally, we use line numbers here.
```

This is a LaTeX example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form. Additionally, we use line numbers here.

/tcb/no listing options (no value, initially unset)

Abbreviation for **listing options={}**. This removes all options for the **listings** package. This includes the **tcblisting** → P. 327 standard style **tcblatex** and the encoding presets. Use this option, if you want to set the **listings** options outside of **tcblisting** → P. 327, e. g. globally in the preamble.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{no listing options}
All \textit{listings} options removed.
\end{tcblisting}
```

```
All \textit{listings} options removed.
```

All *listings* options removed.

/tcb/listing style=⟨*style*⟩ (no default, initially **tcblatex**)

Abbreviation for **listing options={style=...}**. This key sets a ⟨*style*⟩ for the **listings** package, see [7]. For LaTeX, there is a predefined style named **tcblatex**.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
listing style=tcblatex}
Here, we use the predefined style.
\end{tcblisting}
```

```
Here, we use the predefined style.
```

Here, we use the predefined style.

`/tcb/listing inputencoding=`⟨*encoding*⟩ (no default, initially `\inputencodingname`)

Sets the input encoding value for the predefined listing style `tcblatex` and `tcbdocumentation` from the library LIB documentation. The initial value is derived from the package `inputenc` if used.

`/tcb/listing remove caption=true|false` (default `true`, initially `true`)

If set to `true`, some part of the caption building code of the `listings` package is silenced to prevent some unwanted interaction with the `hyperref` package resulting in additional vertical space. If set to `false`, the `listings` package code is kept unchanged. Note that listings outside `tcblisting` → P. 327 and `\tcbinputlisting` → P. 329 are always processed normally. Typically, a user is not expected to use this key at all.

`/tcb/every listing line=`⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially unset/empty)

Inserts some ⟨*text*⟩ to the begin of every line of a listing. Note that this a hack of the `listings` package code. This may become unusable or superfluous in the future.

```
\newtcblisting{commandshell}{colback=black,colupper=white,colframe=yellow!75!black,
  listing only,listing options={style=tcblatex,language=sh},
  every listing line={\textcolor{red}{\small\ttfamily\bfseries root \$> }}}

\begin{commandshell}
ls -al
cd /usr/lib
\end{commandshell}
```

```
root $> ls -al
root $> cd /usr/lib
```

`/tcb/every listing line*=`⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially unset/empty)

Identical to `/tcb/every listing line` plus additional enlargement of `/tcb/rightupper` → P. 46 by the width of ⟨*text*⟩. Therefore, this option has to be used after the geometry settings are done. This option is intended to be used in conjunction with `/tcb/hbox` → P. 105.

```
\newtcblisting{commandshell}{colback=black,colupper=white,colframe=yellow!75!black,
  listing only,listing options={style=tcblatex,language=sh},hbox,
  every listing line*={\textcolor{red}{\small\ttfamily\bfseries root \$> }}}

\begin{commandshell}
ls -al
cd /usr/lib
\end{commandshell}
```

```
root $> ls -al
root $> cd /usr/lib
```

See further options in Section 17.8 on page 341.

! For an combined example of using `\lstinline` inside a `tcolorbox` → P. 12, see `\DeclareTotalTCBox` → P. 22.

17.6 Option Keys of the LIB listingsutf8 Library

> ! The LIB listingsutf8 library is not needed (and troublesome) when using XeLaTeX or LuaLaTeX. Therefore, loading this library is automatically replaced by loading LIB listings only, if pdfLaTeX is *not* used.

The LIB listingsutf8 library is an extension of the LIB listings library, so all options from Section 17.5 on page 336 are applicable.

`/tcb/listing utf8=`⟨*one-byte-encoding*⟩ (style, no default, initially `latin1`)

Abbreviation for using `/tcb/listing inputencoding` →P. 337 together with UTF-8 support from the package `listingsutf8` [11]. This option is available only for the library variant LIB listingsutf8. The ⟨*one-byte-encoding*⟩ is one of the applicable encodings from [11], e. g. `latin1` which is the default.

Be aware that this means restriction to this specific ⟨*one-byte-encoding*⟩: e. g. `latin1` comprises umlauts and other accented characters, but not the Euro sign. If you want to use the `listings` package *and* «real» UTF-8 source code, then do *not* use LIB listingsutf8 but LIB listings with `/tcb/listing inputencoding` →P. 337`=utf8` *and* with specific manual hacks for specific UTF-8-encoded characters.

See further options in Section 17.8 on page 341.

17.7 Option Keys of the LIB minted Library

/tcb/minted language=⟨*programming language*⟩ (no default, initially `latex`)

Sets a ⟨*programming language*⟩ known to `Pygments` [16].

```
\begin{tcblisting}{listing engine=minted,minted style=trac,
  minted language=java,
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing only}
    public class HelloWorld {
      // A `Hello World' in Java
      public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Hello World!");
      }
    }
\end{tcblisting}
```

```
public class HelloWorld {
  // A `Hello World' in Java
  public static void main(String[] args) {
    System.out.println("Hello World!");
  }
}
```

U 2021-12-15

/tcb/minted options=⟨*key list*⟩ (no default, initially see /tcb/default minted options → P. 340)

Sets the options from the package `minted` [14] which are used during typesetting of the listing. Also see /tcb/minted options app → P. 474 and /tcb/minted options pre → P. 474.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\newtcblisting{myjava}{listing engine=minted,
  minted style=colorful,
  minted language=java,
  minted options={fontsize=\small,breaklines,autogobble,linenos,numbersep=3mm},
  colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,listing only,
  left=5mm,enhanced,
  overlay={\begin{tcbclipinterior}\fill[red!20!blue!20!white] (frame.south west)
    rectangle ([xshift=5mm]frame.north west);\end{tcbclipinterior}}}

\begin{myjava}
  public class HelloWorld {
    // A `Hello World' in Java
    public static void main(String[] args) {
      System.out.println("Hello World!");
    }
  }
\end{myjava}
```

```
1 public class HelloWorld {
2   // A `Hello World' in Java
3   public static void main(String[] args) {
4     System.out.println("Hello World!");
5   }
6 }
```

N 2021-12-15 **/tcb/default minted options**=⟨*key list*⟩ (no default, initially `tabsize=2,fontsize=\small,breaklines,autogobble`)

Sets the options from the package `minted` [14] which are used during typesetting of the listing, if /tcb/minted options→ P. 339 are *not* used. The intended use is inside the preamble to change the default behavior. Note that setting /tcb/default minted options also resets /tcb/minted options→ P. 339. Since `minted` [14] v2.6 set `stripnl=false`, adding `stripnl` could be helpful to remove leading and trailing blank lines.

```
% inside the preamble
\tcbset{%
  default minted options={tabsize=4,fontsize=\normalsize},
}
```

/tcb/minted style=⟨*style*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Sets a ⟨*style*⟩ known to `Pygments` [16]. This is independent from /tcb/minted options→ P. 339. Note that styles are always applied globally; all following examples will be set in the given ⟨*style*⟩ until a new style is set. Also note that setting `\usemintedstyle{`⟨*style*⟩`}` only once per document is more economic, if all styles in a document are the same. For examples of different styles, see /tcb/minted language→ P. 339 and /tcb/minted options→ P. 339.

See further options in Section 17.8 on the following page.

17.8 Common Option Keys of all Libraries

For the ⟨*options*⟩ in `tcblisting` → P. 327 respectively `\tcbinputlisting` → P. 329 the following `pgf` keys can be applied. The key tree path `/tcb/` is not to be used inside these macros.

`/tcb/listing engine`=⟨*engine*⟩ (no default)

Sets the ⟨*engine*⟩ which typesets the listings. Feasible values are

- **`listings`**, if library LIB listings or LIB listingsutf8 is loaded.
- **`minted`**, if library LIB minted is loaded.

`/tcb/listing file`=⟨*file name*⟩ (no default, initially `\jobname.listing`)

Sets the ⟨*file name*⟩ of the file which is used to save listings.

`/tcb/listing and text` (no value, initially set)

Typesets the environment content as listing in the upper part and as compiled text in the lower part.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing and text}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
```

This is a LaTeX example.

`/tcb/text and listing` (no value)

Typesets the environment content as compiled text in the upper part and as listing in the lower part.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text and listing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a LaTeX example.

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
```

`/tcb/listing only` (no value)

Typesets the environment content as listing.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing only}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
```

/tcb/text only (no value)

Typesets the environment content as compiled text.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text only}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a LaTeX example.

/tcb/comment=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Records a comment with ⟨*text*⟩ as content. The comment is displayed e. g. in conjunction with **/tcb/listing and comment** → P. 345 and **/tcb/comment and listing** → P. 345.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{comment={This comment is really only a comment},
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

This is a **tcolorbox**.

N 2014-11-17 **/tcb/comment only** (no value)

Typesets the environment content with the comment text.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{comment only,
  comment={This is a comment.},
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcblisting}
```

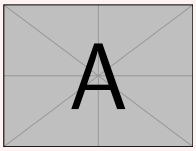
This is a comment.

/tcb/image comment={⟨*options*⟩**}{**⟨*filename*⟩**}** (style, no default, initially unset)

Uses an image denoted by ⟨*filename*⟩ as *comment* for the listing. The image is included by the standard **\includegraphics** macro with given ⟨*options*⟩.

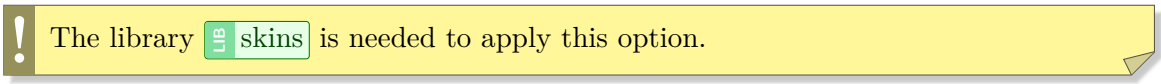
```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing side comment,
  image comment={width=2.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf},center lower}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a \LaTeX\ example.



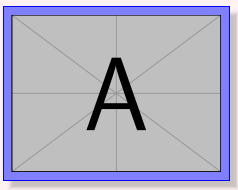
N 2014-11-14 **/tcb/tcbimage comment=⟨*filename*⟩** (style, no default, initially unset)

Uses an image denoted by ⟨*filename*⟩ as *comment* for the listing. The image is included by the \tcbincludegraphics → P. 278 macro. The inclusion can be customized by /tcb/comment style → P. 345.



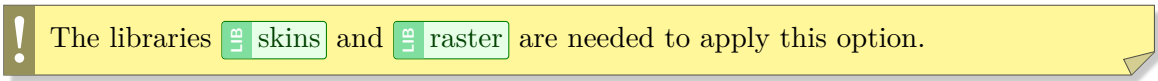

```
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing side comment,
  righthand width=3cm,lower separated=false,
  tcbimage comment={example-image-a.pdf},
  comment style={size=fbox,colframe=blue,colback=blue!50,sharp corners,
    drop fuzzy shadow}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a \LaTeX\ example.



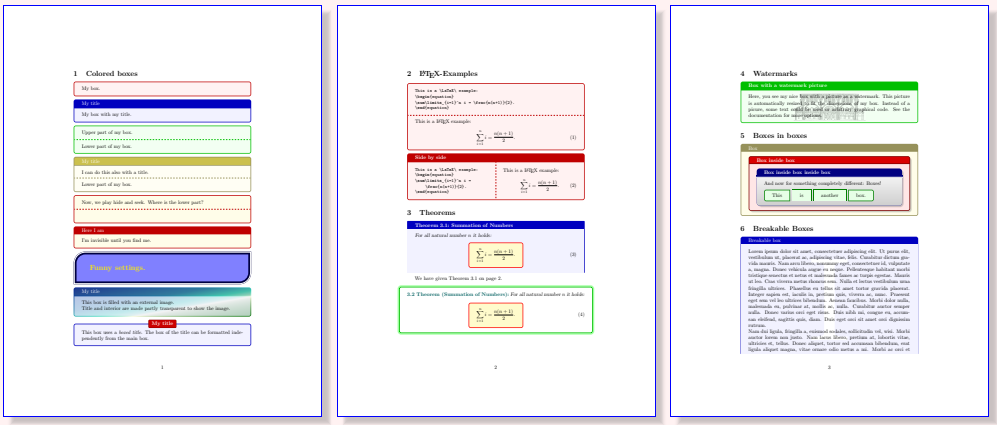
N 2014-11-14 **/tcb/pdf comment=⟨*filename*⟩** (style, default listing file, initially unset)

Uses a PDF file denoted by ⟨*filename*⟩ as *comment* for the listing. The image is included by `\tcbincludepdf` → P. 280 inside a `tcbraster` → P. 306. The inclusion can be customized by `/tcb/comment style` → P. 345.




```
% \tcbuselibrary{skins,raster}
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing and comment,
  righthand width=3cm,lower separated=false,middle=1mm,
  pdf comment={tcolorbox-example.pdf},
  comment style={raster columns=3,graphics pages={1,2,3},
    colframe=blue,drop fuzzy shadow}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a \LaTeX\ example.



N 2014-11-14 **/tcb/pdf extension=⟨*extension*⟩** (no default, initially pdf)

Sets the PDF file name extension for /tcb/pdf comment → P. 344 to ⟨*extension*⟩. Note that ⟨*extension*⟩ always overwrites any actual extension given inside /tcb/pdf comment → P. 344.

N 2014-11-14 **/tcb/comment style=⟨*options*⟩** (no default, initially empty)

Sets the ⟨*options*⟩ for /tcb/tcbimage comment → P. 343 and /tcb/pdf comment → P. 344. These are tcolorbox → P. 12 options to customize the colored box drawn around the image(s), also image options encapsulated by /tcb/graphics options → P. 281, and tcbraster → P. 306 options for /tcb/pdf comment → P. 344.

/tcb/listing and comment (no value)

Typesets the environment content as listing in the upper part and a given comment in the lower part.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing and comment,
  comment={This is my comment. It may contain line breaks.\par
    It can even use the environment content
    \flqq\ignorespaces\tcbuselistingtext\unskip\frqq}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
```

This is my comment. It may contain line breaks.
It can even use the environment content «This is a LaTeX example.»

/tcb/comment and listing (no value)

Typesets a given comment in the upper part and the environment content as listing in the lower part.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment and listing,
comment={This is my comment.}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is my comment.

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
```

/tcb/listing side text (style, no value)

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in the left (upper) part and as compiled text in the right (lower) part. This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/listing and text → P. 341 and /tcb/sidebyside → P. 134.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing side text}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
```

This is a LaTeX example.

Note that **sidebyside=false** has to be added, if the setting of /tcb/listing side text is to be annihilated.

/tcb/text side listing (style, no value)

Typesets the environment content side by side as compiled text in the left (upper) part and as listing in the right (lower) part. This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/text and listing → P. 341 and /tcb/sidebyside → P. 134.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text side listing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a LaTeX example.

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
```

/tcb/listing outside text (no value)

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in a tcolorbox → P. 12 and as compiled text outside the box in the right part of the page. Nevertheless, the outside text is treated as *lower* part of the tcolorbox → P. 12 and can be formatted with all lower part options. The space partitioning is done with the side by side options from Section 6 on page 134.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing outside text}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
```

This is a LaTeX example.

/tcb/text outside listing (no value)

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in a tcolorbox → P. 12 and as compiled text outside the box in the left part of the page. Nevertheless, the outside text is treated as *lower* part of the tcolorbox → P. 12 and can be formatted with all lower part options. The space partitioning is done with the side by side options from Section 6 on page 134.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text outside listing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a LaTeX example.

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
```

/tcb/listing side comment (style, no value)

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in the left (upper) part and a given comment in the right (lower) part. This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/listing and comment → P. 345 and /tcb/sidebyside → P. 134.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing side comment,
  righthand width=1.5cm,image comment={width=1.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
```

/tcb/comment side listing (style, no value)

Typesets the environment content side by side with a given comment in the left (upper) part and as listing in the right (lower) part. This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/comment and listing → P. 345 and /tcb/sidebyside → P. 134.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment side listing,
  lefthand width=1.5cm,image comment={width=1.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
```

/tcb/listing outside comment (no value)

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in a tcolorbox[→ P. 12] and a given comment outside the box in the right part of the page. Nevertheless, the outside text is treated as *lower* part of the tcolorbox[→ P. 12] and can be formatted with all lower part options. The space partitioning is done with the side by side options from Section 6 on page 134.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing outside comment,
  righthand width=1.5cm,image comment={width=1.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

/tcb/comment outside listing (no value)

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in a tcolorbox[→ P. 12] and a given comment outside the box in the left part of the page. Nevertheless, the outside text is treated as *lower* part of the tcolorbox[→ P. 12] and can be formatted with all lower part options. The space partitioning is done with the side by side options from Section 6 on page 134.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment outside listing,
  lefthand width=1.5cm,image comment={width=1.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

/tcb/listing above text (no value)

Typesets the environment content as listing in a tcolorbox[→ P. 12] and as compiled text outside and below the box. The outside text is treated as *lower* part of the tcolorbox[→ P. 12] and can be formatted with all lower part options. The distance between box and text is controlled by /tcb/middle[→ P. 48].

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing above text}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

This is a LaTeX example.

N 2014-11-07 **/tcb/listing above* text** (no value)

Widely equal to /tcb/listing above text, but the outside text is not formatted with the lower part options. Also, it is not put into a minipage and it may span several pages. The distance between box and text is controlled by /tcb/after[→ P. 86].

/tcb/text above listing (no value)

Typesets the environment content as listing in a tcolorbox → P. 12 and as compiled text outside and above the box. The outside text is treated as *lower* part of the tcolorbox → P. 12 and can be formatted with all lower part options. The distance between box and text is controlled by /tcb/middle → P. 48.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text above listing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a LaTeX example.

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
```

N 2014-11-07 /tcb/text above* listing (no value)

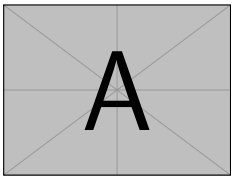
Widely equal to /tcb/text above listing, but the outside text is not formatted with the lower part options. Also, it is not put into a minipage and it may span several pages. The distance between box and text is controlled by /tcb/before → P. 86.

/tcb/listing above comment (no value)

Typesets the environment content as listing in a tcolorbox → P. 12 and a given comment outside and below the box. The outside text is treated as *lower* part of the tcolorbox → P. 12 and can be formatted with all lower part options. The distance between box and comment is controlled by /tcb/middle → P. 48.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing above comment,
  center lower,image comment={width=3cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
```



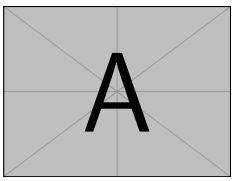
N 2014-11-07 /tcb/listing above* comment (no value)

Widely equal to /tcb/listing above comment, but the outside comment is not formatted with the lower part options. Also, it is not put into a minipage and it may span several pages. The distance between box and comment is controlled by /tcb/after → P. 86.

`/tcb/comment above listing` (no value)

Typesets the environment content as listing in a `tcolorbox` → P. 12 and a given comment outside and above the box. The outside text is treated as *lower* part of the `tcolorbox` → P. 12 and can be formatted with all lower part options. The distance between box and comment is controlled by `/tcb/middle` → P. 48.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment above listing,
  center lower,image comment={width=3cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```



This is a \LaTeX\ example.

N 2014-11-07 `/tcb/comment above* listing` (no value)

Widely equal to `/tcb/comment above listing`, but the outside comment is not formatted with the lower part options. Also, it is not put into a minipage and it may span several pages. The distance between box and comment is controlled by `/tcb/before` → P. 86.

17.9 Option Keys for Processing and Full Document Examples

A complete LaTeX document including `\documentclass`, `\begin{document}` and `\end{document}` cannot be processed directly by `tcolorbox` → P. 12. It always has to be compiled separately. There are two methods supported by the package to process and display such a full document example:

- Prepare and compile the example document independent from your main document. The source file and the resulting PDF file can be included into the main document afterwards. This is the most economic way since the example document can be left untouched after the example is complete.
- The other possibility is to compile the example on the fly while the main document is compiled. This way has some charm, because the example can be edited inside the main document. But be aware that the compilation of the example is issued on every run of the main document. Also, there are fewer degrees of freedom how the example is compiled.

For both methods, the resulting example PDF file can be included as a `/tcb/pdf comment` → P. 344.

The following example shows how to apply the first method. There already is a file `tcolorbox-example.tex` and a PDF file `tcolorbox-example.pdf`. Both of them are input partly by the following:

```
% \tcbuselibrary{breakable,skins,raster}
\tcbinputlisting{
  enhanced jigsaw,breakable,pad at break*=2mm,height fixed for=first and middle,
  lower separated=false,
  leftlower=0pt,rightlower=0pt,middle=0pt,
  colframe=red!50!black,colback=yellow!10!white,
  listing and comment,
  listing file={tcolorbox-example},
  listing options=
    {style=tcblatex,texcsstyle=*\color{red!70!black},firstline=20,lastline=85},
  after upper={\par\bigskip\texttt{\ldots}\par},
  pdf comment,
  comment style={drop lifted shadow,graphics pages={1,...,4}},
}
```

```
% arara: pdflatex: {  }
% arara: pdflatex: { synctex: yes }
%
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{tikz,lipsum,lmodern}
\usepackage[most]{tcolorbox}

\begin{document}

%-------------------------------------------------------------
\section{Colored boxes}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  My box.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,title=My title]
  My box with my title.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=green!5!white,colframe=green!75!black]
  Upper part of my box.
  \tcblower
  Lower part of my box.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=yellow!5!white,colframe=yellow!50!black,
  colbacktitle=yellow!75!black,title=My title]
  I can do this also with a title.
  \tcblower
  Lower part of my box.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!75!black,lowerbox=invisible,
  savelowerto=\jobname_ex.tex]
  Now, we play hide and seek. Where is the lower part?
  \tcblower
  I'm invisible until you find me.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!75!black,title=Here I am]
  \input{\jobname_ex.tex}
\end{tcolorbox}


\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,sharp corners=uphill,
    colback=blue!50!white,colframe=blue!25!black,coltext=yellow,
    fontupper=\Large\bfseries,arc=6mm,boxrule=2mm,boxsep=5mm,
    borderline={0.3mm}{0.3mm}{white}]
  Funny settings.
\end{tcolorbox}


\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,frame style image=blueshade.png,
  opacityback=0.75,opacitybacktitle=0.25,
  colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,
  title=My title]
  This box is filled with an external image.\par
  Title and interior are made partly transparent to show the image.
\end{tcolorbox}


\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,attach boxed title to top
    center={yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm},
  colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,colbacktitle=red!80!black,
  title=My title,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  boxed title style={size=small,colframe=red!50!black} ]

...
```

1 Colored boxes

My box.

My title

My box with my title.

Upper part of my box.

Lower part of my box.

My title

I can do this also with a title.

Lower part of my box.

Now, we play hide and seek. Where is the lower part?

Here I am

I'm invisible until you find me.

Funny settings.

My title

This box is filled with an external image.
Title and interior are made partly transparent to show the image.

My title

This box uses a *boxed title*. The box of the title can be formatted independently from the main box.

2 LaTeX-Examples

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example:
\begin{equation}
\sum\limits_{i=1}^n i = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}.
\end{equation}
```

This is a LaTeX example:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} i = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}. \tag{1}$$

Side by side

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example:
\begin{equation}
\sum\limits_{i=1}^n i =
    \frac{n(n+1)}{2}.
\end{equation}
```

This is a LaTeX example:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} i = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}. \tag{2}$$

3 Theorems

Theorem 3.1: Summation of Numbers

For all natural number n it holds:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} i = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}. \tag{3}$$

We have given Theorem 3.1 on page 2.

3.2 Theorem (Summation of Numbers): *For all natural number n it holds:*

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} i = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}. \tag{4}$$

4 Watermarks

Box with a watermark picture

Here, you see my nice box, with a picture as a watermark. This picture is automatically resized to fit the dimensions of my box. Instead of a picure, some text could be used or arbitrary graphical code. See the documentation for more options.

DRAFT

5 Boxes in boxes

Box

Box inside box

Box inside box inside box

And now for something completely different: Boxes!

This | is | another | box.

6 Breakable Boxes

Breakable box

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.
Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.
Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis. Donec nonummy pellentesque ante. Phasellus adipiscing semper elit. Proin fermentum massa ac quam. Sed diam turpis, molestie vitae, placerat a, molestie nec, leo. Maecenas lacinia. Nam ipsum ligula, eleifend at, accumsan nec, suscipit a, ipsum. Morbi blandit ligula feugiat magna. Nunc eleifend consequat lorem. Sed lacinia nulla vitae enim. Pellentesque tincidunt purus vel magna. Integer non enim. Praesent euismod nunc eu purus. Donec bibendum quam in tellus. Nullam cursus pulvinar lectus. Donec et mi. Nam vulputate metus eu enim. Vestibulum pellentesque felis eu massa.
Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt ultrices. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Integer tempus convallis augue. Etiam facilisis. Nunc elementum fermentum wisi. Aenean placerat. Ut imperdiet, enim sed gravida sollicitudin, felis odio placerat quam, ac pulvinar elit purus eget enim. Nunc vitae tortor. Proin tempus nibh sit amet nisl. Vivamus quis tortor vitae risus porta vehicula.
Fusce mauris. Vestibulum luctus nibh at lectus. Sed bibendum, nulla a faucibus semper, leo velit ultricies tellus, ac venenatis arcu wisi vel nisl. Vestibulum diam. Aliquam pellentesque, augue quis sagittis posuere, turpis lacus congue quam, in hendrerit risus eros eget felis. Maecenas eget erat in sapien mattis porttitor. Vestibulum porttitor. Nulla facilisi. Sed a turpis eu lacus commodo facilisis. Morbi fringilla, wisi in dignissim interdum, justo lectus sagittis dui, et vehicula libero dui cursus dui. Mauris tempor ligula sed lacus. Duis cursus enim ut augue. Cras ac magna. Cras nulla. Nulla egestas. Curabitur a leo. Quisque egestas wisi eget nunc. Nam feugiat lacus vel est. Curabitur consectetuer.
Suspendisse vel felis. Ut lorem lorem, interdum eu, tincidunt sit amet, laoreet vitae, arcu. Aenean faucibus pede eu ante. Praesent enim elit, rutrum at, molestie non, nonummy vel, nisl. Ut lectus eros, malesuada sit amet, fermentum eu, sodales cursus, magna. Donec eu purus. Quisque vehicula, urna sed ultricies auctor, pede lorem egestas dui, et convallis elit erat sed nulla. Donec luctus. Curabitur et nunc. Aliquam dolor odio, commodo pretium, ultricies non, pharetra in, velit. Integer arcu est, nonummy in, fermentum faucibus, egestas vel, odio.
Sed commodo posuere pede. Mauris ut est. Ut quis purus. Sed ac odio. Sed vehicula hendrerit sem. Duis non odio. Morbi ut dui. Sed accumsan risus eget odio. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Pellentesque non elit. Fusce sed justo eu urna porta tincidunt. Mauris felis odio, sollicitudin sed, volutpat a, ornare ac, erat. Morbi quis dolor. Donec pellentesque,

N 2014-11-14 **/tcb/no process** (no default)

Removes all processing commands if set before.

N 2014-11-14 **/tcb/process code=**⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Adds ⟨*code*⟩ which is executed during \tcbinputlisting → P. 329 and tcblisting → P. 327. At the time of executing the given ⟨*code*⟩, the listing is already written to /tcb/listing file → P. 341, but the colored box is not constructed yet. Its intended use is to process the listing somehow before displaying. The processing result can be used inside a /tcb/comment → P. 342. Several /tcb/process code options can be given which are processed in the given order. Typically, ⟨*code*⟩ is added by using the following styles /tcb/run system command, /tcb/run pdflatex, etc.

! To use the further options, the compiler has to be called with the **-shell-escape** permission to authorize potentially dangerous system calls. Be warned that this is a security risk. Anyway, it's more economic to compile examples independent from the main document and to include them as shown in the previous pages.

N 2014-11-14 **/tcb/run system command=**⟨*system command*⟩ (style, no default, initially unset)

Runs a ⟨*system command*⟩, if the document is compiled with the **-shell-escape** permission. The current listing file can be accessed as **\filename@area\filename@base\filename@ext**. This ⟨*system command*⟩ is added to /tcb/process code.

N 2014-11-14
U 2016-05-27 **/tcb/compilable listing** (style, no default)

Sets /tcb/listing file → P. 341 to **\jobname-listing-**⟨*counter*⟩.

! The default /tcb/listing file → P. 341 setting cannot be used to compile a listing, since the base name equals the **\jobname** and the included PDF files should be unique. Therefore, to use /tcb/run pdflatex etc., the /tcb/listing file → P. 341 has to be set to a unique value. One may use /tcb/compilable listing for this purpose.

N 2014-11-14 **/tcb/run pdflatex=**⟨*arguments*⟩ (style, no default, initially unset)

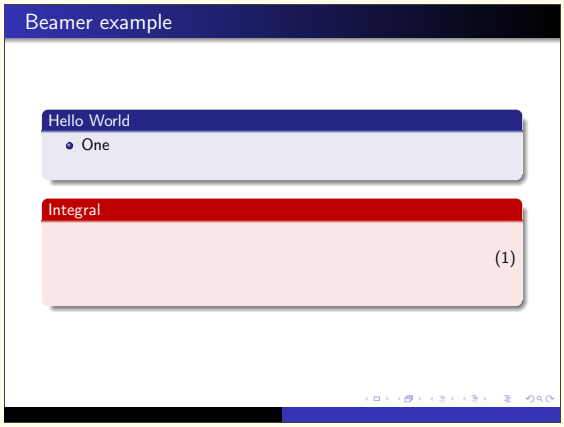
Issues a **pdflatex** compilation of the listing with the given ⟨*arguments*⟩.

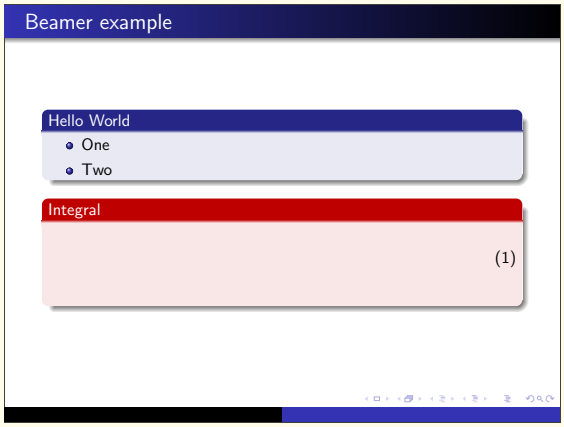
- The main document has to be compiled with the **-shell-escape** permission.
- The /tcb/listing file → P. 341 has to be unique for the listing.
- If the listing has to be compiled twice, add **run pdflatex** two times to the option list.

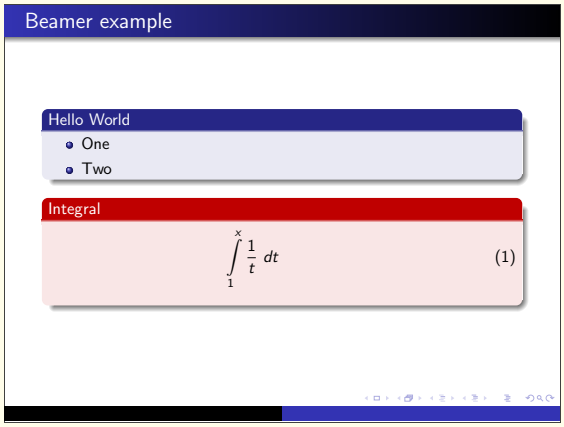
```
\begin{tcblisting}{enhanced jigsaw,lower separated=false,
  leftlower=0pt,rightlower=0pt,
  colframe=red!50!black,colback=yellow!10!white,
  listing options={style=tcblatex,texcsstyle=*\color{red!70!black}},
  listing and comment,
  pdf comment,freeze pdf,
  compilable listing,
  run pdflatex
}
\documentclass{beamer}
\usetheme{Warsaw}
\begin{document}
\begin{frame}{Beamer example}
  \begin{block}{Hello World}
    \begin{itemize}[<+->]
      \item One
      \item Two
    \end{itemize}
  \end{block}
```

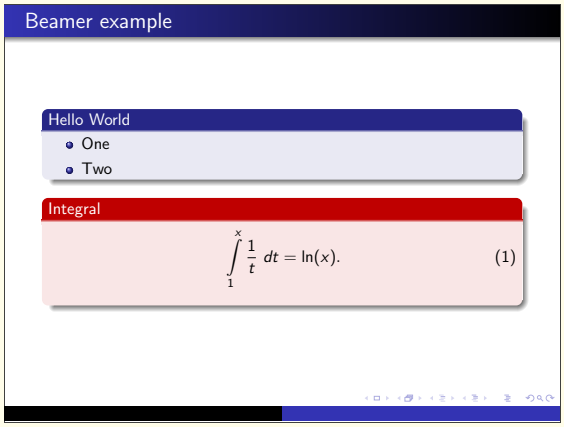
```
  \begin{alertblock}{Integral}
    \begin{equation}
      \visible<3->{\int\limits_1^x \frac{1}{t}~dt}
      \visible<4->{ = \ln(x).}
    \end{equation}
  \end{alertblock}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
\end{tcblisting}
```

```
\documentclass{beamer}
\usetheme{Warsaw}
\begin{document}
\begin{frame}{Beamer example}
  \begin{block}{Hello World}
    \begin{itemize}[<+->]
      \item One
      \item Two
    \end{itemize}
  \end{block}

  \begin{alertblock}{Integral}
    \begin{equation}
      \visible<3->{\int\limits_1^x \frac{1}{t}~dt}
      \visible<4->{ = \ln(x).}
    \end{equation}
  \end{alertblock}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
```









N 2014-11-14 **/tcb/run xelatex=⟨*arguments*⟩** (style, no default, initially unset)

Issues a `xelatex` compilation of the listing with the given ⟨*arguments*⟩.

N 2014-11-14 **/tcb/run lualatex=⟨*arguments*⟩** (style, no default, initially unset)

Issues a `lualatex` compilation of the listing with the given ⟨*arguments*⟩.

N 2014-11-14 **/tcb/run makeindex=⟨*arguments*⟩** (style, no default, initially unset)

Issues a `makeindex` compilation of the listing with the given ⟨*arguments*⟩.

N 2014-11-14 **/tcb/run bibtex=⟨*arguments*⟩** (style, no default, initially unset)

Issues a `bibtex` compilation of the listing with the given ⟨*arguments*⟩.

N 2014-11-14 **/tcb/run biber=⟨*arguments*⟩** (style, no default, initially unset)

Issues a `biber` compilation of the listing with the given ⟨*arguments*⟩.

N 2014-11-14 **/tcb/run arara=⟨*arguments*⟩** (style, no default, initially unset)

Issues an `arara` compilation of the listing with the given ⟨*arguments*⟩.

N 2014-11-14 **/tcb/run latex=⟨*arguments*⟩** (style, no default, initially unset)

Issues a `latex` compilation of the listing with the given ⟨*arguments*⟩.

N 2014-11-14 **/tcb/run dvips=⟨*arguments*⟩** (style, no default, initially unset)

Issues a `dvips` compilation of the listing with the given ⟨*arguments*⟩.

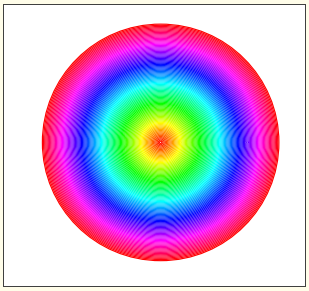
N 2014-11-14 **/tcb/run ps2pdf=⟨*arguments*⟩** (style, no default, initially unset)

Issues a `ps2pdf` compilation of the listing with the given ⟨*arguments*⟩.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{enhanced jigsaw,
  title={PSTricks with pdflatex},fonttitle=\bfseries,
  colframe=red!50!black,colback=yellow!10!white,
  listing options={style=tcblatex,texcsstyle=*\color{red!70!black}},
  lower separated=false,middle=0pt,
  listing side comment,righthand width=4cm,
  compilable listing,
  run latex,run dvips,run ps2pdf,
  pdf comment,freeze pdf,
  comment style={raster columns=1,
    graphics options={viewport=0.5in 7.7in 3.5in 10.5in,clip}},
}
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{pstricks,multido}
\begin{document}
\psset{unit=3}%
\multido{\nHue=0.01+0.01}{100}{%
\definecolor{MyColor}{hsb}{\nHue,1,1}%
\pscircle[linewidth=0.01,linecolor=MyColor]{\nHue}}
\end{document}
\end{tcblisting}
```

PSTricks with pdflatex

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{pstricks,multido}
\begin{document}
\psset{unit=3}%
\multido{\nHue=0.01+0.01}{100}{%
\definecolor{MyColor}{hsb}{\nHue,1,1}%
\pscircle[linewidth=0.01,linecolor=MyColor]{\nHue}}
\end{document}
```



! For most applications, you will like to add `/tcb/freeze pdf` as option, since the included `pdf` file is only refreshed, if the source for this file has changed.

N 2016-07-14 **`/tcb/freeze file`**=⟨*file*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Observes some ⟨*file*⟩, usually the final file produced by `/tcb/process code` →P. 354, `/tcb/run system command` →P. 354, `/tcb/run pdflatex` →P. 354, etc. If the MD5 checksum of the current `/tcb/listing file` →P. 341 is unchanged and ⟨*file*⟩ exists, the processing is skipped and the ⟨*file*⟩ is kept (frozen). Typically, the style `/tcb/freeze pdf` can be used for convenience.

N 2016-07-14 **`/tcb/freeze none`** (no default, initially set)

Freeze no file and always execute the given process commands.

N 2016-07-14 **`/tcb/freeze extension`**=⟨*text*⟩ (style, no default)

Calls `/tcb/freeze file` with the current `/tcb/listing file` →P. 341 stripped with its extension plus ⟨*text*⟩ as new extension.

```
...
listing file=myfile.tex,
freeze extension=-modified.pdf,    % ->   myfile-modified.pdf   is observed
...
```

N 2016-07-14 **`/tcb/freeze pdf`** (no value)

Calls `/tcb/freeze file` with the current `/tcb/listing file` →P. 341 stripped with its extension plus `.pdf` as new extension.

N 2016-07-14 **`/tcb/freeze png`** (no value)

Calls `/tcb/freeze file` with the current `/tcb/listing file` →P. 341 stripped with its extension plus `.png` as new extension. See the examples for `/tcb/run pdflatex` →P. 354 and `/tcb/run ps2pdf` →P. 356.

N 2016-07-14 **`/tcb/freeze jpg`** (no value)

Calls `/tcb/freeze file` with the current `/tcb/listing file` →P. 341 stripped with its extension plus `.jpg` as new extension.

17.10 Creation of LaTeX Tutorials

The following source code gives a guideline for the creation of LaTeX tutorials. In the next section, a framework for LaTeX exercises is described. All examples shall be numbered optionally.

Firstly, some additional `tcb` keys are defined for the appearance. For the examples, three environments `texexp`, `texexptitled`, and `texexptitledspec` are defined with automatic numbering.

- `texexp` is used for untitled examples,
- `texexptitled` is used for titled examples,
- `texexptitledspec` is used for titled examples with special treatment.

Definition in the preamble:

```
\tcbset{
  texexp/.style={colframe=red!50!yellow!50!black, colback=red!50!yellow!5!white,
      coltitle=red!50!yellow!3!white,
      fonttitle=\small\sffamily\bfseries, fontupper=\small, fontlower=\small},
  example/.style 2 args={texexp,
      title={Example \thetcbcounter: #1},label={#2}},
}


\newtcblisting{texexp}[1]{texexp,#1}
\newtcblisting[auto counter,number within=section]{texexptitled}[3][]{%
  example={#2}{#3},#1}
\newtcolorbox[use counter from=texexptitled]{texexptitledspec}[3][]{%
  example={#2}{#3},#1}
```

```
\begin{tcblisting}{texexp}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code
and in compiled form.
\end{tcblisting}
```

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code
and in compiled form.
```

This is a LaTeX example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.

```
\begin{texexptitled}{First example with a title line}{firstExample}
Here, we use Example \ref{firstExample} with a title line.
\end{texexptitled}
```

Example 17.1: First example with a title line

```
Here, we use Example \ref{firstExample} with a title line.
```

Here, we use Example 17.1 with a title line.

```
\begin{texexp}{}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code
and in compiled form.
\end{texexp}
```

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code
and in compiled form.
```

This is a LaTeX example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.

```
\begin{texexp}{text and listing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code
and in compiled form.
\end{texexp}
```

This is a LaTeX example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code
and in compiled form.
```

```
\begin{texexp}{listing only}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code only.
\end{texexp}
```

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code only.
```

```
\begin{texexp}{text only}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text in compiled form only.
\end{texexp}
```

This is a LaTeX example which displays the text in compiled form only.

```
\begin{texexptitled}{An Example with a Heading}{heading1}
This is a \LaTeX\ example with a numbered heading line
which can be referred to.
\end{texexptitled}
Here, we see Example \ref{heading1}.
```

Example 17.2: An Example with a Heading

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example with a numbered heading line
which can be referred to.
```

This is a LaTeX example with a numbered heading line which can be referred to.

Here, we see Example 17.2.

```
\begin{texexptitled}[listing only]{Another Example with a Heading}{heading2}
The keys can be used in combination. Here, an example with a heading line
and source code only is given.
\end{texexptitled}
Here, we see Example \ref{heading2}.
```

Example 17.3: Another Example with a Heading

```
The keys can be used in combination. Here, an example with a heading line
and source code only is given.
```

Here, we see Example 17.3.

```
\begin{texexptitled}[float]{A floating Example with a Heading}{heading3}
This is another \LaTeX\ example with numbered heading line.
But now, the box is a floating object.
\end{texexptitled}
```

Example 17.4: A floating Example with a Heading

```
This is another \LaTeX\ example with numbered heading line.
But now, the box is a floating object.
```

This is another LaTeX example with numbered heading line. But now, the box is a floating object.

```
The floating box of the last example is seen as Example \ref{heading3}
on page \pageref{heading3}.
```

The floating box of the last example is seen as Example 17.4 on page 360.

```
\begin{texexptitledspec}{Special application}{texexpbox1}
\begin{lstlisting}[style=tcblatex]
Some \LaTeX\ source code.
\end{lstlisting}
\tcblower
For special cases, the environment |texexptitledspec| with style
|example| can be used directly. As one can see, the upper and the lower
part of the box can be used uncoupled also.
\end{texexptitledspec}
```

Example 17.5: Special application

```
Some \LaTeX\ source code.
```

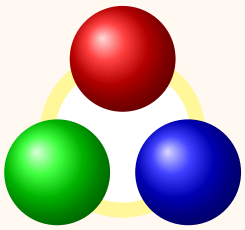
For special cases, the environment `texexptitledspec` with style `example` can be used directly. As one can see, the upper and the lower part of the box can be used uncoupled also.

The following series of examples demonstrate the application of `tcolorbox` → P. 12 options for diversification.

```
\begin{texexptitled}{How to use options (1):\par The basic example}{options1}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{texexptitled}
```

Example 17.6: How to use options (1): The basic example

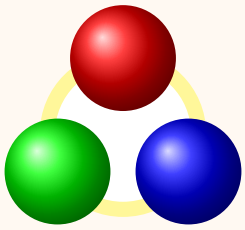
```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



```
\begin{texexptitled}[center lower,enhanced,segmentation hidden,middle=0mm]
  {How to use options (2):\par The text output is centered and the
    segmentation line has vanished.}{options2}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{texexptitled}
```

Example 17.7: How to use options (2): The text output is centered and the segmentation line has vanished.

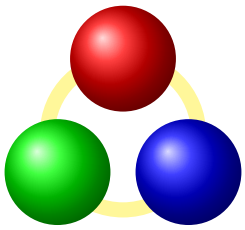
```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



```
\begin{texexptitled}[tikz lower,bicolor,colbacklower=white]
  {How to use options (3):\par Here, the |tikzpicture| is totally hidden.
    The |bicolor| skin highlights the output.}{options3}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{texexptitled}
```

Example 17.8: How to use options (3):
Here, the `tikzpicture` is totally hidden. The `bicolor` skin highlights the output.

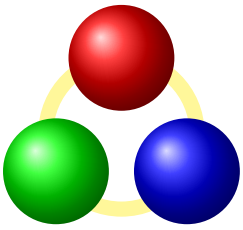
```
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
```



```
\begin{texexptitled}[center lower,listing side text,righthand width=3.5cm,
  bicolor,colbacklower=white]
  {How to use options (4):\par The |bicolor| skin also works with side
   by side mode}{options4}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c]
    (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{texexptitled}
```

Example 17.9: How to use options (4):
The `bicolor` skin also works with side by side mode

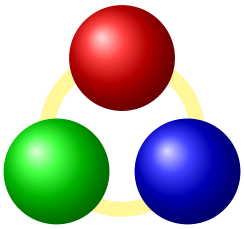
```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c]
    (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



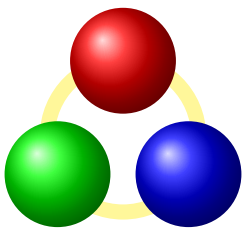
```
\begin{texexptitled}[center lower,listing outside text,righthand width=3.5cm]
  {How to use options (5):\par Putting our picture outside is just
    a matter of one word.}{options5}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c]
    (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{texexptitled}
```

Example 17.10: How to use options (5): Putting our picture outside is just a matter of one word.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c]
    (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



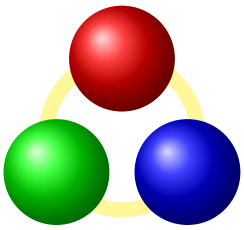
```
\begin{texexptitled}[center lower,text above listing]
  {How to use options (6):\par The picture may also be put above
    the listing box.}{options6}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c]
    (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{texexptitled}
```



Example 17.11: How to use options (6): The picture may also be put above the listing box.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c]
    (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

```
\begin{texexptitled}[beamer,center lower,text outside listing,lefthand width=3.5cm]
  {How to use options (7):\par Our style is easily transformed into
    a beamerish one.}{options7}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c]
    (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{texexptitled}
```



Example 17.12: How to use options (7):
Our style is easily transformed into a beamerish one.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c]
    (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

17.11 Creation of LaTeX Exercises

In the following, a guideline is given for the creation of LaTeX exercises with solutions. These solutions are saved to disk for application at a place of choice. Therefore, all used exercises are logged to a file `\jobname.records` for automatic processing. The solution contents themselves are saved to a subdirectory named `solutions`. Also see Section 8 on page 147.

- Before the first exercise is given, `\tcbstartrecording` → P. 147 has to be called to start recording.
- The solution is given as content of a `tcboutputlisting` → P. 329 environment. Note, that you can use this content also inside the exercise with `\tcbuselistingtext` → P. 329 in compiled form.
- After the last exercise is given (and before using the solutions), `\tcbstoprecording` → P. 147 has to be called to stop recording.
- The solutions are loaded by `\tcbinputrecords` → P. 147.

Inside the exercise text, there may be text parts which are needed as LaTeX source code and as compiled text as well. These parts can be saved by `tcbwritetemp` → P. 144 and used in compiled form by `\tcbusetemp` → P. 144 or as source code by `\tcbusetemplisting` → P. 329.

At first, we generate some a common style for the exercises and the solutions. Further, since exercises and solutions should be numbered, we force to use a label ⟨*marker*⟩. Automatically, the label `exe:`⟨*marker*⟩ is used to mark the exercise and the label `sol:`⟨*marker*⟩ is used to mark the solution.

```
\tcbset{texercisestyle/.style={arc=0.5mm, colframe=blue!25!yellow!90!white,
  colback=blue!25!yellow!5!white, coltitle=blue!25!yellow!40!black,
  fonttitle=\small\sffamily\bfseries, fontupper=\small, fontlower=\small,
  listing options={style=tcblatex,texcsstyle=*\color{red!40!black}},
}}
```

With these preparations, the kernel environment `texercise` for our exercises is created quickly:

Definition in the preamble:

```
\newtcolorbox[auto counter,number within=section,list inside=exam]{texercise}[2][]{%
  texercisestyle,
  listing file={solutions/texercise\thetcbcounter.tex},
  label={exe:#2},
  record={\string\processsol{solutions/texercise\thetcbcounter.tex}{#2}},
  title={Exercise \thetcbcounter\hfill\mdseries Solution on page \pageref{sol:#2}},
  list text={Exercise with solution on page \pageref{sol:#2}},#1}
```

The following examples demonstrate the application.

```
\tcbstartrecording
```

```
\begin{texercise}{tabular_example}
\textit{Create the following table:}\par\smallskip%
\begin{tcboutputlisting}
\begin{tabular}{|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|}\hline
\multicolumn{4}{|c|}{\bfseries\itshape Das alte Italien}\\\hline
\multicolumn{2}{|c|}{\bfseries Antike} &
\multicolumn{2}{c|}{\bfseries Mittelalter}\\\hline
\multicolumn{1}{|c|}{\itshape Republik}&
\multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Kaiserreich}&
\multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Franken}&
\multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Teilstaaten}\\\hline
In den Zeiten der r\"{o}mischen Republik standen dem Staat jeweils zwei
Konsuln vor, deren Machtbefugnisse identisch waren. &
Das r\"{o}mische Kaiserreich wurde von einem Alleinherrscher, dem Kaiser,
regiert.
& In der V\"{o}lkerwanderungszeit \"{u}bernahmen die Goten und sp\"{a}ter die
Franken die Vorherrschaft.
& Im sp\"{a}teren Mittelalter regierten F\"{u}rsten einen Fleckenteppich
von Einzelstaaten.\\\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcboutputlisting}
\tcbuselistingtext%
\end{texercise}
```

Exercise 17.1 Solution on page 369

Create the following table:

Das alte Italien			
Antike		**Mittelalter**	
Republik	*Kaiserreich*	*Franken*	*Teilstaaten*
In den Zeiten der römischen Republik standen dem Staat jeweils zwei Konsuln vor, deren Machtbefugnisse identisch waren.	Das römische Kaiserreich wurde von einem Alleinherrscher, dem Kaiser, regiert.	In der Völkerwanderungszeit übernahmen die Goten und später die Franken die Vorherrschaft.	Im späteren Mittelalter regierten Fürsten einen Fleckenteppich von Einzelstaaten.

```
\begin{texercise}{macro_oneparam}
\begin{tcboutputlisting}
\newcommand{\headingline}[1]{%
  \begin{center}\Large\bfseries #1\end{center}}
\end{tcboutputlisting}
\tcbuselistingtext%

Create a new macro \verb+\headingline+ which produces the
following output:\par\smallskip
\begin{tcbwritetemp}
\headingline{Very important heading}
\end{tcbwritetemp}
\tcbusetemplisting\tcbusetemp%
\end{texercise}
```

Exercise 17.2 Solution on page 369

Create a new macro `\headingline` which produces the following output:

```
\headingline{Very important heading}
```

Very important heading

```
\begin{texercise}{macro_twoparam}
\begin{tcboutputlisting}
\newcommand{\minitable}[2]{%
  \begin{center}\begin{tabular}{p{10cm}}\hline%
  \multicolumn{1}{c}{\bfseries#1}\\\hline%
  #2\\\hline%
  \end{tabular}\end{center}}
\end{tcboutputlisting}
\tcbuselistingtext%
Create a new macro \verb+\minitable+ which produces the
following output:\par\smallskip
\begin{tcbwritetemp}
\minitable{My heading}{In this tiny tabular, there is only a heading
  and some text below which has a width of ten centimeters.}
\end{tcbwritetemp}
\tcbusetemplisting\par\smallskip\tcbusetemp%
\end{texercise}
```

Exercise 17.3 Solution on page 369

Create a new macro `\minitable` which produces the following output:

```
\minitable{My heading}{In this tiny tabular, there is only a heading
  and some text below which has a width of ten centimeters.}
```

My heading
In this tiny tabular, there is only a heading and some text below which has a width of ten centimeters.

```
\begin{texercise}{macro_threeparam}
\begin{tcboutputlisting}
\newcommand{\synop}[3]{%
  \begin{tabular}{@{}p{(\linewidth-\tabcolsep*2-\arrayrulewidth)/2}|%
    p{(\linewidth-\tabcolsep*2-\arrayrulewidth)/2}@{}}\hline
  \multicolumn{2}{c}{\bfseries #1}\\\hline
  \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape English}&
  \multicolumn{1}{c}{\itshape German}\\\hline
  #2 & #3
  \end{tabular}}
\end{tcboutputlisting}
\tcbuselistingtext%
Create a new macro \verb+\synop+ which typesets a synoptic text according
to the following example. Base your macro on a tabular which takes the
total line width.\par\smallskip
\begin{tcbwritetemp}
\synop{Neil Armstrong}%
{That's one small step for a man, one giant leap for mankind.}%
{Das ist ein kleiner Schritt f\"{u}r einen Mann,
   ein riesiger Sprung f\"{u}r die Menschheit.}
\end{tcbwritetemp}
\tcbusetemplisting\par\smallskip\tcbusetemp%
\end{texercise}
```

Exercise 17.4 Solution on page 370

Create a new macro `\synop` which typesets a synoptic text according to the following example. Base your macro on a tabular which takes the total line width.

```
\synop{Neil Armstrong}%
{That's one small step for a man, one giant leap for mankind.}%
{Das ist ein kleiner Schritt f\"{u}r einen Mann,
   ein riesiger Sprung f\"{u}r die Menschheit.}
```

Neil Armstrong	
English	*German*
That's one small step for a man, one giant leap for mankind.	Das ist ein kleiner Schritt für einen Mann, ein riesiger Sprung für die Menschheit.

```
\tcbstoprecording
```

Now, we give a list of all exercises with:

```
\tcblistof[\subsection]{exam}{List of Exercises%
  \label{listofexercises}}
```

17.12 List of Exercises

17.1 Exercise with solution on page 369 366
17.2 Exercise with solution on page 369 367
17.3 Exercise with solution on page 369 367
17.4 Exercise with solution on page 370 368

17.13 Solutions for the given LaTeX Exercises

For all solutions, a macro `\processsol` was written to the file `\jobname.records`. Now, we need a definition for this macro to use the solutions.

```
% \usepackage{hyperref} % for phantomlabel
\newtcbinputlisting{\processsol}[2]{%
  texercisestyle,
  listing only,
  listing file={#1},
  phantomlabel={sol:#2},%
  title={Solution for Exercise \ref{exe:#2} on page \pageref{exe:#2}},
}
```

The loading of all solutions is done by:

```
\tcbinputrecords
```

With this, we get:

Solution for Exercise 17.1 on page 366

```
\begin{tabular}{|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|}\hline
\multicolumn{4}{|c|}{\bfseries\itshape Das alte Italien}\\\hline
\multicolumn{2}{|c|}{\bfseries Antike} &
\multicolumn{2}{c|}{\bfseries Mittelalter}\\\hline
\multicolumn{1}{|c|}{\itshape Republik}&
\multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Kaiserreich}&
\multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Franken}&
\multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Teilstaaten}\\\hline
In den Zeiten der r\"{o}mischen Republik standen dem Staat jeweils zwei
Konsuln vor, deren Machtbefugnisse identisch waren. &
Das r\"{o}mische Kaiserreich wurde von einem Alleinherrscher, dem Kaiser,
regiert.
& In der V\"{o}lkerwanderungszeit \"{u}bernahmen die Goten und sp\"{a}ter die
Franken die Vorherrschaft.
& Im sp\"{a}teren Mittelalter regierten F\"{u}rsten einen Fleckenteppich
von Einzelstaaten.\\\hline
\end{tabular}
```

Solution for Exercise 17.2 on page 367

```
\newcommand{\headingline}[1]{%
  \begin{center}\Large\bfseries #1\end{center}}
```

Solution for Exercise 17.3 on page 367

```
\newcommand{\minitable}[2]{%
  \begin{center}\begin{tabular}{p{10cm}}\hline%
  \multicolumn{1}{c}{\bfseries#1}\\\hline%
  #2\\\hline%
  \end{tabular}\end{center}}
```

Solution for Exercise 17.4 on page 368

```
\newcommand{\synop}[3]{%
  \begin{tabular}{@{}p{(\linewidth-\tabcolsep*2-\arrayrulewidth)/2}|%
    p{(\linewidth-\tabcolsep*2-\arrayrulewidth)/2}@{}}\hline
  \multicolumn{2}{c}{\bfseries #1}\\\hline
  \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape English}&
  \multicolumn{1}{c}{\itshape German}\\\hline
  #2 & #3
  \end{tabular}}
```

18 Library LIB theorems

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```
\tcbuselibrary{theorems}
```

This also loads the package `amsmath`.

Denis Bitouzé, Muzimuzhi, and many others provided very valuable input for this library.

18.1 Macros of the Library

U 2022-07-18 `\NewTcbTheorem[⟨init options⟩]{⟨name⟩}{⟨display name⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨prefix⟩}`
U 2022-07-18 `\newtcbtheorem[⟨init options⟩]{⟨name⟩}{⟨display name⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨prefix⟩}`

Creates new environments ⟨*name*⟩ and ⟨*name*⟩`*` based on `tcolorbox` to frame a (mathematical) theorem. The ⟨*display name*⟩ is used in the title line with a number, e. g. «Theorem 5.1». The ⟨*options*⟩ are given to the underlying `tcolorbox` to control the appearance. The ⟨*init options*⟩ allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 on page 124.

If ⟨*name*⟩ is chosen as `footheorem`, the new environments are described by

```
\begin{footheorem}[⟨keys⟩][⟨short⟩]{⟨title⟩}{⟨marker⟩}
  ⟨environment content⟩
\end{footheorem}
```

Here, ⟨*title*⟩ is the title text for the theorem and is also set as `/tcb/nameref` → P. 112 identifier. Optionally, the ⟨*short*⟩ title used instead as `/tcb/nameref` → P. 112 identifier and in lists of theorems. ⟨*keys*⟩ supplement the ⟨*options*⟩ and may be used only in rare cases. The theorem is automatically labeled with ⟨*prefix*⟩⟨*separator*⟩⟨*marker*⟩ where ⟨*separator*⟩ is predefined as ":", see `/tcb/label separator` → P. 379.

```
\begin{footheorem*}[⟨keys⟩]{⟨title⟩}
  ⟨environment content⟩
\end{footheorem*}
```

This represents an unnumbered variant. Again, ⟨*title*⟩ is the title text for the theorem and ⟨*keys*⟩ supplement the ⟨*options*⟩. This variant is not labeled and not listed in lists of theorems.

! `\NewTcbTheorem` and `\newtcbtheorem` are identical and both rely on `\NewTColorBox` → P. 16 based on `\NewDocumentCommand`.

Definition in the preamble:

```
\NewTcbTheorem[number within=section]{mytheo}{My Theorem}%
  {colback=green!5,colframe=green!35!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}{th}
```

```
% usage of `\nameref' needs `nameref' or `hyperref' to be loaded
\begin{mytheo}{This is my title}{theoexample}
  This is the text of the theorem. The counter is automatically assigned and,
  in this example, prefixed with the section number. This theorem is numbered with
  \ref{th:theoexample}, it is given on page~\pageref{th:theoexample},
  and it is titled \flqq\nameref{th:theoexample}\frqq.
\end{mytheo}
```

My Theorem 18.1: This is my title

This is the text of the theorem. The counter is automatically assigned and, in this example, prefixed with the section number. This theorem is numbered with 18.1, it is given on page 372, and it is titled «This is my title».

```
% usage of `\nameref' needs `nameref' or `hyperref' to be loaded
\begin{mytheo}[][Concise title]{This my very long theorem title with
    too much words}{theoexample2}
  Here we have a long and a short title. This theorem is numbered with
  \ref{th:theoexample2}, it is given on page~\pageref{th:theoexample2},
  and it is titled \flqq\nameref{th:theoexample2}\frqq.
\end{mytheo}
```

My Theorem 18.2: This my very long theorem title with too much words

Here we have a long and a short title. This theorem is numbered with 18.2, it is given on page 372, and it is titled «Concise title».

```
\begin{mytheo}[label=myownlabel]{This is my title}{}
  The label parameter can be left empty without \LaTeX\ error.
  Or you may use an own label to reference Theorem \ref{myownlabel}.
\end{mytheo}
```

My Theorem 18.3: This is my title

The label parameter can be left empty without LaTeX error. Or you may use an own label to reference Theorem 18.3.

```
\begin{mytheo}{}{}
  The title can also be left empty without problem. Note that the \enquote{:}
  vanished magically.
\end{mytheo}
```

My Theorem 18.4

The title can also be left empty without problem. Note that the ":" vanished magically.

```
\begin{mytheo*}{Unnumbered Theorem}
  This theorem is not numbered.
\end{mytheo*}
```

My Theorem: Unnumbered Theorem

This theorem is not numbered.

```
\begin{mytheo*}{}
  This theorem has no number and no title.
\end{mytheo*}
```

My Theorem

This theorem has no number and no title.

! To switch off the `nameref` feature permanently, add `nameref/.style={}` inside the ⟨*options*⟩ list.

U 2022-07-18 `\RenewTcbTheorem[`⟨*init options*⟩`]{`⟨*name*⟩`}{`⟨*display name*⟩`}{`⟨*options*⟩`}{`⟨*prefix*⟩`}`

U 2022-07-18 `\renewtcbtheorem[`⟨*init options*⟩`]{`⟨*name*⟩`}{`⟨*display name*⟩`}{`⟨*options*⟩`}{`⟨*prefix*⟩`}`

Operates like `\NewTcbTheorem` → P. 371, but based on `\RenewDocumentEnvironment` instead of `\NewDocumentEnvironment`. Existing environments are redefined.

N 2022-07-18 `\ProvideTcbTheorem[`⟨*init options*⟩`]{`⟨*name*⟩`}{`⟨*display name*⟩`}{`⟨*options*⟩`}{`⟨*prefix*⟩`}`

Operates like `\NewTcbTheorem` → P. 371, but based on `\ProvideDocumentEnvironment` instead of `\NewDocumentEnvironment`. New environments are is only created if they are not already defined.

N 2022-07-18 `\DeclareTcbTheorem[`⟨*init options*⟩`]{`⟨*name*⟩`}{`⟨*display name*⟩`}{`⟨*options*⟩`}{`⟨*prefix*⟩`}`

Operates like `\NewTcbTheorem` → P. 371, but based on `\DeclareDocumentEnvironment` instead of `\NewDocumentEnvironment`. New environments are always created and possibly redefine existing ones.

\tcboxmath[⟨*options*⟩]{⟨*mathematical box content*⟩}

Creates a tcolorbox → P. 12 which is fitted to the width of the given ⟨*mathematical box content*⟩. This box is intended to be applied as part of a larger formula and may be used as replacement for the \boxed macro of amsmath.

```
\begin{equation}
\tcbset{fonttitle=\scriptsize}
\tcboxmath[colback=LightBlue!25!white,colframe=blue]{ a^2 = 16 }
\quad \Rightarrow \quad
\tcboxmath[colback=Salmon!25!white,colframe=red,title=Implication]%
  { a = 4 ~\vee~ a=-4. }
\end{equation}
```

$$a^2 = 16 \quad \Rightarrow \quad \text{Implication: } a = 4 \ \vee \ a = -4. \tag{3}$$

\tcbhighmath[⟨*options*⟩]{⟨*mathematical box content*⟩}

This is a special case of the \tcboxmath macro which uses the style /tcb/highlight math → P. 384. It is intended to provide context sensitive highlighting of formula parts. The color settings via /tcb/highlight math style → P. 384 may be different inside theorems or other colored areas and outside.

```
\tcbset{myformula/.style={colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black,
  every box/.style={highlight math style={colback=LightBlue!50!white,colframe=Navy}}
  }}

\begin{align}
  \tcbhighmath{\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}} &= \infty.\\
  \int x^2 ~\text{d}x                                  &= \frac13 x^3 + c.
\end{align}

\begin{tcolorbox}[ams align,myformula]
  \tcbhighmath{\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}} &= \infty.\\
  \int x^2 ~\text{d}x                                  &= \frac13 x^3 + c.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \tag{4}$$

$$\int x^2 \, \mathrm{d}x = \frac{1}{3}x^3 + c. \tag{5}$$

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \tag{6}$$

$$\int x^2 \, \mathrm{d}x = \frac{1}{3}x^3 + c. \tag{7}$$

\tcbhighmath → P. 374 can be used in symbiosis with the **empheq** package which allows to specify own boxing commands to mark multiline formulas.

```
% \usepackage{empheq}
\begin{empheq}[box=\tcbhighmath]{align}
a&=\sin(z)\\
E&=mc^2 + \int_a^b x\, dx
\end{empheq}

\tcbset{highlight math style={enhanced,
  colframe=red!60!black,colback=yellow!50!white,arc=4pt,boxrule=1pt,
  drop fuzzy shadow}}

\begin{empheq}[box=\tcbhighmath]{align}
a&=\sin(z)\\
E&=mc^2 + \int_a^b x\, dx
\end{empheq}
```

$$a = \sin(z) \tag{8}$$
$$E = mc^2 + \int_a^b x\,dx \tag{9}$$

$$a = \sin(z) \tag{10}$$
$$E = mc^2 + \int_a^b x\,dx \tag{11}$$

Besides \tcbhighmath → P. 374, one can easily define an independent new box based on \tcbox → P. 14 which acts like \tcbhighmath → P. 374:

```
% \usepackage{empheq}
\newtcbox{\otherbox}[1][]{nobeforeafter,math upper,tcbox raise base,
  enhanced,frame hidden,boxrule=0pt,interior style={top color=green!10!white,
  bottom color=green!10!white,middle color=green!50!yellow},
  fuzzy halo=1pt with green,#1}

\begin{empheq}[box=\otherbox]{align}
a&=\sin(z)\\
E&=mc^2 + \int_a^b x\, dx
\end{empheq}

\begin{equation}
\tcbhighmath{E} = \otherbox{mc^2}
\end{equation}
```

$$a = \sin(z) \tag{12}$$
$$E = mc^2 + \int_a^b x\,dx \tag{13}$$

$$E = mc^2 \tag{14}$$

18.2 Option Keys of the Library

/tcb/separator sign=⟨*sign*⟩ (no default, initially :)

The given ⟨*sign*⟩ is used inside the title text of a theorem as separater between display name combined with number and the specific title text. It is omitted, if there is no specific title text.

```
% \usepackage{amssymb}
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}%
  {colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
   separator sign={\ $\blacktriangleright$}}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

Theorem 18.5 ▶ My example

My theorem text.

/tcb/separator sign colon (style, no value, initially set)

Sets /tcb/separator sign to the default colon : sign.

/tcb/separator sign dash (style, no value)

Sets /tcb/separator sign to an en-dash sign.

```
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}%
  {colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
   separator sign dash}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

Theorem 18.6 – My example

My theorem text.

/tcb/separator sign none (style, no value)

Sets /tcb/separator sign to empty.

```
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}%
  {colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
   separator sign none}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

Theorem 18.7 My example

My theorem text.

`/tcb/description delimiters={⟨left⟩}{⟨right⟩}` (no default, initially empty)

The given ⟨*left*⟩ and ⟨*right*⟩ delimiter signs are used to frame the descriptive title text of a theorem.

```
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}%
  {colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
   description delimiters={\flqq}{\frqq}}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

Theorem 18.8: «My example»

My theorem text.

`/tcb/description delimiters parenthesis` (style, no value)

Sets `/tcb/description delimiters` to `(` and `)`.

```
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}%
  {colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
   description delimiters parenthesis}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

Theorem 18.9: (My example)

My theorem text.

`/tcb/description delimiters none` (style, no value, initially set)

Sets `/tcb/description delimiters` to the default empty texts.

`/tcb/description color=`⟨*color*⟩ (default empty, initially empty)

Sets the ⟨*color*⟩ of the descriptive title text deviating from `/tcb/coltitle` → P. 33. The color is reset to `/tcb/coltitle` → P. 33, if `description color` is used without value.

```
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}%
  {colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
   description color=red!25!yellow}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

Theorem 18.10: My example

My theorem text.

`/tcb/description font=`⟨*text*⟩ (default empty, initially empty)

Sets ⟨*text*⟩ (e. g. font settings) before the descriptive title text deviating from `/tcb/fonttitle` → P. 34. The ⟨*text*⟩ is removed, if `description font` is used without value.

```
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}%
  {colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
   description delimiters={\glqq}{\grqq},
   description font=\mdseries\itshape}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

Theorem 18.11: *„My example“*

My theorem text.

`/tcb/description formatter=`⟨*macro*⟩ (default empty, initially empty)

Sets ⟨*macro*⟩ as formatter for the descriptive title text. The ⟨*macro*⟩ has to take one mandatory argument (the description text).

Note that `/tcb/description delimiters` → P. 377, `/tcb/description color` → P. 377, and `/tcb/description font` are ignored, if this option is used.

If `description formatter` is used without value, the formatter is reset to its standard behavior.

```
\newtcbox{\formbox}{enhanced,frame empty,size=minimal,boxsep=2pt,arc=1pt,
  on line,interior style image=goldshade.png}

\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}%
  {colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
   description formatter=\formbox}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

Theorem 18.12: My example

My theorem text.

`/tcb/terminator sign=`⟨*sign*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

The given ⟨*sign*⟩ is used as terminator at the end of the title text of a theorem.

```
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}%
  {colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
   terminator sign={.}}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

Theorem 18.13: My example.

My theorem text.

/tcb/terminator sign colon (style, no value, initially set)

Sets /tcb/terminator sign → P. 378 to the colon : sign.

```
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}%
  {colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
   separator sign dash,terminator sign colon}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

Theorem 18.14 – My example:

My theorem text.

/tcb/terminator sign dash (style, no value)

Sets /tcb/terminator sign → P. 378 to an en-dash sign.

```
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}%
  {colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
   terminator sign dash}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

Theorem 18.15: My example –

My theorem text.

/tcb/terminator sign none (style, no value)

Sets /tcb/terminator sign → P. 378 to the default empty text.

N 2016-04-19 **/tcb/label separator=⟨*separator*⟩** (no default, initially :)

The given ⟨*separator*⟩ is used for labels created with environments which are defined themselves by \newtcbtheorem → P. 371. This ⟨*separator*⟩ is put between ⟨*prefix*⟩ (defined by \newtcbtheorem → P. 371) and ⟨*marker*⟩ (defined by an actual theorem environment).

```
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}%
  {colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
   label separator=*}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{myex}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
See Example~\ref{theo*myex}.
```

Theorem 18.16: My example

My theorem text.

See Example 18.16.

N 2018-01-12 **/tcb/theorem full label supplement**={⟨*style*⟩} (no default, initially empty)

The given ⟨*style*⟩ is used in connection with labels created with environments which are defined themselves by \newtcbtheorem → P. 371. This ⟨*style*⟩ uses one argument which is automatically set to the full label marker of the environment, i.e. a text consisting of ⟨*prefix*⟩ (defined by \newtcbtheorem → P. 371), /tcb/label separator → P. 379, and ⟨*marker*⟩ (defined by an actual theorem environment).

```
% The following adds a hyper target to all environments
% created with \newtcbtheorem
\tcbset{theorem full label supplement={hypertarget={#1}}}

\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}%
   {colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{myex2}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
This automated \hyperlink{theo:myex2}{hyper target can be linked to with a
 hyper link}.
```

Theorem 18.17: My example

My theorem text.

This automated hyper target can be linked to with a hyper link.

A second usage of /tcb/theorem full label supplement overwrites the first setting.

N 2018-01-12 **/tcb/theorem label supplement**={⟨*style*⟩} (no default, initially empty)

The given ⟨*style*⟩ is used in connection with labels created with environments which are defined themselves by \newtcbtheorem → P. 371. This ⟨*style*⟩ uses one argument which is automatically set to the label ⟨*marker*⟩ defined by an actual theorem environment.
A second usage of /tcb/theorem label supplement overwrites the first setting, but /tcb/theorem full label supplement and /tcb/theorem label supplement can be used independently.

```
% `marginnote' has to be loaded
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}%
   {colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
    theorem label supplement={hypertarget={XYZ-##1}},
    theorem full label supplement={code={\marginnote{##1}}}
   }{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{myex3}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
This automated \hyperlink{XYZ-myex3}{hyper target can be linked to with a
 hyper link}.
```

theo:myex3

Theorem 18.18: My example

My theorem text.

This automated hyper target can be linked to with a hyper link.

N 2020-10-21 `/tcb/theorem hanging indent=auto|⟨length⟩` (default `auto`, initially `auto`)

Sets the hanging indent of the theorem title to `auto` or the given ⟨*length*⟩. For `auto`, the hanging indent matches the display name, number and separator sign of the theorem. If ⟨*length*⟩ is negative, the theorem title is indented positively without hanging indent.

```
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}%
  {colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}{theo}

\begin{sometheorem}{This is a very long and complicated title for a quite
  short and nearly empty theorem}{myexA1}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

\begin{sometheorem}[theorem hanging indent=5mm]{This is a very long and
  complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem}{myexA2}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

\begin{sometheorem}[theorem hanging indent=0pt]{This is a very long and
  complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem}{myexA3}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

\begin{sometheorem}[theorem hanging indent=-5mm]{This is a very long and
  complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem}{myexA4}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

Theorem 18.19: This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem

My theorem text.

Theorem 18.20: This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem

My theorem text.

Theorem 18.21: This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem

My theorem text.

Theorem 18.22: This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem

My theorem text.

/tcb/theorem name and number (style, no value, initially set)

Prints theorem name followed by theorem number inside the title.

```
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}%
  {colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
   theorem name and number}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

Theorem 18.23: My example

My theorem text.

/tcb/theorem number and name (style, no value)

Prints theorem number followed by theorem name inside the title.

```
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}%
  {colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
   theorem number and name}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

18.24 Theorem: My example

My theorem text.

/tcb/theorem name (style, no value)

Prints theorem name without number inside the title.

```
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}%
  {enhanced,colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
   theorem name,watermark text={\thetcbcounter}}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

Theorem: My example

My theorem text. 18.25

N 2021-12-03 /tcb/theorem number (style, no value)

Prints theorem number without name inside the title.

```
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}%
  {enhanced,colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
   theorem number}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

18.26: My example

My theorem text.

`/tcb/theorem={`⟨*display name*⟩`}{`⟨*counter*⟩`}{`⟨*title*⟩`}{`⟨*marker*⟩`}` (no default)

This key can be used directly in a `tcolorbox` for a more flexible approach to create a theorem type box. The ⟨*display name*⟩ is used together with the increased ⟨*counter*⟩ value and the ⟨*title*⟩ for the title line of the box. Additionally, a `\label` with the given ⟨*marker*⟩ is created.

```
% \newcounter{texercise}%  preamble
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black,arc=4mm,
                  theorem={Test}{texercise}{Direct usage}{myMarker}]
Here, we see the test \ref{myMarker}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Test 1: Direct usage

Here, we see the test 1.

For a common appearance inside the document, the key `theorem` should not be used directly as in the example above, but as part of a new environment created by hand or using `\newtcbtheorem` → P. 371.

/tcb/highlight math (style, no value)

A style which is used for \tcbhighmath → P. 374 and which is predefined as notitle,nophantom,colframe=red,colback=yellow!25!white.
It can be changed with the usual pgf techniques or with /tcb/highlight math style.

```
\begin{align*}
  \tcbhighmath{1} + 1 &= 2,\\
  \tcbset{highlight math/.append style={left=0mm,right=0mm,top=0mm,bottom=0mm}}
  \tcbhighmath{1} + 1 &= 2.
\end{align*}
```

$$\boxed{1} + 1 = 2,$$
$$\boxed{1} + 1 = 2.$$

/tcb/highlight math style=⟨*style definition*⟩ (style, no default)

Changes the definition for /tcb/highlight math to notitle,nophantom plus the given ⟨*style definition*⟩. See \tcbhighmath → P. 374 for another example.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\tcbset{highlight math style={enhanced,%<-- needed for the `remember' options
  colframe=red,colback=red!10!white,boxsep=0pt}}
\begin{align*}
\tcbhighmath[remember as=fx]{f(x)}
     &= \int\limits_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t^2}~dt
      = \left[ -\frac{1}{t} \right]_{1}^{x}\\
     &= -\frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{1}\\
     &=
\tcbhighmath[remember,overlay={%
    \draw[blue,very thick,->] (fx.south) to[bend right] ([yshift=2mm]frame.west);}]
  {1-\frac{1}{x}.}
\end{align*}
```

$$\boxed{f(x)} = \int_1^x \frac{1}{t^2}\,dt = \left[-\frac{1}{t}\right]_1^x$$
$$= -\frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{1}$$
$$= \boxed{1 - \frac{1}{x}.}$$

`/tcb/math upper` (style, no value)

Sets the upper part to mathematical mode with font `\displaystyle`.

`/tcb/math lower` (style, no value)

Sets the lower part to mathematical mode with font `\displaystyle`.

`/tcb/math` (style, no value)

Sets the upper part *and* lower part to mathematical mode with font `\displaystyle`.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[math,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
  \sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.$$

! The following styles are only tested to work with the original `amsmath` environments. If e.g. the `equation` environment is redefined as `gather`, then `/tcb/ams equation` should / could not be used. Obviously, you are encouraged to use `/tcb/ams gather` → P. 387 in this case.

U 2014-10-30 `/tcb/ams equation upper` (style, no value)

Adds an `amsmath` `equation` environment to the start and end of the upper part.

U 2014-10-30 `/tcb/ams equation lower` (style, no value)

Adds an `amsmath` `equation` environment to the start and end of the lower part.

U 2014-10-30 `/tcb/ams equation` (style, no value)

Adds an `amsmath` `equation` environment to the start and end of the upper *and* lower part.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[ams equation,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
  \sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \tag{15}$$

U 2014-10-30 `/tcb/ams equation* upper` (style, no value)

Adds an `amsmath` `equation*` environment to the start and end of the upper part.

U 2014-10-30 `/tcb/ams equation* lower` (style, no value)

Adds an `amsmath` `equation*` environment to the start and end of the lower part.

U 2014-10-30 `/tcb/ams equation*` (style, no value)

Adds an `amsmath` `equation*` environment to the start and end of the upper *and* lower part.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[ams equation*,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
  \sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.$$

/tcb/ams align upper (style, no value)

Adds an `amsmath` `align` environment to the start and end of the upper part.

/tcb/ams align lower (style, no value)

Adds an `amsmath` `align` environment to the start and end of the lower part.

/tcb/ams align (style, no value)

Adds an `amsmath` `align` environment to the start and end of the upper *and* lower part.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[ams align,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
  \sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} &= \infty.\\
  \int x^2 ~\text{d}x                    &= \frac13 x^3 + c.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \tag{16}$$

$$\int x^2 \,\mathrm{d}x = \frac{1}{3}x^3 + c. \tag{17}$$

/tcb/ams align* upper (style, no value)

Adds an `amsmath` `align*` environment to the start and end of the upper part.

/tcb/ams align* lower (style, no value)

Adds an `amsmath` `align*` environment to the start and end of the lower part.

/tcb/ams align* (style, no value)

Adds an `amsmath` `align*` environment to the start and end of the upper *and* lower part.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[ams align*,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
  \sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} &= \infty.\\
  \int x^2 ~\text{d}x                    &= \frac13 x^3 + c.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.$$

$$\int x^2 \,\mathrm{d}x = \frac{1}{3}x^3 + c.$$

/tcb/ams gather upper (style, no value)

Adds an `amsmath gather` environment to the start and end of the upper part.

/tcb/ams gather lower (style, no value)

Adds an `amsmath gather` environment to the start and end of the lower part.

/tcb/ams gather (style, no value)

Adds an `amsmath gather` environment to the start and end of the upper *and* lower part.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[ams gather,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
  \sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.\\
  \int x^2 ~\text{d}x = \frac13 x^3 + c.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \tag{18}$$

$$\int x^2 \,\mathrm{d}x = \frac{1}{3}x^3 + c. \tag{19}$$

/tcb/ams gather* upper (style, no value)

Adds an `amsmath gather*` environment to the start and end of the upper part.

/tcb/ams gather* lower (style, no value)

Adds an `amsmath gather*` environment to the start and end of the lower part.

/tcb/ams gather* (style, no value)

Adds an `amsmath gather*` environment to the start and end of the upper *and* lower part.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[ams gather*,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
  \sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.\\
  \int x^2 ~\text{d}x = \frac13 x^3 + c.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.$$

$$\int x^2 \,\mathrm{d}x = \frac{1}{3}x^3 + c.$$

`/tcb/ams nodisplayskip upper` (style, no value)

Neutralizes the `\abovedisplayskip` of a following `align` or `gather` environment for the upper part. Note that the text content has to start with such a formula.

`/tcb/ams nodisplayskip lower` (style, no value)

Neutralizes the `\abovedisplayskip` of a following `align` or `gather` environment for the lower part. Note that the text content has to start with such a formula.

`/tcb/ams nodisplayskip` (style, no value)

Neutralizes the `\abovedisplayskip` of a following `align` or `gather` environment for the upper part *and* lower part. Note that the text content has to start with such a formula.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[ams nodisplayskip,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
  \begin{gather}
  \sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.\\
  \int x^2 ~\text{d}x = \frac13 x^3 + c.
  \end{gather}
  And now for something completely different.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \tag{20}$$

$$\int x^2 \,\mathrm{d}x = \frac{1}{3}x^3 + c. \tag{21}$$

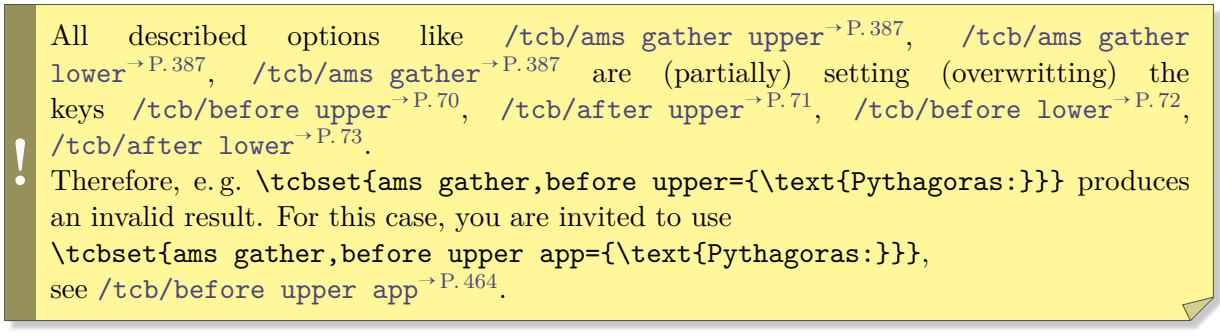
And now for something completely different.

New colored mathematical environments are easily created using `\newtcolorbox` → P. 15:

```
\newtcolorbox{mymath}{ams gather*,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black}

\begin{mymath}
  \sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.\\
  \int x^2 ~\text{d}x = \frac13 x^3 + c.
\end{mymath}
```

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.$$

$$\int x^2 \,\mathrm{d}x = \frac{1}{3}x^3 + c.$$



All described options like `/tcb/ams gather upper` → P. 387, `/tcb/ams gather lower` → P. 387, `/tcb/ams gather` → P. 387 are (partially) setting (overwritting) the keys `/tcb/before upper` → P. 70, `/tcb/after upper` → P. 71, `/tcb/before lower` → P. 72, `/tcb/after lower` → P. 73.
Therefore, e. g. `\tcbset{ams gather,before upper={\text{Pythagoras:}}}` produces an invalid result. For this case, you are invited to use
`\tcbset{ams gather,before upper app={\text{Pythagoras:}}}`,
see `/tcb/before upper app` → P. 464.

`/tcb/theorem style=`⟨*name*⟩ (no default, initially `standard`)

Applies a predefined style ⟨*name*⟩ to the theorem environment. Some of the feasible ⟨*name*⟩ values resemble style names from the packages `theorem` and `ntheorem` to give convenient access to known patterns.

> **!** The styles alter `/tcb/separator sign` → P. 376, `/tcb/description delimiters` → P. 377, `/tcb/terminator sign` → P. 378, and more. Therefore, one should apply such keys *after* a theorem style.

For the following examples, we use:

Definition in the preamble:

```
\NewTcbTheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{theorem}{Theorem}{%
  fonttitle=\bfseries\upshape,fontupper=\itshape,
  colframe=green!50!black,colback=green!10!white,
  colbacktitle=green!20!white,coltitle=blue!75!black}{theo}
```

The predefined styles are:

- `standard`: This is the initial value.

```
\begin{theorem}[theorem style=standard]{standard}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{theorem}
```

Theorem 18.27: standard

This is my theorem.

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2.$$

- `change standard`

```
\begin{theorem}[theorem style=change standard]{change standard}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{theorem}
```

18.28 Theorem: change standard

This is my theorem.

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2.$$

- `plain`

```
\begin{theorem}[theorem style=plain]{plain}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{theorem}
```

Theorem 18.29 (plain): *This is my theorem.*

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2.$$

- break

```
\begin{theorem}[theorem style=break]{break}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{theorem}
```

Theorem 18.30 (break):
This is my theorem.

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2.$$

- plain apart

```
\begin{theorem}[theorem style=plain apart]{plain apart}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{theorem}
```

Theorem 18.31 (plain apart)

This is my theorem.

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2.$$

- change

```
\begin{theorem}[theorem style=change]{change}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{theorem}
```

18.32 Theorem (change): *This is my theorem.*

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2.$$

- change break

```
\begin{theorem}[theorem style=change break]{change break}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{theorem}
```

18.33 Theorem (change break):
This is my theorem.

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2.$$

- change apart

```
\begin{theorem}[theorem style=change apart]{change apart}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{theorem}
```

18.34 Theorem (change apart)

This is my theorem.

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2.$$

- **margin**

```
\begin{theorem}[theorem style=margin,left=10mm]{margin}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{theorem}
\begin{theorem}[theorem style=margin,left=10mm,oversize]{margin}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{theorem}
```

18.35 Theorem (margin): *This is my theorem.*

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2.$$

18.36 Theorem (margin): *This is my theorem.*

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2.$$

- **margin break**

```
\begin{theorem}[theorem style=margin break,left=10mm]{margin break}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{theorem}
\begin{theorem}[theorem style=margin break,left=10mm,oversize]{margin break}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{theorem}
```

18.37 Theorem (margin break):
This is my theorem.

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2.$$

18.38 Theorem (margin break):
This is my theorem.

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2.$$

- **margin apart**

```
\begin{theorem}[theorem style=margin apart,left=10mm]{margin apart}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{theorem}
\begin{theorem}[theorem style=margin apart,left=10mm,oversize]{margin apart}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{theorem}
```

18.39 Theorem (margin apart)

This is my theorem.

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2.$$

18.40 Theorem (margin apart)

This is my theorem.

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2.$$

18.3 Examples for Definitions and Theorems

In the following, the application of \newtcbtheorem → P. 371 to highlight mathematical definitions, theorems, or the like is demonstrated.

At first, additional tcb keys are created for the appearance of the colored boxes. It is assumed that theorems and corollaries should be identically colored. All following environments are numbered with a common counter, but this can be changed easily. Here, the counter output is supplemented by the subsection number. Further, the cleveref package [6] is used for clever references.

Definition in the preamble:

```
% \usepackage{cleveref}
\tcbset{
  defstyle/.style={fonttitle=\bfseries\upshape, fontupper=\slshape,
              arc=0mm, colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black},
  theostyle/.style={fonttitle=\bfseries\upshape, fontupper=\slshape,
               colback=red!10!white,colframe=red!75!black},
}
\NewTcbTheorem[number within=subsection,crefname={definition}{definitions}]%
  {Definition}{Definition}{defstyle}{def}
\NewTcbTheorem[use counter from=Definition,crefname={theorem}{theorems}]%
  {Theorem}{Theorem}{theostyle}{theo}
\NewTcbTheorem[use counter from=Definition,crefname={corollary}{corollaries}]%
  {Corollary}{Corollary}{theostyle}{cor}
```

By \newtcbtheorem → P. 371, commonly numbered theorem environments are created now. defstyle and theostyle are used for the appearance.

Now, everything is prepared for the following examples.

```
The following theorem is numbered as \Cref{theo:diffbarstetig} and
referenced with the marker \texttt{theo:diffbarstetig}.

\begin{Theorem}{Differenzierbarkeit bedingt Stetigkeit, wobei diese Benennung
  zu Testzwecken ungew\"{o}hnlich lang ist}{diffbarstetig}%
  Eine Funktion $f:I\to\mathbb{R}$ ist in $x_0\in I$ stetig, wenn $f$ in
  $x_0$ differenzierbar ist.
\end{Theorem}
```

The following theorem is numbered as Theorem 18.3.1 and referenced with the marker theo:diffbarstetig.

Theorem 18.3.1: Differenzierbarkeit bedingt Stetigkeit, wobei diese Benennung zu Testzwecken ungewöhnlich lang ist

Eine Funktion $f : I \to \mathbb{R}$ ist in $x_0 \in I$ stetig, wenn f in x_0 differenzierbar ist.

```
The following definition is numbered as \Cref{def:diffbarkeit} and
referenced with the marker \texttt{def:diffbarkeit}.\bigskip

\begin{Definition}{Differenzierbarkeit}{diffbarkeit}
  Eine Funktion $f:~I\to\mathbb{R}$ auf einem Intervall $I$ hei\ss{}t in
  $x_0\in I$ differenzierbar oder linear approximierbar,
  wenn der Grenzwert
  \begin{equation*}
  \lim\limits_{x\to x_0}\frac{f(x)-f(x_0)}{x-x_0}=
  \lim\limits_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x_0+h)-f(x_0)}{h}
  \end{equation*}
  existiert. Bei Existenz hei\ss{}t dieser Grenzwert Ableitung
  oder Differentialquotient von $f$ in $x_0$ und man
  schreibt f\"{u}r ihn
  \begin{equation*}
  f'(x_0)\quad\text{oder}\quad\frac{df}{dx}(x_0).
  \end{equation*}
\end{Definition}
```

The following definition is numbered as Definition 18.3.2 and referenced with the marker `def:diffbarkeit`.

Definition 18.3.2: Differenzierbarkeit

Eine Funktion $f: I \to \mathbb{R}$ *auf einem Intervall* I *heißt in* $x_0 \in I$ *differenzierbar oder linear approximierbar, wenn der Grenzwert*

$$\lim_{x\to x_0} \frac{f(x)-f(x_0)}{x-x_0} = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x_0+h)-f(x_0)}{h}$$

existiert. Bei Existenz heißt dieser Grenzwert Ableitung oder Differentialquotient von f *in* x_0 *und man schreibt für ihn*

$$f'(x_0) \quad \text{oder} \quad \frac{df}{dx}(x_0).$$

```
The following corollary is numbered as \Cref{cor:nullstellen} and
referenced with the marker \texttt{cor:nullstellen}.\bigskip

\begin{Corollary}{Nullstellenexistenz}{nullstellen}
  Ist $f:[a,b]\to\mathbb{R}$ stetig und haben $f(a)$ und $f(b)$ entgegengesetzte
  Vorzeichen, also $f(a)f(b)<0$, so besitzt $f$ eine Nullstelle $x_0\in]a,b[$,
  also $f(x_0)=0$.
\end{Corollary}
```

The following corollary is numbered as Corollary 18.3.3 and referenced with the marker `cor:nullstellen`.

Corollary 18.3.3: Nullstellenexistenz

Ist $f:[a,b]\to\mathbb{R}$ *stetig und haben* $f(a)$ *und* $f(b)$ *entgegengesetzte Vorzeichen, also* $f(a)f(b)<0$*, so besitzt* f *eine Nullstelle* $x_0 \in]a,b[$*, also* $f(x_0)=0$.

```
\begin{Theorem}[boxrule=2mm,toptitle=-1.5mm,bottomtitle=-1.5mm]{%
    Hinreichende Bedingung f\"{u}r Wendepunkte}{wendehinreichend}%
  $f$ sei eine auf einem Intervall $]a,b[$ dreimal stetig differenzierbare Funktion.
  Ist $f''(x_0)=0$ in $x_0\in]a,b[$ und $f'''(x_0)\ne 0$, so ist
  $(x_0,f(x_0))$ ein Wendepunkt von $f$.
\end{Theorem}
```

Theorem 18.3.4: Hinreichende Bedingung für Wendepunkte

f sei eine auf einem Intervall $]a,b[$ dreimal stetig differenzierbare Funktion. Ist $f''(x_0)=0$ in $x_0\in]a,b[$ und $f'''(x_0)\neq 0$, so ist $(x_0,f(x_0))$ ein Wendepunkt von f.

```
% \usepackage{varioref}
% \usepackage{cleveref}
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=Definition]{YetAnotherTheorem}{Theorem}%
  {theorem style=plain apart,label type=theorem,enhanced,frame hidden,
  boxrule=2mm,titlerule=0mm,toptitle=1mm,bottomtitle=1mm,
  fonttitle=\bfseries\large,fontupper=\normalsize,
  coltitle=green!35!black,colbacktitle=green!15!white,
  colback=green!50!yellow!15!white,borderline={1pt}{0pt}{green!25!blue},
  }{theo}

\begin{YetAnotherTheorem}{Mittelwertsatz f\"{u}r $n$ Variable}{meanvaluetheorem}%
  Es sei $n\in\mathbb{N}$, $D\subseteq\mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und
  $f\in C^{1}(D,\mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke
  $[x_0,x]\subset D$ einen Punkt $\xi\in[x_0,x]$, so dass gilt
  \begin{equation*}
  f(x)-f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^{\top}(x-x_0)
  \end{equation*}
\end{YetAnotherTheorem}

\medskip
Here, |cleveref| support is used to reference \Cref{theo:meanvaluetheorem}
on \Cpageref{theo:meanvaluetheorem}. This \namecref{theo:meanvaluetheorem}
can also be referenced by |\Vref| resulting in \Vref{theo:meanvaluetheorem}.
```

Theorem 18.3.5 (Mittelwertsatz für n Variable)

Es sei $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und $f \in C^1(D, \mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke $[x_0, x] \subset D$ einen Punkt $\xi \in [x_0, x]$, so dass gilt

$$f(x) - f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^\top (x - x_0)$$

Here, `cleveref` support is used to reference Theorem 18.3.5 on Page 394. This theorem can also be referenced by `\Vref` resulting in Theorem 18.3.5.

Note that `/tcb/label type` → P. 111 was used in the example above to feed `cleveref` [6] with the needed name information.

```
Here, using |\Vref| resulting in \Vref{theo:meanvaluetheorem} is more interesting\ldots
```

Here, using \Vref resulting in Theorem 18.3.5 on the preceding page is more interesting...

```
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=Definition]{YetAnotherTheorem}{Theorem}%
  {theorem style=change apart,enhanced,arc=0mm,outer arc=0mm,
  boxrule=0mm,toprule=1mm,bottomrule=1mm,left=1mm,right=1mm,
  titlerule=0mm,toptitle=0mm,bottomtitle=1mm,top=0mm,
  colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!5!white,coltitle=red!50!black,
  title style={top color=yellow!50!white,bottom color=red!5!white,
    middle color=yellow!50!white},
  fonttitle=\bfseries\sffamily\normalsize,fontupper=\normalsize\itshape,
  }{theo}

\begin{YetAnotherTheorem}{Mittelwertsatz f\"{u}r $n$ Variable}{mittelwertsatz_n2}%
  Es sei $n\in\mathbb{N}$, $D\subseteq\mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und
  $f\in C^{1}(D,\mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke
  $[x_0,x]\subset D$ einen Punkt $\xi\in[x_0,x]$, so dass gilt
  \begin{equation*}
  f(x)-f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^{\top}(x-x_0)
  \end{equation*}
\end{YetAnotherTheorem}
```

18.3.6 Theorem (Mittelwertsatz für n Variable)

Es sei $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und $f \in C^1(D, \mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke $[x_0, x] \subset D$ einen Punkt $\xi \in [x_0, x]$, so dass gilt

$$f(x) - f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^\top (x - x_0)$$

```
% \usepackage{varwidth}   \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=Definition]{YetAnotherTheorem}{Theorem}%
{enhanced,frame empty,interior empty,colframe=ForestGreen!50!white,
  coltitle=ForestGreen!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,colbacktitle=ForestGreen!15!white,
  borderline={0.5mm}{0mm}{ForestGreen!15!white},
  borderline={0.5mm}{0mm}{ForestGreen!50!white,dashed},
  attach boxed title to top center={yshift=-2mm},
  boxed title style={boxrule=0.4pt},varwidth boxed title}{theo}

\begin{YetAnotherTheorem}{Mittelwertsatz f\"{u}r $n$ Variable}{mittelwertsatz_n3}%
  Es sei $n\in\mathbb{N}$, $D\subseteq\mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und
  $f\in C^{1}(D,\mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke
  $[x_0,x]\subset D$ einen Punkt $\xi\in[x_0,x]$, so dass gilt
  \begin{equation*}
  f(x)-f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^{\top}(x-x_0)
  \end{equation*}
\end{YetAnotherTheorem}
```

Theorem 18.3.7: Mittelwertsatz für n Variable

Es sei $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und $f \in C^1(D, \mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke $[x_0, x] \subset D$ einen Punkt $\xi \in [x_0, x]$, so dass gilt

$$f(x) - f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^\top (x - x_0)$$

You need more attention for your theorems? Here, you are ...

```
% tcbuselibrary{skins}  % preamble
\begin{Theorem}[enhanced,
    fuzzy halo=3mm with yellow,
    fuzzy halo=2mm with red,
    fuzzy halo=1mm with yellow,
    watermark color=red!35!white,
    watermark text={Overacting\\Fundamental Theorem}]%
  {Fundamental Theorem of Theorems}{fundamental}%
  \lipsum[1-2]
\end{Theorem}
```

Theorem 18.3.8: Fundamental Theorem of Theorems

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.
Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

Overacting Fundamental Theorem

Let's try a more conservative approach:

```
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=Definition]{YetAnotherTheorem}{Theorem}%
  {theorem style=plain,enhanced,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=yellow!20!white,
   coltitle=red!50!black,fonttitle=\upshape\bfseries,fontupper=\itshape,
   drop fuzzy shadow=blue!50!black!50!white,boxrule=0.4pt}{theo}

\begin{YetAnotherTheorem}{Mittelwertsatz f\"{u}r $n$ Variable}{mittelwertsatz_n4}%
  Es sei $n\in\mathbb{N}$, $D\subseteq\mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und
  $f\in C^{1}(D,\mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke
  $[x_0,x]\subset D$ einen Punkt $\xi\in[x_0,x]$, so dass gilt
  \begin{equation*}
  f(x)-f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^{\top}(x-x_0)
  \end{equation*}
\end{YetAnotherTheorem}
```

Theorem 18.3.9 (Mittelwertsatz für n Variable): *Es sei $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und $f \in C^1(D, \mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke $[x_0, x] \subset D$ einen Punkt $\xi \in [x_0, x]$, so dass gilt*

$$f(x) - f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^\top (x - x_0)$$

18.4 Using other theorem environments with `tcolorbox`

Instead of creating theorem environments with the methods described before, environments from other packages can be boxed with a `tcolorbox`.

Environments may be created e.g. by methods from the `theorem` package or the `amsthm` package. `\tcolorboxenvironment` → P. 22 can be used to put a box around these environments.

Definition in the preamble:

```
\usepackage{amsthm}

\theoremstyle{plain}%    from `amsthm'
\newtheorem{lem}{Lemma}% from `amsthm'

\tcolorboxenvironment{lem}{
  enhanced jigsaw,colframe=cyan,interior hidden,
  breakable,before skip=10pt,after skip=10pt }

\tcolorboxenvironment{proof}{% `proof' from `amsthm'
  blanker,breakable,left=5mm,
  before skip=10pt,after skip=10pt,
  borderline west={1mm}{0pt}{red}}
```

```
\begin{lem}
  \lipsum[2]
\end{lem}

\lipsum[3]

\begin{proof}
  \lipsum*[4]
\end{proof}
```

Lemma 1. *Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.*

Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis. Donec nonummy pellentesque ante. Phasellus adipiscing semper elit. Proin fermentum massa ac quam. Sed diam turpis, molestie vitae, placerat a, molestie nec, leo. Maecenas lacinia. Nam ipsum ligula, eleifend at, accumsan nec, suscipit a, ipsum. Morbi blandit ligula feugiat magna. Nunc eleifend consequat lorem. Sed lacinia nulla vitae enim. Pellentesque tincidunt purus vel magna. Integer non enim. Praesent euismod nunc eu purus. Donec bibendum quam in tellus. Nullam cursus pulvinar lectus. Donec et mi. Nam vulputate metus eu enim. Vestibulum pellentesque felis eu massa.

Proof. Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt ultrices. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Integer tempus convallis augue. Etiam facilisis. Nunc elementum fermentum wisi. Aenean placerat. Ut imperdiet, enim sed gravida sollicitudin, felis odio placerat quam, ac pulvinar elit purus eget enim. Nunc vitae tortor. Proin tempus nibh sit amet nisl. Vivamus quis tortor vitae risus porta vehicula. □

19 Library LIB breakable

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```
\tcbuselibrary{breakable}
```

This also loads the package `pdfcol`.

19.1 Technical Overview

The library LIB breakable supports the automatic breaking of a `tcolorbox`. This feature is enabled by `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 and disabled by `/tcb/unbreakable` → P. 401.

If a `tcolorbox` is set to be `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400, then the following algorithm is executed:

1. The box content is read to a box register similar but not identical to the unbreakable case.
2. If the total box fits into the current page, it is shipped out visibly unbroken and the algorithm stops.

   Unbroken Box

   The box. unbroken

3. Otherwise, it is checked if at least `/tcb/lines before break` → P. 401 of the upper box can be placed on the current page. If not, a page break is inserted and the algorithm goes back to Step 2.
4. Now, the *break sequence* starts. The upper box part or the lower box part is split such that it fits into the current page. The fitting part is named *first part* of the *break sequence* and shipped out.

   Broken Box

   The box. first

5. If the remaining content of the total box fits into the current page, the algorithm continues with Step 7, else with Step 6.
6. The upper box part or the lower box part is split such that it fits into the current page. The fitting part is named *middle part* of the *break sequence* and shipped out. Then, the algorithm goes back to Step 5.

   The box. middle

7. The remaining part is named *last part* of the *break sequence* and shipped out. The algorithm stops.

   The box. last

The algorithm takes care that the optional segmentation line never appears at the end of a box. The optional lower box part is also checked to have at least `/tcb/lines before break` → P. 401.

In principle, all boxes of the *break sequence* share the same geometric parameters. The differences are:

- The given `/tcb/before` → P. 86 and `/tcb/after` → P. 86 values are used only before the *first* and after the *last* part of the *break sequence*.
- A special behavior between the parts of the *break sequence* can be given by `/tcb/toprule at break` → P. 405, `/tcb/bottomrule at break` → P. 405, `/tcb/enlarge top at break by` → P. 94, and `/tcb/enlarge bottom at break by` → P. 94.
- The `/tcb/skin` → P. 153 decides *how* the *first*, *middle*, and *last* part look like. Actually, every part type has its own skin given by the options `/tcb/skin first` → P. 153, `/tcb/skin middle` → P. 153, and `/tcb/skin last` → P. 153. Typically, these options are set automatically by the main skin, see Subsection 19.8 from page 414.

19.2 Limitations and Known Bugs

- The maximal total height of the upper and of the lower part of normal breakable `tcolorbox`es is about 65536pt (ca. 2300cm) apiece. If such a part gets longer, the output will get buggy without warning. For very oversized boxes which are longer than 65536pt, use the `unlimited` value for `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400. With the `unlimited` setting, the applied algorithm has (virtually) no height limit for boxes, but very likely the compiler memory will have to be increased for boxes longer than 300 pages (depending on compiler settings and box content). But it is recommended to use `unlimited` for critical large boxes only.
- You can nest an unbreakable `tcolorbox` inside another `tcolorbox`, even inside a breakable one. But you cannot not nest a breakable box inside a breakable box. The `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 key for a nested box is ignored automatically[3], i. e. inner boxes are always unbreakable.

  After all, in the unlikely case you really want to have the nested box to be breakable, use `/tcb/enforce breakable` → P. 401 for the nested box[4]. **But, a breakable box inside a breakable box will usually give a mess.**

N 2020-09-17
- Depending on the LaTeX engine, if your text content contains some text color changing commands, your color may not survive the break to the next box. See the documentation for `/tcb/use color stack` → P. 403 for more information.

N 2014-10-30
- The `perpage` option of the `footmisc` package is deliberately deactivated inside a breakable box since all footnotes are placed at the end of the box (possibly far away from the reference point).

N 2016-02-15
- Making a box `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 which actually is not broken creates a box which acts *almost* like an unbreakable box. Visual differences are kept as indiscernible as possible, but can appear with certain `/tcb/before` → P. 86 and `/tcb/after` → P. 86 settings, especially, if there is an automatic page break before the box.

N 2016-05-25
- LuaTeX version 0.95 changes the behavior of the basic `\vsplit` (a bug?!) resulting in badly broken boxes. Thanks to Jeremy Engel, the LIB breakable library contains a patch for this which also loads the the `ifluatex` package.

[3] Until `tcolorbox` 3.04, the `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 key was not ignored for nested boxes.
[4] `/tcb/enforce breakable` → P. 401 acts like `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 until `tcolorbox` 3.04.

19.3 Main Option Keys

U 2017-02-01 `/tcb/breakable=true|false|unlimited` (default `true`, initially `false`)

Allows the `tcolorbox` to be breakable. If the box is larger than the available space at the current page, the box is automatically broken and continued to the next page. All sorts of `tcolorbox` can be made breakable. It depends on the skin how the breaking looks like. If you do not know better, use `/tcb/enhanced` → P. 230 for breaking a box. The parts of the *break sequence* are numbered by the counter `tcbbreakpart`.

- `false`: Sets the `tcolorbox` to be unbreakable.
- `true`: Breaks the `tcolorbox` from one page to another. The maximal total height of the upper and of the lower part is about 65536pt (ca. 2300cm or ca. 90 pages) apiece.
- `unlimited`: Experimental code for unlimited total height of breakable boxes. For boxes longer than 300 pages (or even shorter ones) the compiler memory will have to be increased.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}  % preamble
\tcbset{enhanced jigsaw,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  watermark color=yellow!25!white,watermark text=\arabic{tcbbreakpart},
  fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[breakable,title=My breakable box]
\lipsum[1-6]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My breakable box

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis. Donec nonummy pellentesque ante. Phasellus adipiscing semper elit. Proin fermentum massa ac quam. Sed diam turpis, molestie vitae, placerat a, molestie nec, leo. Maecenas lacinia. Nam ipsum ligula, eleifend at, accumsan nec, suscipit a, ipsum. Morbi blandit ligula feugiat magna. Nunc eleifend consequat lorem. Sed lacinia nulla vitae enim. Pellentesque tincidunt purus vel magna. Integer non enim. Praesent euismod nunc eu purus. Donec bibendum quam in tellus. Nullam cursus pulvinar lectus. Donec et mi. Nam vulputate metus eu enim. Vestibulum pellentesque felis eu massa.

Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt

ultrices. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Integer tempus convallis augue. Etiam facilisis. Nunc elementum fermentum wisi. Aenean placerat. Ut imperdiet, enim sed gravida sollicitudin, felis odio placerat quam, ac pulvinar elit purus eget enim. Nunc vitae tortor. Proin tempus nibh sit amet nisl. Vivamus quis tortor vitae risus porta vehicula.
Fusce mauris. Vestibulum luctus nibh at lectus. Sed bibendum, nulla a faucibus semper, leo velit ultricies tellus, ac venenatis arcu wisi vel nisl. Vestibulum diam. Aliquam pellentesque, augue quis sagittis posuere, turpis lacus congue quam, in hendrerit risus eros eget felis. Maecenas eget erat in sapien mattis porttitor. Vestibulum porttitor. Nulla facilisi. Sed a turpis eu lacus commodo facilisis. Morbi fringilla, wisi in dignissim interdum, justo lectus sagittis dui, et vehicula libero dui cursus dui. Mauris tempor ligula sed lacus. Duis cursus enim ut augue. Cras ac magna. Cras nulla. Nulla egestas. Curabitur a leo. Quisque egestas wisi eget nunc. Nam feugiat lacus vel est. Curabitur consectetuer.
Suspendisse vel felis. Ut lorem lorem, interdum eu, tincidunt sit amet, laoreet vitae, arcu. Aenean faucibus pede eu ante. Praesent enim elit, rutrum at, molestie non, nonummy vel, nisl. Ut lectus eros, malesuada sit amet, fermentum eu, sodales cursus, magna. Donec eu purus. Quisque vehicula, urna sed ultricies auctor, pede lorem egestas dui, et convallis elit erat sed nulla. Donec luctus. Curabitur et nunc. Aliquam dolor odio, commodo pretium, ultricies non, pharetra in, velit. Integer arcu est, nonummy in, fermentum faucibus, egestas vel, odio.

`/tcb/unbreakable` (no value, initially set)

Sets the `tcolorbox` to be unbreakable.

`/tcb/enforce breakable` (no value)

A `tcolorbox` inside a `tcolorbox` is automatically set to be unbreakable. Using `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 on such an inner box has no effect. If one *really* wants the inner box to be breakable, use `/tcb/enforce breakable`. **This will usually give a mess of shattered boxes. You are advised to not use this option.**
Note that `/tcb/enforce breakable` has the functionality that `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 had until package version 3.04 and exists for backward compatibility.

U 2018-07-26 `/tcb/title after break`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

The `/tcb/title` → P. 23 is used only for the *first* part of a *break sequence*. Use `title after break` to create a heading line with ⟨*text*⟩ as content for all following parts. Also see `/tcb/extras title after break` → P. 408 for formatting the title text.

`/tcb/notitle after break` (no value, initially set)

Removes the title line or following parts in a *break sequence* if set before.

`/tcb/adjusted title after break`=⟨*text*⟩ (style, no default, initially unset)

Works like `/tcb/adjusted title` → P. 23 but applied to `/tcb/title after break`.

`/tcb/lines before break`=⟨*number*⟩ (no default, initially 2)

Assures that the given ⟨*number*⟩ of lines of the upper box part or the lower box part are placed before a break happens.

U 2017-07-05 `/tcb/break at`=⟨*length*⟩/⟨*length*⟩/.../⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0pt`)

Defines break points at the given ⟨*length*⟩ values. The first ⟨*length*⟩ defines the (maximal) height of the first partial box, the second ⟨*length*⟩ defines the (maximal) height of the second partial box, and so on. The last ⟨*length*⟩ value is applied to all following partial boxes if any.

- Setting a ⟨*length*⟩ to `0pt` means that the naturally available space is used for breaking.
- Setting a ⟨*length*⟩ to a negative value means that the sum of this negative value and the naturally available space is used for breaking (boxes will shrink in height). Note that before version 4.10 negative values were treated like `0pt`.

```
% \usepackage{multicol,lipsum}
\begin{multicols}{3}\footnotesize
Breakable boxes inside a |multicols| environment need special attendance.
They are broken by default at |\textheight|.
The |break at| option can be used to insert better break points by hand.
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,size=small,vfill before first,
  colframe=red,colback=yellow!10!white,before title=\raggedright,
  title={Broken box inside a |multicols| environment},fonttitle=\bfseries,
  enforce breakable,% use only breakable in the real world!
  pad at break=1mm,break at=3cm/6.3cm ]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
\refKey{/tcb/height fixed for} may also be considered for |multicols| environments.
\end{multicols}
```

Breakable boxes inside a `multicols` environment need special attendance. They are broken by default at `\textheight`. The `break at` option can be used to insert better break points by hand.

Broken box inside a multicols environment

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

`/tcb/height fixed for` → P. 406 may also be considered for `multicols` environments.

`/tcb/enlargepage`=⟨*length*⟩/⟨*length*⟩/.../⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0pt`)

Inserts a `\enlargethispage{`⟨*length*⟩`}` to the pages of the break sequence, i. e. allows one to enlarge (or shrink) partial boxes. The first ⟨*length*⟩ is applied to the first partial box, the second ⟨*length*⟩ is applied to the second partial box, and so on. The last ⟨*length*⟩ value is applied to all following partial boxes if any. Note that floating boxes will not be enlarged.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[breakable,enlargepage=0mm/\baselineskip/2\baselineskip/0mm,...
```

The example code enlarged the second partial box by one line, the third partial box by two lines, and all following parts are not enlarged.

! If an automated page break occures before the first partial box, the page enlargement is applied to the page before the first partial box *and* again to the page of the first partial box. Insert a manual break to prevent this.
In general, `enlargepage` should be used at the final stage of a document for fine-tuning only.

`/tcb/enlargepage flexible=`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0pt`)

This allows an automated page enlargement for up to ⟨*length*⟩. The algorithm can use this to avoid breaking a box, if there is enough room after enlargement. Also, the *last* partial box of a break sequence may be enlarged to avoid further breaking.
Note that this potential enlargement is *additive* to settings of `/tcb/enlargepage` → P. 402. But `/tcb/enlargepage flexible` overwrites settings of `/tcb/pad before break*` → P. 405 or `/tcb/pad at break*` → P. 405.

```
% The following setting hinders orphan lines for the last partial box
\tcbset{enlargepage flexible=\baselineskip}
```

N 2014-12-15 `/tcb/compress page=`⟨*option*⟩ (default `all`, initially `baselineskip`)

This option controls the space management on the page which contains the unbroken box or the first part of a *break sequence*. Feasible ⟨*option*⟩ values are:

- `all` (default value): All shrinkable glue on the page is potentially used for the unbroken box or the first part of a *break sequence*. Thus, all vertical spaces on the page will potentially be reduced to their minimal values.
- `baselineskip` (initial value): Shrinkable glue up to one `\baselineskip` on the page is potentially used for the unbroken box or the first part of a *break sequence*.
- `none`: The break algorithm respects the target size of the given glue values on the page. This was the inital value before version `3.34`.

! Note that the box *content* is not influenced by this option.

`/tcb/shrink break goal=`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0pt`)

This is an emergency parameter if the break algorithm produces unpleasant breaks. It shrinks the goal height of the current box part by ⟨*length*⟩ which may result in smaller boxes. Never use negative values. *Usually, this option will never be needed at all.*

N 2020-10-09 `/tcb/use color stack=true|false` (default `true`, initially `false`)

Depending on the LaTeX engine and loaded packages, if your text contains some color changing commands, your color may not survive the break to the next box. For some engines, there is support for additional color stacks which allow colors to survive breaks. Such an color stack can be activated by `/tcb/use color stack` with help of the `pdfcol` package. This can be done globally or per box.

! Note that activating `/tcb/use color stack` inserts a color command with a *whatsit* at the begin of the upper part and of the lower part of a `tcolorbox` → P. 12. This *may* add additional vertical space, e.g. if your box text starts with a list like *enumerate*!

- pdfTeX: color stacks supported.
- LuaTeX: color stacks supported, but you should consider loading the `luacolor` package *instead* which avoids the spacing problem.
- XeTeX: color stacks not supported (yet?). From hearsay, with the `fontspec` package, you may use `\addfontfeatures{Color=mycolor}` to add a font color which survives the break.

If `pdfcol` cannot initialize an additional color stack for the used engine, `/tcb/use color stack` is silently ignored.

The result of the following example depends on the used LaTeX engine and loaded packages. The right-hand side is blue, if compiled using pdfTeX, LuaTeX without `luacolor`, and XeTeX. LuaTeX with `luacolor` gives the next but one result.

```
% \usepackage{multicol,lipsum}
\begin{multicols}{2}\footnotesize
Breakable box without color stack.
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,
  size=small, colframe=gray, colback=yellow!10!white, colupper=blue,
  enforce breakable,% use only breakable in the real world!
  vfill before first, pad at break=1mm, break at=33mm ]
    Some blue text.\par\smallskip
    {\color{red}\itshape\lipsum[2]}\par\smallskip
    More blue text.
\end{tcolorbox}
Text after box.
\end{multicols}
```

Breakable box without color stack.

Some blue text.

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

More blue text.

Text after box.

We do again with `/tcb/use color stack` → P. 403. Again, the result depends on the used LaTeX engine. The right-hand side stays blue for XeTeX and and is red and blue for pdfTeX and LuaTeX.

```
% \usepackage{multicol,lipsum}
\begin{multicols}{2}\footnotesize
Breakable box with color stack.
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw, use color stack,
  size=small, colframe=gray, colback=yellow!10!white, colupper=blue,
  enforce breakable,% use only breakable in the real world!
  vfill before first, pad at break=1mm, break at=33mm ]
    Some blue text.\par\smallskip
    {\color{red}\itshape\lipsum[2]}\par\smallskip
    More blue text.
\end{tcolorbox}
Text after box.
\end{multicols}
```

Breakable box with color stack.

Some blue text.

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

More blue text.

Text after box.

19.4 Option Keys for the Break Appearance

/tcb/toprule at break=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0.5mm`)

Sets the line width of the top rule to ⟨*length*⟩ *if* the box is /tcb/breakable → P. 400. In this case, it is applied to *middle* and *last* parts in a break sequence. Note that /tcb/toprule → P. 40 overwrites this value if used afterwards.

/tcb/bottomrule at break=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0.5mm`)

Sets the line width of the bottom rule to ⟨*length*⟩ *if* the box is /tcb/breakable → P. 400. In this case, it is applied to *first* and *middle* parts in a break sequence. Note that /tcb/bottomrule → P. 40 overwrites this value if used afterwards.

/tcb/topsep at break=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0mm`)

Additional vertical space of ⟨*length*⟩ which is added at the top of *middle* and *last* parts in a break sequence. In general, it is not advisable to change this value if these parts start with a rule or a title.

/tcb/bottomsep at break=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0mm`)

Additional vertical space of ⟨*length*⟩ which is added at the bottom of *first* and *middle* parts in a break sequence. In general, it is not advisable to change this value if these parts end with a rule.

/tcb/pad before break=⟨*length*⟩ (style, no default, initially `3.5mm`)

Sets the total amount of vertical space after the text content and before the break point to ⟨*length*⟩. This style sets /tcb/toprule at break to `0pt` and changes /tcb/topsep at break as required. In general, it is not advisable to change this value if the *middle* and *last* parts in a break sequence start with a rule or a title.

/tcb/pad before break*=⟨*length*⟩ (style, no default)

Sets /tcb/pad before break to ⟨*length*⟩ and /tcb/enlargepage flexible → P. 403 to an appropriate value such that empty closing frames are avoided.

/tcb/pad after break=⟨*length*⟩ (style, no default, initially `3.5mm`)

Sets the total amount of vertical space after the break point and before the text content to ⟨*length*⟩. This style sets /tcb/bottomrule at break to `0pt` and changes /tcb/bottomsep at break as required. In general, it is not advisable to change this value if the *first* and *middle* parts in a break sequence end with a rule.

/tcb/pad at break=⟨*length*⟩ (style, no default, initially `3.5mm`)

Abbreviation for setting ⟨*length*⟩ to /tcb/pad before break and /tcb/pad after break.

/tcb/pad at break*=⟨*length*⟩ (style, no default)

Sets /tcb/pad at break to ⟨*length*⟩ and /tcb/enlargepage flexible → P. 403 to an appropriate value such that empty closing frames are avoided.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}  % preamble
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,breakable,pad at break*=0mm,
  title={For this box, the pad space at the break point is set to 0mm}]
  \lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

For this box, the pad space at the break point is set to 0mm

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis

egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.
Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

! `/tcb/pad at break` → P. 405 or `/tcb/pad at break*` → P. 405 should be used as very last option in an option list, because they adapt other settings.

! Also see `/tcb/enlarge top at break by` → P. 94 and `/tcb/enlarge bottom at break by` → P. 94.

`/tcb/height fixed for=`⟨*part*⟩ (no default, initially `none`)

When certain amount of space is available for a partial box of a break sequence, the partial box typically is smaller than this space (depending on the box content). For given ⟨*part*⟩(s), the height can be set to all available space.

- `none`: Every partial `tcolorbox` is set with its natural height.
- `first`: The *first* partial box is set to a height which matches the available space.
- `middle`: All *middle* partial boxes are set to a height which matches the available space.
- `last`: The *last* partial box is set to a height which matches the available space.
- `first and middle`: The *first* and all *middle* partial boxes are set to a height which matches the available space.
- `middle and last`: All *middle* partial boxes and the *last* partial box are set to a height which matches the available space.
- `all`: All partial boxes are set to a height which matches the available space.

! If the box keeps unbroken, this option is not applied. See `/tcb/height` → P. 58 for setting a fixed height for unbroken boxes. See `/tcb/height fill` → P. 61 for giving unbroken boxes maximum height.

`/tcb/vfill before first=true|false` (default `true`, initially `false`)

Inserts a `\vfill` at the begin of the *first* partial box to move this partial box to the end of the current page. This may be used as an alternative to `/tcb/height fixed for=first` to get justified columns or pages. The `\vfill` is not inserted, if the box gets not actually broken.

N 2017-03-20 `/tcb/segmentation at break=true|false` (default `true`, initially `true`)

If a breakable box contains an *upper part* and a *lower part* and the break happens at the *segmentation* between both parts, then

- the segmenation line (or similar) is drawn as first element of the partial box containing the *lower part*, if `/tcb/segmentation at break` is set to be `true`.
- the segmenation line (or similar) is not drawn at all, if `/tcb/segmentation at break` is set to be `false`. This may be preferable for skins like `bicolor` → P. 242, `tile` → P. 253, or `beamer` → P. 257.

19.5 Extra Options for Partial Boxes

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/extras={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

Adds `tcolorbox` ⟨*options*⟩ to every box of a *break sequence* after skin settings are done. This is quite late in box processing. Geometry and break settings should *not be used* here, because they will either be ignored or have unexpected negative results. But it is possible to change most colors, skin effects, shadows, borders, frame code, etc. Note that using `/tcb/extras` for every box is very seldom an advantage over setting the options directly. Usually, `/tcb/extras first`, `/tcb/extras middle`, etc. are sensible to apply.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/no extras** (style, no default, initially set)

Removes all extras if set before.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/extras broken={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 and *is* broken actually, then the ⟨*options*⟩ are added to every box of the *break sequence*. `/tcb/extras` overwrites this key.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/extras unbroken={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 but *is not* broken actually or if the box is set to be `/tcb/unbreakable` → P. 401, then the ⟨*options*⟩ are added to the box. `/tcb/extras` overwrites this key.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/no extras unbroken** (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the unbroken extras if set before.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/extras first={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 and *is* broken actually, then the ⟨*options*⟩ are added to the *first* box of the break sequence. `/tcb/extras` overwrites this key.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/no extras first** (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the first extras if set before.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/extras middle={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 and *is* broken actually, then the ⟨*options*⟩ are added to every *middle* box (if any) of the break sequence. `/tcb/extras` overwrites this key.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/no extras middle** (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the middle extras if set before.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/extras last={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400 and *is* broken actually, then the ⟨*options*⟩ are added to the *last* box of the break sequence. `/tcb/extras` overwrites this key.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/no extras last** (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the last extras if set before.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/extras unbroken and first={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting `/tcb/extras unbroken` and `/tcb/extras first` together. `/tcb/extras` overwrites this key.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/extras middle and last={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting `/tcb/extras middle` and `/tcb/extras last` together. `/tcb/extras` overwrites this key.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/extras unbroken and last={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting `/tcb/extras unbroken` and `/tcb/extras last` together. `/tcb/extras` overwrites this key.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/extras first and middle={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/extras first → P. 407 and /tcb/extras middle → P. 407 together. /tcb/extras → P. 407 overwrites this key.

N 2018-07-26 **/tcb/extras title after break={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default, initially unset)

If the box has a /tcb/title after break → P. 401, then the ⟨*options*⟩ are added for all titles after the first break, i.e. all middle and last. The color, font, and alignment of titles after break can be adapted choosing ⟨*options*⟩, e.g. by /tcb/coltitle → P. 33, /tcb/fonttitle → P. 34, /tcb/halign title → P. 37. Note that /tcb/colbacktitle → P. 32 has to be placed into /tcb/extras middle and last → P. 407.

N 2018-07-26 **/tcb/no extras title after break** (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the title after break extras if set before.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum,multicol}
% \usetikzlibrary{decorations.pathmorphing}
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1][]{
  tile,
  colback=green!7,coltitle=blue!50!black,colbacktitle=blue!5,
  center title,
  toprule=1.25mm,bottomrule=1.25mm,
  extras unbroken and first={
    borderline north={0.25mm}{0.5mm}{blue,decoration={zigzag,amplitude=0.5mm},decorate}},
  extras unbroken and last={
    borderline south={0.25mm}{0.5mm}{blue,decoration={zigzag,amplitude=0.5mm},decorate}},
  #1
}

\begin{mybox}[title=My unbroken box]
\lipsum[1]
\end{mybox}

\begin{multicols}{3}
  \begin{mybox}[title=My broken box,
    enforce breakable,% use only breakable in the real world!
    break at=4.2cm,pad at break=2mm,
    height fixed for=first and middle,  ]
  \lipsum[2]
  \end{mybox}
\end{multicols}
```

My unbroken box

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

My broken box

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

19.6 Breakable boxes and the `multicol` package

With version 4.10, the algorithm for detecting the available height for a `tcolorbox` inside a `multicol` environment was improved with help of Frank Mittelbach. This change *may* impact existing user code which *may* have to be adapted.

Unbreakable `tcolorbox`es can be used without special care inside a `multicols` environment from the `multicol` package [10].
Since version 3.10, a breakable `tcolorbox` detects, if it is used inside a `multicols` environment. But choosing break points for a breakable box cannot be done by the balancing routine of `multicols`. By default, boxes will break at maximum column height. To get pleasant results, use the `/tcb/break at` → P. 402 and `/tcb/height fixed for` → P. 406 options.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum,multicol}  % preamble
\footnotesize
\begin{multicols}{2}
  \lipsum[1]
  \begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,breakable,size=title,
    colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
    title=My breakable box,pad at break=1mm, break at=-\baselineskip/0pt ]
  \lipsum[2-4]
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \lipsum[4]
\end{multicols}
```

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

My breakable box

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.
Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis. Donec nonummy pellentesque ante. Phasellus adipiscing semper elit. Proin fermentum massa ac quam. Sed diam turpis, molestie vitae, placerat a, molestie nec, leo. Maecenas lacinia. Nam ipsum ligula, eleifend at, accumsan nec, suscipit a, ipsum. Morbi blandit ligula feugiat magna. Nunc eleifend consequat lorem. Sed lacinia nulla vitae enim. Pellentesque tincidunt purus vel magna. Integer non enim. Praesent euismod nunc eu purus. Donec bibendum quam in tellus. Nullam cursus pulvinar lectus. Donec et mi. Nam vulputate metus eu enim. Vestibulum pellentesque felis eu massa.
Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt ultrices. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Integer tempus convallis augue. Etiam facilisis. Nunc elementum fermentum wisi. Aenean placerat. Ut imperdiet, enim sed gravida sollicitudin, felis odio placerat quam, ac pulvinar elit purus eget enim. Nunc vitae tortor. Proin tempus nibh sit amet nisl. Vivamus quis tortor vitae risus porta vehicula.

Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt ultrices. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Integer tempus convallis augue. Etiam facilisis. Nunc elementum fermentum wisi. Aenean placerat. Ut imperdiet, enim sed gravida sollicitudin, felis odio placerat quam, ac pulvinar elit purus eget enim. Nunc vitae tortor. Proin tempus nibh sit amet nisl. Vivamus quis tortor vitae risus porta vehicula.

This example is already set inside a `multicols` environment. This time, a *middle* part has full column height (here `\textheight`). `/tcb/height fixed for` → P. 406 is used to spread this box part over the full height to align with neighboring columns.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum,multicol}
\lipsum[1]
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,
  breakable,
  size=title,
  colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title=My breakable box,
  pad at break=2mm,
  break at=-\baselineskip/0pt,
  height fixed for=middle ]
\lipsum[2-7]
\end{tcolorbox}
\lipsum[8]
```

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

My breakable box

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis. Donec nonummy pellentesque ante. Phasellus adipiscing semper elit. Proin fermentum massa ac quam. Sed diam turpis, molestie vitae, placerat a, molestie nec, leo. Maecenas lacinia. Nam ipsum ligula, eleifend at, accumsan nec, suscipit a, ipsum. Morbi blandit ligula feugiat magna. Nunc eleifend consequat lorem. Sed lacinia nulla vitae enim. Pellentesque tincidunt purus vel magna. Integer non enim. Praesent euismod nunc eu purus. Donec bibendum quam in tellus. Nullam cursus pulvinar lectus. Donec et mi. Nam vulputate metus eu enim. Vestibulum pellentesque felis eu massa.

Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt ultrices. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Integer tempus convallis augue. Etiam facilisis. Nunc elementum fermentum wisi. Aenean placerat. Ut imperdiet, enim sed gravida sollicitudin, felis odio placerat quam, ac pulvinar elit purus eget enim. Nunc vitae tortor. Proin tempus nibh sit amet nisl. Vivamus quis tortor vitae risus porta vehicula.

Fusce mauris. Vestibulum luctus nibh at lectus. Sed bibendum, nulla a faucibus semper, leo velit ultricies tellus, ac venenatis arcu wisi vel nisl. Vestibulum diam. Aliquam pellentesque, augue quis sagittis posuere, turpis lacus congue quam, in hendrerit risus eros eget felis. Maecenas eget erat in sapien mattis porttitor. Vestibulum porttitor. Nulla facilisi. Sed a turpis eu lacus commodo facilisis. Morbi fringilla, wisi in dignissim interdum, justo lectus sagittis dui, et vehicula libero dui cursus dui. Mauris tempor ligula sed lacus. Duis cursus enim ut augue. Cras ac magna. Cras nulla. Nulla egestas. Curabitur a leo. Quisque egestas wisi eget nunc. Nam feugiat lacus vel est. Curabitur consectetuer.

Suspendisse vel felis. Ut lorem lorem, interdum eu, tincidunt sit amet, laoreet vitae, arcu. Aenean faucibus pede eu ante. Praesent enim elit, rutrum at, molestie non, nonummy vel, nisl. Ut lectus eros, malesuada sit amet, fermentum eu, sodales cursus, magna. Donec eu purus. Quisque vehicula, urna sed ultricies auctor, pede lorem egestas dui, et convallis elit erat sed nulla. Donec luctus. Curabitur et nunc. Aliquam dolor odio, commodo pretium, ultricies non, pharetra in, velit. Integer arcu est, nonummy in, fermentum faucibus, egestas vel, odio.

Sed commodo posuere pede. Mauris ut est. Ut quis purus. Sed ac odio. Sed vehicula hendrerit sem. Duis non odio. Morbi ut dui. Sed accumsan risus eget odio. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Pellentesque non elit. Fusce sed justo eu urna porta tincidunt. Mauris felis odio, sollicitudin sed, volutpat a, ornare ac, erat. Morbi

quis dolor. Donec pellentesque, erat ac sagittis semper, nunc dui lobortis purus, quis congue purus metus ultricies tellus. Proin et quam. Class aptent taciti sociosqu ad litora torquent per conubia nostra, per inceptos hymenaeos. Praesent sapien turpis, fermentum vel, eleifend faucibus, vehicula eu, lacus.

Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Donec odio elit, dictum in, hendrerit sit amet, egestas sed, leo. Praesent feugiat sapien aliquet odio. Integer vitae justo. Aliquam vestibulum fringilla lorem. Sed neque lectus, consectetuer at, consectetuer sed, eleifend ac, lectus. Nulla facilisi. Pellentesque eget lectus. Proin eu metus. Sed porttitor. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Suspendisse eu lectus. Ut mi mi, lacinia sit amet, placerat et, mollis vitae, dui. Sed ante tellus, tristique ut, iaculis eu, malesuada ac, dui. Mauris nibh leo, facilisis non, adipiscing quis, ultrices a, dui.

The following example has a `\tcolorbox` which fills the `\multicols` environment completely. Here, `/tcb/height fixed for` → P. 406 is used to give all three columns the full height. Note that the appropriate `/tcb/break at` → P. 402 value is not computed automatically but set manually.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum,multicol}  % preamble
\small
\begin{multicols}{3}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,breakable,size=small,
    colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
    title=My breakable box,pad at break=2mm,drop fuzzy shadow,
    height fixed for=all, break at=11.4cm ]
  \lipsum[1-3]
  \end{tcolorbox}
\end{multicols}
```

My breakable box

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis. Donec nonummy pellentesque ante. Phasellus adipiscing semper elit. Proin fermentum massa ac quam. Sed diam turpis, molestie vitae, placerat a, molestie nec, leo. Maecenas lacinia. Nam ipsum ligula, eleifend at, accumsan nec, suscipit a, ipsum. Morbi blandit ligula feugiat magna. Nunc eleifend consequat lorem. Sed lacinia nulla vitae enim. Pellentesque tincidunt purus vel magna. Integer non enim. Praesent euismod nunc eu purus. Donec bibendum quam in tellus. Nullam cursus pulvinar lectus. Donec et mi. Nam vulputate metus eu enim. Vestibulum pellentesque felis eu massa.

19.7 Break Point Insertion

N 2017-07-05 `\tcbbreak`

A *breakable* box is not broken, if there is enough space on the current page or column. Therefore, typical penalty insertion with `\break`, `\pagebreak`, `\columnbreak`, ... *may* only work as expected, if the box is broken at least into two parts *without* inserting the penalties.

To *force* a page or column break, `\tcbbreak` starts a new paragraph and inserts an insane tall rule which causes a break and which is immediately discarded. You may ignore this technical information and just use it as you would use `\pagebreak`.

For an *unbreakable box*, `\tcbbreak` is identical to insert `\par`, i.e. it just starts a new paragraph.

Also see `/tcb/break at` → P. 402 for defining height dependend breaks.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum,multicol}  % preamble
\begin{multicols}{3}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[breakable,enhanced jigsaw,size=small,
    colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
    title=Break into parts
  ]
  First part\tcbbreak
  Second part\tcbbreak
  Third part
  \end{tcolorbox}
\end{multicols}

\begin{multicols}{3}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,size=small,
    colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
    title=You shall not break
  ]
  First part\tcbbreak
  Second part\tcbbreak
  Third part
  \end{tcolorbox}
\end{multicols}
```

Break into parts

First part

Second part

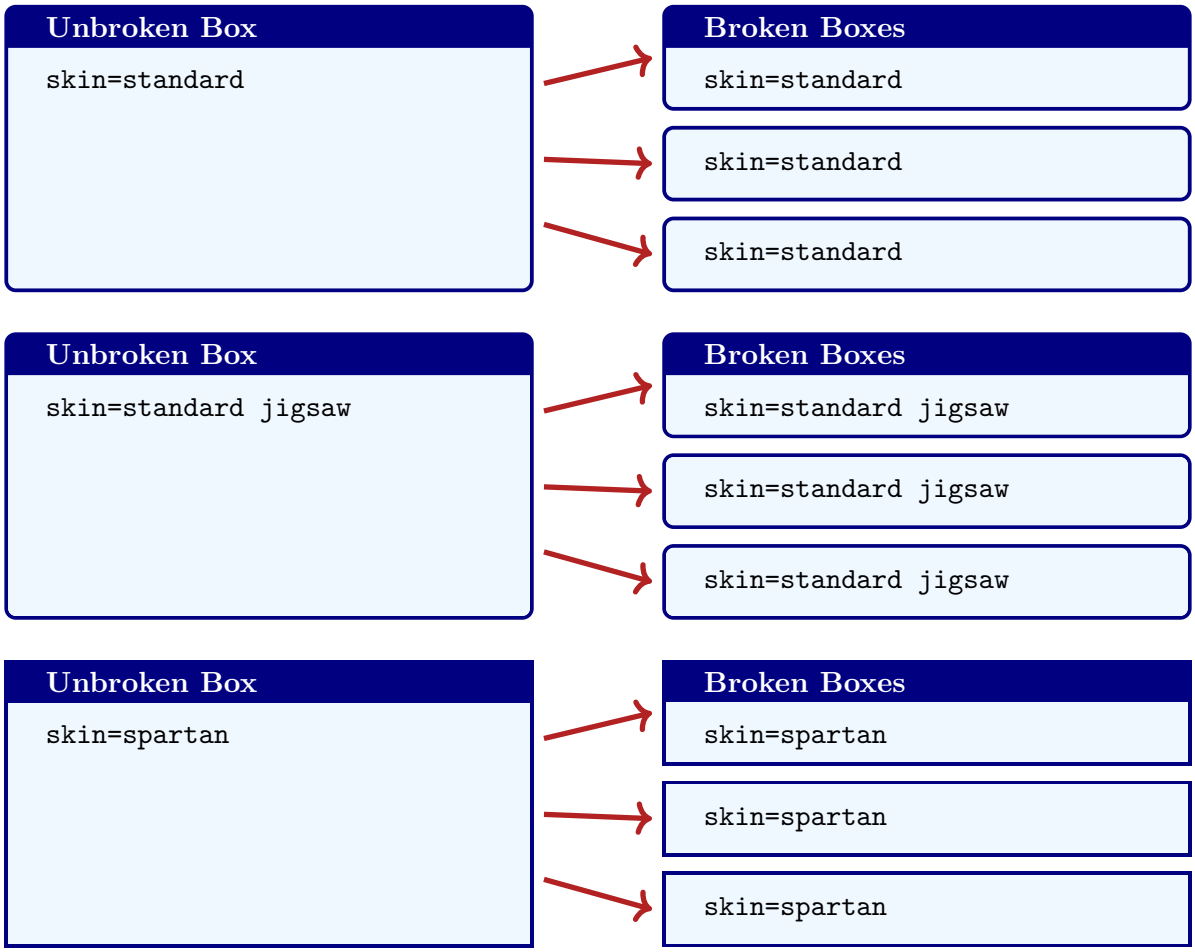
Third part

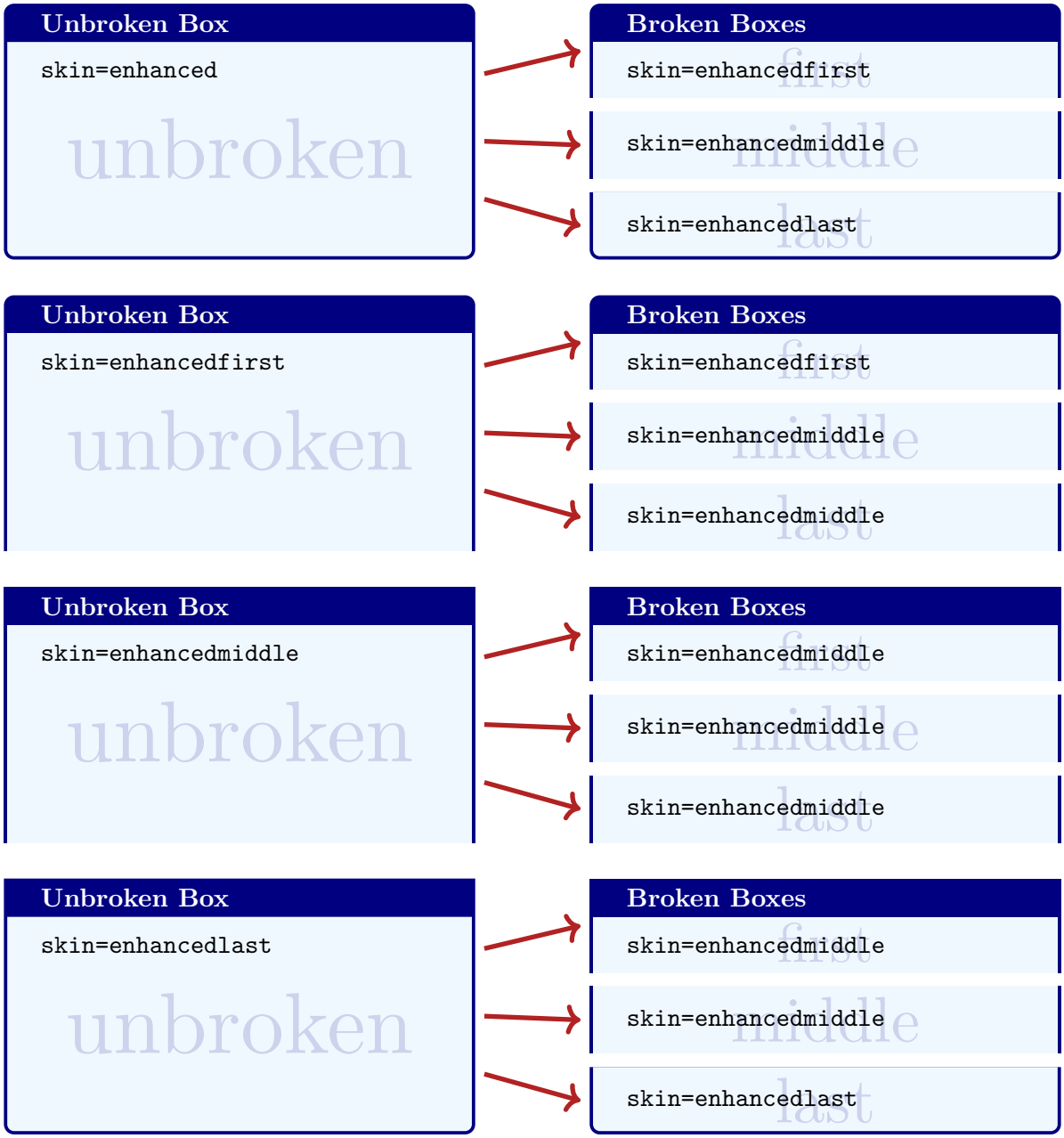
You shall not break

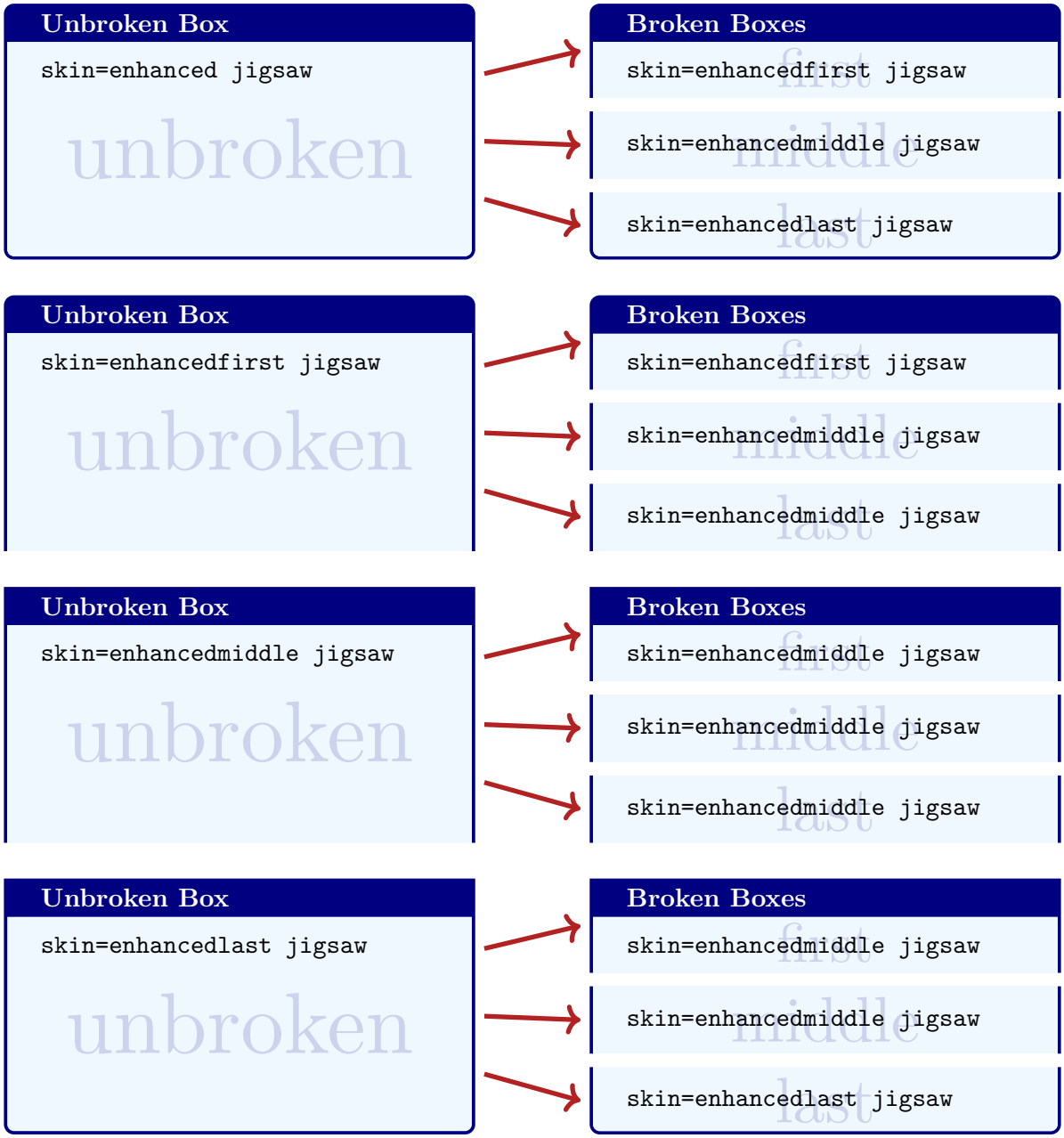
First part
Second part
Third part

19.8 Break Sequence for the Skins

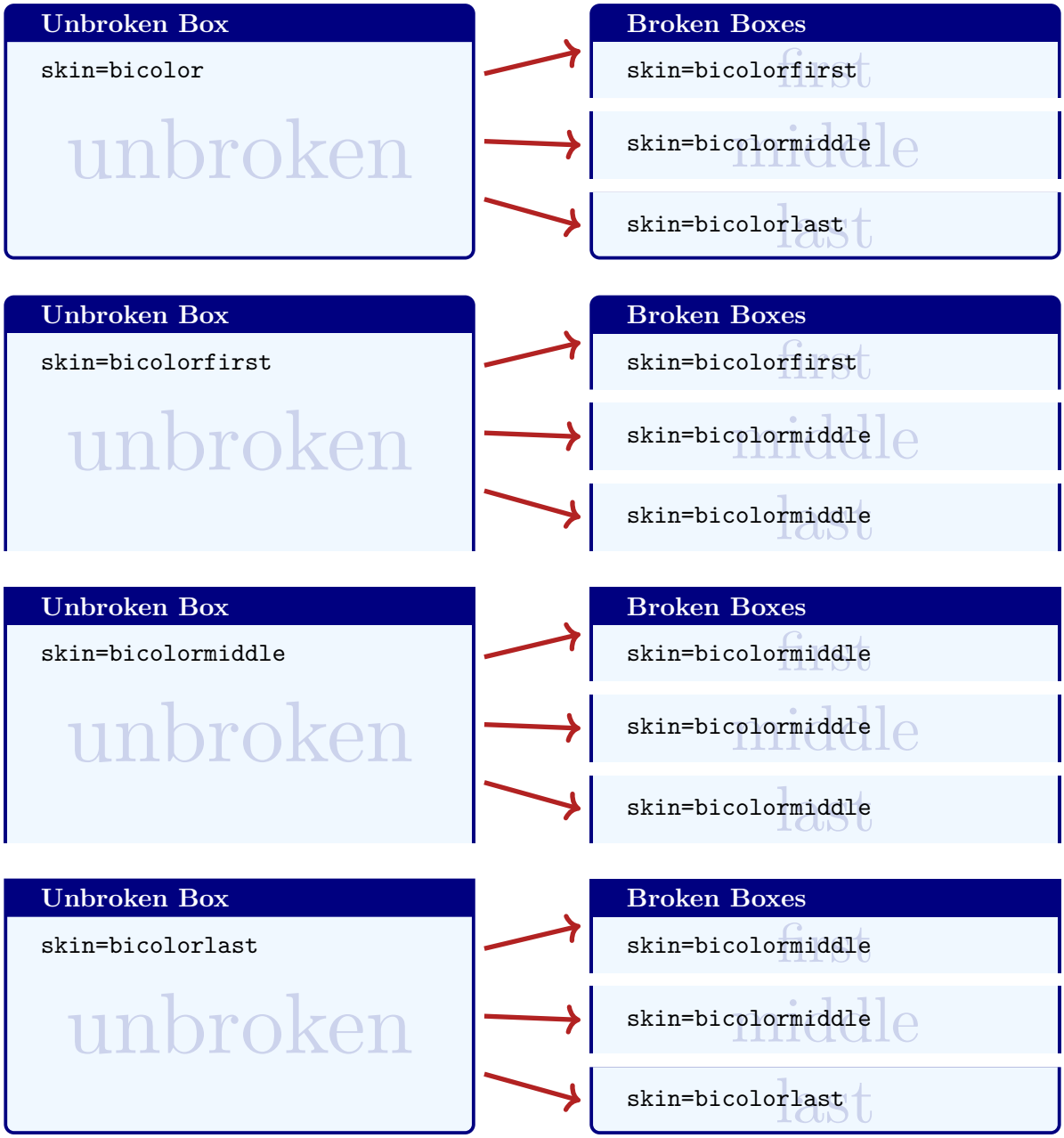
The following diagrams document the *break sequence* for different skins. Depending on the main skin of a `tcolorbox`, the actual skins of the *break sequence* parts are displayed.

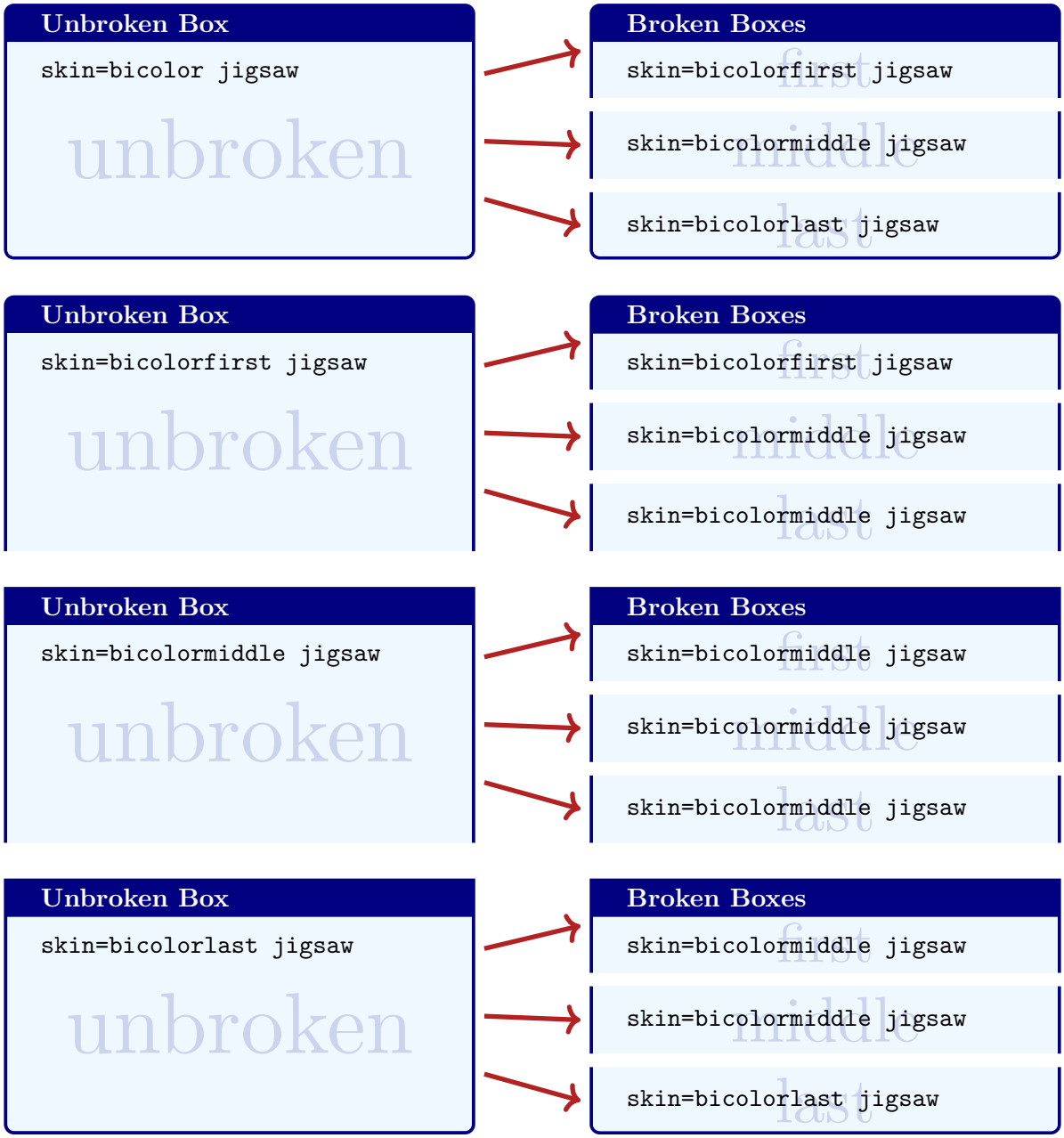


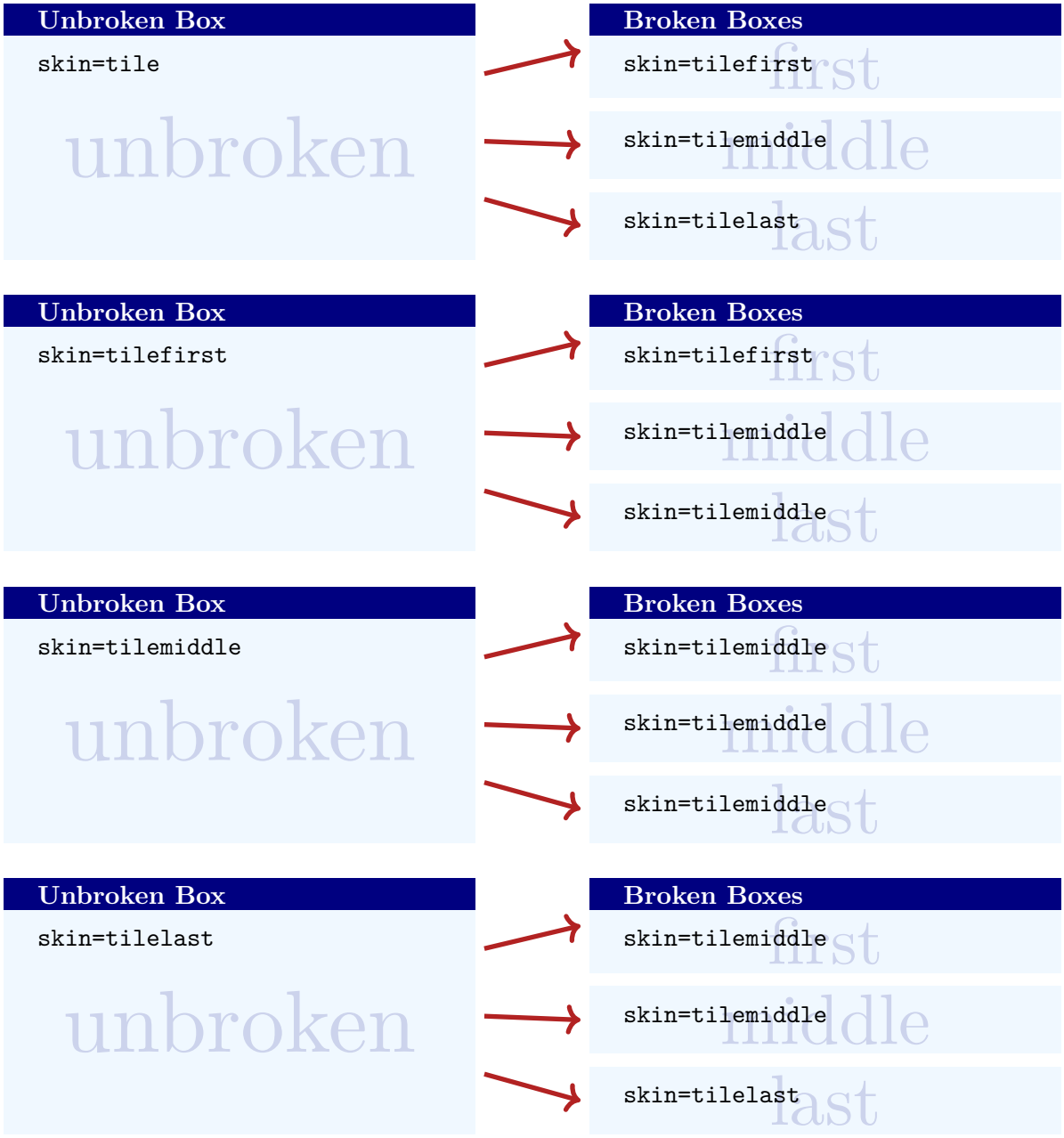

Unbroken Box
skin=enhanced
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=enhancedfirst
first
skin=enhancedmiddle
middle
skin=enhancedlast
last
Unbroken Box
skin=enhancedfirst
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=enhancedfirst
first
skin=enhancedmiddle
middle
skin=enhancedmiddle
last
Unbroken Box
skin=enhancedmiddle
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=enhancedmiddle
first
skin=enhancedmiddle
middle
skin=enhancedmiddle
last
Unbroken Box
skin=enhancedlast
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=enhancedmiddle
first
skin=enhancedmiddle
middle
skin=enhancedlast
last

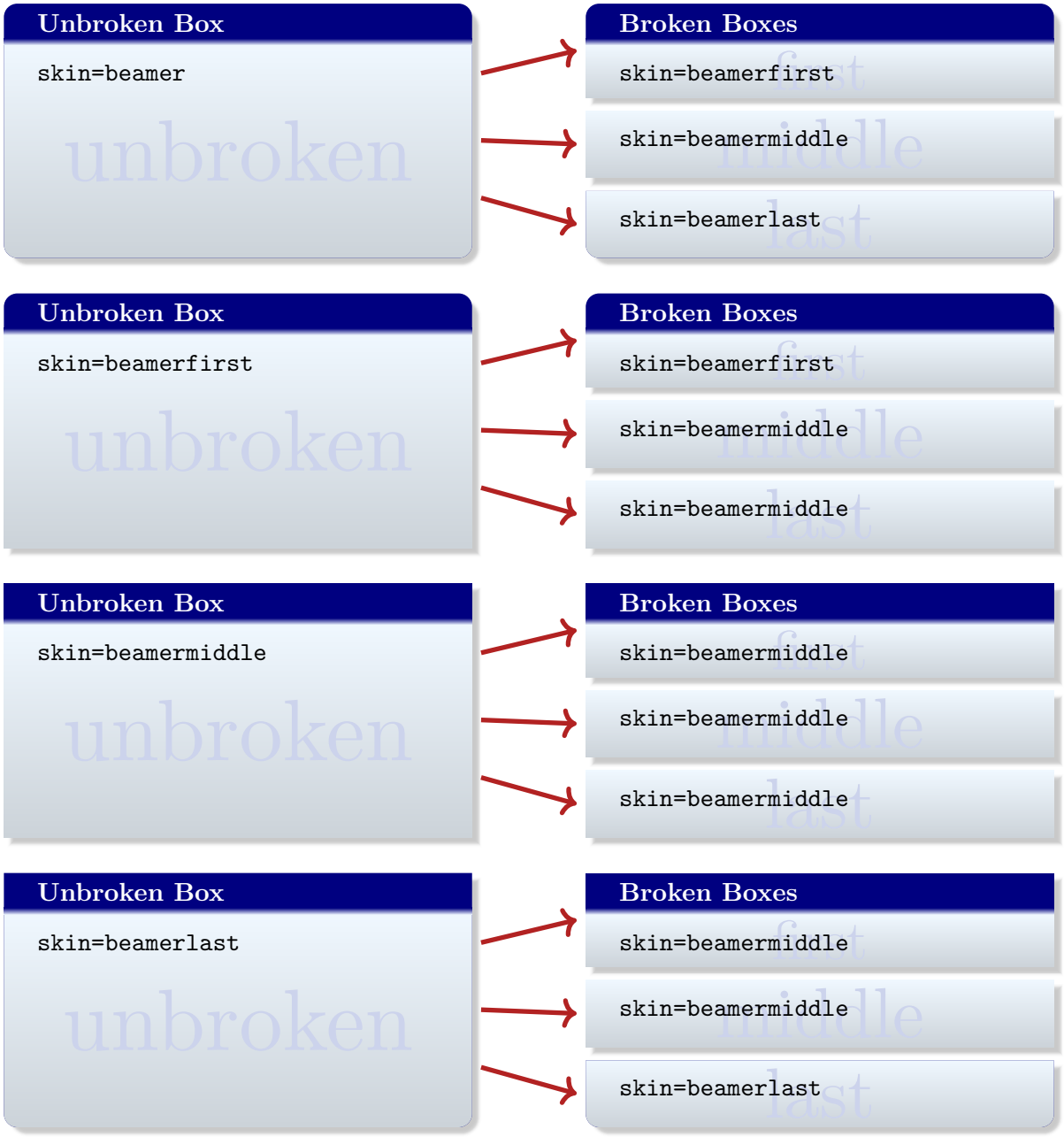

Unbroken Box
skin=enhanced jigsaw
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw
first
skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw
middle
skin=enhancedlast jigsaw
last
Unbroken Box
skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw
first
skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw
middle
skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw
last
Unbroken Box
skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw
first
skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw
middle
skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw
last
Unbroken Box
skin=enhancedlast jigsaw
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw
first
skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw
middle
skin=enhancedlast jigsaw
last

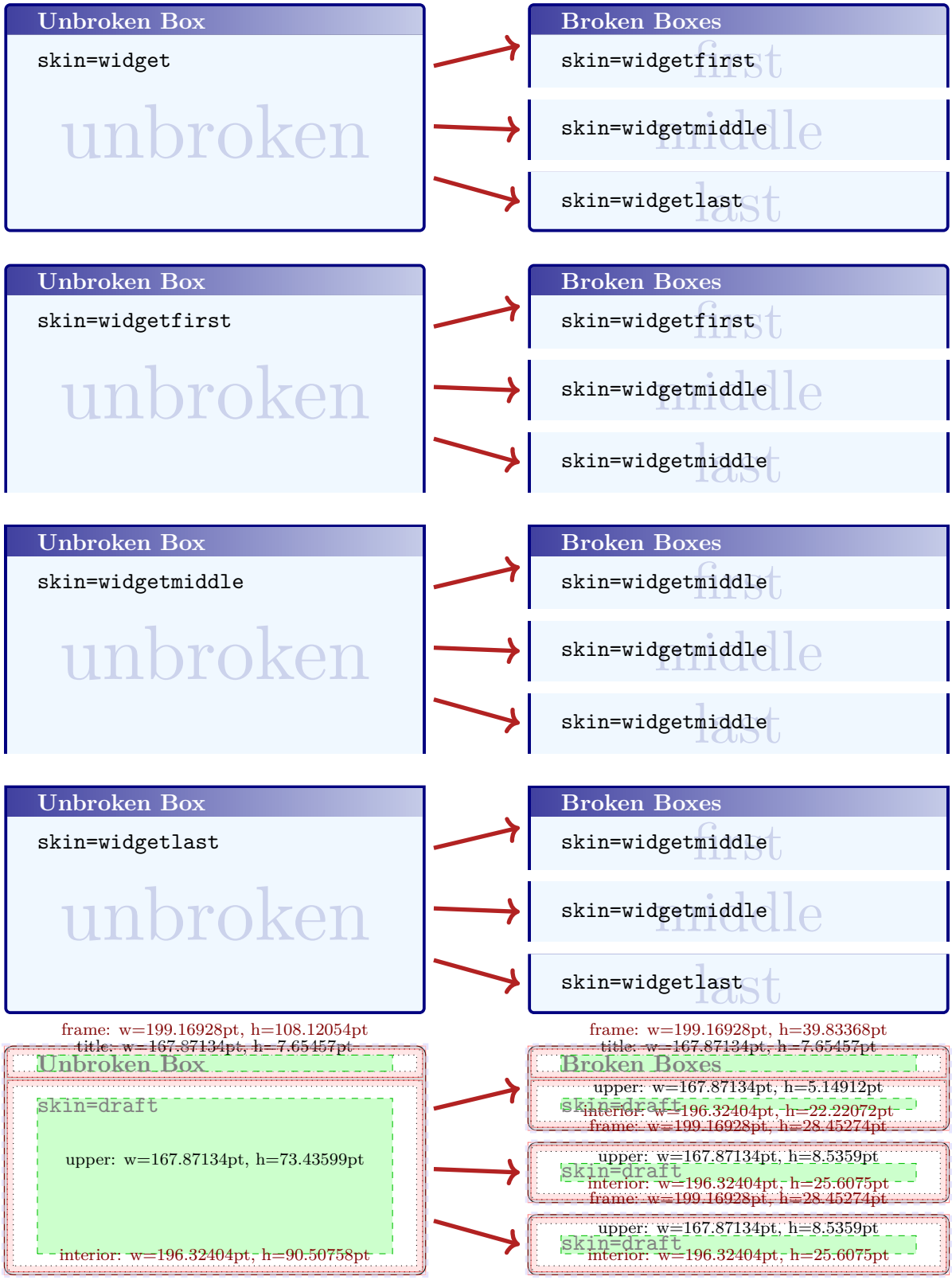
skin=empty
unbroken
skin=emptyfirst
first
skin=emptymiddle
middle
skin=emptylast
last
skin=emptyfirst
unbroken
skin=emptyfirst
first
skin=emptymiddle
middle
skin=emptymiddle
last
skin=emptymiddle
unbroken
skin=emptymiddle
first
skin=emptymiddle
middle
skin=emptymiddle
last
skin=emptylast
unbroken
skin=emptymiddle
first
skin=emptymiddle
middle
skin=emptylast
last

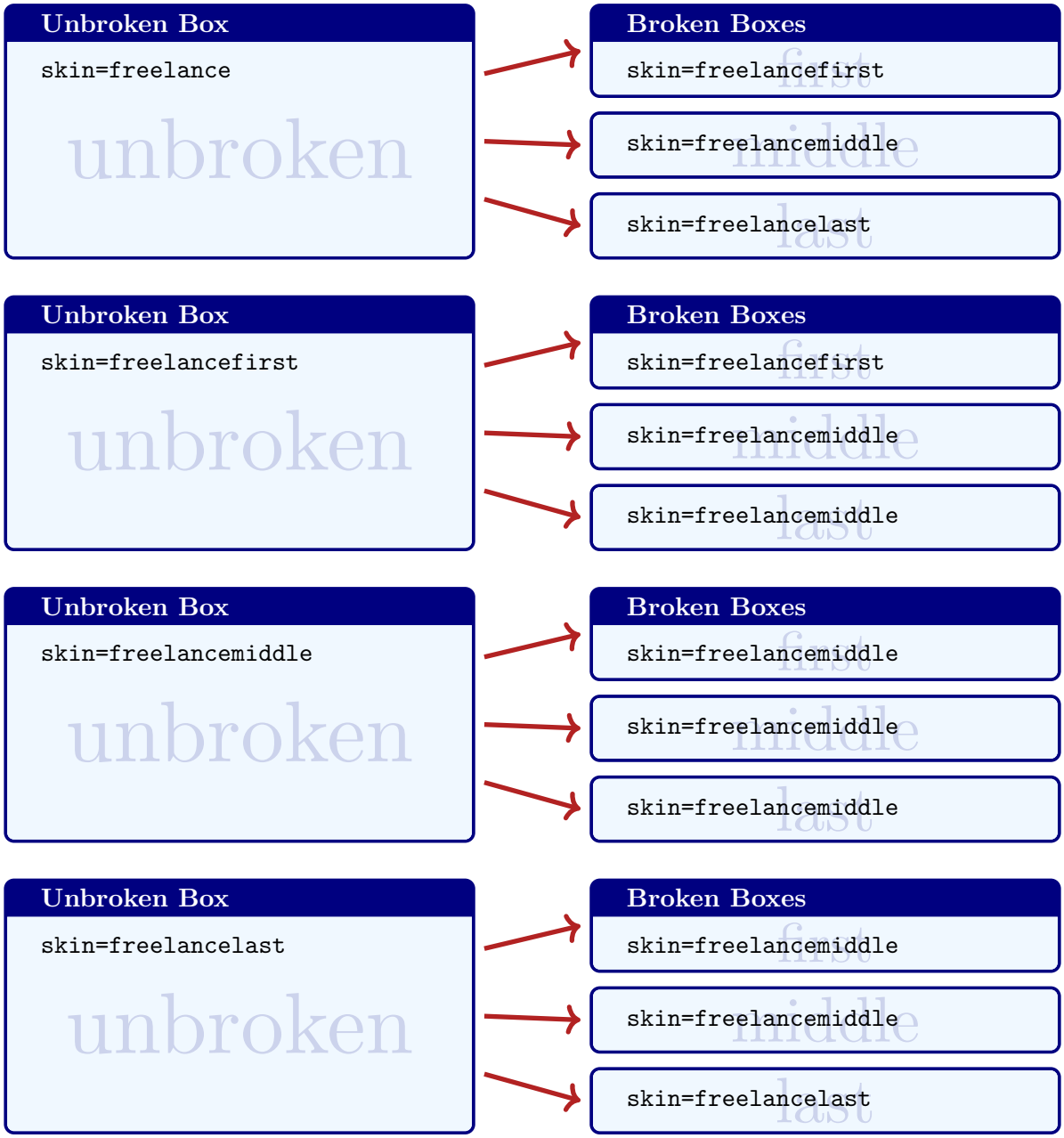

Unbroken Box
skin=bicolor
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=bicolorfirst
first
skin=bicolormiddle
middle
skin=bicolorlast
last
Unbroken Box
skin=bicolorfirst
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=bicolorfirst
first
skin=bicolormiddle
middle
skin=bicolormiddle
last
Unbroken Box
skin=bicolormiddle
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=bicolormiddle
first
skin=bicolormiddle
middle
skin=bicolormiddle
last
Unbroken Box
skin=bicolorlast
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=bicolormiddle
first
skin=bicolormiddle
middle
skin=bicolorlast
last


Unbroken Box
skin=bicolor jigsaw
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=bicolorfirst jigsaw
skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw
skin=bicolorlast jigsaw
Unbroken Box
skin=bicolorfirst jigsaw
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=bicolorfirst jigsaw
skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw
skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw
Unbroken Box
skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw
skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw
skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw
Unbroken Box
skin=bicolorlast jigsaw
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw
skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw
skin=bicolorlast jigsaw


Unbroken Box
skin=tile
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=tilefirst
first
skin=tilemiddle
middle
skin=tilelast
last
Unbroken Box
skin=tilefirst
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=tilefirst
first
skin=tilemiddle
middle
skin=tilemiddle
last
Unbroken Box
skin=tilemiddle
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=tilemiddle
first
skin=tilemiddle
middle
skin=tilemiddle
last
Unbroken Box
skin=tilelast
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=tilemiddle
first
skin=tilemiddle
middle
skin=tilelast
last


Unbroken Box
skin=beamer
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=beamerfirst
skin=beamermiddle
skin=beamerlast
Unbroken Box
skin=beamerfirst
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=beamerfirst
skin=beamermiddle
skin=beamermiddle
Unbroken Box
skin=beamermiddle
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=beamermiddle
skin=beamermiddle
skin=beamermiddle
Unbroken Box
skin=beamerlast
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=beamermiddle
skin=beamermiddle
skin=beamerlast


Unbroken Box
skin=widget
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=widgetfirst
first
skin=widgetmiddle
middle
skin=widgetlast
last
Unbroken Box
skin=widgetfirst
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=widgetfirst
first
skin=widgetmiddle
middle
skin=widgetmiddle
last
Unbroken Box
skin=widgetmiddle
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=widgetmiddle
first
skin=widgetmiddle
middle
skin=widgetmiddle
last
Unbroken Box
skin=widgetlast
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=widgetmiddle
first
skin=widgetmiddle
middle
skin=widgetlast
last
frame: w=199.16928pt, h=108.12054pt
title: w=167.87134pt, h=7.65457pt
Unbroken Box
skin=draft
upper: w=167.87134pt, h=73.43599pt
interior: w=196.32404pt, h=90.50758pt
frame: w=199.16928pt, h=39.83368pt
title: w=167.87134pt, h=7.65457pt
Broken Boxes
upper: w=167.87134pt, h=5.14912pt
skin=draft
interior: w=196.32404pt, h=22.22072pt
frame: w=199.16928pt, h=28.45274pt
upper: w=167.87134pt, h=8.5359pt
skin=draft
interior: w=196.32404pt, h=25.6075pt
frame: w=199.16928pt, h=28.45274pt
upper: w=167.87134pt, h=8.5359pt
skin=draft
interior: w=196.32404pt, h=25.6075pt

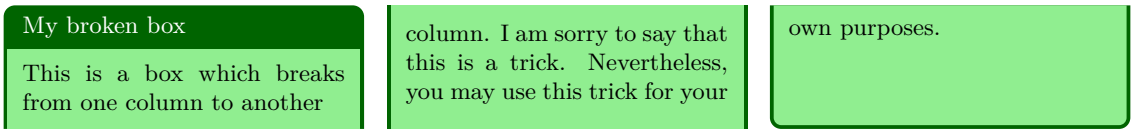

Unbroken Box
skin=freelance
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=freelancefirst
first
skin=freelancemiddle
middle
skin=freelancelast
last
Unbroken Box
skin=freelancefirst
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=freelancefirst
first
skin=freelancemiddle
middle
skin=freelancemiddle
last
Unbroken Box
skin=freelancemiddle
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=freelancemiddle
first
skin=freelancemiddle
middle
skin=freelancemiddle
last
Unbroken Box
skin=freelancelast
unbroken
Broken Boxes
skin=freelancemiddle
first
skin=freelancemiddle
middle
skin=freelancelast
last

19.9 Break by Hand (Faked Break)

See Section 19.6 on page 410 for *real* column breaks.

Since the appearance of broken boxes is done by skins, it is quite easy to 'fake a break'. For this, you actually don't need the LIB breakable library at all.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,equal height group=fakedbreak,
  colback=LightGreen,colframe=DarkGreen,
  width=(\linewidth-6mm)/3,nobeforeafter,
  left=1mm,right=1mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,middle=1mm}
%
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My broken box,skin=enhancedfirst]
This is a box which breaks from one column to another
\end{tcolorbox}\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[skin=enhancedmiddle]
column. I am sorry to say that this is a trick.
Nevertheless, you may use this trick for your
\end{tcolorbox}\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[skin=enhancedlast]
own purposes.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



20 Library LIB magazine

The main purpose of this library is to store a `tcolorbox` into an array of box registers for later usage.

If the `tcolorbox` is not breakable, there is not much add-on compared to usual TEX/LATEX box storage and usage (and you do not really need this library for that use case). For a breakable `tcolorbox`, this library allows to capture all partial boxes into a sequence of registers. The partial boxes can be used anywhere in arbitrary order.

Example Article

This is an example for an article which starts right here and is continued to the following pages. The body text for the article is written inside a single `tcolorbox`. This box is split into parts using the tools from this section,

— *continued on page 428* —

The name of this library indicates *magazine* in the sense of storage, but also in the sense of a journal where an article often is *continued on page x*. An example for this kind of application is given throughout this section starting on the right hand side. The creation of this library was motivated by Ulrike Fischer and Steven B. Segletes.

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```
\tcbuselibrary{magazine}
```

This also loads the library LIB breakable, see Section 19 on page 398.

! The box register operations of this library are global. TEX grouping will not clear the registers when leaving the current group. Also be aware that extensive use of large box arrays may eat up TEX's available memory and registers.

20.1 Creation and Resetting of Box Arrays

N 2015-07-13 `\newboxarray{`⟨*name*⟩`}`

This creates a new box array called ⟨*name*⟩. There already is a box array available with name `default` which can be used directly. Note that the creation is a global operation.

```
\newboxarray{myarray}
```

N 2015-07-13 `\boxarrayreset[`⟨*name*⟩`]`

Resets the size counter of a box array ⟨*name*⟩ to zero. If ⟨*name*⟩ is not provided, `default` is used as name. Use this or `/tcb/reset box array` before you apply `/tcb/store to box array` → P. 426. Otherwise, all boxes would be appended to the already existing boxes. This command does not clear box registers.

```
\boxarrayreset           % resets `default'
\boxarrayreset{myarray}  % resets `myarray'
```

N 2015-07-13 `/tcb/reset box array=`⟨*name*⟩ (default `default`, initially unset)

Resets the size counter of a box array ⟨*name*⟩ to zero. Use this or `\boxarrayreset` (which does the same) before you apply `/tcb/store to box array` → P. 426.

```
\tcbset{
  reset box array,         % resets `default'
  reset box array=myarray, % resets `myarray'
}
```

N 2015-07-13 `\boxarrayclear[⟨name⟩]`

Works like `\boxarrayreset` → P. 425 to reset the size counter of a box array ⟨*name*⟩ to zero. Additionally, all allocated box registers of the box array are cleared of their content. Note that the allocated box registers stay allocated. So, this may be useful to clear memory, but not to free registers for other applications. If `\consumeboxarray` → P. 429 or `\consumetcboxarray` → P. 429 was used to apply the stored boxes, there is no advantage in using `\boxarrayclear`.

```
\boxarrayclear            % clears `default'
\boxarrayclear{myarray}   % clears `myarray'
```

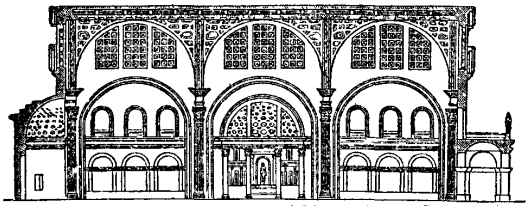
20.2 Storing Content

N 2015-07-13 `/tcb/store to box array=`⟨*name*⟩ (default `default`, initially unset)

Stores a `tcolorbox` or all parts of a break sequence of a `tcolorbox` into a box array ⟨*name*⟩. If no ⟨*name*⟩ is given, the already existing `default` box array is used. Otherwise, the box array has to be created beforehand with `\newboxarray` → P. 425. Note that the box has to be `/tcb/breakable` → P. 400, if the box shall break into several parts. Typically, manual break points are additionally defined by `/tcb/break at` → P. 402. Otherwise, the box parts will have a length of about `\textheight`. For most use cases, a `/tcb/reset box array` → P. 425 should be applied to reset the box array counter.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,size=fbox,width=4cm,
  colback=yellow!10,colframe=yellow!10!black,
  enforce breakable,% use only breakable in the real world!
  break at=7cm/4cm,
  height fixed for=all,
  watermark text=\arabic{tcbbreakpart},
  reset box array,
  store to box array
  ]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

\useboxarray{1}\hfill
\begin{tabular}[b]{cc}
\multicolumn{2}{c}{\includegraphics[width=7cm]{Basilica_5.png}}\\
\useboxarray{2} & \useboxarray{3}
\end{tabular}
```

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla



et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, male-

suada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

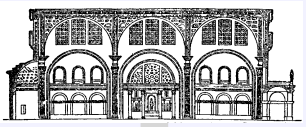
If the first box part should fill the rest of the available space of the current page, you can use `\pagegoal-\pagetotal` minus some distance for the first element of `/tcb/break at` → P. 402. You may want to have some additional distance to the preceeding text.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,breakable,
  reset box array,
  store to box array,
  break at=\pagegoal-\pagetotal-5mm/0pt,
  height fixed for=first and middle]
\lipsum[1-15]
\end{tcolorbox}%
%
\consumetcboxarray{1}{blanker,before=\par\vfill\noindent}
```

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[blanker,width=4cm,
  fontupper=\footnotesize,
  enforce breakable,% use only breakable in the real world!
  break at=4cm,
  height fixed for=all,
  watermark text=\arabic{tcbbreakpart},
  reset box array,
  store to box array
  ]
\includegraphics[width=\linewidth]{Basilica_5.png}\par
\lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3,raster equal height,
  size=small,halign=center,sharp corners,colback=blue!5]
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{5}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{6}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{1}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{2}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{3}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{4}
\end{tcbitemize}
```

bero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque

penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.



Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam

arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum

urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur

auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum. Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus li-

N 2015-07-13 **/tcb/reset and store to box array=**⟨*name*⟩ (style, default **default**, initially unset)

Combination of /tcb/reset box array → P. 425 and /tcb/store to box array → P. 426.

N 2015-07-13 **/tcb/do not store to box array** (style, no default, initially set)

Disables the /tcb/store to box array → P. 426 option, if set before.

N 2015-07-13
```
\begin{boxarraystore}{⟨name⟩}
  ⟨environment content⟩
\end{boxarraystore}
```

Stores the environment content into a box array ⟨*name*⟩. This corresponds to the standard LaTeX environment **lrbox**, but the storage operation is global. As long as \boxarrayreset → P. 425 is not used, every new boxarraystore adds a further box to the array.

```
\boxarrayreset
\begin{boxarraystore}{default}\fbox{Mary}\end{boxarraystore}
\begin{boxarraystore}{default}\fbox{Had}\end{boxarraystore}
\begin{boxarraystore}{default}\fbox{a}\end{boxarraystore}
\begin{boxarraystore}{default}\fbox{Little}\end{boxarraystore}
\begin{boxarraystore}{default}\fbox{Lamb}\end{boxarraystore}
\useboxarray{5}\useboxarray{4}\useboxarray{3}\useboxarray{2}\useboxarray{1}\hfill
\useboxarray{1}\useboxarray{5}
```

Lamb | Little | a | Had | Mary Mary | Lamb

20.3 Retrieving Content

N 2015-07-13 **\boxarraygetsize[**⟨*name*⟩**]{**⟨*macro*⟩**}**

Stores the current size of a box array ⟨*name*⟩ into a given ⟨*macro*⟩. If no ⟨*name*⟩ is given, the already existing **default** box array is used.

```
\boxarraygetsize{\mysize}
Current size of the default box array:
\mysize.
```

Current size of the default box array: 5.

— continued from page 425 —
namely /tcb/reset and store to box array → P. 428 with a new box array **myarticle** which was created by **\newboxarray{myarticle}**.
The resulting parts are distributed throughout this Section 20 on page 425 using \consumetcboxarray → P. 429 at
— continued on page 429 —

N 2015-07-13 **\useboxarray[**⟨*name*⟩**]{**⟨*index*⟩**}**

Typesets the box with the given ⟨*index*⟩ number from the box array ⟨*name*⟩. If no ⟨*name*⟩ is given, the already existing **default** box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array ⟨*name*⟩ is used. It is silently ignored, if the ⟨*index*⟩ is out of range. Note that \useboxarray corresponds to the standard **\usebox** macro, respectively, **\copy**.

```
\boxarraygetsize{\mysize}
\foreach \n in  {1,...,\mysize} { \useboxarray{\n} }
```

Mary | Had | a | Little | Lamb

N 2015-07-13 `\usetcboxarray[⟨name⟩]{⟨index⟩}{⟨options⟩}`

Typesets the box with the given ⟨*index*⟩ number from the box array ⟨*name*⟩ using `\useboxarray` → P. 428 as content of a `\tcbox` → P. 14. If no ⟨*name*⟩ is given, the already existing `default` box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array ⟨*name*⟩ is used. It is silently ignored, if the ⟨*index*⟩ is out of range. The `\tcbox` → P. 14 can be customized by `tcolorbox` ⟨*options*⟩.

```
\boxarraygetsize{\mysize}
\foreach \n in  {1,...,\mysize} { \usetcboxarray{\n}{on line,colframe=yellow,
  colback=yellow!10} }
```

Mary Had a Little Lamb

N 2015-07-13 `\consumeboxarray[⟨name⟩]{⟨index⟩}`

Typesets the box with the given ⟨*index*⟩ number from the box array ⟨*name*⟩. If no ⟨*name*⟩ is given, the already existing `default` box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array ⟨*name*⟩ is used. It is silently ignored, if the ⟨*index*⟩ is out of range. In contrast to `\useboxarray` → P. 428, `\consumeboxarray` corresponds to the standard `\box` macro, i.e. after typesetting the box register is cleared and cannot be used again.

```
\boxarraygetsize{\mysize}
First run: \foreach \n in  {1,...,\mysize} { \consumeboxarray{\n} }
\par
Second run: \foreach \n in  {1,...,\mysize} { \consumeboxarray{\n} }
```

First run: Mary Had a Little Lamb
Second run:

N 2015-07-13 `\consumetcboxarray[⟨name⟩]{⟨index⟩}{⟨options⟩}`

Typesets the box with the given ⟨*index*⟩ number from the box array ⟨*name*⟩ using `\consumeboxarray` as content of a `\tcbox` → P. 14. If no ⟨*name*⟩ is given, the already existing `default` box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array ⟨*name*⟩ is used. It is silently ignored, if the ⟨*index*⟩ is out of range. The `\tcbox` → P. 14 can be customized by `tcolorbox` ⟨*options*⟩. After typesetting the box register is cleared and cannot be used again.

— continued from page 428 —
the appropriate places you see. The linking texts like *continued on page x* are created by `/tcb/finish` → P. 218 commands for the embedding `\tcbox` → P. 14. To label the box parts, `/tcb/phantomlabel` → P. 110 is used.
These quite small partial boxes are
— continued on page 432 —

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,size=fbox,width=6cm,
  colback=yellow!10,colframe=yellow!10!black,
  enforce breakable,% use only breakable in the real world!
  break at=5cm,
  watermark text=\arabic{tcbbreakpart},
  reset and store to box array
  ]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

\consumeboxarray{2} \hfill \consumeboxarray{1} \hfill \consumeboxarray{1}
```

amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit

N 2015-07-13 **\boxarraygetbox[⟨name⟩]{⟨macro⟩}{⟨index⟩}**

Assigns the box with the given ⟨*index*⟩ number from the box array ⟨*name*⟩ to a ⟨*macro*⟩. If no ⟨*name*⟩ is given, the already existing `default` box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array ⟨*name*⟩ is used. If the ⟨*index*⟩ is out of range, the ⟨*macro*⟩ will be undefined.

```
\tcbox[size=small,colframe=blue!20,colback=yellow!5,on line,
  reset and store to box array]{Test}

\boxarraygetsize{\mysize} Array size: \mysize

\boxarraygetbox{\mybox}{1}
Box width: \the\wd\mybox
\quad\usebox{\mybox}
```

Array size: 1
Box width: 30.35799pt Test

N 2017-06-27 **\ifboxarrayempty[⟨name⟩]{⟨index⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}**

Tests the box with the given ⟨*index*⟩ number from the box array ⟨*name*⟩ for emptiness be empty and executes ⟨*true*⟩ if it is empty, and ⟨*false*⟩ otherwise. If no ⟨*name*⟩ is given, the already existing `default` box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array ⟨*name*⟩ is used.

```
\tcbox[size=small,colframe=blue!20,colback=yellow!5,on line,
  reset and store to box array]{Test}

\ifboxarrayempty{1}{no Box~1}{Box~1: \useboxarray{1}},
\ifboxarrayempty{2}{no Box~2}{Box~2: \useboxarray{2}}
```

Box 1: Test, no Box 2

20.4 Box Dimensions

N 2015-07-13 `\boxarraygetwidth[⟨name⟩]{⟨macro⟩}{⟨index⟩}`

Assigns the width of the box with the given ⟨*index*⟩ number from the box array ⟨*name*⟩ to a ⟨*macro*⟩. If no ⟨*name*⟩ is given, the already existing `default` box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array ⟨*name*⟩ is used. If the ⟨*index*⟩ is out of range, the ⟨*macro*⟩ will be set to `0pt`.

```
\tcbox[size=small,colframe=blue!20,colback=yellow!5,on line,
  reset and store to box array]{Test}

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\useboxarray{1} & width of box 1: \boxarraygetwidth{\mylen}{1} \mylen\\
\useboxarray{2} & width of box 2: \boxarraygetwidth{\mylen}{2} \mylen
\end{tabular}
```

Test width of box 1: 30.35799pt
width of box 2: 0pt

N 2015-07-13 `\boxarraygetheight[⟨name⟩]{⟨macro⟩}{⟨index⟩}`

Assigns the height of the box with the given ⟨*index*⟩ number from the box array ⟨*name*⟩ to a ⟨*macro*⟩. If no ⟨*name*⟩ is given, the already existing `default` box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array ⟨*name*⟩ is used. If the ⟨*index*⟩ is out of range, the ⟨*macro*⟩ will be set to `0pt`.

```
\tcbox[size=small,colframe=blue!20,colback=yellow!5,on line,
  reset and store to box array]{Test}

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\useboxarray{1} & height of box 1: \boxarraygetheight{\mylen}{1} \mylen\\
\useboxarray{2} & height of box 2: \boxarraygetheight{\mylen}{2} \mylen
\end{tabular}
```

Test height of box 1: 9.89883pt
height of box 2: 0pt

N 2015-07-13 `\boxarraygetdepth[⟨name⟩]{⟨macro⟩}{⟨index⟩}`

Assigns the depth of the box with the given ⟨*index*⟩ number from the box array ⟨*name*⟩ to a ⟨*macro*⟩. If no ⟨*name*⟩ is given, the already existing `default` box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array ⟨*name*⟩ is used. If the ⟨*index*⟩ is out of range, the ⟨*macro*⟩ will be set to `0pt`.

```
\tcbox[size=small,colframe=blue!20,colback=yellow!5,on line,
  reset and store to box array]{Test}

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\useboxarray{1} & depth of box 1: \boxarraygetdepth{\mylen}{1} \mylen\\
\useboxarray{2} & depth of box 2: \boxarraygetdepth{\mylen}{2} \mylen
\end{tabular}
```

Test depth of box 1: 3.69884pt
depth of box 2: 0pt

N 2015-07-13 `\boxarraygettotalheight[⟨name⟩]{⟨macro⟩}{⟨index⟩}`

Assigns the total height of the box with the given ⟨*index*⟩ number from the box array ⟨*name*⟩ to a ⟨*macro*⟩. If no ⟨*name*⟩ is given, the already existing `default` box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array ⟨*name*⟩ is used. If the ⟨*index*⟩ is out of range, the ⟨*macro*⟩ will be set to `0pt`.

— continued from page 429 —
for demonstration purposes. With the tools of this section, a magazine type document could be created, but this still needs a lot of manual control.

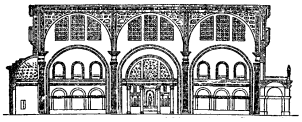
```
\boxarrayreset
\tcbox[size=small,colframe=blue!20,colback=yellow!5,on line,
  store to box array]{Test}

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\useboxarray{1} & total height of box 1: \boxarraygettotalheight{\mylen}{1} \mylen\\
\useboxarray{2} & total height of box 2: \boxarraygettotalheight{\mylen}{2} \mylen
\end{tabular}
```

Test total height of box 1: 13.59767pt
total height of box 2: 0pt

20.5 Leaflet Example

The following full application example can be used to create leaflets. Obviously, the code can be adapted and customized in many ways.

```
\documentclass[a4paper,landscape]{article}
\usepackage[noheadfoot,margin=0pt]{geometry}
\usepackage[skins,raster,magazine]{tcolorbox}
\usepackage{lipsum}

\newenvironment{leaflet}[1][]{%
  \begin{tcolorbox}[nobeforeafter,empty,colback=white,
    sharp corners,size=minimal,left=10mm,right=10mm,top=10mm,bottom=10mm,
    width=\textwidth/3,
    breakable,
    break at=\textheight,
    height fixed for=all,
    reset box array,
    store to box array,#1]}
  {\end{tcolorbox}%
    \begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3,raster equal skip=0pt,blankest]
      \tcbitem\consumeboxarray{5}
      \tcbitem\consumeboxarray{6}
      \tcbitem\consumeboxarray{1}
      \tcbitem\consumeboxarray{2}
      \tcbitem\consumeboxarray{3}
      \tcbitem\consumeboxarray{4}
    \end{tcbitemize}%
  }

\pagestyle{empty}
\begin{document}

\begin{leaflet}[underlay={\node[above=5mm,font=\footnotesize]
    at (frame.south) {- \arabic{tcbbreakpart} -};}]
  \includegraphics[width=\linewidth]{Basilica_5.png}
  \begin{center}
  \bfseries\LARGE Example
  \end{center}

  \section{Introduction}
  \lipsum[1]

  \section{Main Part A}
  \lipsum[2-8]

  \section{Main Part B}
  \lipsum[9-15]

  \section{Conclusion}
  \lipsum[16-18]
\end{leaflet}

\end{document}
```



Example

1 Introduction

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

2 Main Part A

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis. Donec nonummy pellentesque ante. Phasellus adipiscing semper elit. Proin fermentum massa ac quam. Sed diam turpis, molestie vitae, placerat a, molestie nec, leo. Maecenas lacinia. Nam ipsum ligula, eleifend at, accumsan nec, suscipit a, ipsum. Morbi blandit ligula feugiat magna. Nunc eleifend consequat lorem. Sed lacinia nulla vitae enim. Pellentesque tincidunt purus vel magna. Integer non enim. Praesent euismod nunc eu purus. Donec bibendum quam in tellus. Nullam cursus pulvinar lectus. Donec et mi. Nam vulputate metus eu enim. Vestibulum pellentesque felis eu massa.

Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt ultrices. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Integer tempus convallis augue. Etiam facilisis. Nunc elementum fermentum wisi. Aenean placerat. Ut imperdiet, enim sed gravida sollicitudin, felis odio placerat quam, ac pulvinar elit purus eget enim. Nunc vitae tortor. Proin tempus nibh sit amet nisl. Vivamus quis tortor vitae risus porta vehicula.

Fusce mauris. Vestibulum luctus nibh at lectus. Sed bibendum, nulla a faucibus semper, leo velit ultricies tellus, ac venenatis arcu wisi vel nisl. Vestibulum diam. Aliquam pellentesque, augue quis sagittis posuere, turpis lacus congue quam, in hendrerit risus eros eget felis. Maecenas eget erat in sapien mattis porttitor. Vestibulum porttitor. Nulla facilisi. Sed a turpis eu lacus commodo facilisis. Morbi fringilla, wisi in dignissim interdum, justo lectus sagittis dui, et vehicula libero dui cursus dui. Mauris tempor ligula sed lacus. Duis cursus enim ut augue. Cras ac magna. Cras nulla. Nulla egestas. Curabitur a leo. Quisque egestas wisi eget nunc. Nam feugiat lacus vel est. Curabitur consectetuer.

Suspendisse vel felis. Ut lorem lorem, interdum eu, tincidunt sit amet, laoreet vitae, arcu. Aenean faucibus pede eu ante. Praesent enim elit, rutrum at, molestie non, nonummy vel, nisl. Ut lectus eros, malesuada sit amet, fermentum eu, sodales cursus, magna. Donec eu purus. Quisque vehicula, urna

sed ultricies auctor, pede lorem egestas dui, et convallis elit erat sed nulla. Donec luctus. Curabitur et nunc. Aliquam dolor odio, commodo pretium, ultricies non, pharetra in, velit. Integer arcu est, nonummy in, fermentum faucibus, egestas vel, odio. Sed commodo posuere pede. Mauris ut est. Ut quis purus. Sed ac odio. Sed vehicula hendrerit sem. Duis non odio. Morbi ut dui. Sed accumsan risus eget odio. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Pellentesque non elit. Fusce sed justo eu urna porta tincidunt. Mauris felis odio, sollicitudin sed, volutpat a, ornare ac, erat. Morbi quis dolor. Donec pellentesque, erat ac sagittis semper, nunc dui lobortis purus, quis congue purus metus ultricies tellus. Proin et quam. Class aptent taciti sociosqu ad litora torquent per conubia nostra, per inceptos hymenaeos. Praesent sapien turpis, fermentum vel, eleifend faucibus, vehicula eu, lacus.

Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Donec odio elit, dictum in, hendrerit sit amet, egestas sed, leo. Praesent feugiat sapien aliquet odio. Integer vitae justo. Aliquam vestibulum fringilla lorem. Sed neque lectus, consectetuer at, consectetuer sed, eleifend ac, lectus. Nulla facilisi. Pellentesque eget lectus. Proin eu metus. Sed porttitor. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Suspendisse eu lectus. Ut mi mi, lacinia sit amet, placerat et, mollis vitae, dui. Sed ante tellus, tristique ut, iaculis eu, malesuada ac, dui. Mauris nibh leo, facilisis non, adipiscing quis, ultrices a, dui.

3 Main Part B

Morbi luctus, wisi viverra faucibus pretium, nibh est placerat odio, nec commodo wisi enim eget quam. Quisque libero justo, consectetuer a, feugiat vitae, porttitor eu, libero. Suspendisse sed mauris vitae elit sollicitudin malesuada. Maecenas ultricies eros sit amet ante. Ut venenatis velit. Maecenas sed mi eget dui varius euismod. Phasellus aliquet volutpat odio. Vestibulum ante ipsum primis in faucibus orci luctus et ultrices posuere cubilia Curae; Pellentesque sit amet pede ac sem eleifend consectetuer. Nullam elementum, urna vel imperdiet sodales, elit ipsum pharetra ligula, ac pretium ante justo a nulla. Curabitur tristique arcu eu metus. Vestibulum lectus. Proin mauris. Proin eu nunc eu urna hendrerit faucibus. Aliquam auctor, pede consequat laoreet varius, eros tellus scelerisque quam, pellentesque hendrerit ipsum dolor sed augue. Nulla nec lacus.

Suspendisse vitae elit. Aliquam arcu neque, ornare in, ullamcorper quis, commodo eu, libero. Fusce sagittis erat at erat tristique mollis. Maecenas sapien libero, molestie et, lobortis in, sodales eget, dui. Morbi ultrices rutrum lorem. Nam elementum ullamcorper leo. Morbi dui. Aliquam sagittis. Nunc placerat. Pellentesque tristique sodales est. Maecenas imperdiet lacinia velit. Cras non urna. Morbi eros pede, suscipit ac, varius vel, egestas non, eros. Praesent malesuada, diam id pretium elementum, eros sem dictum tortor, vel consectetuer odio sem sed wisi.

Sed feugiat. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Ut pellentesque augue sed urna. Vestibulum diam eros, fringilla et, consectetuer eu, nonummy id, sapien. Nullam at lectus. In sagittis ultrices mauris. Curabitur malesuada erat sit amet massa. Fusce blandit. Aliquam erat volutpat. Aliquam euismod. Aenean vel lectus. Nunc imperdiet justo nec dolor.

Etiam euismod. Fusce facilisis lacinia dui. Suspendisse potenti. In mi erat, cursus id, nonummy sed, ullamcorper eget, sapien. Praesent pretium, magna in eleifend egestas, pede pede pretium lorem, quis consectetuer tortor sapien facilisis magna. Mauris quis magna varius nulla scelerisque imperdiet. Aliquam non quam. Aliquam porttitor quam a lacus. Praesent vel arcu ut tortor cursus volutpat. In vitae pede quis diam bibendum placerat. Fusce elementum convallis neque. Sed dolor orci, scelerisque ac, dapibus nec, ultricies ut, mi. Duis nec dui quis leo sagittis commodo.

Aliquam lectus. Vivamus leo. Quisque ornare tellus ullamcorper nulla. Mauris porttitor pharetra tortor. Sed fringilla justo sed mauris. Mauris tellus. Sed non leo. Nullam elementum, magna in cursus sodales, augue est scelerisque sapien, venenatis con-

Nulla in ipsum. Praesent eros nulla, congue vitae, euismod ut, commodo a, wisi. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Aenean nonummy magna non leo. Sed felis erat, ullamcorper in, dictum non, ultricies ut, lectus. Proin vel arcu a odio lobortis euismod. Vestibulum ante ipsum primis in faucibus orci luctus et ultrices posuere cubilia Curae; Proin ut est. Aliquam odio. Pellentesque massa turpis, cursus eu, euismod nec, tempor congue, nulla. Duis viverra gravida mauris. Cras tincidunt. Curabitur eros ligula, varius ut, pulvinar in, cursus faucibus, augue.

4 Conclusion

Nulla mattis luctus nulla. Duis commodo velit at leo. Aliquam vulputate magna et leo. Nam vestibulum ullamcorper leo. Vestibulum condimentum rutrum mauris. Donec id mauris. Morbi molestie justo et pede. Vivamus eget turpis sed nisl cursus tempor. Curabitur mollis sapien condimentum nunc. In wisi nisl, malesuada at, dignissim sit amet, lobortis

in, odio. Aenean consequat arcu a ante. Pellentesque porta elit sit amet orci. Etiam at turpis nec elit ultricies imperdiet. Nulla facilisi. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Suspendisse viverra aliquam risus. Nullam pede justo, molestie nonummy, scelerisque eu, facilisis vel, arcu.

Curabitur tellus magna, porttitor a, commodo a, commodo in, tortor. Donec interdum. Praesent scelerisque. Maecenas posuere sodales odio. Vivamus metus lacus, varius quis, imperdiet quis, rhoncus a, turpis. Etiam ligula arcu, elementum a, venenatis quis, sollicitudin sed, metus. Donec nunc pede, tincidunt in, venenatis vitae, faucibus vel, nibh. Pellentesque wisi. Nullam malesuada. Morbi ut tellus ut pede tincidunt porta. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Etiam congue neque id dolor.

Donec et nisl at wisi luctus bibendum. Nam interdum tellus ac libero. Sed sem justo, laoreet vitae, fringilla at, adipiscing ut, nibh. Maecenas non sem quis tortor eleifend fermentum. Etiam id tortor ac mauris porta vulputate. Integer porta neque vitae massa. Maecenas tempus libero a libero posuere dictum. Vestibulum ante ipsum primis in faucibus orci luctus et ultrices posuere cubilia Curae; Aenean quis mauris sed elit commodo placerat. Class aptent taciti sociosqu ad litora torquent per conubia nostra, per inceptos hymenaeos. Vivamus rhoncus tincidunt libero. Etiam elementum pretium justo. Vivamus est. Morbi a tellus eget pede tristique commodo. Nulla nisl. Vestibulum sed nisl eu sapien cursus rutrum.

21 Library LIB poster

The main purpose of this library is to support creation of single page posters with `tcolorboxes`.

A `tcbposter` → P. 436 is a `tikzpicture` where `tcolorboxes` can be placed in a column oriented manner using `\posterbox` → P. 441 commands. This base concept is more or less copied from the great `baposter` package.

The LIB raster library, see Section 16 on page 304, can produce similar looking results and may be more appropriate depending on the actual project.

- The LIB raster library has a flow oriented concept, just like a convential text flow. The text flow (box flow) is a merely endless ribbon which gets broken into lines (and paragraphs) and the lines are broken into pages. LIB raster shapes the boxes to convenient sizes to fill lines and pages in a pleasant way.
- The LIB tcbposter library supports a quite free placement of boxes inside a page. Basically, boxes are placed like `nodes` are placed inside a `tikzpicture`. In contrast to LIB raster, this is a *single* page and not a flow of pages. The poster is divided into columns and rows. There is a more or less gentle force to use the columns (or spans of columns) for positioning and sizing while the row placement is completely optional.

The creation of this library was motivated by Ignasi.

! Inside a `tikzpicture` there should be no embedded `tikzpictures`. This rule is violated by the LIB poster library. Be aware that there may be some unwanted interactions between the main `tikzpicture` and the embedded ones inside the `tcolorboxes`.

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```
\tcbuselibrary{poster}
```

This also loads the libraries LIB skins, see Section 10 on page 168, LIB breakable, see Section 19 on page 398, LIB magazine, see Section 20 on page 425, and LIB fitting, see Section 22 on page 449.

21.1 Overview

Click me to see the tutorial

You get the best overview of the LIB poster library and its facilities, if you look at the **Poster Tutorial** which is part of the `tcolorbox` documentation:
`tcolorbox-tutorial-poster.pdf`

21.2 Main Poster Environment

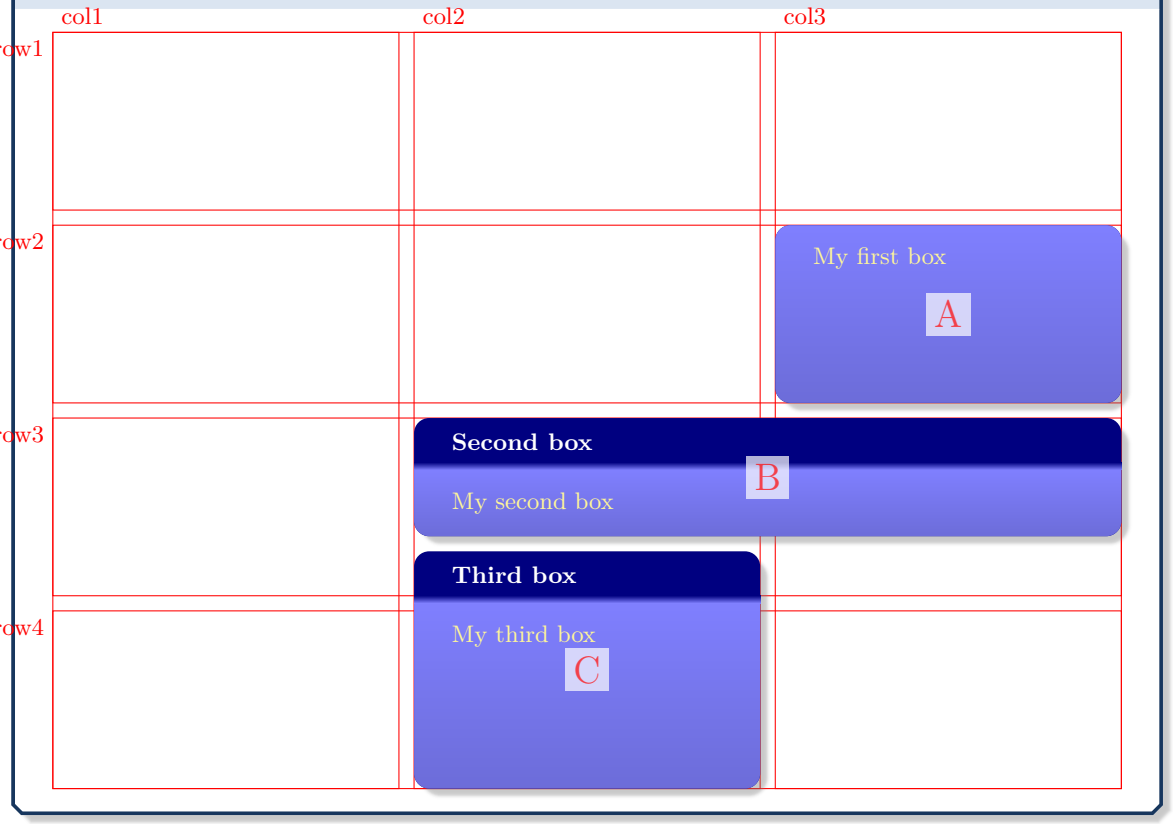
N 2017-07-03

```
\begin{tcbposter}[⟨options⟩]
  ⟨environment content⟩
\end{tcbposter}
```

This creates a `tikzpicture` environment with suitable additional settings defined by the given ⟨*options*⟩. Basically, `\posterbox` → P. 441 and `posterboxenv` → P. 441 are used to place `tcolorboxes` as nodes into the environment, but additional Ti*k*Z code can also be used. As ⟨*options*⟩ all `/tcb/posterset/` keys may be applied, namely:

- `/tcb/posterset/poster` → P. 438: poster settings like columns, rows, sizes...
- `/tcb/posterset/coverage` → P. 439 and `/tcb/posterset/no coverage` → P. 439: settings for a surrounding `tcolorbox` for background and margins.
- `/tcb/posterset/boxes` → P. 440: style of the `tcolorboxes` used for the poster.
- `/tcb/posterset/fontsize` → P. 440: scaling of used fonts.

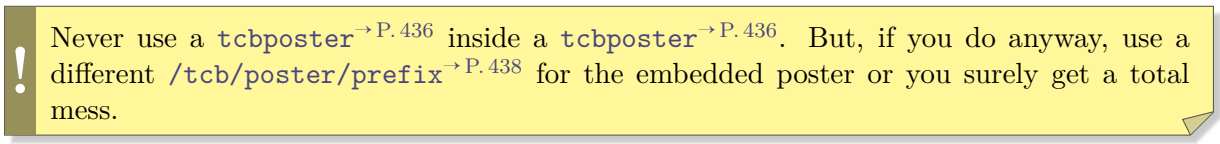
```
\begin{tcbposter}[
  poster = {showframe,height=10cm,spacing=2mm},
  boxes  = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
]
\posterbox{name=A,column=3,row=2}{My first box}
\posterbox[adjusted title=Second box]
          {name=B,column=2,span=2,below=A}{My second box}
\posterbox[adjusted title=Third box]
          {name=C,column=2,between=B and bottom}{My third box}
\end{tcbposter}
```



Inside tcbposter→ P. 436, there are several predefined Ti*k*Z nodes. These nodes share a common /tcb/poster/prefix→ P. 438 which is TCBPOSTER@ by default. This prefix is used to discriminate the poster nodes from local nodes of any embedded tikzpicture environment. You will never need this prefix using \posterbox→ P. 441 and its placement options, but if you want to refer to a predefined node using pure Ti*k*Z code. The predefined nodes (shown without prefix) are:

- poster: defines the bounding box of the poster (without the coverage).
- top: top position plus row spacing
- bottom: bottom position minus row spacing
- middle: vertical middle position
- col1, col2, ...: bounding box of column 1, column 2, ...
- row1, row2, ...: bounding box of row 1, row 2, ...

Further nodes are defined using the /tcb/posterloc/name→ P. 442 option.



Never use a tcbposter→ P. 436 inside a tcbposter→ P. 436. But, if you do anyway, use a different /tcb/poster/prefix→ P. 438 for the embedded poster or you surely get a total mess.

There are several properties inside a tcbposter→ P. 436 which may be useful for advanced code (skip the following on first reading):

- \tcbposterwidth: Width of the poster (without margins).
- \tcbposterheight: Height of the poster (without margins).
- \tcbpostercolspacing: Column distance.
- \tcbposterrowspacing: Row distance.
- \tcbpostercolumns: Column quantity.
- \tcbposterrows: Row quantity.
- \tcbpostercolwidth: Width of a column.
- \tcbposterrowheight: Height of a row.

N 2017-07-03 \tcbposterset{⟨*options*⟩}

Sets options for every following tcbposter→ P. 436 inside the current TEX group. For example, the numbers for rows and columns may be defined for the whole document by this:

```
\tcbposterset{poster={columns=2,rows=3}}
```

See tcbposter→ P. 436 for all feasible options.

21.3 Poster Settings

N 2017-07-03 `/tcb/posterset/poster={`⟨*option list*⟩`}` (style, no default)

This option can be applied inside `tcbposter` → P. 436 and `\tcbposterset` → P. 437 to set the given poster ⟨*option list*⟩, e.g.

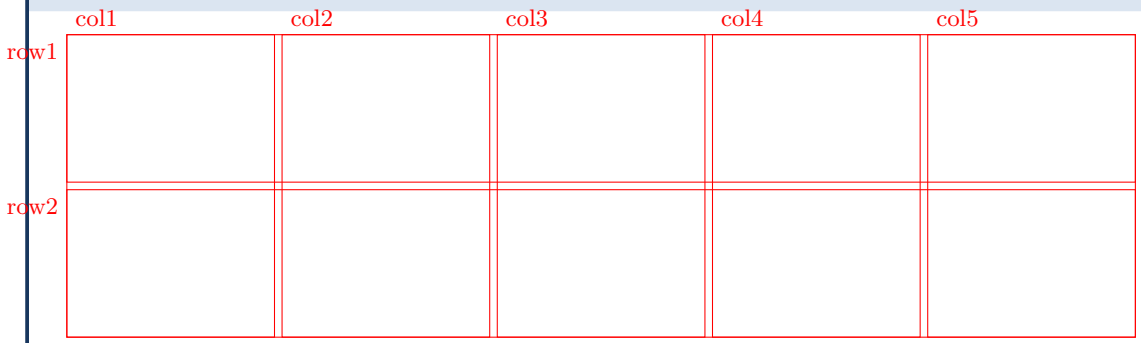
```
\tcbposterset{poster={width=20cm,height=15cm}}
```

For the ⟨*option list*⟩, see the following keys.

N 2017-07-03 `/tcb/poster/columns=`⟨*number*⟩ (no default, initially `3`)

Sets the ⟨*number*⟩ of columns for a `tcbposter`.

```
\begin{tcbposter}[
  poster = {showframe,columns=5,rows=2,spacing=1mm,height=4cm},
]
\end{tcbposter}
```



N 2017-07-03 `/tcb/poster/rows=`⟨*number*⟩ (no default, initially `4`)

Sets the ⟨*number*⟩ of rows for a `tcbposter`.

N 2017-07-03 `/tcb/poster/colspacing=`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `4mm`)

Sets ⟨*length*⟩ as distance between columns.

N 2017-07-03 `/tcb/poster/rowspacing=`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `4mm`)

Sets ⟨*length*⟩ as distance between rows.

N 2017-07-03 `/tcb/poster/spacing=`⟨*length*⟩ (style, no default, initially `4mm`)

Sets ⟨*length*⟩ as distance between columns and rows.

N 2017-07-03 `/tcb/poster/showframe=true|false` (default `true`, initially `false`)

Displays a red auxiliary mesh as optical support during poster creation. Also, every `/tcb/posterloc/name` → P. 442 is displayed.

N 2017-07-03 `/tcb/poster/width=`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `\linewidth`)

Sets ⟨*length*⟩ as width of the poster. For a typical poster, this has not to be set manually. Especially, if `/tcb/posterset/coverage` → P. 439 is present, use `coverage={width=`⟨*length*⟩`}` instead to change the overall width.

N 2017-07-03 `/tcb/poster/height=`⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Sets ⟨*length*⟩ as height of the poster. For a typical poster, this has not to be set manually, but is set automatically to an appropriate value. If `/tcb/posterset/coverage` → P. 439 is present, use only one if any option `coverage={height=`⟨*length*⟩`}` or `poster={height=`⟨*length*⟩`}`.

N 2017-07-03 `/tcb/poster/prefix=`⟨*name*⟩ (no default, initially `TCBPOSTER@`)

⟨*name*⟩ is set as prefix for any TikZ node which is generated automatically by the LIB poster library. This encompasses predefined nodes like `top`, `bottom`, ..., and nodes defined by using `/tcb/posterloc/name` → P. 442. Also, see Section 21.2 on page 436. For a typical poster, this value can stay as it is.

21.4 Coverage

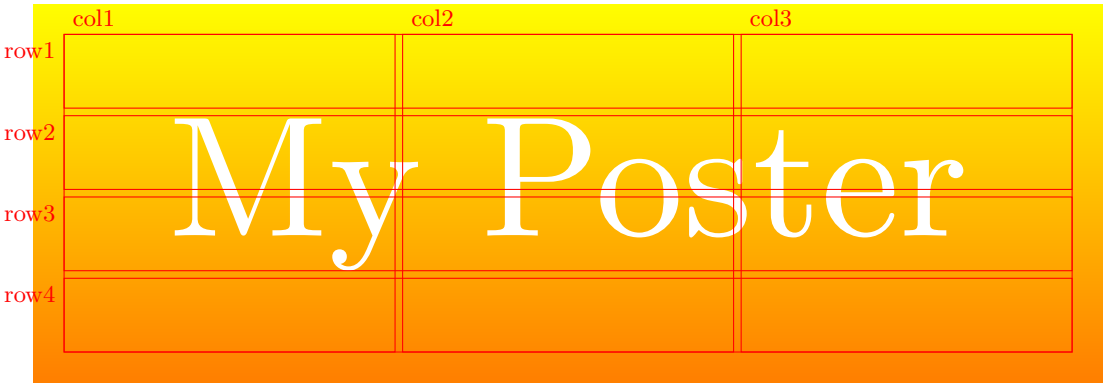
N 2017-07-03 `/tcb/posterset/coverage={⟨option list⟩}` (style, no default)

This option can be applied inside `tcbposter` → P. 436 and `\tcbposterset` → P. 437 and it adds an optional coverage for the poster which is a surrounding `tcolorbox` with the given ⟨*option list*⟩. Here, margins and background settings for the poster can be given. The *coverage* has several default `tcolorbox` settings suitable for the purpose:

```
enhanced, frame hidden, sharp corners, boxsep=0pt, boxrule=0pt,
top=4mm, bottom=4mm, left=4mm, right=4mm,
toptitle=2mm, bottomtitle=2mm, colback=white
```

The ⟨*option list*⟩ can contain any `tcolorbox` option.

```
\begin{tcbposter}[
  poster   = {showframe,spacing=1mm},
  coverage = {height=5cm,
              interior style={top color=yellow,bottom color=yellow!50!red},
              watermark text={My Poster},watermark color=white,
             },
]
\end{tcbposter}
```



- For a typical poster, the option `/tcb/spread` → P. 99 will use the whole page for the poster coverage.
- Poster margins can be adapted by `/tcb/left` → P. 44, `/tcb/right` → P. 45, `/tcb/top` → P. 47, `/tcb/bottom` → P. 48.
- Poster background can be changed by `/tcb/colback` → P. 32, `/tcb/interior style` → P. 169, `/tcb/interior style image` → P. 170, etc.
- Do not use `/tcb/poster/width` → P. 438 and `/tcb/poster/height` → P. 438 in combination with a *coverage*. Note that you may use `/tcb/width` → P. 39 and `/tcb/height` → P. 58 inside the *coverage* ⟨*option list*⟩. Note that this also is not necessary when `/tcb/spread` → P. 99 is applied.

N 2017-07-03 `/tcb/posterset/no coverage` (style, no value, initially set)

Removes the surrounding `tcolorbox` completely.

21.5 Common Box Settings

N 2017-07-03 `/tcb/posterset/boxes={`⟨*option list*⟩`}` (style, no default)

This option can be applied inside `tcbposter` → P. 436 and `\tcbposterset` → P. 437 and it is used to set up the style of the `tcolorbox`es inside the poster. The ⟨*option list*⟩ can contain any `tcolorbox` option, but box size options are not assumed to be useful here, because the size will be determined by the placement options.

```
\begin{tcbposter}[
  poster   = {spacing=2mm,columns=3,rows=2},
  coverage = {height=5cm,
              interior style={top color=yellow,bottom color=yellow!50!red},
             },
  boxes    = {sharp corners=downhill,arc=3mm,boxrule=1mm,
              colback=white,colframe=cyan,
              title style={left color=black,right color=cyan},
              fonttitle=\bfseries}
]
  \posterbox[adjusted title=First]{column=1,row=1,span=2}{First box}
  \posterbox[adjusted title=Second]{column=1,row=2,span=2}{Second box}
  \posterbox[adjusted title=Third]{column=3,row=1,rowspan=2}{Third box}
\end{tcbposter}
```

21.6 Font Scaling

N 2017-07-03 `/tcb/posterset/fontsize=`⟨*length*⟩ (style, no default, initially unset)

This option can be applied inside `tcbposter` → P. 436 and `\tcbposterset` → P. 437. It uses `/tcb/fit basedim` → P. 455 and `/tcb/fit fontsize macros` → P. 456 to redefine `\normalsize` to ⟨*length*⟩ and all other standard font size macros like `\small` and `\large` accordingly. This needs a freely scalable font family like `lmodern` to work. If `/tcb/posterset/fontsize` is not applied, there standard font size macros are not changed in any way.

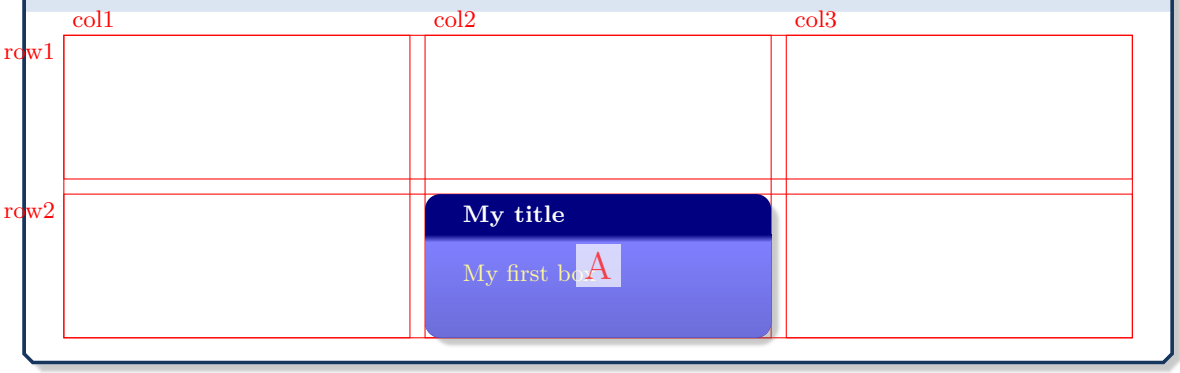
```
\begin{tcbposter}[
  poster   = {spacing=2mm,columns=3,rows=2},
  coverage = {height=5cm,
              interior style={top color=yellow,bottom color=yellow!50!red},
             },
  fontsize = 15pt,   % <--- \normalsize is now 15pt
]
...
```

21.7 Box Placement

N 2017-07-03 `\posterbox[`⟨*options*⟩`]{`⟨*placement*⟩`}{`⟨*box content*⟩`}`

Inside a `tcbposter` → P. 436 environment, this places a `tcolorbox` with additional `tcolorbox` ⟨*options*⟩ and the given ⟨*box content*⟩ at a place determined by ⟨*placement*⟩. All ⟨*placement*⟩ options are described in the following. Note that ⟨*box content*⟩ cannot contain *verbatim* material, see `posterboxenv`.

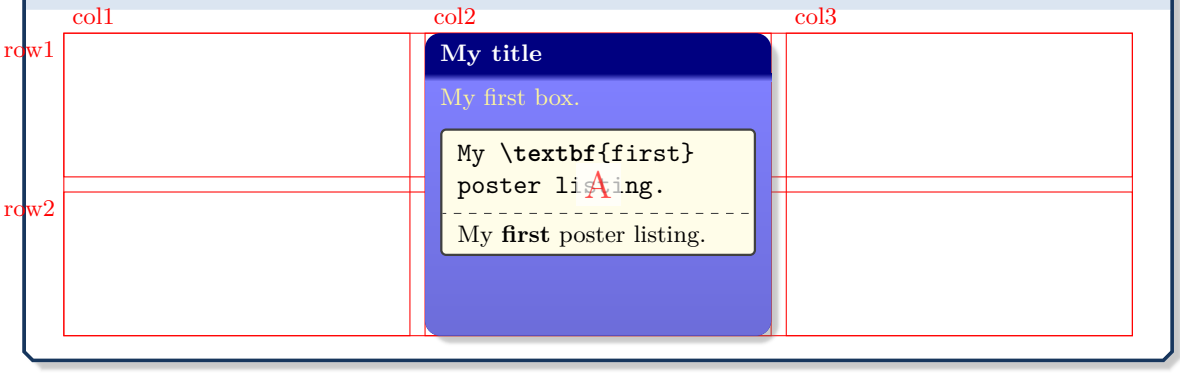
```
\begin{tcbposter}[
  poster = {showframe,height=4cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
  boxes  = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
]
\posterbox[title=My title]{name=A,column=2,row=2}{My first box}
\end{tcbposter}
```



N 2017-07-03 `\begin{posterboxenv}[`⟨*options*⟩`]{`⟨*placement*⟩`}`
⟨*environment content*⟩
`\end{posterboxenv}`

This is the environment version of `\posterbox`, i.e. inside a `tcbposter` → P. 436 environment, this places a `tcolorbox` with additional `tcolorbox` ⟨*options*⟩ and the given ⟨*environment content*⟩ at a place determined by ⟨*placement*⟩. In contrast to `\posterbox`, the ⟨*environment content*⟩ is allowed to contain *verbatim* material. Note that the implementation of `\posterbox` is more efficient than the implementation of `posterboxenv`.

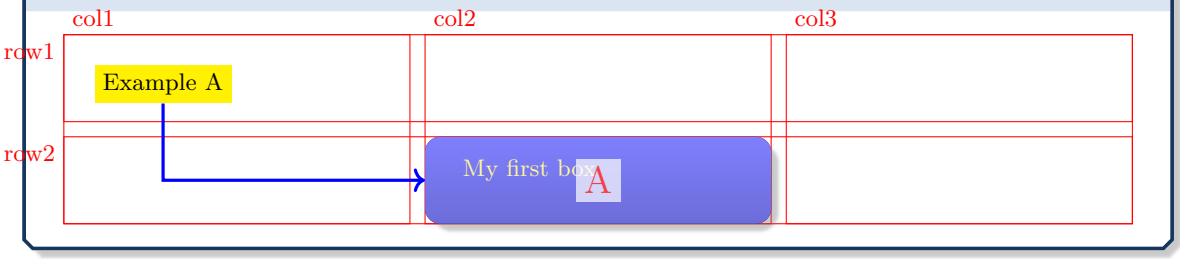
```
\begin{tcbposter}[
  poster = {showframe,height=4cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
  boxes  = {size=small,beamer,
            colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
]
\begin{posterboxenv}[title=My title]{name=A,column=2,between=top and bottom}
  My first box.
  \begin{tcblisting}{size=small,colback=yellow!10}
My \textbf{first}
poster listing.
  \end{tcblisting}
\end{posterboxenv}
\end{tcbposter}
```



N 2017-07-03 **/tcb/posterloc/name=⟨name⟩** (no default, initially @)

Sets ⟨name⟩ as reference for the current \posterbox → P. 441 or posterboxenv → P. 441. A TikZ shape name is constructed automatically as combination of /tcb/poster/prefix → P. 438 and ⟨name⟩.

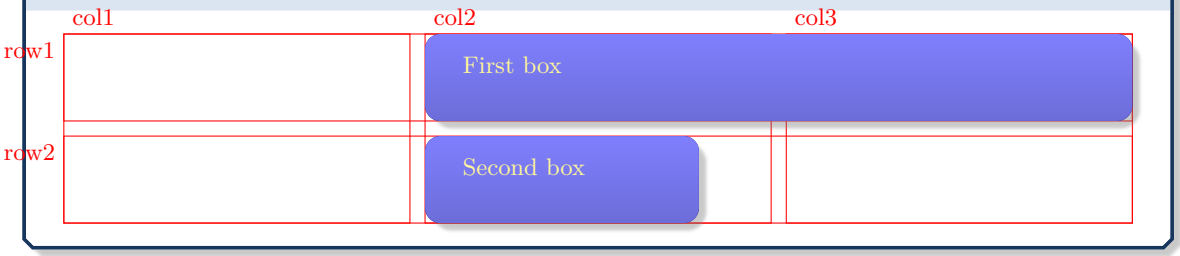
```
\begin{tcbposter}[
  poster = {showframe,height=2.5cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
  boxes  = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
]
\posterbox{name=A,column=2,row=2}{My first box}
\node[below right=4mm,fill=yellow] (X) at (TCBPOSTER@poster.north west) {Example A};
\draw[blue,very thick,->] (X) |- (TCBPOSTER@A);
\end{tcbposter}
```



N 2017-07-03 **/tcb/posterloc/column=⟨number⟩** (no default, initially 1)

Places the box at the column denoted by ⟨number⟩. If /tcb/posterloc/span → P. 443 is not 1, the box is aligned to the left side of column ⟨number⟩.

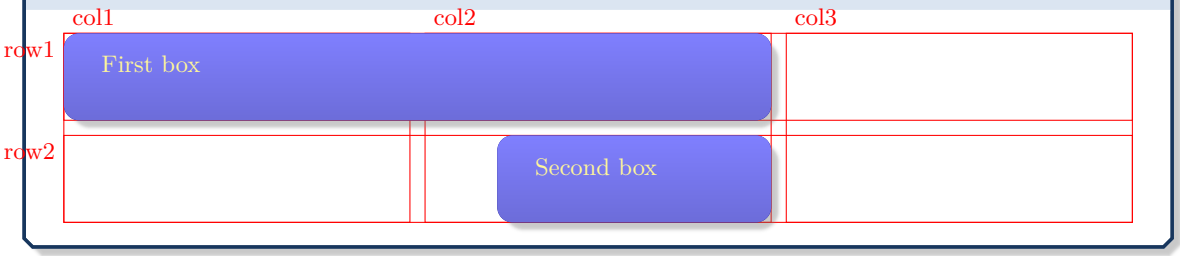
```
\begin{tcbposter}[
  poster = {showframe,height=2.5cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
  boxes  = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
]
\posterbox{row=1,column=2,span=2}{First box}
\posterbox{row=2,column=2,span=0.8}{Second box}
\end{tcbposter}
```



N 2017-07-03 **/tcb/posterloc/column*=⟨number⟩** (no default, initially unset)

Places the box at the column denoted by ⟨number⟩. If /tcb/posterloc/span → P. 443 is not 1, the box is aligned to the right side of column ⟨number⟩.

```
\begin{tcbposter}[
  poster = {showframe,height=2.5cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
  boxes  = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
]
\posterbox{row=1,column*=2,span=2}{First box}
\posterbox{row=2,column*=2,span=0.8}{Second box}
\end{tcbposter}
```



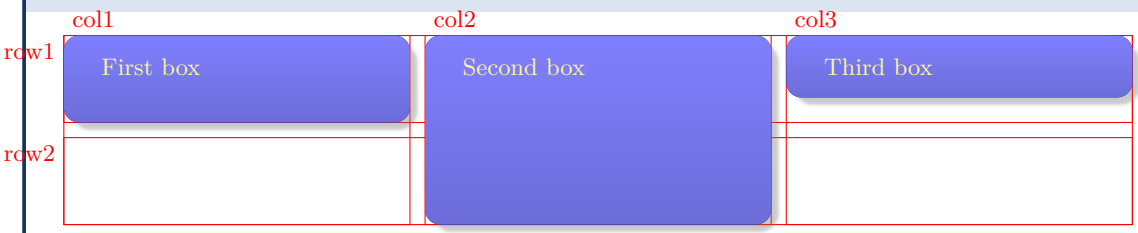
N 2017-07-03 **/tcb/posterloc/span=⟨*number*⟩** (no default, initially 1)

Sets the width of the current box to span ⟨*number*⟩ columns. ⟨*number*⟩ is also allowed to be a real number like 0.5 or 1.7. See /tcb/posterloc/column → P. 442 and /tcb/posterloc/column* → P. 442 for examples.

N 2017-07-03 **/tcb/posterloc/row=⟨*number*⟩** (no default, initially unset)

If this option is applied, the box is placed at the row denoted by ⟨*number*⟩. Also, the height is set as fixed according to /tcb/posterloc/rowspan.

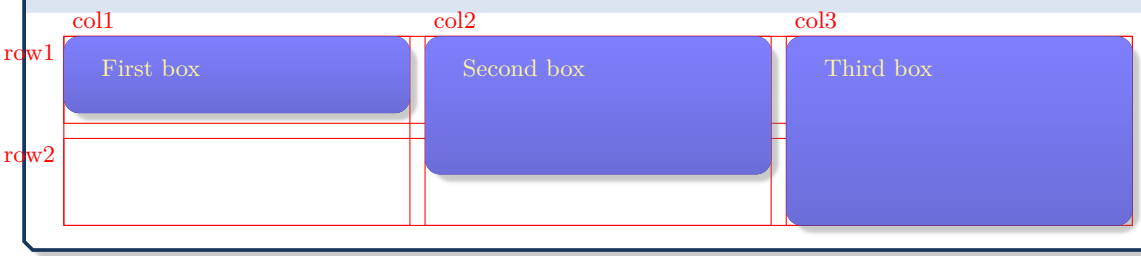
```
\begin{tcbposter}[
  poster = {showframe,height=2.5cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
  boxes  = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
]
\posterbox{row=1,column=1}{First box}
\posterbox{row=1,column=2,rowspan=2}{Second box}
\posterbox[natural height]{row=1,column=3}{Third box}
\end{tcbposter}
```



N 2017-07-03 **/tcb/posterloc/rowspan=⟨*number*⟩** (no default, initially 1)

Sets the height of the current box to span ⟨*number*⟩ rows. ⟨*number*⟩ is also allowed to be a real number like 0.5 or 1.7.

```
\begin{tcbposter}[
  poster = {showframe,height=2.5cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
  boxes  = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
]
\posterbox{row=1,column=1,rowspan=0.9}{First box}
\posterbox{row=1,column=2,rowspan=1.5}{Second box}
\posterbox{row=1,column=3,rowspan=2}{Third box}
\end{tcbposter}
```



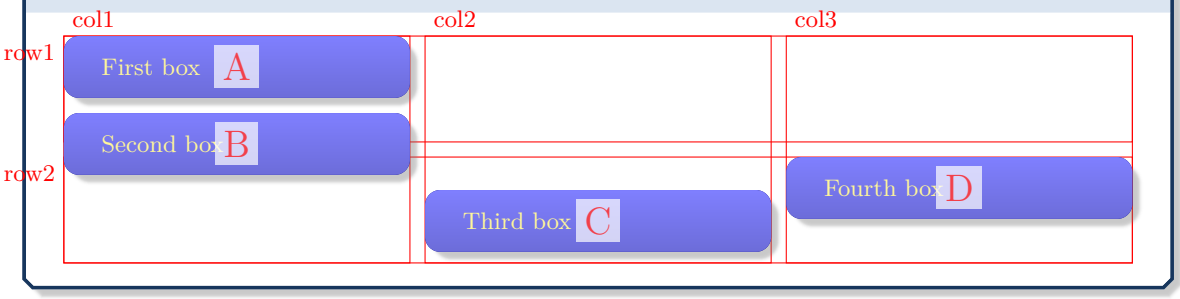
N 2017-07-03 **/tcb/posterloc/fixed height** (no value, initially 0pt)

Sets the height of the current box span rows as denoted by /tcb/posterloc/rowspan. This can be used, if not /tcb/posterloc/row, but another height placement option is applied.

N 2017-07-03 **/tcb/posterloc/below=**⟨*name*⟩ (no default, initially **top**)

The box is placed below another box with the given ⟨*name*⟩. Also, ⟨*name*⟩ can be a predefined node, see Section 21.2 on page 436.

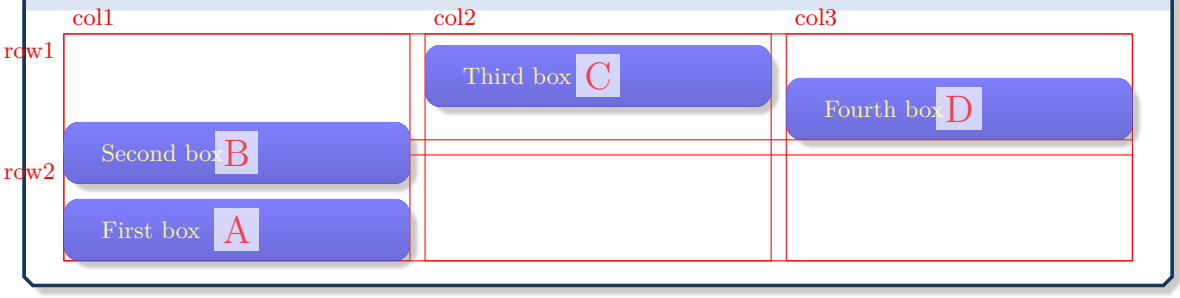
```
\begin{tcbposter}[
  poster = {showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
  boxes  = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
]
\posterbox{name=A,column=1,below=top}{First box}
\posterbox{name=B,column=1,below=A}{Second box}
\posterbox{name=C,column=2,below=B}{Third box}
\posterbox{name=D,column=3,below=row1}{Fourth box}
\end{tcbposter}
```



N 2017-07-03 **/tcb/posterloc/above=**⟨*name*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

The box is placed above another box with the given ⟨*name*⟩. Also, ⟨*name*⟩ can be a predefined node, see Section 21.2 on page 436.

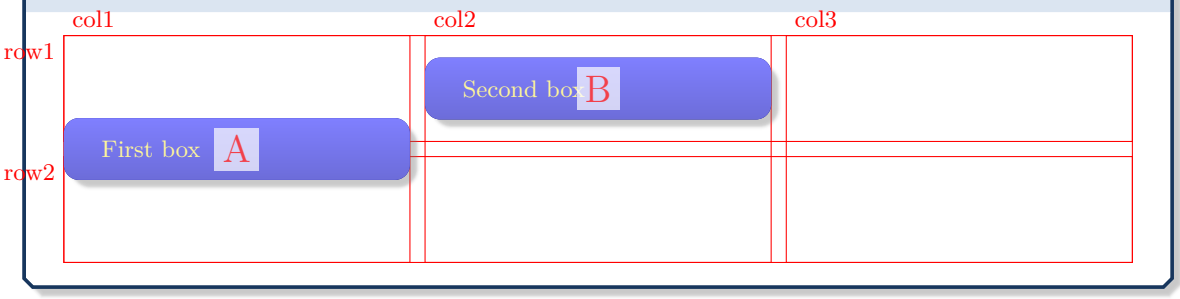
```
\begin{tcbposter}[
  poster = {showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
  boxes  = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
]
\posterbox{name=A,column=1,above=bottom}{First box}
\posterbox{name=B,column=1,above=A}{Second box}
\posterbox{name=C,column=2,above=B}{Third box}
\posterbox{name=D,column=3,above=row2}{Fourth box}
\end{tcbposter}
```



N 2017-07-03 **/tcb/posterloc/at=⟨*name*⟩** (no default, initially unset)

The box is placed at the position with the given ⟨*name*⟩. This is quite likely a predefined node, see Section 21.2 on page 436.

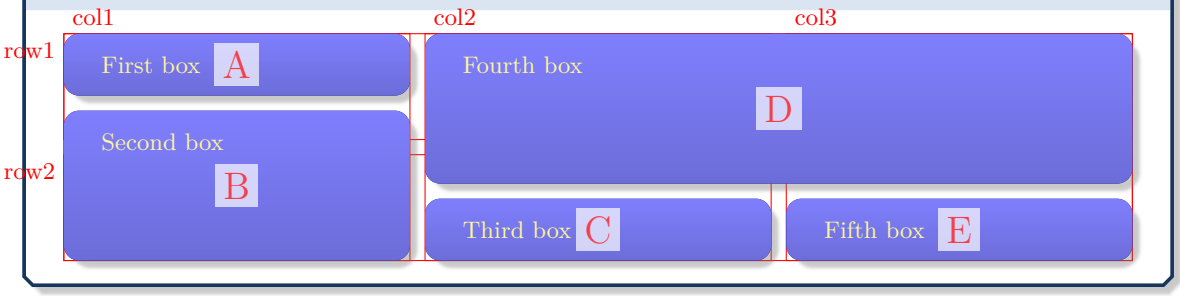
```
\begin{tcbposter}[
  poster = {showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
  boxes  = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
]
\posterbox{name=A,column=1,at=middle}{First box}
\posterbox{name=B,column=2,at=row1}{Second box}
\end{tcbposter}
```



N 2017-07-03 **/tcb/posterloc/between=⟨*name1*⟩ and ⟨*name2*⟩** (no default, initially unset)

The box is placed below a box ⟨*name1*⟩ and above another box ⟨*name2*⟩. Also, ⟨*name1*⟩ and ⟨*name2*⟩ can be predefined nodes, see Section 21.2 on page 436.

```
\begin{tcbposter}[
  poster = {showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
  boxes  = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
]
\posterbox{name=A,column=1,below=top}{First box}
\posterbox{name=B,column=1,between=A and bottom}{Second box}
\posterbox{name=C,column=2,above=bottom}{Third box}
\posterbox{name=D,column=2,between=top and C,span=2}{Fourth box}
\posterbox{name=E,column=3,between=D and bottom}{Fifth box}
\end{tcbposter}
```



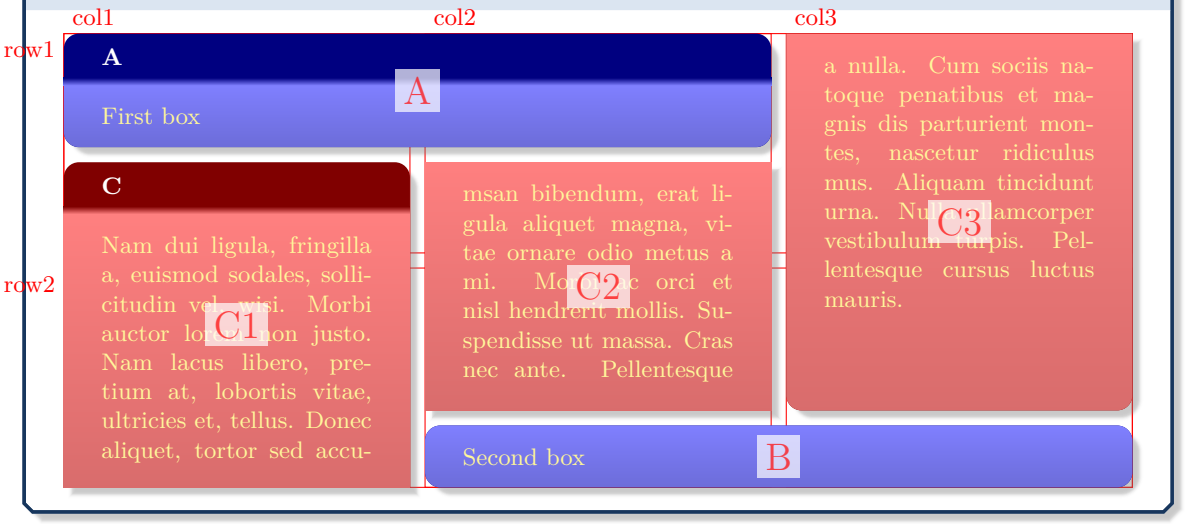
N 2017-07-03 **/tcb/posterloc/sequence=**⟨*sequence*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

The box is broken into partial boxes. These partial boxes are placed following the given ⟨*sequence*⟩ of placements. The feasible syntax for the ⟨*sequence*⟩ is:

⟨*column a*⟩ `between` ⟨*name a1*⟩ `and` ⟨*name a2*⟩ `then`
⟨*column b*⟩ `between` ⟨*name b1*⟩ `and` ⟨*name b2*⟩ `then`
⟨*column c*⟩ `between` ⟨*name c1*⟩ `and` ⟨*name c2*⟩ `then`...

Obviously, this places the first part box at ⟨*column a*⟩ between ⟨*name a2*⟩ and ⟨*name a2*⟩. The second box part is placed at ⟨*column b*⟩ between ⟨*name b2*⟩ and ⟨*name b2*⟩, and so on.

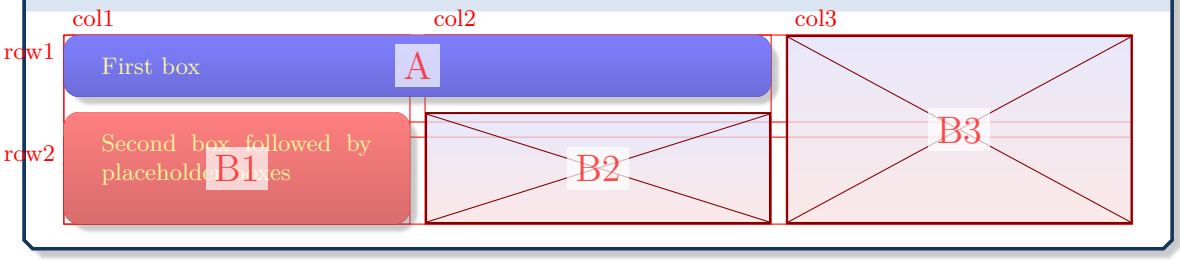
```
\begin{tcbposter}[
  poster = {showframe,height=6cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
  boxes  = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
]
\posterbox[adjusted title=A]{name=A,column=1,below=top,span=2}{First box}
\posterbox{name=B,column=2,above=bottom,span=2}{Second box}
\posterbox[adjusted title=C,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!50]{
  name=C, sequence=1 between A and bottom then
                  2 between A and B then
                  3 between top and B
  }{\lipsum[2]}
\end{tcbposter}
```



N 2017-07-03 **/tcb/placeholder** (style, no value)

If the box content of a /tcb/posterloc/sequence → P. 446 is too short to fill all reserved box parts, the empty boxes are drawn with the /tcb/placeholder style. This style can be redefined, e.g. to /tcb/blankest → P. 266, if nothing should be drawn for empty boxes.

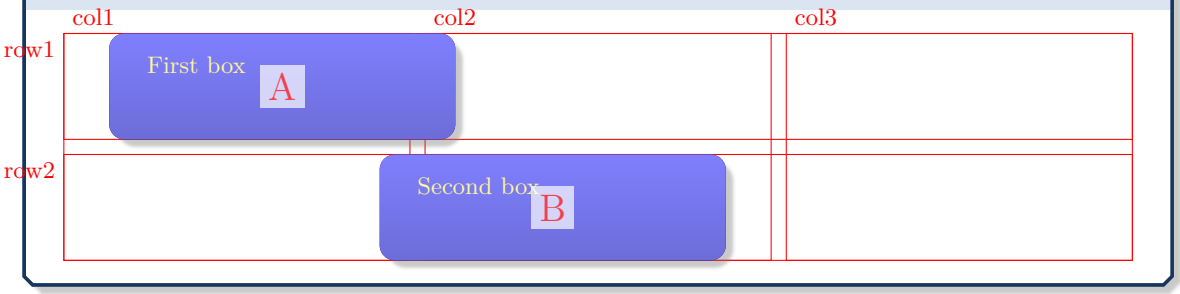
```
\begin{tcbposter}[
  poster = {showframe,height=2.5cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
  boxes  = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
]
\posterbox{name=A,column=1,below=top,span=2}{First box}
\posterbox[colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!50]{
  name=B, sequence=1 between A and bottom then
                   2 between A and bottom then
                   3 between top and bottom
  }{Second box followed by placeholder boxes}
\end{tcbposter}
```



N 2017-07-03 **/tcb/posterloc/xshift=**⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially 0pt)

Horizontal shift of a box by ⟨*length*⟩.

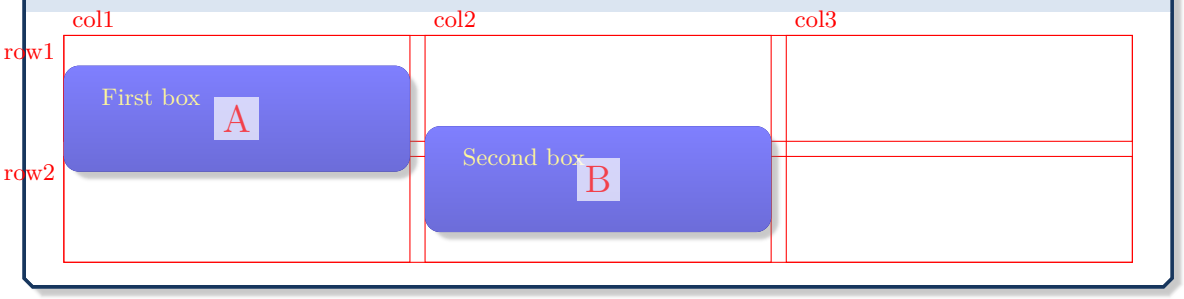
```
\begin{tcbposter}[
  poster = {showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
  boxes  = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
]
\posterbox{name=A,column=1,row=1,xshift=6mm}{First box}
\posterbox{name=B,column=2,row=2,xshift=-6mm}{Second box}
\end{tcbposter}
```



N 2017-07-03 **/tcb/posterloc/yshift=**⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially `0pt`)

Vertical shift of a box by ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\begin{tcbposter}[
  poster = {showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
  boxes  = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
]
\posterbox{name=A,column=1,row=1,yshift=-4mm}{First box}
\posterbox{name=B,column=2,row=2,yshift=4mm}{Second box}
\end{tcbposter}
```



The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```
\tcbuselibrary{fitting}
```

22.1 Macros of the Library

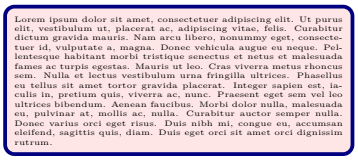
`\tcboxfit[⟨options⟩]{⟨box content⟩}`

Creates a colored box where the given ⟨*box content*⟩ is fitted to the width and height of the box. A `tcboxfit` has to have a fixed height. If no fixed height is given, a square box is constructed. In principle, most ⟨*options*⟩ for a `tcolorbox` → P. 12 can be used for `\tcboxfit` with some restrictions. A `\tcboxfit` cannot have a lower part and cannot be broken.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum} \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\tcbset{colframe=blue!50!black,colback=red!10!white,
    boxsep=0pt,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,left=1mm,right=1mm,
    fit algorithm=hybrid*,raster equal skip=1mm}
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,raster valign=bottom]
  \tcboxfit[height=8cm]{\lipsum[1]}
  \tcboxfit[height=4cm]{\lipsum[1]}
  \tcboxfit[height=2cm]{\lipsum[1]}
\end{tcbraster}
\begin{tcbraster}[colback=green!10!white,boxsep=1mm]
  \tcboxfit[height=4cm]{\lipsum[2]}
  \tcboxfit[height=4cm,title=With a title]{\lipsum[2]}
\end{tcbraster}
```

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.



Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

With a title

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

U 2020-04-24 **\tcbfitdim** (read-only LaTeX length)

This is a LaTeX length adapted automatically by most variants of /tcb/fit algorithm → P. 460. Therefore, it never is to be changed by the user, but may be applied read-only. The \tcbfitdim corresponds to the font size and may also be used to calculate box margins or other distances in dependency. The initial and maximum value for \tcbfitdim is set by /tcb/fit basedim → P. 455.

\tcbfontsize{⟨*factor*⟩}

Selects a font size inside a tcolorbox which is scaled with the given ⟨*factor*⟩ relative to \tcbfitdim. Also see /tcb/fit fontsize macros → P. 456

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,size=small,
  colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit basedim=10pt]
  {\tcbfontsize{0.25} Very tiny,}\\
  {\tcbfontsize{0.5} Small,}\\
  {\tcbfontsize{1} Normal,}\\
  {\tcbfontsize{2} Large,}\\
  {\tcbfontsize{4} Huge.}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,size=small,
  colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit basedim=10pt,
    fit to height=2cm]
  {\tcbfontsize{0.25} Very tiny,}\\
  {\tcbfontsize{0.5} Small,}\\
  {\tcbfontsize{1} Normal,}\\
  {\tcbfontsize{2} Large,}\\
  {\tcbfontsize{4} Huge.}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

22.2 Producing \tcboxfit Commands

\newtcboxfit[⟨*init options*⟩]{\⟨*name*⟩}[⟨*number*⟩][⟨*default*⟩]{⟨*options*⟩}

Creates a new macro \⟨*name*⟩ based on \tcboxfit → P. 449. Basically, \newtcboxfit operates like \newcommand. The new macro \⟨*name*⟩ optionally takes ⟨*number*⟩+1 arguments, where ⟨*default*⟩ is the default value for the optional first argument. The ⟨*options*⟩ are given to the underlying tcboxfit. The ⟨*init options*⟩ allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

```
\newtcboxfit{\mybox}{colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,width=4cm,
  height=1.5cm,halign=center}

\mybox{This is my own box.}\par
\mybox{This is my own box with more text
       to be written.}
```

This is my own box.

This is my own box with more text to be written.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\newtcboxfit{\mybox}[2]{colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  boxsep=1mm,left=0mm,right=0mm,top=0mm,
  bottom=0mm,halign=center,valign=center,
  nobeforeafter,width=#1,height=#2}

\mybox{2.5cm}{1cm}{First box}%
\mybox{2.5cm}{1cm}{Second box with more text}\\
\mybox{5cm}{2cm}{Third box with text}\\
\mybox{5cm}{3cm}{\lipsum[1]}
```

First box

Second box with more text

Third box with text

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\newtcboxfit{\mybox}[2][]{colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,
  width=#2,height=#2/3*2,#1}

\mybox[colback=yellow]{5cm}%
  {\lipsum[2]}
```

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

\renewtcboxfit[⟨*init options*⟩]{\⟨*name*⟩}[⟨*number*⟩][⟨*default*⟩]{⟨*options*⟩}

Operates like \newtcboxfit, but based on \renewcommand instead of \newcommand. An existing macro is redefined.

\NewTCBoxFit[⟨*init options*⟩]{\⟨*name*⟩}{⟨*specification*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩}

Creates a new command \⟨*name*⟩ based on \tcboxfit → P. 449. Basically, \NewTCBoxFit operates like \NewDocumentCommand. This means, the new command \⟨*name*⟩ is constructed with the given argument ⟨*specification*⟩. An error is issued if \⟨*name*⟩ has already been defined. The ⟨*options*⟩ are given to the underlying \tcboxfit → P. 449.
Note that /tcb/savedelimiter → P. 31 is set to the given ⟨*name*⟩ automatically.
The ⟨*init options*⟩ allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}

\NewTCBoxFit{\mybox}{ O{} m !o }
 {colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,
  width=#2,height=#2/3*2,
  IfValueT={#3}{height=#3},
  #1}

\mybox[colback=yellow]{5cm}%
  {\lipsum[2]}

\mybox[colback=yellow]{5cm}[4cm]{\lipsum[2]}
```

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

\RenewTCBoxFit[⟨*init options*⟩]{\⟨*name*⟩}{⟨*specification*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩}

Operates like \NewTCBoxFit, but based on \RenewDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. An existing command is redefined.

\ProvideTCBoxFit[⟨*init options*⟩]{\⟨*name*⟩}{⟨*specification*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩}

Operates like \NewTCBoxFit, but based on \ProvideDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The command \⟨*name*⟩ is only created if it is not already defined.

\DeclareTCBoxFit[⟨*init options*⟩]{\⟨*name*⟩}{⟨*specification*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩}

Operates like \NewTCBoxFit, but based on \DeclareDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The new command \⟨*name*⟩ is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.

`\NewTotalTCBoxFit[`⟨*init options*⟩`]{\`⟨*name*⟩`}{`⟨*specification*⟩`}{`⟨*options*⟩`}{`⟨*content*⟩`}`

Creates a new command \⟨*name*⟩ based on `\tcboxfit` → P. 449. In contrast to `\NewTCBoxFit` → P. 452, also the ⟨*content*⟩ of the `tcboxfit` is specified.
Basically, `\NewTotalTCBoxFit` operates like `\NewDocumentCommand`. This means, the new command \⟨*name*⟩ is constructed with the given argument ⟨*specification*⟩. An error is issued if \⟨*name*⟩ has already been defined. The ⟨*options*⟩ are given to the underlying `\tcboxfit` → P. 449 which is filled with the specified ⟨*content*⟩.
Note that `/tcb/savedelimiter` → P. 31 is set to the given ⟨*name*⟩ automatically.
The ⟨*init options*⟩ allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}

\NewTotalTCBoxFit{\multibox}{ O{} m O{10} m }
 {nobeforeafter,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,width=#2,height=#2/3*2,
  valign=center,#1}
 { \foreach \n in {1,...,#3} { #4} }

\multibox{5cm}{I shall not repeat.}
\multibox[colframe=blue!75!white]{5cm}[20]{I shall not repeat.}\\
\multibox[colback=yellow,height=5cm]{14cm}[100]{I shall not repeat.}
```

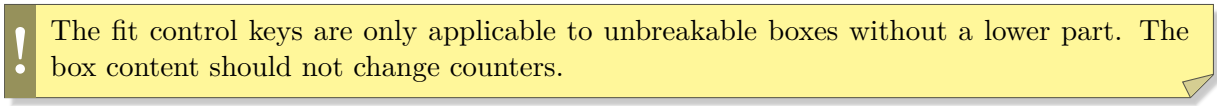
I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat.

I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat.
I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat.
I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat.
I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat.
I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat.
I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat.
I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat.
I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat.
I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat.
I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat.

I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat. I shall not repeat.

22.3 Option Keys of the Library

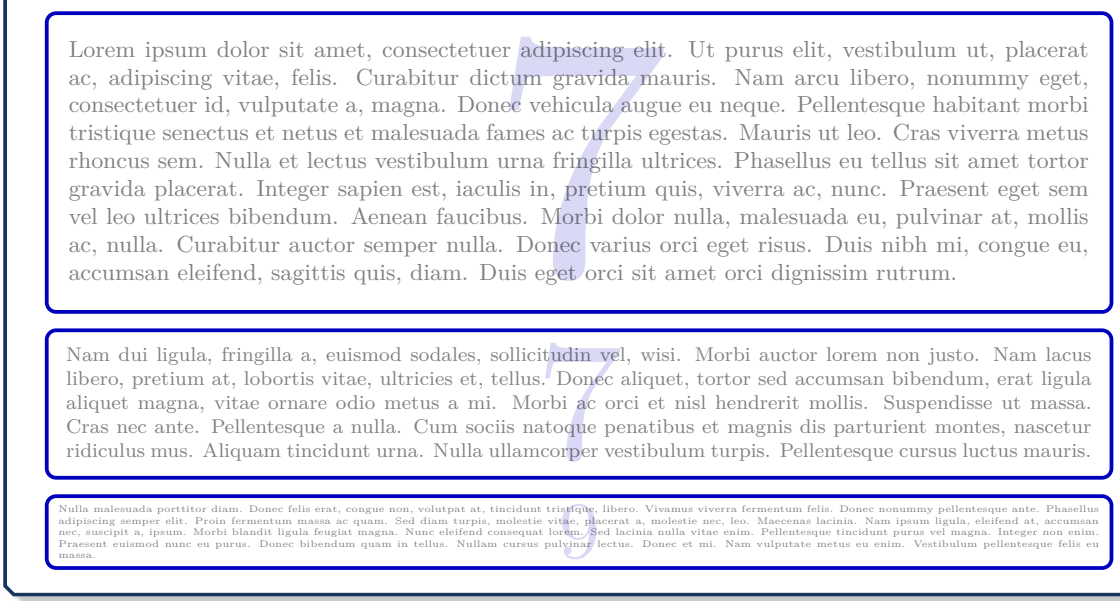
The font size for the content of a box with fixed width and fixed height can be adjusted automatically. This is called the *fitbox capture mode*. Note that the fit control algorithm constructs a series of versions for the box and selects the "best". Therefore, the compilation time is quite longer than for a normal box. The algorithm will fail, if a different selected font size does not change the overall size of the box content. The `\tcboxfit` → P. 449 macro uses this algorithm by default.



`/tcb/fit` (style, initially unset)

Sets the `/tcb/capture` → P. 105 mode to `fitbox`, i. e. enables the font size adjustment algorithm. Thereby, a `tcolorbox` → P. 12 acts like `\tcboxfit` → P. 449 where the given ⟨*box content*⟩ is fitted to the width and height of the box. Therefore, the box has to have a fixed height. If no fixed height is given, a square box is constructed. The font dimension `\tcbfitdim` → P. 450 can also be used to adjust the margins of the box since a box with a tiny font may not need large margins. The number of constructed boxes is saved to the macro `\tcbfitsteps` for analysis.

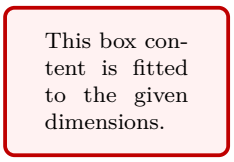
```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\newtcolorbox{fitting}[2][]{fit,height=#2,boxsep=1pt,valign=center,opacityupper=0.5,
  top=0.4\tcbfitdim,bottom=0.4\tcbfitdim,left=0.75\tcbfitdim,right=0.75\tcbfitdim,
  enhanced,watermark text={\tcbfitsteps},colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,#1}

\begin{fitting}{4cm}
\lipsum[1]
\end{fitting}

\begin{fitting}{2cm}
\lipsum[2]
\end{fitting}

\begin{fitting}{1cm}
\lipsum[3]
\end{fitting}
```



/tcb/fit to=⟨*width*⟩ and ⟨*height*⟩ (style, initially unset)

Shortcut for using /tcb/fit → P. 454 and setting the ⟨*width*⟩ and ⟨*height*⟩ values separately.

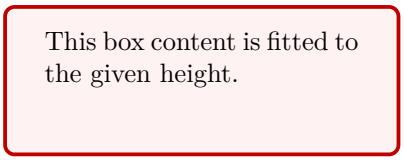
```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to=3cm and 2cm]
  This box content is fitted to the given
  dimensions.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



/tcb/fit to height=⟨*height*⟩ (style, initially unset)

Shortcut for using /tcb/fit → P. 454 and setting the ⟨*height*⟩ value separately.

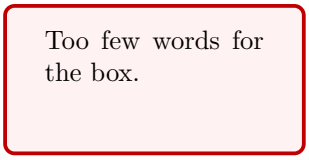
```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to height=2cm]
  This box content is fitted to the given
  height.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

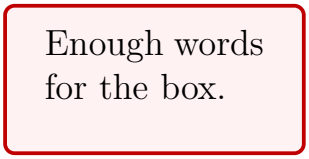


/tcb/fit basedim=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially 10pt)

Sets the starting font dimension for the font size adjustment algorithm to ⟨*length*⟩. The algorithm never enlarges this dimension. Therefore, the final \tcbfitdim → P. 450 is identical to or small than ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to=4cm and 2cm]
  Too few words for the box.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to=4cm and 2cm,
  fit basedim=50pt]
  Enough words for the box.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

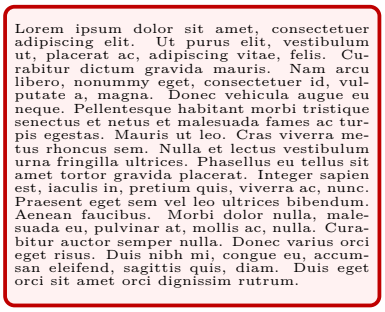




/tcb/fit skip=⟨*real value*⟩ (no default, initially 1.2)

Sets the skip value of the selected font to ⟨*real value*⟩ times \tcbfitdim → P. 450.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,
  right=1mm,boxsep=0mm}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to=5cm and 4cm,
  fit skip=1.0  ]
  \lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/fit fontsize macros` (style, initially unset)

Redefines the standard LaTeX font size macros `\tiny`, `\scriptsize`, `\footnotesize`, `\small`, `\normalsize`, `\large`, `\Large`, `\LARGE`, `\huge`, and `\Huge`, to set font sizes relative to the current `\tcbfitdim` → P. 450. Note that the display skip values for mathematical formulas are respected by the redefined macros. Also see `\tcbfontsize` → P. 450.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,
  right=1mm,boxsep=0mm}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to height=4cm]
  {\Large\bfseries This text is
              not adapted:\par}
  \lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to height=4cm,
  fit fontsize macros ]
  {\Large\bfseries This text is adapted:\par}
  \lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This text is not adapted:

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

This text is adapted:

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,
  right=1mm,boxsep=0mm}

\let\realHuge=\Huge

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit basedim=7pt,
  fontupper=\normalsize,
  fit fontsize macros]
The relative relative font size macros
are also usable without the
\textit{fit} algorithm.\par
{\Huge Adapted Huge} ---
{\realHuge Original Huge}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

The relative relative font size macros are also usable without the *fit* algorithm.

Adapted Huge – Original Huge

```
\tcbset{size=fbox,colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black}

\tcboxfit[height=5cm,
  fit fontsize macros,
  fonttitle=\normalsize\bfseries,
  title=Adapted title]
{\lipsum[2]}
```

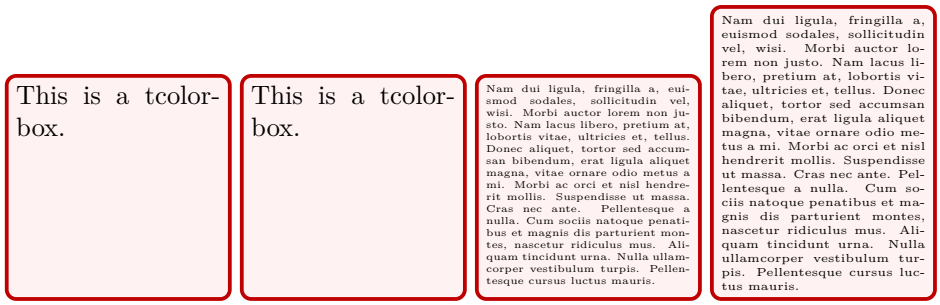
Adapted title

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

`/tcb/fit height plus=`⟨*dimension*⟩ (no default, initially `0pt`)

The box is allowed to enlarge the fixed height up to the given ⟨*dimension*⟩, before a font size fit is applied. An optional `/tcb/fit width plus` is tried after the height adaption.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,
  right=1mm,boxsep=0mm,width=3cm,height=3cm,nobeforeafter}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit,fit height plus=1cm]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit,fit height plus=1cm]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/fit width plus=`⟨*dimension*⟩ (no default, initially `0pt`)

The box is allowed to enlarge the fixed width up to the given ⟨*dimension*⟩, before a font size fit is applied. An optional `/tcb/fit height plus` is tried before the width adaption.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,
  right=1mm,boxsep=0mm,width=3cm,height=3cm,nobeforeafter}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit,fit width plus=1cm]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit,fit width plus=1cm]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Typically but not necessarily, the optional title of a `tcolorbox` is not part of the fit operation. If a `/tcb/fit width plus` is applied, the title is also adapted to the new width. If counters are increased inside the title text, they may be increased more than one time. To avoid this, you are encouraged to use `/tcb/phantom` → P. 110 or `/tcb/step and label` → P. 111 to set counters or use automatic numbering, see Subsection 5.1 from page 124.

`/tcb/fit width from=`⟨*min*⟩ `to` ⟨*max*⟩ (style, no default)

Sets the box width to ⟨*min*⟩ and allows the width to grow up to ⟨*max*⟩.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,
  right=1mm,boxsep=0mm,height=4cm}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit,width=\linewidth/2]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}\par
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit width from=\linewidth/2 to \linewidth]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}\par
```

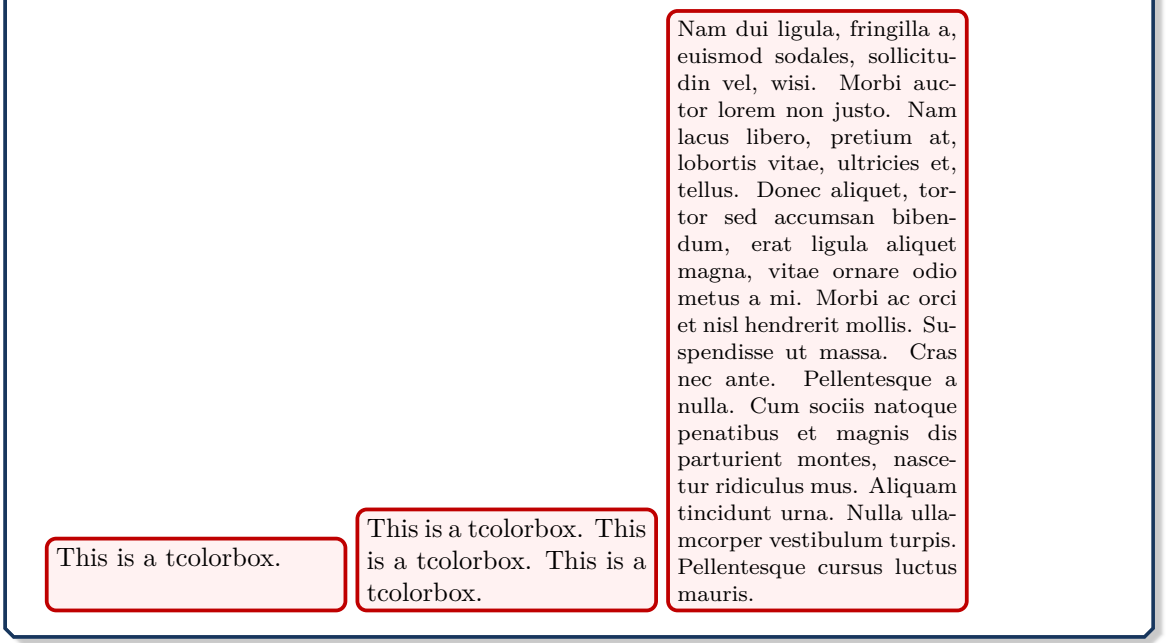
Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

`/tcb/fit height from=`⟨*min*⟩ `to` ⟨*max*⟩ (style, no default)

Sets the box height to ⟨*min*⟩ and allows the height to grow up to ⟨*max*⟩.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\newtcolorbox{mybox}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,top=1mm,
  bottom=1mm,right=1mm,boxsep=0mm,width=4cm,nobeforeafter,
  fit height from=1cm to 8cm}

\begin{mybox}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}
This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}
\lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}
```



`/tcb/fit algorithm=`⟨*name*⟩ (no default, initially `fontsize`)

Sets the algorithm for the fitting process *after* optionally width and height are adapted. In the following, adapting the font size means adapting `\tcbfitdim` → P. 450. Feasible values for ⟨*name*⟩ are:

- `fontsize` (initial): The algorithm is a bisection method that adapts the font size until certain stop conditions are fulfilled. This is the most time-consuming method but it is robust and gives pleasant results.

  ! The used font has to be freely scalable for this method! Other content than text is not scaled down. The aspect ratio is fully garanteed.

N 2014-10-29

- `fontsize*`: First, the `fontsize` algorithm is applied. If the font was scaled down and the resulting height is too small, the box is squeezed to fit the area.

  ! The used font has to be freely scalable for this method! Other content than text may be slightly rescaled. The aspect ratio cannot be fully garanteed.

- `areasize`: The algorithm calculates the area size for the text without scaling the font. The text box is shaped for the needed aspect ratio in one or two steps. Finally, it is scaled down with a standard `\resizebox` macro.

  ! The used font has not to be scalable. Every box content is scaled down. The aspect ratio cannot be fully garanteed.

N 2014-10-29

- `areasize*`: The `areasize` algorithm is applied, but if the content was scaled down and the resulting height is too small, the box is squeezed to fit the area.

  ! The used font has not to be scalable. Every box content is scaled down. The aspect ratio cannot be fully garanteed.

- `hybrid`: First, this algorithm estimates the needed font size in one or two steps. Then an `areasize` fitting as above is a applied.

  ! The used font has to be freely scalable for this method! Other content than text may be slightly rescaled. The aspect ratio cannot be fully garanteed.

N 2014-10-29

- `hybrid*`: First, this algorithm estimates the needed font size in one or two steps. Then an `areasize*` fitting as above is a applied.

  ! The used font has to be freely scalable for this method! Other content than text may be slightly rescaled. The aspect ratio cannot be fully garanteed.

- `squeeze`: The text box is brutally scaled down to fit.

  ! The aspect ratio is very likely to be horrible. You should not use this method for final documents.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\newtcboxfit{\mybox}[1]{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,top=1mm,
  bottom=1mm,right=1mm,boxsep=0mm,width=3.5cm,height=7cm,nobeforeafter,
  before upper=\textcolor{blue}{\rule{5mm}{5mm}}\ ,
  enhanced,watermark text={\tcbfitsteps},
  fonttitle=\bfseries,adjusted title={#1},fit algorithm=#1}

\mybox{fontsize}{\lipsum[2]}\hfill
\mybox{hybrid}{\lipsum[2]}\hfill
\mybox{areasize}{\lipsum[2]}\hfill
\mybox{squeeze}{\lipsum[2]}

Quality \dotfill versus \dotfill Speed
```

fontsize

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

hybrid

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

areasize

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

squeeze

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

Quality ..... versus ..... Speed

```
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\newtcboxfit{\mybox}[2]{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,top=1mm,
  size=tight,width=7.2cm,height=5cm,nobeforeafter,
  before upper=\textcolor{blue}{\rule{5mm}{5mm}}\ ,
  enhanced,fonttitle=\bfseries,adjusted title={#2},fit algorithm=#1}

\mybox{hybrid}{hybrid (possible gap at end)}{\lipsum[1]}\hfill
\mybox{hybrid*}{hybrid* (no gap but possibly squeezed)}{\lipsum[1]}
```

hybrid (possible gap at end)

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

hybrid* (no gap but possibly squeezed)

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

! The following options set control parameters for the fit algorithm. Mainly, they apply to the `fontsize` variant, see `/tcb/fit algorithm` → P. 460. The options should be seen as experimental and are likely to change in future versions, if necessary.

`/tcb/fit maxstep`=⟨*number*⟩ (no default, initially `20`)

Sets the maximal step size for the font size adjustment algorithm. In normal situations, the algorithm stops before reaching the intial value of 20 steps. If the box content does not shrink, this value prevents an endless loop.

`/tcb/fit maxfontdiff`=⟨*dimension*⟩ (no default, initially `0.1pt`)

The algorithm stops, if the font size is determined within a deviation of ⟨*dimension*⟩.

`/tcb/fit maxfontdiffgap`=⟨*dimension*⟩ (no default, initially `1pt`)

The algorithm stops, if the number of lines is determined and the font size is determined within a deviation of ⟨*dimension*⟩.

`/tcb/fit maxwidthdiff`=⟨*dimension*⟩ (no default, initially `1pt`)

The algorithm stops, if the (optionally) flexible box width is determined within a deviation of ⟨*dimension*⟩.

`/tcb/fit maxwidthdiffgap`=⟨*dimension*⟩ (no default, initially `10pt`)

The algorithm stops, if the number of lines is determined and the (optionally) flexible box width is determined within a deviation of ⟨*dimension*⟩.

`/tcb/fit warning`=⟨*value*⟩ (no default, initially `off`)

Typically, the fit control algorithm constructs several auxiliary boxes to determine the optimal one. If not switched off, the construction of the auxiliary boxes may produce many `hbox` warnings. This option key changes the `\hbadness` value.

- `off`: Most of `'Underfull \hbox'` and `'Overfull \hbox'` warnings are switched off (including the ones for the finally used box).
- `on`: All warnings for all auxiliary boxes are displayed.
- `final`: Only warnings for the finally used box are displayed. Note that an additional box has to be contructed for theses messages.

23 Library LIB hooks

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```
\tcbuselibrary{hooks}
```

For the skin related options, the library LIB skins has to be loaded separately.

23.1 Concept of Hooks

A hook is a placeholder in some LaTeX code where additional code can be added. For example, the LaTeX macro `\AtBeginDocument` adds code to a hook which is placed at the beginning of every document.

Several option keys of `tcolorbox` allow providing some code which is added to specific places of a colored box. For example, `/tcb/before upper` → P. 70 places code before the content of the upper part. A following usage of this key overwrites any prior settings.

The library LIB hooks extends `/tcb/before upper` → P. 70 and several more existing keys to "hookable" versions, e. g. `/tcb/before upper app` → P. 464 and `/tcb/before upper pre` → P. 464. The "hookable" keys don't overwrite prior settings but either *app*end or *pre*pend the newly given code to the existing code.

The general naming convention (with some small exceptions) is:

- ⟨*option key*⟩ `app`: works like ⟨*option key*⟩ but *app*ends its code to the existing code.
- ⟨*option key*⟩ `pre`: works like ⟨*option key*⟩ but *pre*pends its code to the existing code.

If the original ⟨*option key*⟩ is used (again), all code will be overwritten. Therefore, the order of the option key usage is crucial.

```
% \usepackage{array,tabularx}
\newcolumntype{Y}{>{\raggedleft\arraybackslash}X}% see tabularx
\tcbset{enhanced,fonttitle=\bfseries\large,fontupper=\normalsize\sffamily,
  colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black,colbacktitle=Salmon!30!white,
  coltitle=black,center title,
  tabularx={X||Y|Y|Y|Y||Y},% this sets `before upper' and `after upper'
  before upper app={Group & One & Two & Three & Four & Sum\\\hline\hline}  }

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My table]
Red   & 1000.00 & 2000.00 &  3000.00 &  4000.00 & 10000.00\\\hline
Green & 2000.00 & 3000.00 &  4000.00 &  5000.00 & 14000.00\\\hline
Blue  & 3000.00 & 4000.00 &  5000.00 &  6000.00 & 18000.00\\\hline\hline
Sum   & 6000.00 & 9000.00 & 12000.00 & 15000.00 & 42000.00
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My table

Group	One	Two	Three	Four	Sum
Red	1000.00	2000.00	3000.00	4000.00	10000.00
Green	2000.00	3000.00	4000.00	5000.00	14000.00
Blue	3000.00	4000.00	5000.00	6000.00	18000.00
Sum	6000.00	9000.00	12000.00	15000.00	42000.00

23.2 Box Content Additions

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 4.11 from page 69.

`/tcb/before title app`=⟨*code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*code*⟩ to `/tcb/before title` → P. 69 *after* the color and font settings and *before* the content of the title.

`/tcb/before title pre`=⟨*code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*code*⟩ to `/tcb/before title` → P. 69 *after* the color and font settings and *before* the content of the title.

`/tcb/after title app`=⟨*code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*code*⟩ to `/tcb/after title` → P. 69 *after* the content of the title.

`/tcb/after title pre`=⟨*code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*code*⟩ to `/tcb/after title` → P. 69 *after* the content of the title.

`/tcb/before upper app`=⟨*code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*code*⟩ to `/tcb/before upper` → P. 70 or `/tcb/before upper*` → P. 70 *after* the color and font settings and *before* the content of the upper part.

`/tcb/before upper pre`=⟨*code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*code*⟩ to `/tcb/before upper` → P. 70 or `/tcb/before upper*` → P. 70 *after* the color and font settings and *before* the content of the upper part.

`/tcb/after upper app`=⟨*code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*code*⟩ to `/tcb/after upper` → P. 71 or `/tcb/after upper*` → P. 71 *after* the content of the upper part.

`/tcb/after upper pre`=⟨*code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*code*⟩ to `/tcb/after upper` → P. 71 or `/tcb/after upper*` → P. 71 *after* the content of the upper part.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{theorems}

\begin{tcolorbox}[
  ams align,%  this sets `before upper*' and `after upper*'
  colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black,
  before upper app={\frac{2}{\sqrt{2}}&=\sqrt{2}.\\},
  after upper pre={\\\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)&=1.},
]
  \sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} &= \infty.\\
  \int x^2 ~\text{d}x &= \frac13 x^3 + c.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

$$\frac{2}{\sqrt{2}} = \sqrt{2}. \tag{22}$$

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \tag{23}$$

$$\int x^2 \, \mathrm{d}x = \frac{1}{3}x^3 + c. \tag{24}$$

$$\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 1. \tag{25}$$

`/tcb/before lower app`=⟨*code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*code*⟩ to `/tcb/before lower`→P. 72 or `/tcb/before lower*`→P. 72 *after* the color and font settings and *before* the content of the lower part.

`/tcb/before lower pre`=⟨*code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*code*⟩ to `/tcb/before lower`→P. 72 or `/tcb/before lower*`→P. 72 *after* the color and font settings and *before* the content of the lower part.

`/tcb/after lower app`=⟨*code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*code*⟩ to `/tcb/after lower`→P. 73 or `/tcb/after lower*`→P. 73 *after* the content of the lower part.

`/tcb/after lower pre`=⟨*code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*code*⟩ to `/tcb/after lower`→P. 73 or `/tcb/after lower*`→P. 73 *after* the content of the lower part.

23.3 Embedding into the Surroundings

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 4.14 from page 86.

> ! The "hookable" versions are usable inside the document. In the preamble, they can only be used after explicit setting of /tcb/before → P. 86 and /tcb/after → P. 86 or by e. g. /tcb/parskip → P. 90.

/tcb/before app=⟨*code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*code*⟩ to /tcb/before → P. 86 before the colored box.

/tcb/before pre=⟨*code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*code*⟩ to /tcb/before → P. 86 before the colored box.

/tcb/after app=⟨*code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*code*⟩ to /tcb/after → P. 86 after the colored box.

/tcb/after pre=⟨*code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*code*⟩ to /tcb/after → P. 86 after the colored box.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,before app={The box follows:\\[4pt]},
  after app={This is the end.}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

The box follows:

My title

This is a **tcolorbox**.

This is the end.

/tcb/before float app=⟨*code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*code*⟩ to /tcb/before float → P. 85 before the colored box.

/tcb/before float pre=⟨*code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*code*⟩ to /tcb/before float → P. 85 before the colored box.

/tcb/after float app=⟨*code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*code*⟩ to /tcb/after float → P. 85 after the colored box.

/tcb/after float pre=⟨*code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*code*⟩ to /tcb/after float → P. 85 after the colored box.

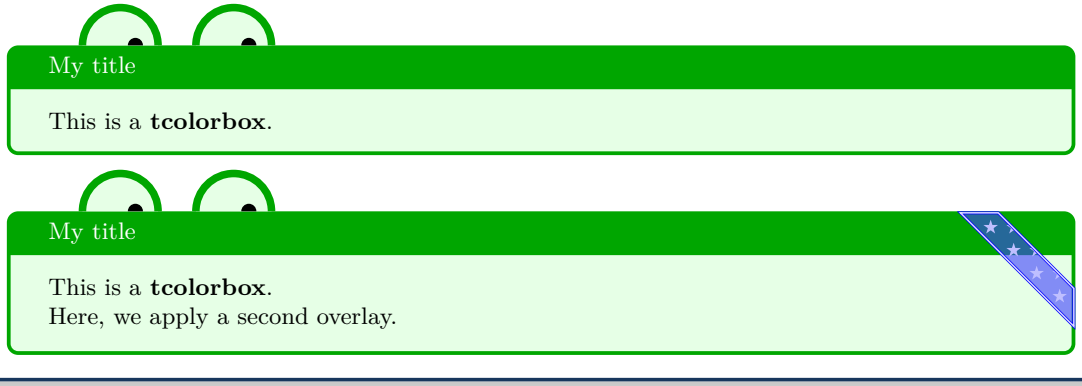
23.4 Overlays

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 4.12 from page 79.

`/tcb/overlay app=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/overlay`→ P. 79.

```
% \usetikzlibrary{patterns} % preamble
% \tcbuselibrary{skins} % preamble
\tcbset{frogbox/.style={enhanced,colback=green!10,colframe=green!65!black,
  enlarge top by=5.5mm,
  overlay={\foreach \x in {2cm,3.5cm} {
    \begin{scope}[shift={([xshift=\x]frame.north west)}]
      \path[draw=green!65!black,fill=green!10,line width=1mm] (0,0) arc (0:180:5mm);
      \path[fill=black] (-0.2,0) arc (0:180:1mm);
    \end{scope}}}}}
\tcbset{ribbon/.style={overlay app={%
  \path[fill=blue!75!white,draw=blue,double=white!85!blue,
    preaction={opacity=0.6,fill=blue!75!white},
    line width=0.1mm,double distance=0.2mm,
    pattern=fivepointed stars,pattern color=white!75!blue]
    ([xshift=-0.2mm,yshift=-1.02cm]frame.north east)
    -- ++(-1,1) -- ++(-0.5,0) -- ++(1.5,-1.5) -- cycle;}}}

\begin{tcolorbox}[frogbox,title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[frogbox,ribbon,title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.\par
Here, we apply a second overlay.
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/overlay pre=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/overlay`→ P. 79.

`/tcb/overlay unbroken app=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/overlay unbroken`→ P. 80.

`/tcb/overlay unbroken pre=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/overlay unbroken`→ P. 80.

`/tcb/overlay first app=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/overlay first`→ P. 80.

`/tcb/overlay first pre=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/overlay first`→ P. 80.

`/tcb/overlay middle app`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/overlay middle` → P. 80.

`/tcb/overlay middle pre`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/overlay middle` → P. 80.

`/tcb/overlay last app`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/overlay last` → P. 80.

`/tcb/overlay last pre`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/overlay last` → P. 80.

`/tcb/overlay broken app`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/overlay broken` → P. 80.

`/tcb/overlay broken pre`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/overlay broken` → P. 80.

`/tcb/overlay unbroken and first app`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/overlay unbroken and first` → P. 80.

`/tcb/overlay unbroken and first pre`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/overlay unbroken and first` → P. 80.

`/tcb/overlay middle and last app`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/overlay middle and last` → P. 80.

`/tcb/overlay middle and last pre`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/overlay middle and last` → P. 80.

`/tcb/overlay unbroken and last app`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/overlay unbroken and last` → P. 80.

`/tcb/overlay unbroken and last pre`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/overlay unbroken and last` → P. 80.

N 2014-09-19 `/tcb/overlay first and middle app`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/overlay first and middle` → P. 80.

N 2014-09-19 `/tcb/overlay first and middle pre`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/overlay first and middle` → P. 80.

23.5 Watermarks

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 10.3 from page 186.

> **!** Watermarks are special overlays. The LIB hooks library allows the combination of several watermarks and overlays.

`/tcb/watermark text app`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default)

Appends a `/tcb/watermark text` →P. 186 to the colored box.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,watermark graphics=Basilica_5.png,
  watermark opacity=0.25,
  watermark text app=Basilica,watermark color=Navy
  ]
\lipsum[1-2]
\tcblower
This example uses a public domain picture from\\
\url{http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Basilica_5.png}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.
Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

This example uses a public domain picture from
http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Basilica_5.png

`/tcb/watermark text pre`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default)

Prepends a `/tcb/watermark text` →P. 186 to the colored box.

`/tcb/watermark text app on`=⟨*part*⟩ `is` ⟨*text*⟩ (no default)

Appends a `/tcb/watermark text on` →P. 186 the named ⟨*part*⟩ of a break sequence.

`/tcb/watermark text pre on`=⟨*part*⟩ `is` ⟨*text*⟩ (no default)

Prepends a `/tcb/watermark text on` →P. 186 the named ⟨*part*⟩ of a break sequence.

`/tcb/watermark graphics app=`⟨*file name*⟩ (no default)

Appends a `/tcb/watermark graphics` → P. 187 referenced by ⟨*file name*⟩ to the colored box.

`/tcb/watermark graphics pre=`⟨*file name*⟩ (no default)

Prepends a `/tcb/watermark graphics` → P. 187 referenced by ⟨*file name*⟩ to the colored box.

`/tcb/watermark graphics app on=`⟨*part*⟩ `is` ⟨*file name*⟩ (no default)

Appends a `/tcb/watermark graphics on` → P. 187 the named ⟨*part*⟩ of a break sequence. The picture is referenced by ⟨*file name*⟩.

`/tcb/watermark graphics pre on=`⟨*part*⟩ `is` ⟨*file name*⟩ (no default)

Prepends a `/tcb/watermark graphics on` → P. 187 the named ⟨*part*⟩ of a break sequence. The picture is referenced by ⟨*file name*⟩.

`/tcb/watermark tikz app=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Appends a `/tcb/watermark tikz` → P. 188 with the given `tikz` ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to the colored box.

`/tcb/watermark tikz pre=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends a `/tcb/watermark tikz` → P. 188 with the given `tikz` ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to the colored box.

```
% \usepackage{tikz}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  watermark color=Navy,watermark opacity=0.25,
  smiley/.style={watermark tikz pre={%
    \path[fill=yellow,draw=yellow!75!red] (0,0) circle (1cm);
    \fill[red] (45:5mm) circle (1mm);
    \fill[red] (135:5mm) circle (1mm);
    \draw[line width=1mm,red] (215:5mm) arc (215:325:5mm);}}}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, watermark text=Watermark,
  smiley]
\lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

`/tcb/watermark tikz app on=`⟨*part*⟩ `is` ⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Appends a `/tcb/watermark tikz on` → P. 188 the named ⟨*part*⟩ of a break sequence.

`/tcb/watermark tikz pre on=`⟨*part*⟩ `is` ⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends a `/tcb/watermark tikz on` → P. 188 the named ⟨*part*⟩ of a break sequence.

23.6 Underlays

The following option keys extend the options given in Section 10.8 on page 216. There are no `app` type keys since underlays are stackable by default.

`/tcb/underlay pre`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/underlay`→P. 216.

`/tcb/underlay unbroken pre`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/underlay unbroken`→P. 217.

`/tcb/underlay first pre`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/underlay first`→P. 217.

`/tcb/underlay middle pre`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/underlay middle`→P. 217.

`/tcb/underlay last pre`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/underlay last`→P. 217.

`/tcb/underlay boxed title pre`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/underlay boxed title`→P. 217.

`/tcb/underlay broken pre`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/underlay broken`→P. 217.

`/tcb/underlay unbroken and first pre`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/underlay unbroken and first`→P. 217.

`/tcb/underlay middle and last pre`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/underlay middle and last`→P. 217.

`/tcb/underlay unbroken and last pre`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/underlay unbroken and last`→P. 217.

N 2014-09-19 `/tcb/underlay first and middle pre`=⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/underlay first and middle`→P. 217.

23.7 Finishes

The following option keys extend the options given in Section 10.9 on page 218. There are no `app` type keys since finishes are stackable by default.

`/tcb/finish pre=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/finish`→P. 218.

`/tcb/finish unbroken pre=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/finish unbroken`→P. 219.

`/tcb/finish first pre=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/finish first`→P. 219.

`/tcb/finish middle pre=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/finish middle`→P. 219.

`/tcb/finish last pre=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/finish last`→P. 219.

`/tcb/finish broken pre=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/finish broken`→P. 219.

`/tcb/finish unbroken and first pre=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/finish unbroken and first`→P. 219.

`/tcb/finish middle and last pre=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/finish middle and last`→P. 219.

`/tcb/finish unbroken and last pre=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/finish unbroken and last`→P. 219.

N 2014-09-19 `/tcb/finish first and middle pre=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/finish first and middle`→P. 219.

23.8 Skin Code

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 9.2 from page 157.

`/tcb/frame code app=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/frame code`→P. 157.

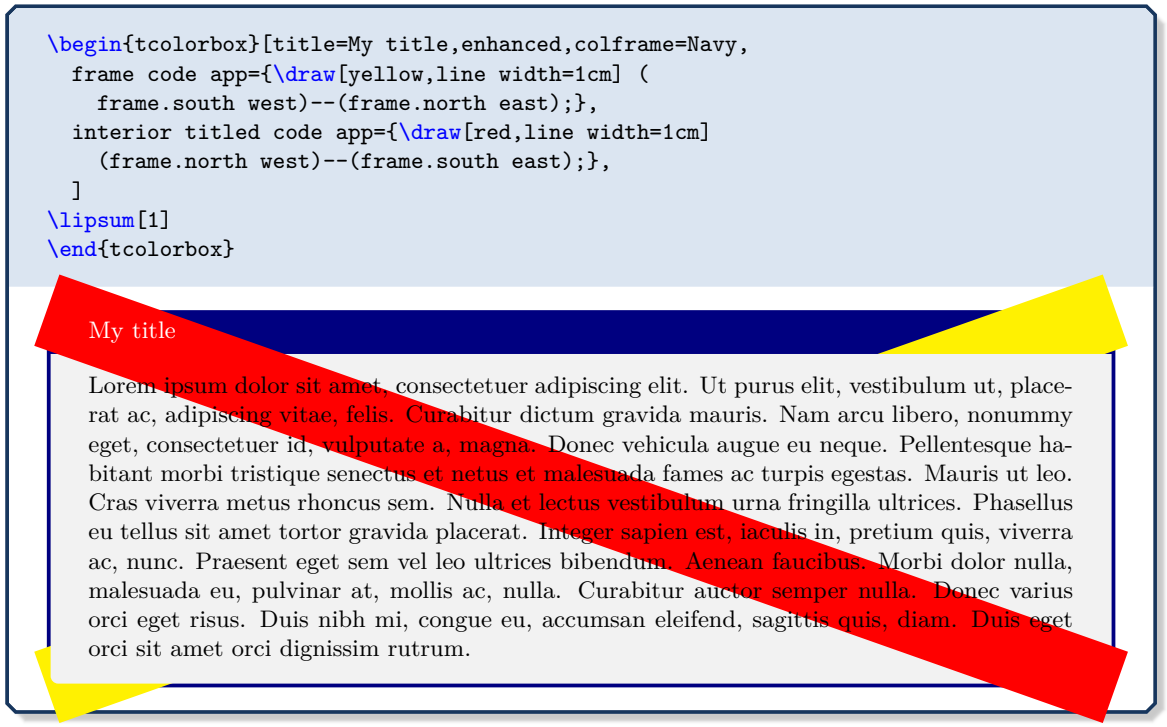
`/tcb/frame code pre=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/frame code`→P. 157.

`/tcb/interior titled code app=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/interior titled code`→P. 157.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,enhanced,colframe=Navy,
  frame code app={\draw[yellow,line width=1cm] (
    frame.south west)--(frame.north east);},
  interior titled code app={\draw[red,line width=1cm]
    (frame.north west)--(frame.south east);},
  ]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
```



`/tcb/interior titled code pre=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/interior titled code` → P. 157.

`/tcb/interior code app=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/interior code` → P. 158.

`/tcb/interior code pre=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/interior code` → P. 158.

`/tcb/segmentation code app=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/segmentation code` → P. 158.

`/tcb/segmentation code pre=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/segmentation code` → P. 158.

`/tcb/title code app=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/title code` → P. 159.

`/tcb/title code pre=`⟨*graphical code*⟩ (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*graphical code*⟩ to `/tcb/title code` → P. 159.

23.9 Extras

The following option keys extend the options given in Section 19.5 on page 407. There are no `app` type keys since extras are stackable by default.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/extras pre={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*options*⟩ to `/tcb/extras` → P. 407.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/extras unbroken pre={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*options*⟩ to `/tcb/extras unbroken` → P. 407.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/extras first pre={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*options*⟩ to `/tcb/extras first` → P. 407.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/extras middle pre={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*options*⟩ to `/tcb/extras middle` → P. 407.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/extras last pre={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*options*⟩ to `/tcb/extras last` → P. 407.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/extras broken pre={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*options*⟩ to `/tcb/extras broken` → P. 407.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/extras unbroken and first pre={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*options*⟩ to `/tcb/extras unbroken and first` → P. 407.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/extras middle and last pre={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*options*⟩ to `/tcb/extras middle and last` → P. 407.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/extras unbroken and last pre={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*options*⟩ to `/tcb/extras unbroken and last` → P. 407.

N 2015-07-16 **/tcb/extras first and middle pre={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*options*⟩ to `/tcb/extras first and middle` → P. 408.

23.10 Listings

The following option keys extend the options given in Section 17 from page 326.

N 2019-07-11 **/tcb/listing options app={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*options*⟩ to `/tcb/listing options` → P. 336.

N 2019-07-11 **/tcb/listing options pre={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*options*⟩ to `/tcb/listing options` → P. 336.

N 2019-07-11 **/tcb/minted options app={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default)

Appends the given ⟨*options*⟩ to `/tcb/minted options` → P. 339.

N 2019-07-11 **/tcb/minted options pre={⟨*options*⟩}** (no default)

Prepends the given ⟨*options*⟩ to `/tcb/minted options` → P. 339.

24 Library LIB xparse

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```
\tcbuselibrary{xparse}
```

This loads the package `xparse` [15].

Note that up to version 5.0.2 this library contained code which needed the `xparse` package. Since nowadays this package has become basically a part of the LaTeX kernel, the code of the library was migrated to other parts of the `tcolorbox` package. So, the remaining library is nearly a stub which only loads `xparse`.

Instead of including the `xparse` library, it is recommended to include the `xparse` package directly, **if really needed** (the LaTeX kernel contains essentially everything needed). The library is kept for compatibility.

25 Library LIB external

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```
\tcbuselibrary{external}
```

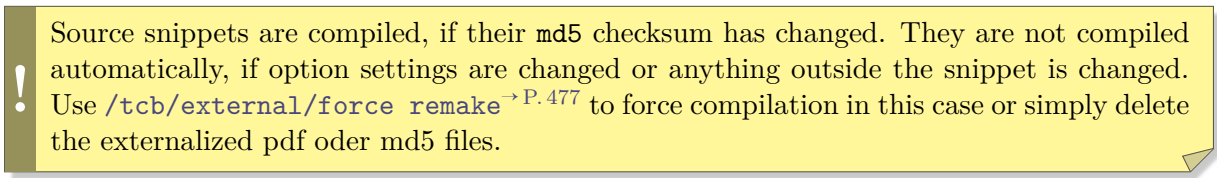
The purpose of this library is to support externalization of document snippets like graphics or boxes which can be compiled stand-alone. These snippets are written to external files, compiled and the resulting pdf files are included to the main document as images. The whole procedure saves compilation time, if such a snippet is costly to compile but needs to compile just once or very seldom.

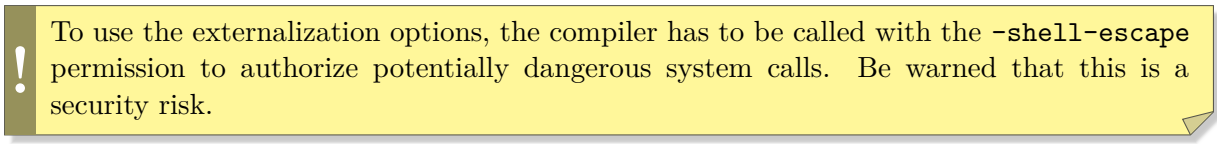
There are very good alternatives to this library. One should consider the `standalone` package or the Ti*k*Z externalization library instead. The LIB external library is something in between and can be seen as poor man variant of the Ti*k*Z externalization library.

The main differences between Ti*k*Z externalization and LIB external are:

- Ti*k*Z `external` compiles the whole original document in a sophisticated way while LIB external uses only the preamble or a part of the preamble of the original document.
- Ti*k*Z `external` can automatically externalize all `tikzpicture` environments while LIB external externalizes marked snippets only.
- Code snippets to be externalized by LIB external are not restricted to `tikzpicture` environments. But these snippets have to be stand-alone without dependencies to the rest of the document.

Why should somebody use LIB external instead of the more powerful Ti*k*Z `external`? One reason could be compilation speed, but the main reason for creating the library at all was that Ti*k*Z `external` tends to choke on complicated documents where the sophisticated mechanism stumbles. Since LIB external does not use the original document body for compilation, this cannot happen.





25.1 Preparation of a Document for Externalization

The preamble of the main document has to contain the \tcbEXTERNALIZE command. Without this command, no externalization operation will be executed.

N 2015-03-11 **\tcbEXTERNALIZE**

It is mandatory for externalization that this command is used once in the preamble of the main document. Every setting *before* \tcbEXTERNALIZE will also be used for compiling an external snippet. Every setting *after* \tcbEXTERNALIZE will be ignored for compiling an external snippet. Place this command right before \begin{document}, if you are not absolutely sure about another place.
The main document has to look like the following:

```
\documentclass[a4paper]{book}%   for example
\usepackage{...}%                anything
% ...
% Tpyically, all or the very most settings for the document.

\tcbEXTERNALIZE% Typically, just before \begin{document}

% Additional settings which are ABSOLUTELY irrelevant for the
% stand-alone snippets.
%
\begin{document}
  % The document.
  % This also contains the marked snippets for externalization.
\end{document}
```

During compilation, a /tcb/external/runner file is dynamically created (several times). This is the actual main file for compiling an externalized snippet.

N 2015-03-11 **/tcb/external/runner=**⟨*file name*⟩ (no default, initially \jobname_run.tex)

Sets the ⟨*file name*⟩ for dynamically created runner file. This is the actual main file for a document snippet. Typically, the initial setting is not needed to be changed.

```
\tcbset{external/runner=myrunner.tex}
```

N 2015-03-11 **/tcb/external/prefix=**⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially external/)

The ⟨*text*⟩ is prefixed to any /tcb/external/name → P. 479 for an externalization snippet. The initial setting implies saving all snippets into an external/ subdirectory. Depending on the operation system, the subdirectory may have to be created manually once.

```
% Use a 'real' prefix instead of writing into a subdirectory:
\tcbset{external/prefix=ext_}
```

N 2015-03-11 **/tcb/external/externalize=true|false** (default true, initially true)

If set to true, the marked snippets are compiled if necessary. If set to false, the marked snippets are not compiled but included as text. /tcb/external/externalize can only be used after \tcbEXTERNALIZE.

N 2015-03-11 **/tcb/external/force remake=true|false** (default true, initially false)

If set to true, the marked snippets are always compiled. If set to true, the marked snippets are compiled only if necessary. The necessity is given, if a compiled pdf file is missing or the md5 checksum of the source snippet has changed.

N 2015-03-11
U 2017-02-24 **/tcb/external/!** (style)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/external/force remake to true.

N 2015-06-12
U 2017-02-24 **/tcb/external/-** (style)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/external/externalize to false.

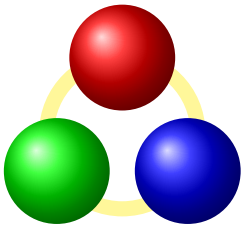
25.2 Marking Externalization Snippets

N 2015-03-11

```
\begin{tcbexternal}[⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}
  ⟨environment content⟩
\end{tcbexternal}
```

Marks the environment content as a snippet for externalization. Typically, the content is a `tikzpicture` or something similar. It is important to note that the snippet should not have any dependencies with the rest of the document, e.g. referencing counters or setting counters is not possible. The ⟨*name*⟩ is automatically prefixed with `/tcb/external/prefix` → P. 477. In combination, this has to be a unique file name. It is advised to not use spaces or umlauts for the name. The ⟨*options*⟩ are keys from the `/tcb/external/` key tree.

```
\begin{tcbexternal}{example_tikzpicture}
  \begin{tikzpicture}
    \path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
    \path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
    \foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
      {\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
  \end{tikzpicture}
\end{tcbexternal}
```



If a `tcolorbox` → P. 12 is externalized, one should use `/tcb/nobeforeafter` → P. 86 for the box. Indention and distances to the text before and after have to be given separately outside the `tcbexternal` environment.

```
\noindent%
\begin{tcbexternal}[minipage]{example_tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[nobeforeafter,enhanced,
      fonttitle=\bfseries,title=Externalized Box,
      colframe=red!50!black,drop fuzzy shadow,
      interior style={fill overzoom image=goldshade.png}]
    This complete tcolorbox is externalized. One cannot use numbered
    boxes here. Note the \texttt{minipage} option which tells the
    current line width to the external snippet.
  \end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbexternal}
```

Externalized Box

This complete tcolorbox is externalized. One cannot use numbered boxes here. Note the `minipage` option which tells the current line width to the external snippet.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[nobeforeafter,enhanced,
      fonttitle=\bfseries,title=Externalized Box,
      colframe=blue!50!black,
      interior style={fill overzoom image=blueshade.png}]
  \begin{tcbexternal}[minipage]{example_tcolorbox2}
    \color{white}%
    The interior of the tcolorbox is externalized.
    One can use numbered boxes without problems.
    Note that the text color has to be set for the text manually
    since it is converted into an image.
  \end{tcbexternal}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Externalized Box

The interior of the tcolorbox is externalized. One can use numbered boxes without problems. Note that the text color has to be set for the text manually since it is converted into an image.

```
\begin{tcbexternal}[minipage]{example_tabularx}
  \newcolumntype{Y}{>{\raggedleft\arraybackslash}X}%
  \begin{tabularx}{\linewidth}{|l||Y|Y|Y|Y||Y|}\hline
    Group & One & Two & Three & Four & Sum\\\hline\hline
    Red & 1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 10000.00\\\hline
    Green & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 14000.00\\\hline
    Blue & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 6000.00 & 18000.00\\\hline\hline
    Sum & 6000.00 & 9000.00 & 12000.00 & 15000.00 & 42000.00\\\hline
  \end{tabularx}
\end{tcbexternal}
```

Group	One	Two	Three	Four	Sum
Red	1000.00	2000.00	3000.00	4000.00	10000.00
Green	2000.00	3000.00	4000.00	5000.00	14000.00
Blue	3000.00	4000.00	5000.00	6000.00	18000.00
Sum	6000.00	9000.00	12000.00	15000.00	42000.00

N 2015-03-11 `/tcb/external/name`=⟨*name*⟩ (no default, initially `unnamed`)

The ⟨*name*⟩ is automatically prefixed with `/tcb/external/prefix` → P. 477. In combination, this has to be a unique file name for externalization. Typically, this key is not used directly but is set indirectly as mandatory parameter, see `tcbexternal` → P. 478.

N 2015-03-11

```
\begin{extcolorbox}[⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}[⟨tcolorbox options⟩]
  ⟨environment content⟩
\end{extcolorbox}
```

This is an externalized version of `tcolorbox` → P. 12 created using `\newtcbexternalizetcolorbox` → P. 485:

```
\newtcbexternalizetcolorbox{extcolorbox}{tcolorbox}{}{}
```

⟨*options*⟩ and ⟨*name*⟩ are given to the underlying `tcbexternal` → P. 478 environment, while ⟨*tcolorbox options*⟩ are given to `tcolorbox` → P. 12.

! Note that you should not redefine `/tcb/before` → P. 86 and `/tcb/after` → P. 86 inside the ⟨*tcolorbox options*⟩, since the externalized version would not be identical to the non-externalized otherwise.

```
\begin{extcolorbox}[minipage]{example_extcolorbox}
  [ enhanced,colframe=red!50!black,colback=yellow!10,
    fonttitle=\bfseries,drop fuzzy shadow,
    title=My external box ]

  This box is completely externalized.

  \begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue,colback=blue!5,before skip=6pt]
  Inner box.
  \end{tcolorbox}
\end{extcolorbox}
```

My external box

This box is completely externalized.

Inner box.

!
- **Never** externalize numbered boxes.
- **Never** externalize boxes which contain references to other things, e.g. using `\ref` or `\cite`.
- **Never** externalize breakable boxes.

N 2015-03-11

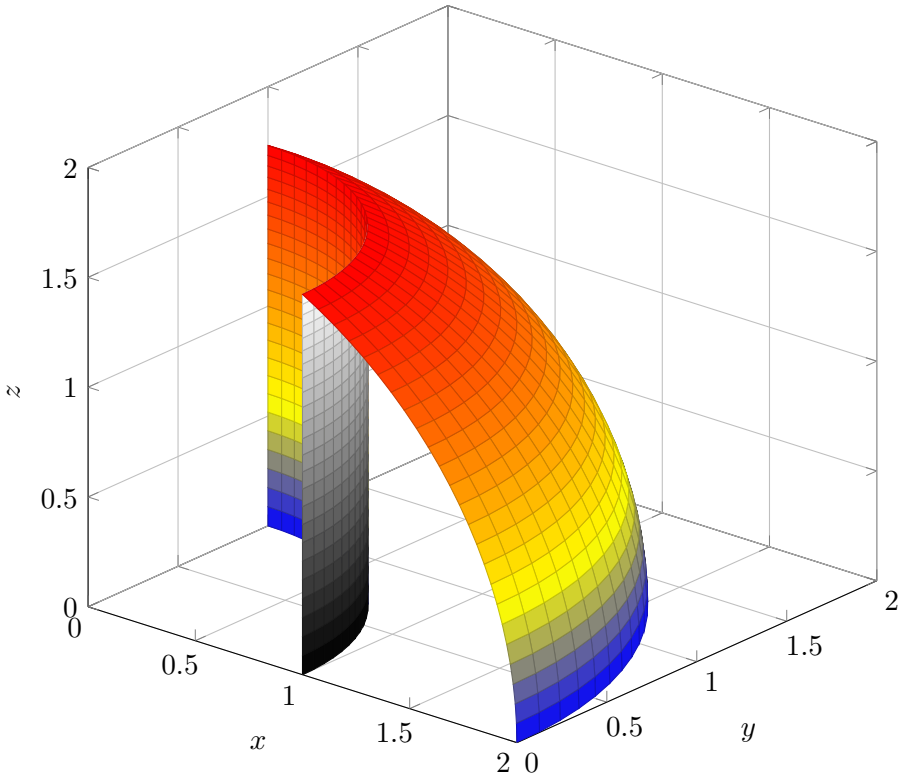
```
\begin{extikzpicture}[⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}[⟨tikz options⟩]
  ⟨environment content⟩
\end{extikzpicture}
```

This is an externalized version of `tikzpicture` created using `\newtcbexternalizeenvironment` → P. 485:

```
\newtcbexternalizeenvironment{extikzpicture}{tikzpicture}{}{}{}
```

⟨*options*⟩ and ⟨*name*⟩ are given to the underlying `tcbexternal` → P. 478 environment, while ⟨*tikz options*⟩ are given to `tikzpicture`.

```
\begin{center}
\begin{extikzpicture}[
  preamble={\usepackage{pgfplots}},  % add package for external graph
  input source on error=false,       % do not load source on error
]{example_pgfplots}
  \pgfplotsset{width=12cm}
  \begin{axis}[3d box=background,grid=major,
    xlabel=$x$, ylabel=$y$, zlabel=$z$, view/h=40,
    mesh/interior colormap name=hot,
    colormap/blackwhite,
    z buffer=sort,domain=0:90,y domain=0:60,
    zmin=0,zmax=2,z post scale=1.2,
    ]
  \addplot3[surf,mesh/interior colormap name=blackwhite,
    colormap/hot,] ( {cos(x)},{sin(x)}, {2*sin(y)} );
  \addplot3[surf] ( {2*cos(x)*cos(y)},{2*sin(x)*cos(y)}, {2*sin(y)} );
  \end{axis}
\end{extikzpicture}
\end{center}
```

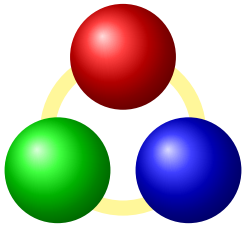


N 2015-03-11 **/tcb/externalize listing=⟨*name*⟩** (style, no default)

The text content of a tcblisting → P. 327 is externalized with the given ⟨*name*⟩. Note that the listing part is not externalized.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{externalize listing=example_listing,
  bicolor,colback=yellow!10,colframe=yellow!50!black,
  colbacklower=white,center lower}
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
  \path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
  \foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
    {\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{tcblisting}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
  \path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
  \foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
    {\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



N 2015-03-11 **/tcb/externalize listing!=⟨*name*⟩** (style, no default)

Combination of /tcb/externalize listing and /tcb/external/force remake → P. 477.

N 2015-03-11 **/tcb/externalize example=⟨*name*⟩** (style, no default)

The text content of a dispExample* → P. 496 is externalized with the given ⟨*name*⟩. Note that the listing part is not externalized.

```
\begin{dispExample*}{sidebyside,externalize example=example_example}
\tikz\path[shading=ball,
  ball color=red] circle (7mm);
\end{dispExample*}
```

```
\tikz\path[shading=ball,
  ball color=red] circle (7mm);
```

N 2015-03-11 **/tcb/externalize example!=⟨*name*⟩** (style, no default)

Combination of /tcb/externalize example and /tcb/external/force remake → P. 477.

25.3 Customization

N 2015-03-11 **/tcb/external/safety=⟨*length*⟩** (no default, initially `2mm`)

The snippet box is surrounded with a safety border with a thickness of ⟨*length*⟩. This border is automatically trimmed during picture inclusion. The reason for this mechanism is to catch box content which extrudes over the bounding box. For example, shadows of a `tcolorbox` are painted outside the bounding box and would be lost otherwise.

N 2015-03-11 **/tcb/external/environment=⟨*env*⟩** (no default, initially unset)

Surrounds the exported snippet text with an environment ⟨*env*⟩ without parameters. Note that this option is ignored for `/tcb/externalize listing` → P. 482.

N 2015-05-05 **/tcb/external/environment with percent=true|false** (default `true`, initially `true`)

If set to `true`, the `\begin` and `\end` code of `/tcb/external/environment` is appended with a percent sign. For verbatim environments, this option typically has to be se to `false`.

N 2015-03-11 **/tcb/external/minipage=⟨*length*⟩** (default `\linewidth`, initially unset)

Surrounds the exported snippet text with a minipage. The optional ⟨*length*⟩ parameter sets the width of the minipage. Note that the default width is the current line width of the main document. See `tcbexternal` → P. 478 for examples. Note that this option is ignored for `/tcb/externalize listing` → P. 482.

N 2015-03-11 **/tcb/external/plain** (no value, initially set)

Removes any text which was set to surround the snippet. This removes the setting of `/tcb/external/minipage`, but is independent of `/tcb/external/safety`.

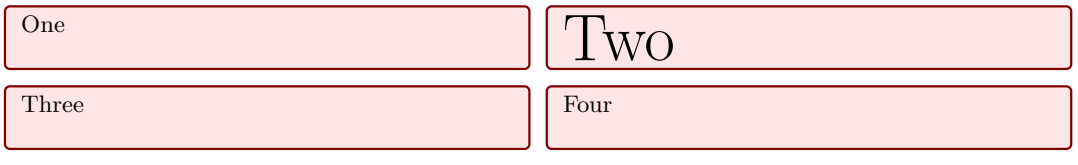
N 2015-03-11 **/tcb/external/compiler=⟨*text*⟩** (no default, initially `pdflatex`)

Sets the name of the compiler for the snippets. Note that this compiler has to support the `\pdfmdfivesum` primitive e.g. using the `pdftexcmds` package. This should work for `xelatex` and `lualatex`.

N 2015-03-11 **/tcb/external/runs=⟨*number*⟩** (no default, initially `1`)

Sets the number of compiler runs for the snippet.

```
\begin{tcbexternal}[minipage,runs=2]{example_raster}
  \begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height,
      size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
    \tcbitem One
    \tcbitem \Huge Two
    \tcbitem Three
    \tcbitem Four
  \end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbexternal}
```



N 2015-03-11 **/tcb/external/input source on error=true|false** (default `true`, initially `true`)

If set to `true`, the source code of the snippet is loaded instead of the failed pdf picture. Typically, this will lead to an error stop at the faulty place of the source and such helps detecting the cause. If the source input compiles without error, the document setup may be incorrect, see Section 25.1 on page 477. Maybe, the `external/` subdirectory has to be created manually in this case, see `/tcb/external/prefix` → P. 477.

If the option is set to `false`, the compilation stops immediately on an error. The log file of the external snippet has to be consulted for error messages in this case.

N 2015-05-05 **/tcb/external/preclass=**⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

The given ⟨*code*⟩ is added before the snippet document. Typically, this means before `\documentclass`. This is not used for compilation of the main document.

N 2015-05-05 **/tcb/external/PassOptionsToPackage=**{⟨*options*⟩}{⟨*package*⟩} (no default, initially unset)

The given ⟨*options*⟩ are passed to the given ⟨*package*⟩ for the snippet document. This is a shortcut for using /tcb/external/preclass with `\PassOptionsToPackage`. This not used for compilation of the main document.

N 2015-05-05 **/tcb/external/PassOptionsToClass=**{⟨*options*⟩}{⟨*class*⟩} (no default, initially unset)

The given ⟨*options*⟩ are passed to the given ⟨*class*⟩ for the snippet document. This is a shortcut for using /tcb/external/preclass with `\PassOptionsToClass`. This not used for compilation of the main document.

N 2015-05-05 **/tcb/external/clear preclass** (no value)

Removes all additional /tcb/external/preclass settings.

N 2015-03-11 **/tcb/external/preamble=**⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

The given ⟨*code*⟩ is added to the preamble of the snippet document. This is not used for compilation of the main document.

N 2015-05-05 **/tcb/external/preamble tcbset=**⟨*options*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

The given ⟨*options*⟩ are added as parameter for `\tcbset` → P. 13 to the preamble of the snippet document. This are not used for compilation of the main document.

N 2015-03-16 **/tcb/external/clear preamble** (no value)

Removes all additional /tcb/external/preamble settings.

N 2015-03-11 **\tcbifexternal**{⟨*true*⟩}{⟨*false*⟩}

Expands to ⟨*true*⟩, if executed during snippet compilation, and to ⟨*false*⟩, if executed during main document compilation. This can be used *before* `\tcbEXTERNALIZE` → P. 477 to give different setting to snippet and main document.

```
\tcbifexternal{
  \usepackage{onlyforexternal}
}{
  \usepackage{onlyformain}
}
```

N 2015-03-11 `\newtcbexternalizeenvironment{⟨newenv⟩}{⟨env⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨begin⟩}{⟨end⟩}`

Creates a new environment ⟨*newenv*⟩ which is based on `tcbexternal` → P. 478. This enviroment takes *at least* one optional parameter and one mandatory parameter. These two parameters are passed to `tcbexternal` → P. 478. Further, the given ⟨*options*⟩ are always added to the option list of `tcbexternal` → P. 478.
The environment content is externalized and the external snippet is surrounded by an environment ⟨*env*⟩. All further parameters of ⟨*newenv*⟩ are given to ⟨*env*⟩ as parameters. The included image is prepended by ⟨*begin*⟩ and appended by ⟨*end*⟩.
`extikzpicture` → P. 481 is an example application for `\newtcbexternalizeenvironment`.

```
\newtcbexternalizeenvironment{extabular}{tabular}{}{\par\centering}{\par}

\begin{extabular}{example_tabular}{|l|p{6cm}|r|}\hline
A & B & C\\\hline
a & This table is externalized as snippet. Obviously,
  this only makes sense for highly complex tables.
& b\\\hline
\end{extabular}
```

A	B	C
a	This table is externalized as snippet. Obviously, this only makes sense for highly complex tables.	b

N 2015-03-11 `\renewtcbexternalizeenvironment{⟨newenv⟩}{⟨env⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨begin⟩}{⟨end⟩}`

Identical to `\newtcbexternalizeenvironment`, but the environment ⟨*newenv*⟩ is created by `\renewenvironment` instead of `\newenvironment`.

N 2015-03-11 `\newtcbexternalizetcolorbox{⟨newenv⟩}{⟨env⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨begin end options⟩}`

Creates a new environment ⟨*newenv*⟩ which is based on `tcbexternal` → P. 478. This enviroment takes *at least* one optional parameter and one mandatory parameter. These two parameters are passed to `tcbexternal` → P. 478. Further, the given ⟨*options*⟩ are always added to the option list of `tcbexternal` → P. 478.
The environment content is externalized and the external snippet is surrounded by an environment ⟨*env*⟩. All further parameters of ⟨*newenv*⟩ are given to ⟨*env*⟩ as parameters. **In contrast to `\newtcbexternalizeenvironment`, the environment ⟨*env*⟩ is intended to be based on `tcolorbox` → P. 12 or `tcblisting` → P. 327.**
The ⟨*begin end options*⟩ are options for settings the space before and after the included image using `/tcb/before` → P. 86, `/tcb/before skip` → P. 88, `/tcb/after` → P. 86, or `/tcb/after skip` → P. 88.

! Use the exact identical values for `/tcb/before` → P. 86 and `/tcb/after` → P. 86 inside ⟨*begin end options*⟩ as they where used for definition of ⟨*env*⟩! Otherwise, externalized and non-externalized version will have different spacings.

`extcolorbox` → P. 480 is an example application for `\newtcbexternalizetcolorbox`.

Definition in the preamble:

```
\newtcblisting{myownlisting}[2][]{
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  colbacktitle=red!50!yellow,before skip=6pt,after skip=6pt,
  title={#2},#1}

\newtcbexternalizetcolorbox{exmyownlisting}{myownlisting}%
  {minipage,environment with percent=false}%
  {before skip=6pt,after skip=6pt}% same values as for mylisting
```

```
\begin{exmyownlisting}{example_mylisting}% <- name for the external file
  {My externalized example box}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{exmyownlisting}
```

My externalized example box

This is my \LaTeX\ box.

This is my LaTeX box.

N 2015-03-11 **\renewtcbexternalizetcolorbox**{⟨*newenv*⟩}{⟨*env*⟩}{⟨*options*⟩}{⟨*begin end options*⟩}

Identical to \newtcbexternalizetcolorbox → P. 485, but the environment ⟨*newenv*⟩ is created by **\renewenvironment** instead of **\newenvironment**.

N 2016-07-14 **\tcbiffileprocess**{⟨*condition*⟩}{⟨*source*⟩}{⟨*md5-file*⟩}{⟨*target*⟩}{⟨*true*⟩}{⟨*false*⟩}

This is a low-level macro which is internally used. The MD5 digest of a ⟨*source*⟩ file is compared with a stored MD5 digest from an auxiliary ⟨*md5-file*⟩. If they are not equal, the auxiliary ⟨*md5-file*⟩ is updated to store the current MD5 digest. Further,

- if ⟨*condition*⟩ equals `0`, ⟨*true*⟩ is executed.
- if ⟨*condition*⟩ equals `1`:
  If the current and stored MD5 digests were different, ⟨*true*⟩ is executed.
  Otherwise, if the ⟨*target*⟩ file is not existing, ⟨*true*⟩ is executed.
  Otherwise, if the ⟨*target*⟩ file is older than the ⟨*md5-file*⟩, ⟨*true*⟩ is executed.
  Otherwise, ⟨*false*⟩ is executed.
- if ⟨*condition*⟩ equals `2`, ⟨*false*⟩ is executed.

The intended processing purpose of the ⟨*true*⟩ code is to produce a ⟨*target*⟩ file from the given ⟨*source*⟩ file.

25.4 Troubleshooting and FAQ

- **I use the default settings, but the `external` subdirectory is not created.**
  Depending on operating system and compiler, an `external` subdirectory is automatically created or not. If not, create such a directory manually or add the following to your document[5]:

```
\ShellEscape{mkdir external}
```

  or

```
\ShellEscape{mkdir -p external}
```

  If the combination of `/tcb/external/prefix` → P. 477 and chosen snippet name points to another subdirectory than `external`, this has to be adapted.

- **I use the `minted` package and I get a cache directory for every externalized snippet.**
  To avoid this problem, there are several ways.

  – If you do not need `minted` inside the snippet code, you may use `\usepackage{minted}` *after* `\tcbEXTERNALIZE` → P. 477 or use `\tcbifexternal` → P. 484 to switch `minted` off for the external code. If `minted` is already included by another package, add the following to your preamble:

```
\tcbset{external/PassOptionsToPackage={draft}{minted}}
```

  – If `minted` is needed for the snippet code, caching can be switched off by adding the following to your preamble:

```
\tcbset{external/PassOptionsToPackage={cache=false}{minted}}
```

    Alternatively, the `cachedir` option of `minted` may be used to redirect the cache.

[5] The `shellesc` package is loaded automatically by the library.

26 Library documentation

This library has the single purpose to support LaTeX package documentations like this one. Actually, the visual nature follows the approach from Till Tantau's `pgf` [24] documentation. Typically, this library is assumed to be used in conjunction with the class `ltxdoc` or alike. Denis Bitouzé, Muzimuzhi, and many others provided very valuable input for this library.

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```
\tcbuselibrary{documentation}
```

This also loads the library skins, see Section 10 on page 168, the library raster, see Section 16 on page 304, the library listings, see Section 17 on page 326, the library xparse, see Section 24 on page 475, and a bunch of packages, namely `makeidx`, `marginnote`, `refcount`, and `hyperref`. The packages `pifont` and `marvosym` should be installed for some symbols, but need not to be loaded.

! The package `makeidx` is loaded only, if `\printindex` is *not* already defined. Therefore, one can include an alternative to `makeidx` like `imakeidx` *before* the library `documentation` is used.

! The package `marginnote` is loaded only, if `\marginnote` is *not* already defined.

! In contrast to other `tcolorbox` options, the option settings for documentation are typically not getting reset by `/tcb/reset` → P. 119, i.e. they keep their values for embedded boxes.

! In combination with DocStrip, `/tcb/verbatim ignore percent` → P. 145 may be helpful.

For UTF-8 support load (ignore this when using XeLaTeX):

```
\tcbuselibrary{listingsutf8,documentation}
```

For `minted` [14] support, load:

```
\tcbuselibrary{documentation,minted}
\tcbset{listing engine=minted}
```

26.1 Macros of the Library

U 2020-04-22

```
\begin{docCommand}[⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}{⟨parameters⟩}
  ⟨command description⟩
\end{docCommand}
```

Documents a LaTeX macro with given ⟨*name*⟩ where ⟨*name*⟩ is written without backslash. The given ⟨*options*⟩ are set with `\tcbset` → P. 13. This macro takes mandatory or optional ⟨*parameters*⟩. It is automatically indexed and can be referenced with `\refCom` → P. 499`{`⟨*name*⟩`}`.

```
\begin{docCommand}{foomakedocSubKey}{\marg{name}\marg{key path}}
  Creates a new environment \meta{name} based on \refEnv{docKey} for the
  documentation of keys with the given \meta{key path}.
\end{docCommand}
```

\foomakedocSubKey{⟨*name*⟩}{⟨*key path*⟩}

Creates a new environment ⟨*name*⟩ based on docKey → P. 492 for the documentation of keys with the given ⟨*key path*⟩.

```
\begin{docCommand}[color definition=blue]{foomakedocSubKey*}%
    {\marg{name}\marg{key path}}
  Creates a new environment \meta{name} based on \refEnv{docKey} for the
  documentation of keys with the given \meta{key path}.
\end{docCommand}
```

\foomakedocSubKey*{⟨*name*⟩}{⟨*key path*⟩}

Creates a new environment ⟨*name*⟩ based on docKey → P. 492 for the documentation of keys with the given ⟨*key path*⟩.

U 2020-04-22

\begin{docCommand*}[⟨*options*⟩]{⟨*name*⟩}{⟨*parameters*⟩}
  ⟨*command description*⟩
\end{docCommand*}

Identical to docCommand → P. 488, but without index entry.

N 2020-04-22

\begin{docCommands}[⟨*options*⟩]{{⟨*variant1*⟩},{⟨*variant2*⟩},...}
  ⟨*command description*⟩
\end{docCommands}

Documents several (similar) LaTeX macro variants simultaneously. The given ⟨*options*⟩ are set with \tcbset → P. 13 and are valid for all variants and the documentation text. Every variant is described by an option set ⟨*variant1*⟩, ⟨*variant2*⟩, and so on. The most crucial options are /tcb/doc name → P. 502 and /tcb/doc parameter → P. 502.

```
\begin{docCommands}[
    doc no index,  %  no index entries for this example
    doc name      = newtheorem,
    doc parameter = \marg{envname},
  ]
  {
    {  },
    { doc parameter = \marg{envname}\oarg{numbered within} },
    { doc parameter = \oarg{numbered like}\marg{envname} },
    { doc name      = newtheorem* },
  }
  example
\end{docCommands}
```

\newtheorem{⟨*envname*⟩}
\newtheorem{⟨*envname*⟩}[⟨*numbered within*⟩]
\newtheorem[⟨*numbered like*⟩]{⟨*envname*⟩}
\newtheorem*{⟨*envname*⟩}

example

U 2020-04-22 `\begin{docEnvironment}[⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}{⟨parameters⟩}`
`  ⟨environment description⟩`
`\end{docEnvironment}`

Documents a LaTeX environment with given ⟨*name*⟩. The given ⟨*options*⟩ are set with `\tcbset` → P. 13. This environment takes mandatory or optional ⟨*parameters*⟩. It is automatically indexed and can be referenced with `\refEnv` → P. 499`{⟨name⟩}`.

```
\begin{docEnvironment}{foocolorbox}{\oarg{options}}
  This is the main environment to create an accentuated colored text box with
  rounded corners and, optionally, two parts.
\end{docEnvironment}
```

`\begin{foocolorbox}[⟨options⟩]`
`  ⟨environment description⟩`
`\end{foocolorbox}`

This is the main environment to create an accentuated colored text box with rounded corners and, optionally, two parts.

```
\begin{docEnvironment}%
    [doclang/environment content=My content text]%
    {foocolorbox*}{\oarg{options}}
  This is the main environment to create an accentuated colored text box with
  rounded corners and, optionally, two parts.
\end{docEnvironment}
```

`\begin{foocolorbox*}[⟨options⟩]`
`  ⟨My content text⟩`
`\end{foocolorbox*}`

This is the main environment to create an accentuated colored text box with rounded corners and, optionally, two parts.

U 2020-04-22 `\begin{docEnvironment*}[⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}{⟨parameters⟩}`
`  ⟨environment description⟩`
`\end{docEnvironment*}`

Identical to `docEnvironment`, but without index entry.

N 2020-04-22

```
\begin{docEnvironments}[⟨options⟩]{⟨variant1⟩,⟨variant2⟩,...}
  ⟨environment description⟩
\end{docEnvironments}
```

Documents several (similar) LaTeX environment variants simultaneously. The given ⟨*options*⟩ are set with `\tcbset` → P. 13 and are valid for all variants and the documentation text. Every variant is described by an option set ⟨*variant1*⟩, ⟨*variant2*⟩, and so on. The most crucial options are `/tcb/doc name` → P. 502 and `/tcb/doc parameter` → P. 502.

```
\begin{docEnvironments}[
    doc no index,   %  no index entries for this example
    doc parameter = \oarg{options}\marg{title},
    doclang/environment content = box content,
  ]
  {
    {
      doc name        = redbox,
      doc description = a red colored box,
    },
    {
      doc name        = greenbox,
      doc description = a green colored box,
    },
    {
      doc name        = bluebox,
      doc description = a blue colored box,
    },
    {
      doc name        = custombox,
      doc parameter   = \oarg{options}\marg{color}\marg{title},
      doc description = a colored box,
    },
  }
  example
\end{docEnvironments}
```

```
\begin{redbox}[⟨options⟩]{⟨title⟩}                          (a red colored box)
  ⟨box content⟩
\end{redbox}
\begin{greenbox}[⟨options⟩]{⟨title⟩}                        (a green colored box)
  ⟨box content⟩
\end{greenbox}
\begin{bluebox}[⟨options⟩]{⟨title⟩}                         (a blue colored box)
  ⟨box content⟩
\end{bluebox}
\begin{custombox}[⟨options⟩]{⟨color⟩}{⟨title⟩}              (a colored box)
  ⟨box content⟩
\end{custombox}
```

example

U 2020-04-22 `\begin{docKey}[⟨key path⟩][⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}{⟨parameters⟩}{⟨description⟩}`
`⟨key description⟩`
`\end{docKey}`

Documents a key with given ⟨*name*⟩ and an optional ⟨*key path*⟩. The given ⟨*options*⟩ are set with `\tcbset` → P. 13. This key takes mandatory or optional ⟨*parameters*⟩ as value with a short ⟨*description*⟩. It is automatically indexed and can be referenced with `\refKey` → P. 499`{⟨name⟩}`.

```
\begin{docKey}[foo]{footitle}{=\meta{text}}{no default, initially empty}
  Creates a heading line with \meta{text} as content.
\end{docKey}
```

`/foo/footitle=`⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Creates a heading line with ⟨*text*⟩ as content.

U 2020-04-22 `\begin{docKey*}[⟨key path⟩][⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}{⟨parameters⟩}{⟨description⟩}`
`⟨key description⟩`
`\end{docKey*}`

Identical to `docKey`, but without index entry.

N 2020-04-22 `\begin{docKeys}[⟨options⟩]{{⟨variant1⟩},{⟨variant2⟩},...}`
`⟨key description⟩`
`\end{docKeys}`

Documents several (similar) key variants simultaneously. The given ⟨*options*⟩ are set with `\tcbset` → P. 13 and are valid for all variants and the documentation text. Every variant is described by an option set ⟨*variant1*⟩, ⟨*variant2*⟩, and so on. The most crucial options are `/tcb/doc keypath` → P. 502, `/tcb/doc name` → P. 502, `/tcb/doc parameter` → P. 502, and `/tcb/doc description` → P. 503.

```
\begin{docKeys}[
    doc no index,   %  no index entries for this example
    doc keypath   = mykeyroot,
    doc parameter = {=\meta{length}},
  ]
  {
    {
      doc name        = width,
      doc description = initially \texttt{10cm},
    },
    {
      doc name        = height,
      doc description = initially \texttt{7cm},
    },
  }
  example
\end{docKeys}
```

`/mykeyroot/width=`⟨*length*⟩ (initially `10cm`)
`/mykeyroot/height=`⟨*length*⟩ (initially `7cm`)

example

N 2019-09-18
U 2020-04-22

```
\begin{docPathOperation}[⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}{⟨parameters⟩}
  ⟨operation description⟩
\end{docPathOperation}
```

Documents a TikZ path operation with given ⟨*name*⟩. The given ⟨*options*⟩ are set with \tcbset → P. 13. This TikZ path operation takes mandatory or optional ⟨*parameters*⟩. It is automatically indexed and can be referenced with \refPathOperation → P. 500{⟨*name*⟩}.

```
\begin{docPathOperation}{fooop}{\oarg{opt}(\meta{name})\colOpt{at(\meta{coord})}}
  Imaginary path operation for illustration.
\end{docPathOperation}
```

```
\path ... fooop[⟨opt⟩](⟨name⟩)at(⟨coord⟩) ...;
```

Imaginary path operation for illustration.

N 2019-09-18
U 2020-04-22

```
\begin{docPathOperation*}[⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}{⟨parameters⟩}
  ⟨command description⟩
\end{docPathOperation*}
```

Identical to docPathOperation, but without index entry.

N 2020-04-22

```
\begin{docPathOperations}[⟨options⟩]{{⟨variant1⟩},{⟨variant2⟩},...}
  ⟨command description⟩
\end{docPathOperations}
```

Documents several (similar) TikZ path operation variants simultaneously. The given ⟨*options*⟩ are set with \tcbset → P. 13 and are valid for all variants and the documentation text. Every variant is described by an option set ⟨*variant1*⟩, ⟨*variant2*⟩, and so on. The most crucial options are /tcb/doc name → P. 502 and /tcb/doc parameter → P. 502.

```
\begin{docPathOperations}[
    doc no index,   %  no index entries for this example
  ]
  {
    {
      doc name      = rectangle,
      doc parameter = \meta{corner or cycle},
    },
    {
      doc name      = circle,
      doc parameter = \oarg{options},
    },
    {
      doc name      = ellipse,
      doc parameter = \oarg{options},
    },
  }
  example
\end{docPathOperations}
```

```
\path ... rectangle⟨corner or cycle⟩ ...;
\path ... circle[⟨options⟩] ...;
\path ... ellipse[⟨options⟩] ...;
```

example

U 2020-04-23 `\docValue[⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}`
`\docValue*[⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}`

Documents a value with given ⟨*name*⟩. Typically, this is a value for a key. The given ⟨*options*⟩ are set with `\tcbset` → P. 13. This value is automatically indexed for `\docValue` and has no index entry for `\docValue*`.

```
A feasible value for \refKey{/foo/footitle} is \docValue*{foovalue}.
```

A feasible value for `/foo/footitle` → P. 492 is `foovalue`.

U 2020-04-23 `\docAuxCommand[⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}`
`\docAuxCommand*[⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}`

Documents an auxiliary or minor LaTeX macro with given ⟨*name*⟩ where ⟨*name*⟩ is written without backslash. The given ⟨*options*⟩ are set with `\tcbset` → P. 13. This macro is automatically indexed for `\docAuxCommand` and has no index entry for `\docAuxCommand*`.

```
The macro \docAuxCommand{fooaux} holds some interesting data.
```

The macro `\fooaux` holds some interesting data.

U 2020-04-23 `\docAuxEnvironment[⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}`
`\docAuxEnvironment*[⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}`

Documents an auxiliary or minor LaTeX environment with given ⟨*name*⟩. The given ⟨*options*⟩ are set with `\tcbset` → P. 13. This macro is automatically indexed indexed for `\docAuxEnvironment` and has no index entry for `\docAuxEnvironment*`.

```
The environment \docAuxEnvironment{fooauxenv} holds some interesting data.
```

The environment `fooauxenv` holds some interesting data.

U 2020-04-23 `\docAuxKey[⟨key path⟩][⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}`
`\docAuxKey*[⟨key path⟩][⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}`

Documents an auxiliary key with given ⟨*name*⟩ and an optional ⟨*key path*⟩. The given ⟨*options*⟩ are set with `\tcbset` → P. 13. It is automatically indexed for `\docAuxKey` and has no index entry for `\docAuxKey*`.

```
The key \docAuxKey[foo]{fooaux} holds some interesting data.
```

The key `/foo/fooaux` holds some interesting data.

U 2020-04-23 `\docCounter[⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}`
`\docCounter*[⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}`

Documents a counter with given ⟨*name*⟩. The given ⟨*options*⟩ are set with `\tcbset` → P. 13. The counter is automatically indexed for `\docCounter` and has no index entry for `\docCounter*`.

```
The counter \docCounter{foocounter} can be used for computation.
```

The counter `foocounter` can be used for computation.

U 2020-04-23 `\docLength[⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}`
`\docLength*[⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}`

Documents a length with given ⟨*name*⟩. The given ⟨*options*⟩ are set with `\tcbset` → P. 13. The length is automatically indexed for `\docLength` and has no index entry for `\docLength*`.

```
The length \docLength{foolength} can be used for computation.
```

The length \foolength can be used for computation.

U 2020-04-23 `\docColor[⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}`
`\docColor*[⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}`

Documents a color with given ⟨*name*⟩. The given ⟨*options*⟩ are set with `\tcbset` → P. 13. The color is automatically indexed for `\docColor` and has no index entry for `\docColor*`.

```
The color \docColor{foocolor} is available.
```

The color foocolor is available.

`\cs{⟨name⟩}`

Macro from `ltxdoc` [4] to typeset a command word ⟨*name*⟩ where the backslash is prefixed. The library overwrites the original macro.

```
This is a \cs{foocommand}.
```

This is a \foocommand.

`\meta{⟨text⟩}`

Macro from `doc` [9] to typeset a meta ⟨*text*⟩. The library overwrites the original macro.

```
This is a \meta{text}.
```

This is a ⟨*text*⟩.

`\marg{⟨text⟩}`

Macro from `ltxdoc` [4] to typeset a ⟨*text*⟩ with curly brackets as a mandatory argument. The library overwrites the original macro.

```
This is a mandatory \marg{argument}.
```

This is a mandatory {⟨*argument*⟩}.

`\oarg{⟨text⟩}`

Macro from `ltxdoc` [4] to typeset a ⟨*text*⟩ with square brackets as an optional argument. The library overwrites the original macro.

```
This is an optional \oarg{argument}.
```

This is an optional [⟨*argument*⟩].

N 2023-02-16 **\sarg**

Macro to typeset * as an optional star.

```
This is an optional \sarg.
```

This is an optional *.

\brackets{⟨*text*⟩}

Sets the given ⟨*text*⟩ with curly brackets.

```
Here we use \brackets{some text}.
```

Here we use {some text}.

U 2014-10-10 **\begin{dispExample}**
⟨*environment content*⟩
\end{dispExample}

Creates a colored box based on a `tcolorbox` → P. 12. It displays the environment content as source code in the upper part and as compiled text in the lower part of the box. The appearance is controlled by `/tcb/documentation listing style` → P. 510 and the style `/tcb/docexample` → P. 510. It may be changed by redefining this style.

```
\begin{dispExample}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{dispExample}
```

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
```

This is a LaTeX example.

U 2014-10-10 **\begin{dispExample*}**{⟨*options*⟩}
⟨*environment content*⟩
\end{dispExample*}

The starred version of `dispExample` takes `tcolorbox` → P. 12 ⟨*options*⟩ as parameter. These ⟨*options*⟩ are executed after `/tcb/docexample` → P. 510.

```
\begin{dispExample*}{sidebyside}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{dispExample*}
```

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
```

This is a LaTeX example.

```
\begin{dispListing}
  ⟨environment content⟩
\end{dispListing}
```

Creates a colored box based on a `tcolorbox` → P. 12. It displays the environment content as source code. The appearance is controlled by `/tcb/documentation listing style` → P. 510 and the style `/tcb/docexample` → P. 510. It may be changed by redefining this style.

```
\begin{dispListing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{dispListing}
```

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
```

```
\begin{dispListing*}{⟨options⟩}
  ⟨environment content⟩
\end{dispListing*}
```

The starred version of `dispListing` takes `tcolorbox` → P. 12 ⟨*options*⟩ as parameter. These ⟨*options*⟩ are executed after `/tcb/docexample` → P. 510.

```
\begin{dispListing*}{title=My listing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{dispListing*}
```

My listing

```
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
```

```
\begin{absquote}
  ⟨environment content⟩
\end{absquote}
```

Used to typeset an abstract as quoted and small text.

```
\begin{absquote}
|tcolorbox| provides an environment for colored and framed text boxes with a
heading line. Optionally, such a box can be split in an upper and a lower part.
\end{absquote}
```

> `tcolorbox` provides an environment for colored and framed text boxes with a heading line. Optionally, such a box can be split in an upper and a lower part.

U 2020-04-22 `\tcbmakedocSubKey{⟨name⟩}{⟨key path⟩}`

Creates a new environment ⟨*name*⟩ based on docKey → P. 492 for the documentation of keys with the given ⟨*key path*⟩ as root. The new environment ⟨*name*⟩ takes the same parameters as docKey → P. 492 itself. A second starred environment ⟨*name*⟩ is also created, which is identical to ⟨*name*⟩ but without index entry.

```
\tcbmakedocSubKey{docFooKey}{foo}

\begin{docFooKey}{foodummy}{=\meta{nothing}}{no default, initially empty}
Some key.
\end{docFooKey}

\begin{docFooKey*}{foo another dummy}{=\meta{nothing}}{no default, initially empty}
Some key (not indexed).
\end{docFooKey*}
```

/foo/foodummy=⟨*nothing*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Some key.

/foo/foo another dummy=⟨*nothing*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Some key (not indexed).

N 2020-04-22 `\tcbmakedocSubKeys{⟨name⟩}{⟨key path⟩}`

Creates a new environment ⟨*name*⟩ based on docKeys → P. 492 for the documentation of keys with the given ⟨*key path*⟩ as root. The new environment ⟨*name*⟩ takes the same parameters as docKeys → P. 492 itself.

```
\tcbmakedocSubKeys{docFooKeys}{foo}

\begin{docFooKeys}[
    doc parameter   = {=\meta{nothing}},
    doc description = {no default, initially empty},
  ]
  {
    {
      doc name = foodummy 2,
    },
    {
      doc name = foo another dummy 2,
      doc no index,
    }
  }
Some description.
\end{docFooKeys}
```

/foo/foodummy 2=⟨*nothing*⟩ (no default, initially empty)
/foo/foo another dummy 2=⟨*nothing*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Some description.

`\refCom{`⟨*name*⟩`}`

References a documented LaTeX macro with given ⟨*name*⟩ where ⟨*name*⟩ is written without backslash. The page reference is suppressed if it links to the same page.

```
We have created \refCom{foomakedocSubKey} as an example.
```

We have created \foomakedocSubKey → P. 489 as an example.

`\refCom*{`⟨*name*⟩`}`

References a documented LaTeX macro with given ⟨*name*⟩ where ⟨*name*⟩ is written without backslash. There is no page reference.

```
We have created \refCom*{foomakedocSubKey} as an example.
```

We have created \foomakedocSubKey as an example.

`\refEnv{`⟨*name*⟩`}`

References a documented LaTeX environment with given ⟨*name*⟩. The page reference is suppressed if it links to the same page.

```
We have created \refEnv{foocolorbox} as an example.
```

We have created foocolorbox → P. 490 as an example.

`\refEnv*{`⟨*name*⟩`}`

References a documented LaTeX environment with given ⟨*name*⟩. There is no page reference.

```
We have created \refEnv*{foocolorbox} as an example.
```

We have created foocolorbox as an example.

`\refKey{`⟨*name*⟩`}`

References a documented key with given ⟨*name*⟩ where ⟨*name*⟩ is the full path name of the key. The page reference is suppressed if it links to the same page.

```
We have created \refKey{/foo/footitle} as an example.
```

We have created /foo/footitle → P. 492 as an example.

`\refKey*{`⟨*name*⟩`}`

References a documented key with given ⟨*name*⟩ where ⟨*name*⟩ is the full path name of the key. There is no page reference.

```
We have created \refKey*{/foo/footitle} as an example.
```

We have created /foo/footitle as an example.

N 2019-09-17 **\refPathOperation{⟨*name*⟩}**

References a documented Ti*k*Z path operation with given ⟨*name*⟩. The page reference is suppressed if it links to the same page.

```
We have created \refPathOperation{fooop} as an example.
```

We have created fooop → P. 493 as an example.

N 2019-09-17 **\refPathOperation*{⟨*name*⟩}**

References a documented Ti*k*Z path operation with given ⟨*name*⟩. There is no page reference.

```
We have created \refPathOperation*{fooop} as an example.
```

We have created fooop as an example.

U 2020-02-11 **\refAux{⟨*name*⟩}**

References some auxiliary environment, key, value, or color. The ⟨*name*⟩ is colored according to /tcb/color hyperlink → P. 512, if **hyperref** colorlinks are set, but there is no real link.

```
Some pages back, one can see \refAux{/foo/footitle} as an example.
```

Some pages back, one can see /foo/footitle as an example.

U 2020-02-11 **\refAuxcs{⟨*name*⟩}**

References some auxiliary macro ⟨*name*⟩ where ⟨*name*⟩ is written without backslash. The ⟨*name*⟩ is colored according to /tcb/color hyperlink → P. 512, if **hyperref** colorlinks are set, but there is no real link.

```
Some pages back, one can see \refAuxcs{fooaux} as an example.
```

Some pages back, one can see \fooaux as an example.

\colDef{⟨*text*⟩}

Sets ⟨*text*⟩ with the command color, see /tcb/color command → P. 512.

```
This is my \colDef{text}.
```

This is my text.

\colOpt{⟨*text*⟩}

Sets ⟨*text*⟩ with the option color, see /tcb/color option → P. 512.

```
This is my \colOpt{text}.
```

This is my text.

N 2019-09-18 `\colFade{⟨text⟩}`

Sets ⟨*text*⟩ with the fade color, see /tcb/color fade → P. 512.

```
This is my \colFade{text}.
```

This is my text.

N 2014-09-19 `\tcbdocmarginnote[⟨options⟩]{⟨text⟩}`

Creates a `tcolorbox` note with the given ⟨*text*⟩ inside the margin using the `marginnote` package. The style of the `tcolorbox` is predefined and can be altered by /tcb/doc marginnote → P. 504 and the given ⟨*options*⟩.

```
Some text\tcbdocmarginnote{Note A}
which is commented by a note inside the margin.
Alternatively to |\tcbdocmarginnote|, you can always use
|\marginnote| with a |tcolorbox| directly.\par
This is further text%
\tcbdocmarginnote[colframe=blue!50!white,colback=blue!5!white]{Note B}
with another note.
```

Note A

Note B

Some text which is commented by a note inside the margin. Alternatively to `\tcbdocmarginnote`, you can always use `\marginnote` with a `tcolorbox` directly.
This is further text with another note.

N 2014-09-19 `\tcbdocnew{⟨date⟩}`

Auxiliary macro which typesets the /tcb/doclang/new → P. 513 text with the given ⟨*date*⟩. It may be redefined for customization.

```
\tcbdocnew{1981-10-29}.
% Next one is displayed in the margin:
\tcbdocmarginnote{\tcbdocnew{1978-02-09}}
```

New: 1978-02-09

New: 1981-10-29.

N 2014-09-19 `\tcbdocupdated{⟨date⟩}`

Auxiliary macro which typesets the /tcb/doclang/updated → P. 513 text with the given ⟨*date*⟩. It may be redefined for customization.

```
\tcbdocupdated{2014-09-19}.
```

Updated: 2014-09-19.

26.2 Entry Content Option Keys

N 2020-04-22 **/tcb/doc name=⟨*name*⟩** (no default, initially empty)

Sets the ⟨*name*⟩ of the entry to document, i.e. the ⟨*name*⟩ of the command, environment, key, etc. For docCommand → P. 488, docEnvironment → P. 490, etc. the ⟨*name*⟩ is set by a mandatory parameter, but can also be set by /tcb/doc name. /tcb/doc name also sets ⟨*name*⟩ to /tcb/doc label → P. 503, /tcb/doc index → P. 503, and /tcb/doc sort index → P. 503.

```
\begin{docCommands}[
    doc no index,  %  no index entries for this example
    doc name      = bfseries,
  ] {}
  Font setting to bold face.
\end{docCommands}
```

\bfseries

Font setting to bold face.

N 2020-04-22 **/tcb/doc parameter=⟨*parameters*⟩** (no default, initially empty)

Sets the ⟨*parameters*⟩ of the entry to document, i.e. the ⟨*parameters*⟩ of the command, environment, key, etc. For docCommand → P. 488, docEnvironment → P. 490, etc. the ⟨*parameters*⟩ is set by a mandatory option, but can also be set by /tcb/doc parameter.

```
\begin{docCommands}[
    doc no index,  %  no index entries for this example
    doc name      = textbf,
    doc parameter = \marg{text},
  ] {}
  Sets \meta{text} in bold face.
\end{docCommands}
```

\textbf{⟨*text*⟩}

Sets ⟨*text*⟩ in bold face.

N 2020-04-22 **/tcb/doc keypath=⟨*key path*⟩** (no default, initially empty)

Sets the ⟨*key path*⟩ of the key to document. For docKey → P. 492 and docKey* → P. 492 the ⟨*key path*⟩ is set by a specialized option, but can also be set by /tcb/doc keypath.

```
\begin{docKeys}[
    doc no index,  %  no index entries for this example
    doc keypath     = tikz,
    doc name        = fill,
    doc parameter   = \colOpt{=\meta{color}},
    doc description = default is scope's color setting,
  ] {}
  This option causes the path to be filled.
\end{docKeys}
```

/tikz/fill=⟨*color*⟩ (default is scope's color setting)

This option causes the path to be filled.

`/tcb/doc description`=⟨*description*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Sets a (short!) additional ⟨*description*⟩ for `docCommand` → P. 488, `docEnvironment` → P. 490, or `docPathOperation` → P. 493. Such a description is mandatory for `docKey` → P. 492.

```
\begin{docCommand*}[doc description=my description]{myCommandF}{\marg{argument}}
  This is the documentation of \refCom{myCommandF} which takes one \meta{argument}.
  \refCom{myCommandF} does some funny things with its \meta{argument}.
\end{docCommand*}
```

`\myCommandF{`⟨*argument*⟩`}` (my description)

This is the documentation of `\myCommandF` which takes one ⟨*argument*⟩. `\myCommandF` does some funny things with its ⟨*argument*⟩.

! Note that the description ⟨*text*⟩ may overlap with the text on the left hand side if too long. Linebreaks can be used inside the ⟨*text*⟩.

N 2019-09-18 `/tcb/doc label`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If used inside the option list of `docCommand` → P. 488, `docEnvironment` → P. 490, `docKey` → P. 492, etc, then ⟨*text*⟩ is used for labeling instead of the name of the definition.

```
\begin{docPathOperation*}[doc label=pathline]{-{}-}{\meta{coordinate or cycle}}
  This is the documentation of \refPathOperation{pathline}.
\end{docPathOperation*}
```

`\path ... --`⟨*coordinate or cycle*⟩ `...;`

This is the documentation of `--`.

N 2020-01-07 `/tcb/doc index`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If used inside the option list of `docCommand` → P. 488, `docEnvironment` → P. 490, `docKey` → P. 492, etc, then ⟨*text*⟩ is used for the index instead of the name of the definition.

```
\begin{docPathOperation}[doc index=foo path (horizontal then vertical),
    doc label=pathline2]{-\textbar}{\meta{coordinate or cycle}}
  This is the documentation of \refPathOperation{pathline2}.
\end{docPathOperation}
```

`\path ... -|`⟨*coordinate or cycle*⟩ `...;`

This is the documentation of `-|`.

N 2020-04-23 `/tcb/doc sort index`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If used inside the option list of `docCommand` → P. 488, `docEnvironment` → P. 490, `docKey` → P. 492, etc, then ⟨*text*⟩ is used for as sort key for the index instead of the name of the definition.

```
\begin{docCommands}[
    doc name        = l_tcobox_example_tl,
    doc sort index  = example_tl,  % sorted unter e like example
  ]{}
\end{docCommands}
```

`/tcb/doc into index=true|false` (default `true`, initially `true`)

If set to `false`, no index entries are written for the main documentation environments. The same effect is achieved by using e. g. `docCommand*` → P. 489 instead of `docCommand` → P. 488.

N 2020-04-22 `/tcb/doc no index` (style, initially unset)

If set, no index entries are written for the main documentation environments. This is a shortcut for using `/tcb/doc into index=false`.

N 2014-09-19 `/tcb/doc marginnote=`⟨*options*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Sets style ⟨*options*⟩ for the displayed box of the `\tcbdocmarginnote` → P. 501 command.

```
\tcbset{doc marginnote={colframe=blue!50!white,colback=blue!5!white}}%
This is some text\tcbdocmarginnote{Note A}
which is commented by a note inside the margin.
```

Note A

This is some text which is commented by a note inside the margin.

N 2014-09-19 `/tcb/doc new=`⟨*date*⟩ (style, no default)

Adds a a marginnote with a "New: ⟨*date*⟩" message at the beginning of the upper box part. The intended use is inside the option list of `docCommand` → P. 488, `docEnvironment` → P. 490, etc.

```
\begin{docCommand}[doc new=2000-01-01]{foosomething}{\marg{text}}
Some command for something.
\end{docCommand}
```

New: 2000-01-01

`\foosomething{`⟨*text*⟩`}`

Some command for something.

N 2014-09-19 `/tcb/doc updated=`⟨*date*⟩ (style, no default)

Adds a marginnote with a "Updated: ⟨*date*⟩" message at the beginning of the upper box part. See `/tcb/doc new`.

N 2014-09-19 `/tcb/doc new and updated={`⟨*new date*⟩`}{`⟨*update date*⟩`}` (style, no default)

Adds a marginnote with "New: ⟨*new date*⟩" and "Updated: ⟨*update date*⟩" messages at the beginning of the upper box part. See `/tcb/doc new`.

26.3 Entry Customization Option Keys

/tcb/doc left=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially 2em)

Sets the left hand offset of the documentation texts from docCommand → P. 488, docEnvironment → P. 490, docKey → P. 492, etc, to ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\begin{docCommand*}[doc left=2cm,doc left indent=-2cm]{myCommandA}{\marg{argument}}
  This is the documentation of \refCom{myCommandA} which takes one \meta{argument}.
  \refCom{myCommandA} does some funny things with its \meta{argument}.
\end{docCommand*}
```

\myCommandA{⟨*argument*⟩}

This is the documentation of \myCommandA which takes one ⟨*argument*⟩. \myCommandA does some funny things with its ⟨*argument*⟩.

/tcb/doc right=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially 0em)

Sets the right hand offset of the documentation texts from docCommand → P. 488, docEnvironment → P. 490, docKey → P. 492, etc, to ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\begin{docCommand*}[doc right=2cm]{myCommandB}{\marg{argument}}
  This is the documentation of \refCom{myCommandB} which takes one \meta{argument}.
  \refCom{myCommandB} does some funny things with its \meta{argument}.
\end{docCommand*}
```

\myCommandB{⟨*argument*⟩}

This is the documentation of \myCommandB which takes one ⟨*argument*⟩. \myCommandB does some funny things with its ⟨*argument*⟩.

/tcb/doc left indent=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially -2em)

Sets the left hand indent of documentation heads from docCommand → P. 488, docEnvironment → P. 490, docKey → P. 492, etc, to ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\begin{docCommand*}[doc left indent=2cm]{myCommandC}{\marg{argument}}
  This is the documentation of \refCom{myCommandC} which takes one \meta{argument}.
  \refCom{myCommandC} does some funny things with its \meta{argument}.
\end{docCommand*}
```

\myCommandC{⟨*argument*⟩}

This is the documentation of \myCommandC which takes one ⟨*argument*⟩. \myCommandC does some funny things with its ⟨*argument*⟩.

/tcb/doc right indent=⟨*length*⟩ (no default, initially 0pt)

Sets the right hand indent of documentation heads from docCommand → P. 488, docEnvironment → P. 490, docKey → P. 492, etc, to ⟨*length*⟩.

```
\begin{docCommand*}[doc right indent=-10mm,doc right=10mm,
    doc description=test value]{myCommandD}{\marg{argument}}
  This is the documentation of \refCom{myCommandD} which takes one \meta{argument}.
  \refCom{myCommandD} does some funny things with its \meta{argument}.
\end{docCommand*}
```

\myCommandD{⟨*argument*⟩} (test value)

This is the documentation of \myCommandD which takes one ⟨*argument*⟩. \myCommandD does some funny things with its ⟨*argument*⟩.

The head lines of the main documentation environments docCommand → P. 488, docEnvironment → P. 490, docKey → P. 492, etc, are tcolorboxes inside a tcbraster → P. 306. Options to the surrounding tcbrasters and the embedded tcolorboxes can be given using the following keys.

N 2020-04-24 **/tcb/doc raster command=⟨*options*⟩** (no default, initially empty)

Sets ⟨*options*⟩ for the surrounding tcbraster → P. 306 of docCommand → P. 488, docCommand* → P. 489, and docCommands → P. 489.

```
\tcbset{doc raster command={raster before skip=7mm,raster after skip=0mm}}

The is an example text.

\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandI}{\marg{argument}}
  This is the documentation of \refCom{myCommandI} which takes one \meta{argument}.
  \refCom{myCommandI} does some funny things with its \meta{argument}.
\end{docCommand*}
```

The is an example text.

\myCommandI{⟨*argument*⟩}
This is the documentation of \myCommandI which takes one ⟨*argument*⟩. \myCommandI does some funny things with its ⟨*argument*⟩.

N 2020-04-24 **/tcb/doc raster environment=⟨*options*⟩** (no default, initially empty)

Sets ⟨*options*⟩ for the surrounding tcbraster → P. 306 of docEnvironment → P. 490, docEnvironment* → P. 490, and docEnvironments → P. 491.

N 2020-04-24 **/tcb/doc raster key=⟨*options*⟩** (no default, initially empty)

Sets ⟨*options*⟩ for the surrounding tcbraster → P. 306 of docKey → P. 492, docKey* → P. 492, and docKeys → P. 492.

N 2020-04-24 **/tcb/doc raster path=⟨*options*⟩** (no default, initially empty)

Sets ⟨*options*⟩ for the surrounding tcbraster → P. 306 of docPathOperation → P. 493, docPathOperation* → P. 493, and docPathOperations → P. 493.

N 2020-04-24 **/tcb/doc raster=⟨*options*⟩** (no default, initially empty)

Shortcut for setting the same ⟨*options*⟩ for /tcb/doc raster command, /tcb/doc raster environment, /tcb/doc raster key, and /tcb/doc raster path.

/tcb/doc head command=⟨*options*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Sets ⟨*options*⟩ for the head line of docCommand → P. 488, docCommand* → P. 489, and docCommands → P. 489.

```
\tcbset{doc head command={interior style={fill,left color=red!20!white,
  right color=blue!20!white}}}

\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandE}{\marg{argument}}
  This is the documentation of \refCom{myCommandE} which takes one \meta{argument}.
  \refCom{myCommandE} does some funny things with its \meta{argument}.
\end{docCommand*}
```

\myCommandE{⟨*argument*⟩}
This is the documentation of \myCommandE which takes one ⟨*argument*⟩. \myCommandE does some funny things with its ⟨*argument*⟩.

/tcb/doc head environment=⟨*options*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Sets ⟨*options*⟩ for the head line of docEnvironment → P. 490, docEnvironment* → P. 490, and docEnvironments → P. 491.

```
\tcbset{doc head environment={beamer,boxsep=2pt,arc=2pt,colback=green!20!white}}

\begin{docEnvironment*}{myEnvironment}{\marg{argument}}
  This is the documentation of \refEnv{myEnvironment} which
  takes one \meta{argument}.
\end{docEnvironment*}
```

```
\begin{myEnvironment}{⟨argument⟩}
  ⟨environment content⟩
\end{myEnvironment}
```

This is the documentation of myEnvironment which takes one ⟨*argument*⟩.

/tcb/doc head key=⟨*options*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Sets ⟨*options*⟩ for the head line of docKey → P. 492, docKey* → P. 492, and docKeys → P. 492.

```
\tcbset{doc head key={boxsep=4pt,arc=4pt,boxrule=0.6pt,
  frame style=fill,interior style=fill,colframe=green!50!black}}

\begin{docKey}{/foo/myKey}{}{no value}
  This is the documentation of \refKey{/foo/myKey}.
\end{docKey}
```

/foo/myKey (no value)

This is the documentation of /foo/myKey.

N 2019-09-18 **/tcb/doc head path=⟨*options*⟩** (no default, initially empty)

Sets ⟨*options*⟩ for the head line of docPathOperation → P. 493, docPathOperation* → P. 493, and docPathOperations → P. 493.

```
\tcbset{doc head command={interior style={fill,left color=red!7!white,
  right color=blue!7!white}}}

\begin{docPathOperation*}{-{}-}{\meta{coordinate or cycle}}
  This is the documentation of \refPathOperation{-{}-}.
\end{docPathOperation*}
```

```
\path ... --⟨coordinate or cycle⟩ ...;
```

This is the documentation of --.

U 2019-09-18 **/tcb/doc head=⟨*options*⟩** (no default, initially empty)

Shortcut for setting the same ⟨*options*⟩ for /tcb/doc head command → P. 506, /tcb/doc head environment, /tcb/doc head key, and /tcb/doc head path.

The description texts of the main documentation environments docCommand → P. 488, docEnvironment → P. 490, docKey → P. 492, etc, are set in a compact form without indention and parskip=0pt. This settings can overruled by using the following keys to insert code before (or after) the description texts.

N 2015-10-09 **/tcb/before doc body command=**⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Executes ⟨*code*⟩ before the description texts of docCommand → P. 488 and docCommand* → P. 489.

```
\tcbset{before doc body command={%
    \setlength{\parindent}{2.5em}%
    \setlength{\parskip}{1ex plus 0.75ex minus 0.25ex}%
}}

\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandG}{\marg{argument}}
  This is the documentation of \refCom{myCommandG} which takes one \meta{argument}.
  \refCom{myCommandG} does some funny things with its \meta{argument}.
\end{docCommand*}
```

\myCommandG{⟨*argument*⟩}

This is the documentation of \myCommandG which takes one ⟨*argument*⟩. \myCommandG does some funny things with its ⟨*argument*⟩.

N 2015-10-09 **/tcb/after doc body command=**⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Executes ⟨*code*⟩ after the description texts of docCommand → P. 488 and docCommand* → P. 489.

```
\tcbset{after doc body command={%
    \hfill\nolinebreak[1]\hspace*{\fill}\textcolor{red}{$\diamondsuit$}%
}}

\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandH}{\marg{argument}}
  This is the documentation of \refCom{myCommandH} which takes one \meta{argument}.
  \refCom{myCommandH} does some funny things with its \meta{argument}.
\end{docCommand*}
```

\myCommandH{⟨*argument*⟩}

This is the documentation of \myCommandH which takes one ⟨*argument*⟩. \myCommandH does some funny things with its ⟨*argument*⟩. ♢

N 2015-10-09 **/tcb/before doc body environment=**⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Executes ⟨*code*⟩ before the description texts of docEnvironment → P. 490 and docEnvironment* → P. 490.

N 2015-10-09 **/tcb/after doc body environment=**⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Executes ⟨*code*⟩ after the description texts of docEnvironment → P. 490 and docEnvironment* → P. 490.

N 2015-10-09 **/tcb/before doc body key=**⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Executes ⟨*code*⟩ before the description texts of docKey → P. 492 and docKey* → P. 492.

N 2015-10-09 **/tcb/after doc body key=**⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Executes ⟨*code*⟩ after the description texts of docKey → P. 492 and docKey* → P. 492.

N 2019-09-18 **/tcb/before doc body path=**⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Executes ⟨*code*⟩ before the description texts of docPathOperation → P. 493 and docPathOperation* → P. 493.

N 2019-09-18 **/tcb/after doc body path=**⟨*code*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Executes ⟨*code*⟩ after the description texts of docPathOperation → P. 493 and docPathOperation* → P. 493.

N 2015-10-09
U 2019-09-18 **/tcb/before doc body=**⟨*options*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Shortcut for setting the same ⟨*options*⟩ for /tcb/before doc body command → P. 508, /tcb/before doc body environment → P. 508, /tcb/before doc body key → P. 508, and /tcb/before doc body path.

N 2015-10-09
U 2019-09-18 **/tcb/after doc body=**⟨*options*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Shortcut for setting the same ⟨*options*⟩ for /tcb/after doc body command → P. 508, /tcb/after doc body environment → P. 508, /tcb/after doc body key → P. 508, and /tcb/after doc body path.

26.4 General Customization Option Keys

U 2015-03-16 **/tcb/docexample** (style, no value)

Sets the style for dispExample → P. 496 and dispListing → P. 497 with the colors ExampleBack and ExampleFrame. To change the appearance of the examples, this style can be redefined.

```
% Predefined style:
\tcbset{
  docexample/.style={colframe=ExampleFrame,colback=ExampleBack,
    before skip=\medskipamount,after skip=\medskipamount,
    fontlower=\footnotesize}
}
```

/tcb/documentation listing options=⟨*key list*⟩ (no default, initially **style=tcbdocumentation**)

Sets the options from the package **listings** [7]. They are used inside dispExample → P. 496 and dispListing → P. 497 to typeset the listings. Note that this is not identical to the key /tcb/listing options → P. 336 which is used for "normal" listings.
Used for /tcb/listing engine → P. 341**=listings** only.

/tcb/documentation listing style=⟨*listing style*⟩ (no default, initially **tcbdocumentation**)

Abbreviation for **documentation listing options={style=...}**. This key sets a ⟨*style*⟩ for the **listings** package, see [7]. Note that this is not identical to the key /tcb/listing style → P. 336 which is used for "normal" listings.
Used for /tcb/listing engine → P. 341**=listings** only.

/tcb/documentation minted options=⟨*key list*⟩ (no default, initially **tabsize=2,fontsize=\small**)

Sets the options from the package **minted** [14] which are used during typesetting of the listing, if used. Note that this is not identical to the key /tcb/minted options → P. 339 which is used for "normal" listings.
Used for /tcb/listing engine → P. 341**=minted** only.

/tcb/documentation minted style=⟨*key list*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Sets a ⟨*style*⟩ known to **Pygments** [16] for the package **minted** [14], if used. Note that this is not identical to the key /tcb/minted style → P. 340 which is used for "normal" listings.
Used for /tcb/listing engine → P. 341**=minted** only.

N 2017-04-24 **/tcb/documentation minted language=**⟨*programming language*⟩ (no default, initially **latex**)

Sets a ⟨*programming language*⟩ known to **Pygments** [16] for the package **minted** [14], if used. Note that this is not identical to the key /tcb/minted language → P. 339 which is used for "normal" listings.
Used for /tcb/listing engine → P. 341**=minted** only.

! The following two keys are deprecated and without function (v3.50 and above). Use /tcb/before → P. 86 and /tcb/after → P. 86 with appropriate values instead. Also see /tcb/docexample.

U 2015-03-16 **/tcb/before example=**⟨*macros*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Sets the ⟨*macros*⟩ which are executed before dispExample → P. 496 and dispListing → P. 497 additional to /tcb/before → P. 86.

deprecated

/tcb/after example=⟨*macros*⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Sets the ⟨*macros*⟩ which are executed after dispExample → P. 496 and dispListing → P. 497 additional to /tcb/after → P. 86.

deprecated

N 2017-04-25 **/tcb/keywords bold=true|false** (default `true`, initially `true`)

Keyword used in `docEnvironment` → P. 490, `docCommand` → P. 488, etc. are printed boldface (or not). Since the typewriter font is used, the effect may be invisible with Computer Modern fonts or similar which do not have a bold variant. Note that references to keywords are not printed boldface at all.

```
\LARGE
\docAuxCommand{fooaux}, \refCom{tcbset}

\tcbset{keywords bold=false}
\docAuxCommand{fooaux}, \refCom{tcbset}
```

\fooaux, \tcbset → P. 13
\fooaux, \tcbset → P. 13

N 2015-01-09 **/tcb/index command=**⟨*macro*⟩ (no default, initially `\index`)

Replaces the internally used `\index` macro by the given ⟨*macro*⟩. The ⟨*macro*⟩ has to take one mandatory argument like `\index`. This option is mutually exclusive with `/tcb/index command name`.

```
\tcbset{index command=\myindexcommand}
```

N 2015-01-09 **/tcb/index command name=**⟨*name*⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Replaces the internally used `\index` macro by `\index[`⟨*name*⟩`]`, i.e. `\index{...}` is replaced by `\index[`⟨*name*⟩`]{...}`. This option is intended to be used with `imakeidx` and is mutually exclusive with `/tcb/index command`.

```
\tcbset{index command name=mydoc}
```

/tcb/index format=⟨*format*⟩ (no default, initially `pgf`)

Determines the basic ⟨*format*⟩ of the generated index. Feasible values are:

- `pgfsection`: The index is formatted like in the `pgf` documentation (as a section).
- `pgfchapter`: The index is formatted like in the `pgf` documentation (as a chapter).
- `pgf`: Alias for `pgfsection`.
- `doc`: The index is assumed to be formatted by `doc` or `ltxdoc`. The usage of `makeindex` with `-s gind.ist` is assumed. The package `hypdoc` has to be loaded *before* `tcolorbox`. Only a limited set of customizations will work! This option cannot be unset when used!
- `off`: The index is not formatted by `tcolorbox`. Use this, if the index is formatted by other package like `imakeidx`.

/tcb/index actual=⟨*character*⟩ (no default, initially `@`)

Sets the character for “actual” in automatic indexing.

/tcb/index quote=⟨*character*⟩ (no default, initially `"`)

Sets the character for “quote” in automatic indexing.

/tcb/index level=⟨*character*⟩ (no default, initially `!`)

Sets the character for “level” in automatic indexing.

/tcb/index default settings (style, no value)

Sets the `makeindex` default values for `/tcb/index actual`, `/tcb/index quote`, and `/tcb/index level`.

/tcb/index german settings (style, no value)

Sets the `makeindex` values recommended for German language texts. This is identical to setting the following:

```
\tcbset{index actual={=},index quote={!},index level={>}}
```

/tcb/index annotate=true|false (default true, initially true)

If set to true, the index entries are annotated with short descriptions given by /tcb/doclang/environment →P. 513, /tcb/doclang/key →P. 513, and others.

/tcb/index colorize=true|false (default true, initially false)

If set to true, the index entries colorized according to the color settings given by /tcb/color environment, /tcb/color key, and others.

N 2022-06-20 /tcb/index gather colors=true|false (default true, initially true)
N 2022-06-20 /tcb/index gather commands=true|false (default true, initially true)
N 2022-06-20 /tcb/index gather counters=true|false (default true, initially true)
N 2022-06-20 /tcb/index gather environments=true|false (default true, initially true)
N 2022-06-20 /tcb/index gather keys=true|false (default true, initially true)
N 2022-06-20 /tcb/index gather lengths=true|false (default true, initially true)
N 2022-06-20 /tcb/index gather paths=true|false (default true, initially true)
N 2022-06-20 /tcb/index gather values=true|false (default true, initially true)

If set to true, an additional index grouping is created where entries are gathered, e.g. /tcb/index gather counters creates an index entry 'Colors', see /tcb/doclang/colors →P. 513, which gets all colors as sub entries.

N 2022-06-20 /tcb/index gather all (style, initially set)
N 2022-06-20 /tcb/index gather none (style)

Switches all index gather options from above to true (all) or false (none).

/tcb/color command=⟨*color*⟩ (no default, initially Definition)

Sets the highlight color used by macro definitions.

/tcb/color environment=⟨*color*⟩ (no default, initially Definition)

Sets the highlight color used by environment definitions.

/tcb/color key=⟨*color*⟩ (no default, initially Definition)

Sets the highlight color used by key definitions.

N 2019-09-18 /tcb/color path=⟨*color*⟩ (no default, initially Definition)

Sets the highlight color used by Ti*k*Z path operation definitions.

/tcb/color value=⟨*color*⟩ (no default, initially Definition)

Sets the highlight color used by value definitions.

N 2015-01-08 /tcb/color counter=⟨*color*⟩ (no default, initially Definition)

Sets the highlight color used by counter definitions.

N 2015-01-08 /tcb/color length=⟨*color*⟩ (no default, initially Definition)

Sets the highlight color used by length definitions.

/tcb/color color=⟨*color*⟩ (no default, initially Definition)

Sets the highlight color used by color definitions.

U 2019-09-18 /tcb/color definition=⟨*color*⟩ (no default, initially Definition)

Sets the highlight color for /tcb/color command, /tcb/color environment, /tcb/color key, /tcb/color path, /tcb/color value, /tcb/color counter, /tcb/color length, and /tcb/color color.

/tcb/color option=⟨*color*⟩ (no default, initially Option)

Sets the color used for optional arguments.

/tcb/color fade=⟨*color*⟩ (no default, initially Fade)

Sets the color used for faded text like \path in docPathOperation →P. 493.

/tcb/color hyperlink=⟨*color*⟩ (no default, initially Hyperlink)

Sets the color for all hyper-links, i. e. all internal and external links.

26.5 Language Option Keys

The following keys are provided for language specific settings. The English language is predefined.

`/tcb/english language` (style, no value)

Sets all language specific settings to English.

`/tcb/doclang/color`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially `color`)

Text used in the index for colors.

`/tcb/doclang/colors`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially `Colors`)

Heading text in the index for colors.

N 2022-06-20 `/tcb/doclang/commands`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially `Commands`)

Heading text in the index for commands.

N 2015-01-08 `/tcb/doclang/counter`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially `counter`)

Text used in the index for counters.

N 2015-01-08 `/tcb/doclang/counters`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially `Counters`)

Heading text in the index for counters.

`/tcb/doclang/environment`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially `environment`)

Text used in the index for environments.

`/tcb/doclang/environments`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially `Environments`)

Heading text in the index for environments.

`/tcb/doclang/environment content`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially `environment content`)

Text used in `docEnvironment` → P. 490.

`/tcb/doclang/index`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially `Index`)

Heading text for the index.

`/tcb/doclang/key`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially `key`)

Text used in the index for keys.

`/tcb/doclang/keys`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially `Keys`)

Heading text used in the index for keys.

N 2015-01-08 `/tcb/doclang/length`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially `length`)

Text used in the index for lengths.

N 2015-01-08 `/tcb/doclang/lengths`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially `Lengths`)

Heading text in the index for lengths.

N 2014-09-19 `/tcb/doclang/new`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially `New`)

Announcement text for new content.

N 2019-09-18 `/tcb/doclang/path`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially `path operation`)

Text used in the index for path operations.

N 2019-09-18 `/tcb/doclang/paths`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially `Path operations`)

Heading text in the index for path operations.

`/tcb/doclang/pageshort`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially `P.`)

Short text for page references.

N 2014-09-19 `/tcb/doclang/updated`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially `Updated`)

Announcement text for updated content.

`/tcb/doclang/value`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially `value`)

Text used in the index for values.

`/tcb/doclang/values`=⟨*text*⟩ (no default, initially `Values`)

Heading text in the index for values.

26.6 Predefined Colors of the Library

U 2019-09-18

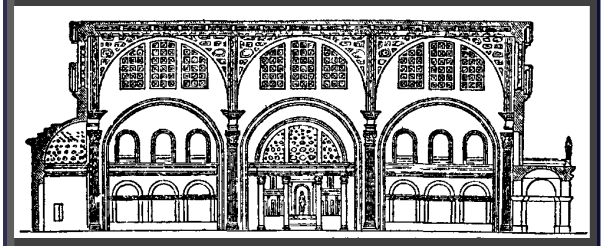
The following colors are predefined. They are used as default colors in some library commands.

`Option` , `Definition` , `ExampleFrame` , `ExampleBack` , `Hyperlink` , `Fade` .

A Picture Credits

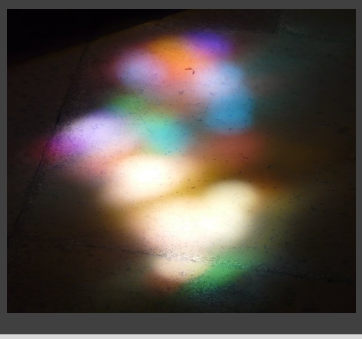
The following pictures were used inside this documentation.

Basilica_5.png



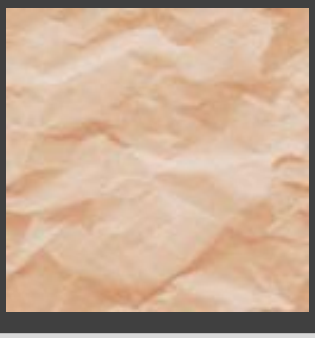
http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Basilica_5.png

lichtspiel.jpg



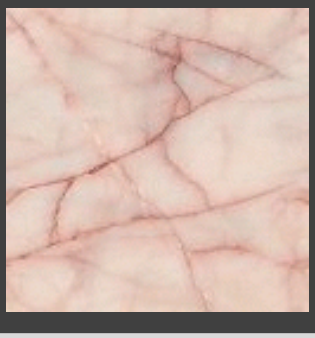
Photograph taken by Thomas F. Sturm.

crinklepaper.png



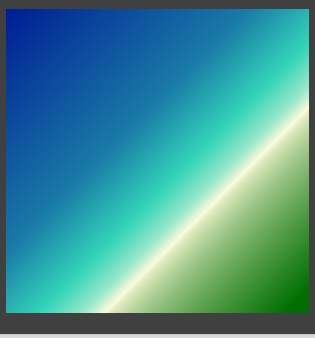
Created with GIMP.
http://www.gimp.org

pink_marble.png



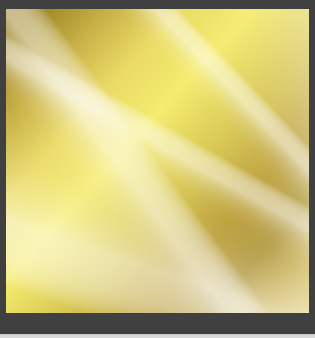
Created with GIMP.
http://www.gimp.org

blueshade.png



Created with GIMP.
http://www.gimp.org

goldshade.png



Created with GIMP.
http://www.gimp.org

References

[1] Donald Arseneau. *The varwidth package*. Sept. 26, 2011.
https://mirrors.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/varwidth/varwidth-doc.pdf.

[2] Gustavo Barros. *The zref-clever package*. Jan. 3, 2023.
https://mirrors.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/zref-clever/zref-clever.pdf.

[3] Peter Breitenlohner. *The ε-TEX manual*. Version 2. Feb. 1998.
https://mirrors.ctan.org/systems/doc/etex/etex_man.pdf.

[4] David Carlisle. *The file ltxdoc.dtx for use with LaTeX 2ε*. Sept. 16, 2019.
https://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/ltxdoc.pdf.

[5] David Carlisle. *The tabularx package*. Jan. 15, 2020.
https://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/tools/tabularx.pdf.

[6] Toby Cubitt. *The cleveref Package*. Mar. 27, 2018.
https://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/cleveref/cleveref.pdf.

[7] Carsten Heinz, Brooks Moses, and Jobst Hoffmann. *The Listings Package*. Version 1.8d. Mar. 24, 2020.
https://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/listings/listings.pdf.

[8] Philipp Lehman and Joseph Wright. *The etoolbox Package*. Oct. 5, 2020.
https://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/etoolbox/etoolbox.pdf.

[9] Frank Mittelbach. *The doc and shortvrb Packages*. June 30, 2011.
https://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/doc.dtx.

[10] Frank Mittelbach. *An environment for multicolumn output*. Oct. 31, 2022.
https://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/tools/multicol.pdf.

[11] Heiko Oberdiek. *The listingsutf8 package*. Dec. 10, 2019.
http://mirrors.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/listingsutf8/listingsutf8.pdf.

[12] Heiko Oberdiek. *The bookmark package*. Nov. 6, 2020.
https://mirrors.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/bookmark/bookmark.pdf.

[13] Heiko Oberdiek. *The zref package*. Apr. 7, 2022.
https://mirrors.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/zref/zref.pdf.

[14] Geoffrey M. Poore. *The minted package. Highlighted source code in LaTeX*. Dec. 12, 2022.
https://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/minted/minted.pdf.

[15] The LaTeX3 Project. *The xparse Package*. Feb. 2, 2023.
https://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/l3packages/xparse.pdf.

[16] *Pygments. Python syntax highlighter*. 2023.
https://pygments.org/.

[17] Sebastian Rahtz and Heiko Oberdiek. *Hypertext marks in LaTeX: a manual for hyperref*. Feb. 7, 2023.
https://mirrors.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/hyperref-doc.pdf.

[18] Will Robertson. *A couple of things involving environments*. May 4, 2014.
https://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/environ/environ.pdf.

[19] Rainer Schöpf, Bernd Raichle, and Chris Rowley. *A New Implementation of LaTeX's verbatim and verbatim* Environments*. Mar. 12, 2001.
https://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/tools/verbatim.pdf.

[20] Thomas F. Sturm. *LaTeX– Einführung in das Textsatzsystem*. 12th edition. IT-Handbücher. Hannover: Leibnitz Universität Hannover IT Services (LUIS), July 2019.
https://www.luis.uni-hannover.de/de/services/kurse-beratung-und-support/handbuecher/it-handbuecher-und-ebooks/details/manuals/latex.

[21] Thomas F. Sturm. *Höhere Mathematik: Fortgeschrittene mathematische Methoden (M.Eng.)* Vorlesungs-Skriptum. Neubiberg: Universität der Bundeswehr München, 2019. https://www.unibw.de/bw/professuren/thomas-sturm.

[22] Thomas F. Sturm. *Mathematik 1 (B.Eng.)* Vorlesungs-Skriptum. Neubiberg: Universität der Bundeswehr München, 2019. https://www.unibw.de/bw/professuren/thomas-sturm.

[23] Thomas F. Sturm. *Mathematik 2 (B.Eng.)* Vorlesungs-Skriptum. Neubiberg: Universität der Bundeswehr München, 2019. https://www.unibw.de/bw/professuren/thomas-sturm.

[24] Till Tantau. *The TikZ and PGF Packages. Manual for version 3.1.10.* Jan. 15, 2023. https://mirrors.ctan.org/graphics/pgf/base/doc/pgfmanual.pdf.

[25] Till Tantau, Joseph Wright, and Vedran Miletić. *The Beamer Class. User Guide for version 3.68.* Sept. 17, 2022. https://mirrors.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/beamer/doc/beameruserguide.pdf.

Index

- key, 477
foo path (horizontal then vertical) path operation, 503
/foo/myKey key, 507
! key, 477

0 value, 167
1 value, 167
2 value, 167

above key, 444
absquote environment, 497
add to height key, 60
add to list key, 133
add to natural height key, 60
add to width key, 39
adjust text key, 23
adjusted title key, 23
adjusted title after break key, 401
after key, 86
after app key, 466
after doc body key, 509
after doc body command key, 508
after doc body environment key, 508
after doc body key key, 508
after doc body path key, 509
after example key, 510
after float key, 85
after float app key, 466
after float pre key, 466
after lower key, 73
after lower app key, 465
after lower pre key, 465
after lower* key, 73
after pre key, 466
after skip key, 88
after skip balanced key, 87
after title key, 69
after title app key, 464
after title pre key, 464
after title* key, 69
after upper key, 71
after upper app key, 464
after upper pre key, 464
after upper* key, 71
alert key, 287
all key, 10
all value, 53, 54, 315, 403, 406
ams align key, 386
ams align lower key, 386
ams align upper key, 386
ams align* key, 386
ams align* lower key, 386
ams align* upper key, 386
ams equation key, 385
ams equation lower key, 385
ams equation upper key, 385
ams equation* key, 385
ams equation* lower key, 385
ams equation* upper key, 385
ams gather key, 387
ams gather lower key, 387
ams gather upper key, 387
ams gather* key, 387
ams gather* lower key, 387
ams gather* upper key, 387
ams nodisplayskip key, 388
ams nodisplayskip lower key, 388
ams nodisplayskip upper key, 388
arc key, 41
arc is angular key, 43
arc is curved key, 43
areasize value, 460
areasize* value, 460
as-is value, 282
at key, 445
at begin tikz key, 213
at begin tikz reset key, 213
at end tikz key, 213
at end tikz reset key, 213
attach boxed title to bottom key, 177
attach boxed title to bottom center key, 176
attach boxed title to bottom left key, 176
attach boxed title to bottom right key, 176
attach boxed title to bottom text left key, 176
attach boxed title to bottom text right key, 176
attach boxed title to bottom* key, 177
attach boxed title to top key, 177
attach boxed title to top center key, 175
attach boxed title to top left key, 175
attach boxed title to top right key, 175
attach boxed title to top text left key, 175
attach boxed title to top text right key, 175
attach boxed title to top* key, 177
attach title key, 25
attach title to upper key, 25
auto value, 109, 381
auto counter key, 124
auto limited value, 109
auto outer arc key, 43
autoparskip key, 90

base value, 91
base color key, 295
baseline key, 91
baselineskip value, 403

beamer key, 257
beamer Skin, 257
beamer alerted key, 287
beamer hidden key, 286
beamerfirst Skin, 259
beamerlast Skin, 260
beamermiddle Skin, 259
bean arc key, 42
before key, 86
before app key, 466
before doc body key, 509
before doc body command key, 508
before doc body environment key, 508
before doc body key key, 508
before doc body path key, 509
before example key, 510
before float key, 85
before float app key, 466
before float pre key, 466
before lower key, 72
before lower app key, 465
before lower pre key, 465
before lower* key, 72
before nobreak key, 92
before pre key, 466
before skip key, 88
before skip balanced key, 87
before title key, 69
before title app key, 464
before title pre key, 464
before title* key, 69
before upper key, 70
before upper app key, 464
before upper pre key, 464
before upper* key, 70
beforeafter skip key, 88
beforeafter skip balanced key, 87
below key, 444
between key, 445
bicolor key, 243
bicolor Skin, 242
bicolor jigsaw key, 249
bicolor jigsaw Skin, 249
bicolorfirst Skin, 246
bicolorfirst jigsaw Skin, 250
bicolorlast Skin, 248
bicolorlast jigsaw Skin, 252
bicolormiddle Skin, 247
bicolormiddle jigsaw Skin, 251
blank key, 232
blanker key, 265
blankest key, 266
blend before title key, 129
blend before title code key, 130
blend into key, 128
bookmark key, 113
bookmark* key, 113
borderline key, 198
borderline east key, 201
borderline horizontal key, 202
borderline north key, 201
borderline south key, 201
borderline vertical key, 202
borderline west key, 201
both value, 141
bottom key, 48
bottom value, 38, 91, 135, 314
bottom seam value, 135
bottomrule key, 40
bottomrule at break key, 405
bottomsep at break key, 405
bottomtitle key, 48
box align key, 91
\boxarrayclear, 426
\boxarraygetbox, 430
\boxarraygetdepth, 431
\boxarraygetheight, 431
\boxarraygetsize, 428
\boxarraygettotalheight, 432
\boxarraygetwidth, 431
\boxarrayreset, 425
boxarraystore environment, 428
boxed title size key, 179
boxed title style key, 180
boxes key, 440
boxrule key, 41
boxsep key, 44
\brackets, 496
break value, 390
break at key, 402
breakable key, 9, 400
broken value, 186–188

capture key, 105
center key, 96
center value, 35, 38, 91, 135, 314
center lower key, 37
center seam value, 135
center title key, 38
center upper key, 37
change value, 390
change apart value, 390
change break value, 390
change standard value, 389
check odd page key, 114
circular arc key, 42
clear preamble key, 484
clear preclass key, 484
clip lower key, 197
clip title key, 196
clip upper key, 196
clip watermark key, 192
clipped value, 296
code key, 119
colback key, 32
colbacklower key, 244
colbacktitle key, 32
\colDef, 500
\colFade, 501

colframe key, 32
collower key, 33
colon value, 129
colon hang value, 129
\colOpt, 500
color key, 513
color color key, 512
color command key, 512
color counter key, 512
color definition key, 512
color environment key, 512
color fade key, 512
color from key, 295
color hyperlink key, 512
color key key, 512
color length key, 512
color option key, 512
color path key, 512
color value key, 512
Colors
Definition, 514
ExampleBack, 514
ExampleFrame, 514
Fade, 514
foocolor, 495
Hyperlink, 514
Option, 514
tcbcolback, 165
tcbcolbacklower, 165
tcbcolbacktitle, 165
tcbcolframe, 165
tcbcollower, 165
tcbcoltitle, 165
tcbcolupper, 165
colors key, 513
colspacing key, 438
coltext key, 33
coltitle key, 33
column key, 442
column* key, 442
columns key, 438
colupper key, 33
Commands
\boxarrayclear, 426
\boxarraygetbox, 430
\boxarraygetdepth, 431
\boxarraygetheight, 431
\boxarraygetsize, 428
\boxarraygettotalheight, 432
\boxarraygetwidth, 431
\boxarrayreset, 425
\brackets, 496
\colDef, 500
\colFade, 501
\colOpt, 500
\consumeboxarray, 429
\consumetcboxarray, 429
\cs, 495
\DeclareTCBInputListing, 335
\DeclareTCBListing, 332
\DeclareTCBox, 20
\DeclareTCBoxFit, 452
\DeclareTcbTheorem, 373
\DeclareTColorBox, 17
\DeclareTotalTCBox, 22
\DeclareTotalTCBoxFit, 453
\DeclareTotalTColorBox, 18
\docAuxCommand, 494
\docAuxCommand*, 494
\docAuxEnvironment, 494
\docAuxEnvironment*, 494
\docAuxKey, 494
\docAuxKey*, 494
\docColor, 495
\docColor*, 495
\docCounter, 494
\docCounter*, 494
\docLength, 495
\docLength*, 495
\docValue, 494
\docValue*, 494
\fooaux, 494, 511
\foomakedocSubKey, 489
\foomakedocSubKey*, 489
\foosomething, 504
\ifboxarrayempty, 430
\imagename, 279
\imagepage, 280
\marg, 495
\meta, 495
\newboxarray, 425
\newtcbexternalizeenvironment, 485
\newtcbexternalizetcolorbox, 485
\NewTCBInputListing, 335
\newtcbinputlisting, 334
\NewTCBListing, 332
\newtcblisting, 330
\NewTCBox, 20
\newtcbox, 19
\NewTCBoxFit, 452
\newtcboxfit, 451
\NewTcbTheorem, 371
\newtcbtheorem, 371
\NewTColorBox, 16
\newtcolorbox, 15
\NewTotalTCBox, 21
\NewTotalTCBoxFit, 453
\NewTotalTColorBox, 18
\oarg, 495
\pdfpages, 281
\posterbox, 441
\ProvideTCBInputListing, 335
\ProvideTCBListing, 332
\ProvideTCBox, 20
\ProvideTCBoxFit, 452
\ProvideTcbTheorem, 373
\ProvideTColorBox, 17
\ProvideTotalTCBox, 22

\ProvideTotalTCBoxFit, 453
\ProvideTotalTColorBox, 18
\refAux, 500
\refAuxcs, 500
\refCom, 499
\refCom*, 499
\refEnv, 499
\refEnv*, 499
\refKey, 499
\refKey*, 499
\refPathOperation, 500
\refPathOperation*, 500
\renewtcbexternalizeenvironment, 485
\renewtcbexternalizetcolorbox, 486
\RenewTCBInputListing, 335
\renewtcbinputlisting, 334
\RenewTCBListing, 332
\renewtcblisting, 331
\RenewTCBox, 20
\renewtcbox, 20
\RenewTCBoxFit, 452
\renewtcboxfit, 451
\RenewTcbTheorem, 373
\renewtcbtheorem, 373
\RenewTColorBox, 17
\renewtcolorbox, 15
\RenewTotalTCBox, 22
\RenewTotalTCBoxFit, 453
\RenewTotalTColorBox, 18
\sarg, 496
\skinExampleSet, 227
\tcbbreak, 413
\tcbcontinuedraftmode, 224
\tcbcounter, 124
\tcbdocmarginnote, 501
\tcbdocnew, 501
\tcbdocupdated, 501
\tcbEXTERNALIZE, 477
\tcbfitdim, 450
\tcbfitsteps, 454
\tcbfontsize, 450
\tcbheightfromgroup, 68
\tcbheightspace, 166
\tcbhighmath, 374
\tcbhypernode, 284
\tcbifexternal, 484
\tcbiffileprocess, 486
\tcbifoddpage, 116
\tcbifoddpageoroneside, 116
\tcbincludegraphics, 278
\tcbincludepdf, 280
\tcbinputlisting, 329
\tcbinputrecords, 147
\tcbinterruptdraftmode, 224
\tcbitem, 307
\tcbline, 233
\tcbline*, 233
\tcblistof, 132
\tcblower, 12
\tcbmakedocSubKey, 498
\tcbmakedocSubKeys, 498
\tcboverlaplower, 245
\tcbox, 14
\tcboxedtitleheight, 178
\tcboxedtitlewidth, 178
\tcboxfit, 449
\tcboxmath, 374
\tcboxverb, 22
\tcbpatcharcangular, 283
\tcbpatcharcround, 283
\tcbpostercolspacing, 437
\tcbpostercolumns, 437
\tcbpostercolwidth, 437
\tcbposterheight, 437
\tcbposterrowheight, 437
\tcbposterrows, 437
\tcbposterrowspacing, 437
\tcbposterset, 437
\tcbposterwidth, 437
\tcbrecord, 147
\tcbsegmentstate, 167
\tcbset, 13
\tcbsetforeverylayer, 13
\tcbsetmacrotoheightofnode, 284
\tcbsetmacrotowidthofnode, 284
\tcbsetmanagedlayers, 103
\tcbsettoheightofnode, 284
\tcbsettowidthofnode, 284
\tcbsidebyside, 140
\tcbstartdraftmode, 224
\tcbstartrecording, 147
\tcbstopdraftmode, 224
\tcbstoprecording, 147
\tcbsubskin, 160
\tcbsubtitle, 26
\tcbtextheight, 167
\tcbtextwidth, 166
\tcbtitle, 25
\tcbtitletext, 25
\tcbuselibrary, 9
\tcbuselistinglisting, 329
\tcbuselistingtext, 329
\tcbusetemp, 144
\tcbusetemplisting, 329
\tcbvignette, 291
\tcolorboxenvironment, 22
\thetcbcounter, 124, 125
\thetcbrasternum, 306, 318
\thetcolorboxnumber, 117
\thetcolorboxpage, 117
\useboxarray, 428
\usetcboxarray, 429
commands key, 513
comment key, 342
comment above listing key, 350
comment above* listing key, 350
comment and listing key, 345
comment only key, 342

comment outside listing key, 348
comment side listing key, 347
comment style key, 345
compilable listing key, 354
compiler key, 483
compress page key, 403
\consumeboxarray, 429
\consumetcboxarray, 429
copy value, 179
counter key, 513
Counters
    foocounter, 494
    tcbrastercolumn, 306
    tcbrasternum, 306
    tcbrasterrow, 306
counters key, 513
coverage key, 439
Crefname key, 127
crefname key, 127
\cs, 495

dash value, 129
dash hang value, 129
\DeclareTCBInputListing, 335
\DeclareTCBListing, 332
\DeclareTCBox, 20
\DeclareTCBoxFit, 452
\DeclareTcbTheorem, 373
\DeclareTColorBox, 17
\DeclareTotalTCBox, 22
\DeclareTotalTCBoxFit, 453
\DeclareTotalTColorBox, 18
default minted options key, 340
Definition color, 514
description color key, 377
description delimiters key, 377
description delimiters none key, 377
description delimiters parenthesis key, 377
description font key, 378
description formatter key, 378
detach title key, 25
direct value, 296
dispExample environment, 496
dispExample* environment, 496
dispListing environment, 497
dispListing* environment, 497
do not store to box array key, 428
doc value, 511
doc description key, 503
doc head key, 507
doc head command key, 506
doc head environment key, 507
doc head key key, 507
doc head path key, 507
doc index key, 503
doc into index key, 504
doc keypath key, 502
doc label key, 503
doc left key, 505
doc left indent key, 505
doc marginnote key, 504
doc name key, 502
doc new key, 504
doc new and updated key, 504
doc no index key, 504
doc parameter key, 502
doc raster key, 506
doc raster command key, 506
doc raster environment key, 506
doc raster key key, 506
doc raster path key, 506
doc right key, 505
doc right indent key, 505
doc sort index key, 503
doc updated key, 504
\docAuxCommand, 494
\docAuxCommand*, 494
\docAuxEnvironment, 494
\docAuxEnvironment*, 494
\docAuxKey, 494
\docAuxKey*, 494
\docColor, 495
\docColor*, 495
docCommand environment, 488
docCommand* environment, 489
docCommands environment, 489
\docCounter, 494
\docCounter*, 494
docEnvironment environment, 490
docEnvironment* environment, 490
docEnvironments environment, 491
docexample key, 510
docKey environment, 492
docKey* environment, 492
docKeys environment, 492
\docLength, 495
\docLength*, 495
docPathOperation environment, 493
docPathOperation* environment, 493
docPathOperations environment, 493
documentation key, 10
documentation listing options key, 510
documentation listing style key, 510
documentation minted language key, 510
documentation minted options key, 510
documentation minted style key, 510
\docValue, 494
\docValue*, 494
downhill value, 53, 54
draft key, 275
draft Skin, 275
draftmode key, 225
draw method key, 296
drop fuzzy midday shadow key, 204
drop fuzzy shadow key, 203
drop fuzzy shadow east key, 207
drop fuzzy shadow north key, 207
drop fuzzy shadow northeast key, 207

drop fuzzy shadow northwest key, 207
drop fuzzy shadow south key, 206
drop fuzzy shadow southeast key, 206
drop fuzzy shadow southwest key, 206
drop fuzzy shadow west key, 206
drop large lifted shadow key, 208
drop lifted shadow key, 208
drop midday shadow key, 203
drop shadow key, 203
drop shadow east key, 206
drop shadow north key, 205
drop shadow northeast key, 206
drop shadow northwest key, 205
drop shadow south key, 205
drop shadow southeast key, 205
drop shadow southwest key, 205
drop shadow west key, 205
drop small lifted shadow key, 208

east fading, 296
east value, 53, 54
east size key, 293
east style key, 294
empty key, 264
empty Skin, 264
empty value, 154, 155
emptyfirst Skin, 267
emptylast Skin, 269
emptymiddle Skin, 268
enforce breakable key, 401
english language key, 513
enhanced key, 230
enhanced Skin, 230
enhanced jigsaw key, 236
enhanced jigsaw Skin, 236
enhanced standard key, 232
enhanced standard jigsaw key, 236
enhancedfirst Skin, 234
enhancedfirst jigsaw Skin, 237
enhancedlast Skin, 235
enhancedlast jigsaw Skin, 241
enhancedmiddle Skin, 234
enhancedmiddle jigsaw Skin, 238
enlarge bottom at break by key, 94
enlarge bottom by key, 94
enlarge bottom finally by key, 93
enlarge by key, 95
enlarge left by key, 94
enlarge right by key, 94
enlarge top at break by key, 94
enlarge top by key, 94
enlarge top initially by key, 93
enlargepage key, 402
enlargepage flexible key, 403
environment key, 483, 513
environment content key, 513
environment with percent key, 483
Environments
    absquote, 497
    boxarraystore, 428
    dispExample, 496
    dispExample*, 496
    dispListing, 497
    dispListing*, 497
    docCommand, 488
    docCommand*, 489
    docCommands, 489
    docEnvironment, 490
    docEnvironment*, 490
    docEnvironments, 491
    docKey, 492
    docKey*, 492
    docKeys, 492
    docPathOperation, 493
    docPathOperation*, 493
    docPathOperations, 493
    extcolorbox, 480
    extikzpicture, 481
    fooauxenv, 494
    foocolorbox, 490
    foocolorbox*, 490
    posterboxenv, 441
    tcbclipframe, 193
    tcbclipinterior, 195
    tcbcliptitle, 195
    tcbexternal, 478
    tcbinvclipframe, 194
    tcbitemize, 307
    tcblisting, 327
    tcboutputlisting, 329
    tcboxeditemize, 309
    tcboxedraster, 308
    tcbposter, 436
    tcbraster, 306
    tcbverbatimwrite, 144
    tcbwritetemp, 144
    tcolorbox, 12
environments key, 513
equal height group key, 66
evenpage value, 51, 97
every box key, 102
every box on higher layers key, 103
every box on layer n key, 103
every float key, 85
every listing line key, 337
every listing line* key, 337
ExampleBack color, 514
ExampleFrame color, 514
extcolorbox environment, 480
extend freelance key, 277
extend freelancefirst key, 277
extend freelancelast key, 277
extend freelancemiddle key, 277
external key, 10, 118
externalize key, 477
externalize example key, 482
externalize example! key, 482
externalize listing key, 482
externalize listing! key, 482

extikzpicture environment, 481
extras key, 407
extras broken key, 407
extras broken pre key, 474
extras first key, 407
extras first and middle key, 408
extras first and middle pre key, 474
extras first pre key, 474
extras last key, 407
extras last pre key, 474
extras middle key, 407
extras middle and last key, 407
extras middle and last pre key, 474
extras middle pre key, 474
extras pre key, 474
extras title after break key, 408
extras unbroken key, 407
extras unbroken and first key, 407
extras unbroken and first pre key, 474
extras unbroken and last key, 407
extras unbroken and last pre key, 474
extras unbroken pre key, 474
extrude bottom by key, 101
extrude by key, 101
extrude left by key, 100
extrude right by key, 100
extrude top by key, 101

Fade color, 514
fade in key, 297
fade out key, 297
Fadings
    east, 296
    north, 296
    semi east, 296
    semi north, 296
    semi south, 296
    semi west, 296
    south, 296
    west, 296
false value, 86, 92, 316, 400
fbox value, 49
figures value, 128
fill downwards key, 98
final value, 462
finish key, 218
finish broken key, 219
finish broken pre key, 472
finish fading vignette key, 302
finish first key, 219
finish first and middle key, 219
finish first and middle pre key, 472
finish first pre key, 472
finish last key, 219
finish last pre key, 472
finish middle key, 219
finish middle and last key, 219
finish middle and last pre key, 472
finish middle pre key, 472
finish pre key, 472
finish raised fading vignette key, 301
finish unbroken key, 219
finish unbroken and first key, 219
finish unbroken and first pre key, 472
finish unbroken and last key, 219
finish unbroken and last pre key, 472
finish unbroken pre key, 472
finish vignette key, 301
first value, 186–188, 406
first and middle value, 186, 406
fit key, 454
fit algorithm key, 460
fit basedim key, 455
fit fontsize macros key, 456
fit height from key, 459
fit height plus key, 457
fit maxfontdiff key, 462
fit maxfontdiffgap key, 462
fit maxstep key, 462
fit maxwidthdiff key, 462
fit maxwidthdiffgap key, 462
fit skip key, 455
fit to key, 455
fit to height key, 455
fit warning key, 462
fit width from key, 458
fit width plus key, 457
fitbox value, 105
fitting key, 9
fixed height key, 443
flip title key, 177
float key, 84
float* key, 84
floatplacement key, 84
flush center value, 35, 37, 38
flush left key, 96
flush left value, 35, 37, 38
flush right key, 96
flush right value, 35, 37, 38
flushleft lower key, 37
flushleft title key, 38
flushleft upper key, 37
flushright lower key, 37
flushright title key, 38
flushright upper key, 37
fontlower key, 34
fontsize key, 440
fontsize value, 460
fontsize* value, 460
fonttitle key, 34
fontupper key, 34
\fooaux, 494, 511
fooaux key, 494
fooauxenv environment, 494
foocolor color, 495
foocolorbox environment, 490
foocolorbox* environment, 490
foocounter counter, 494
foodummy key, 498

foodummy 2 key, 498
\foolength length, 495
\foomakedocSubKey, 489
\foomakedocSubKey*, 489
fooop path operation, 493
\foosomething, 504
footitle key, 492
force nobeforeafter key, 86
force remake key, 477
forced value, 51, 97
forced center value, 109
forced left value, 109
forced right value, 109
frame code key, 157
frame code app key, 472
frame code pre key, 472
frame empty key, 157
frame engine key, 154
frame hidden key, 169
frame style key, 168
frame style image key, 168
frame style tile key, 169
freelance key, 277
freelance Skin, 277
freelance value, 154, 155
freelancefirst Skin, 277
freelancelast Skin, 277
freelancemiddle Skin, 277
freeze extension key, 357
freeze file key, 357
freeze jpg key, 357
freeze none key, 357
freeze pdf key, 357
freeze png key, 357
fuzzy halo key, 204
fuzzy shadow key, 210

geometry nodes key, 156
graphical environment key, 154
graphics directory key, 281
graphics options key, 281
graphics orientation key, 282
graphics pages key, 281
grow sidewards by key, 96
grow to left by key, 95
grow to right by key, 95

halign key, 35
halign code key, 36
halign lower key, 36
halign lower code key, 36
halign title key, 37
halign title code key, 37
halign upper key, 35
halign upper code key, 36
halo key, 204
hbox key, 105
hbox value, 105
hbox boxed title key, 184
height key, 58, 438
height fill key, 61
height fixed for key, 406
height from key, 59
height plus key, 58
hide key, 286
highlight math key, 384
highlight math style key, 384
hooks key, 9
horizontal size key, 294
hybrid value, 460
hybrid* value, 460
Hyperlink color, 514
hyperlink key, 220
hyperlink interior key, 221
hyperlink node key, 221
hyperlink title key, 221
hyperref key, 220
hyperref interior key, 220
hyperref node key, 220
hyperref title key, 220
hypertarget key, 113
hyperurl key, 221
hyperurl interior key, 221
hyperurl node key, 221
hyperurl title key, 221
hyperurl* key, 221
hyperurl* interior key, 221
hyperurl* node key, 221
hyperurl* title key, 221
hyphenationfix key, 107

if odd page key, 114
if odd page or oneside key, 114
if odd page or oneside* key, 115
if odd page* key, 115
IfBlankF key, 120
IfBlankT key, 120
IfBlankTF key, 120
IfBooleanF key, 122
IfBooleanT key, 122
IfBooleanTF key, 122
\ifboxarrayempty, 430
IfEmptyF key, 120
IfEmptyT key, 120
IfEmptyTF key, 120
IfNoValueF key, 121
IfNoValueT key, 121
IfNoValueTF key, 121
IfValueF key, 121
IfValueT key, 121
IfValueTF key, 121
ignore nobreak key, 92
ignored value, 29
image comment key, 342
\imagename, 279
\imagepage, 280
index key, 113, 513
index actual key, 511
index annotate key, 512
index colorize key, 512

index command key, 511
index command name key, 511
index default settings key, 511
index format key, 511
index gather all key, 512
index gather colors key, 512
index gather commands key, 512
index gather counters key, 512
index gather environments key, 512
index gather keys key, 512
index gather lengths key, 512
index gather none key, 512
index gather paths key, 512
index gather values key, 512
index german settings key, 511
index level key, 511
index quote key, 511
index* key, 113
inherit height key, 62
input source on error key, 483
inside node key, 292
interior code key, 158
interior code app key, 473
interior code pre key, 473
interior empty key, 158
interior engine key, 155
interior hidden key, 170
interior style key, 169
interior style image key, 170
interior style tile key, 170
interior titled code key, 157
interior titled code app key, 472
interior titled code pre key, 473
interior titled empty key, 157
interior titled engine key, 154
invisible key, 27
invisible value, 24, 27, 29

justify value, 35

key key, 513
Keys
  /foo/myKey, 507
  /foo/
    fooaux, 494
    foodummy, 498
    foodummy 2, 498
    footitle, 492
  /tcb/
    add to height, 60
    add to list, 133
    add to natural height, 60
    add to width, 39
    adjust text, 23
    adjusted title, 23
    adjusted title after break, 401
    after, 86
    after app, 466
    after doc body, 509
    after doc body command, 508
    after doc body environment, 508
    after doc body key, 508
    after doc body path, 509
    after example, 510
    after float, 85
    after float app, 466
    after float pre, 466
    after lower, 73
    after lower app, 465
    after lower pre, 465
    after lower*, 73
    after pre, 466
    after skip, 88
    after skip balanced, 87
    after title, 69
    after title app, 464
    after title pre, 464
    after title*, 69
    after upper, 71
    after upper app, 464
    after upper pre, 464
    after upper*, 71
    alert, 287
    ams align, 386
    ams align lower, 386
    ams align upper, 386
    ams align*, 386
    ams align* lower, 386
    ams align* upper, 386
    ams equation, 385
    ams equation lower, 385
    ams equation upper, 385
    ams equation*, 385
    ams equation* lower, 385
    ams equation* upper, 385
    ams gather, 387
    ams gather lower, 387
    ams gather upper, 387
    ams gather*, 387
    ams gather* lower, 387
    ams gather* upper, 387
    ams nodisplayskip, 388
    ams nodisplayskip lower, 388
    ams nodisplayskip upper, 388
    arc, 41
    arc is angular, 43
    arc is curved, 43
    at begin tikz, 213
    at begin tikz reset, 213
    at end tikz, 213
    at end tikz reset, 213
    attach boxed title to bottom, 177
    attach boxed title to bottom center, 176
    attach boxed title to bottom left, 176
    attach boxed title to bottom right, 176

attach boxed title to bottom text left, 176
attach boxed title to bottom text right, 176
attach boxed title to bottom*, 177
attach boxed title to top, 177
attach boxed title to top center, 175
attach boxed title to top left, 175
attach boxed title to top right, 175
attach boxed title to top text left, 175
attach boxed title to top text right, 175
attach boxed title to top*, 177
attach title, 25
attach title to upper, 25
auto outer arc, 43
autoparskip, 90
baseline, 91
beamer, 257
beamer alerted, 287
beamer hidden, 286
bean arc, 42
before, 86
before app, 466
before doc body, 509
before doc body command, 508
before doc body environment, 508
before doc body key, 508
before doc body path, 509
before example, 510
before float, 85
before float app, 466
before float pre, 466
before lower, 72
before lower app, 465
before lower pre, 465
before lower*, 72
before nobreak, 92
before pre, 466
before skip, 88
before skip balanced, 87
before title, 69
before title app, 464
before title pre, 464
before title*, 69
before upper, 70
before upper app, 464
before upper pre, 464
before upper*, 70
beforeafter skip, 88
beforeafter skip balanced, 87
bicolor, 243
bicolor jigsaw, 249
blank, 232
blanker, 265
blankest, 266
blend before title, 129
blend before title code, 130
bookmark, 113
bookmark*, 113
borderline, 198
borderline east, 201
borderline horizontal, 202
borderline north, 201
borderline south, 201
borderline vertical, 202
borderline west, 201
bottom, 48
bottomrule, 40
bottomrule at break, 405
bottomsep at break, 405
bottomtitle, 48
box align, 91
boxed title size, 179
boxed title style, 180
boxrule, 41
boxsep, 44
break at, 402
breakable, 400
capture, 105
center, 96
center lower, 37
center title, 38
center upper, 37
check odd page, 114
circular arc, 42
clip lower, 197
clip title, 196
clip upper, 196
clip watermark, 192
code, 119
colback, 32
colbacklower, 244
colbacktitle, 32
colframe, 32
collower, 33
color color, 512
color command, 512
color counter, 512
color definition, 512
color environment, 512
color fade, 512
color hyperlink, 512
color key, 512
color length, 512
color option, 512
color path, 512
color value, 512
coltext, 33
coltitle, 33
colupper, 33
comment, 342
comment above listing, 350
comment above* listing, 350
comment and listing, 345

comment only, 342
comment outside listing, 348
comment side listing, 347
comment style, 345
compilable listing, 354
compress page, 403
default minted options, 340
description color, 377
description delimiters, 377
description delimiters none, 377
description delimiters parenthesis, 377
description font, 378
description formatter, 378
detach title, 25
do not store to box array, 428
doc description, 503
doc head, 507
doc head command, 506
doc head environment, 507
doc head key, 507
doc head path, 507
doc index, 503
doc into index, 504
doc keypath, 502
doc label, 503
doc left, 505
doc left indent, 505
doc marginnote, 504
doc name, 502
doc new, 504
doc new and updated, 504
doc no index, 504
doc parameter, 502
doc raster, 506
doc raster command, 506
doc raster environment, 506
doc raster key, 506
doc raster path, 506
doc right, 505
doc right indent, 505
doc sort index, 503
doc updated, 504
docexample, 510
documentation listing options, 510
documentation listing style, 510
documentation minted language, 510
documentation minted options, 510
documentation minted style, 510
draft, 275
draftmode, 225
drop fuzzy midday shadow, 204
drop fuzzy shadow, 203
drop fuzzy shadow east, 207
drop fuzzy shadow north, 207
drop fuzzy shadow northeast, 207
drop fuzzy shadow northwest, 207
drop fuzzy shadow south, 206
drop fuzzy shadow southeast, 206
drop fuzzy shadow southwest, 206
drop fuzzy shadow west, 206
drop large lifted shadow, 208
drop lifted shadow, 208
drop midday shadow, 203
drop shadow, 203
drop shadow east, 206
drop shadow north, 205
drop shadow northeast, 206
drop shadow northwest, 205
drop shadow south, 205
drop shadow southeast, 205
drop shadow southwest, 205
drop shadow west, 205
drop small lifted shadow, 208
empty, 264
enforce breakable, 401
english language, 513
enhanced, 230
enhanced jigsaw, 236
enhanced standard, 232
enhanced standard jigsaw, 236
enlarge bottom at break by, 94
enlarge bottom by, 94
enlarge bottom finally by, 93
enlarge by, 95
enlarge left by, 94
enlarge right by, 94
enlarge top at break by, 94
enlarge top by, 94
enlarge top initially by, 93
enlargepage, 402
enlargepage flexible, 403
equal height group, 66
every box, 102
every box on higher layers, 103
every box on layer n, 103
every float, 85
every listing line, 337
every listing line*, 337
extend freelance, 277
extend freelancefirst, 277
extend freelancelast, 277
extend freelancemiddle, 277
external, 118
externalize example, 482
externalize example!, 482
externalize listing, 482
externalize listing!, 482
extras, 407
extras broken, 407
extras broken pre, 474
extras first, 407
extras first and middle, 408
extras first and middle pre, 474
extras first pre, 474
extras last, 407
extras last pre, 474
extras middle, 407

extras middle and last, 407
extras middle and last pre, 474
extras middle pre, 474
extras pre, 474
extras title after break, 408
extras unbroken, 407
extras unbroken and first, 407
extras unbroken and first pre, 474
extras unbroken and last, 407
extras unbroken and last pre, 474
extras unbroken pre, 474
extrude bottom by, 101
extrude by, 101
extrude left by, 100
extrude right by, 100
extrude top by, 101
fill downwards, 98
finish, 218
finish broken, 219
finish broken pre, 472
finish fading vignette, 302
finish first, 219
finish first and middle, 219
finish first and middle pre, 472
finish first pre, 472
finish last, 219
finish last pre, 472
finish middle, 219
finish middle and last, 219
finish middle and last pre, 472
finish middle pre, 472
finish pre, 472
finish raised fading vignette, 301
finish unbroken, 219
finish unbroken and first, 219
finish unbroken and first pre, 472
finish unbroken and last, 219
finish unbroken and last pre, 472
finish unbroken pre, 472
finish vignette, 301
fit, 454
fit algorithm, 460
fit basedim, 455
fit fontsize macros, 456
fit height from, 459
fit height plus, 457
fit maxfontdiff, 462
fit maxfontdiffgap, 462
fit maxstep, 462
fit maxwidthdiff, 462
fit maxwidthdiffgap, 462
fit skip, 455
fit to, 455
fit to height, 455
fit warning, 462
fit width from, 458
fit width plus, 457
flip title, 177
float, 84
float*, 84
floatplacement, 84
flush left, 96
flush right, 96
flushleft lower, 37
flushleft title, 38
flushleft upper, 37
flushright lower, 37
flushright title, 38
flushright upper, 37
fontlower, 34
fonttitle, 34
fontupper, 34
force nobeforeafter, 86
frame code, 157
frame code app, 472
frame code pre, 472
frame empty, 157
frame engine, 154
frame hidden, 169
frame style, 168
frame style image, 168
frame style tile, 169
freelance, 277
freeze extension, 357
freeze file, 357
freeze jpg, 357
freeze none, 357
freeze pdf, 357
freeze png, 357
fuzzy halo, 204
fuzzy shadow, 210
geometry nodes, 156
graphical environment, 154
graphics directory, 281
graphics options, 281
graphics orientation, 282
graphics pages, 281
grow sidewards by, 96
grow to left by, 95
grow to right by, 95
halign, 35
halign code, 36
halign lower, 36
halign lower code, 36
halign title, 37
halign title code, 37
halign upper, 35
halign upper code, 36
halo, 204
hbox, 105
hbox boxed title, 184
height, 58
height fill, 61
height fixed for, 406
height from, 59
height plus, 58
hide, 286
highlight math, 384

highlight math style, 384
hyperlink, 220
hyperlink interior, 221
hyperlink node, 221
hyperlink title, 221
hyperref, 220
hyperref interior, 220
hyperref node, 220
hyperref title, 220
hypertarget, 113
hyperurl, 221
hyperurl interior, 221
hyperurl node, 221
hyperurl title, 221
hyperurl*, 221
hyperurl* interior, 221
hyperurl* node, 221
hyperurl* title, 221
hyphenationfix, 107
if odd page, 114
if odd page or oneside, 114
if odd page or oneside*, 115
if odd page*, 115
IfBlankF, 120
IfBlankT, 120
IfBlankTF, 120
IfBooleanF, 122
IfBooleanT, 122
IfBooleanTF, 122
IfEmptyF, 120
IfEmptyT, 120
IfEmptyTF, 120
IfNoValueF, 121
IfNoValueT, 121
IfNoValueTF, 121
IfValueF, 121
IfValueT, 121
IfValueTF, 121
ignore nobreak, 92
image comment, 342
index, 113
index actual, 511
index annotate, 512
index colorize, 512
index command, 511
index command name, 511
index default settings, 511
index format, 511
index gather all, 512
index gather colors, 512
index gather commands, 512
index gather counters, 512
index gather environments, 512
index gather keys, 512
index gather lengths, 512
index gather none, 512
index gather paths, 512
index gather values, 512
index german settings, 511
index level, 511
index quote, 511
index*, 113
inherit height, 62
interior code, 158
interior code app, 473
interior code pre, 473
interior empty, 158
interior engine, 155
interior hidden, 170
interior style, 169
interior style image, 170
interior style tile, 170
interior titled code, 157
interior titled code app, 472
interior titled code pre, 473
interior titled empty, 157
interior titled engine, 154
invisible, 27
keywords bold, 511
label, 110
label is label, 110
label is zlabel, 110
label separator, 379
label type, 111
left, 44
left skip, 89
left*, 44
lefthand ratio, 138
lefthand width, 137
leftlower, 45
leftright skip, 89
leftrule, 40
lefttitle, 45
leftupper, 45
lifted shadow, 211
lines before break, 401
list entry, 133
list text, 133
listing above comment, 349
listing above text, 348
listing above* comment, 349
listing above* text, 348
listing and comment, 345
listing and text, 341
listing engine, 341
listing file, 341
listing inputencoding, 337
listing only, 341
listing options, 336
listing options app, 474
listing options pre, 474
listing outside comment, 348
listing outside text, 346
listing remove caption, 337
listing side comment, 347
listing side text, 346
listing style, 336
listing utf8, 338

lower separated, 30
lowerbox, 29
marker, 238
math, 385
math lower, 385
math upper, 385
middle, 48
minimum for current equal height group, 67
minimum for equal height group, 67
minipage, 105
minipage boxed title, 184
minipage boxed title*, 184
minted language, 339
minted options, 339
minted options app, 474
minted options pre, 474
minted style, 340
move upwards, 98
move upwards*, 98
nameref, 112
natural height, 58
nirvana, 123
no borderline, 200
no boxed title style, 183
no extras, 407
no extras first, 407
no extras last, 407
no extras middle, 407
no extras title after break, 408
no extras unbroken, 407
no finish, 219
no finish first, 219
no finish last, 219
no finish middle, 219
no finish unbroken, 219
no label type, 111
no listing options, 336
no overlay, 80
no process, 354
no recording, 147
no shadow, 203
no underlay, 216
no underlay boxed title, 217
no underlay first, 217
no underlay last, 217
no underlay middle, 217
no underlay unbroken, 217
no watermark, 188
nobeforeafter, 86
nofloat, 84
noparskip, 90
nophantom, 110
notitle, 23
notitle after break, 401
octogon arc, 42
on line, 108
only, 285
opacityback, 56
opacitybacklower, 244
opacitybacktitle, 56
opacityfill, 56
opacityframe, 56
opacitylower, 57
opacitytext, 57
opacitytitle, 57
opacityupper, 57
outer arc, 43
overlaplower, 245
overlay, 79
overlay app, 467
overlay broken, 80
overlay broken app, 468
overlay broken pre, 468
overlay first, 80
overlay first and middle, 80
overlay first and middle app, 468
overlay first and middle pre, 468
overlay first app, 467
overlay first pre, 467
overlay last, 80
overlay last app, 468
overlay last pre, 468
overlay middle, 80
overlay middle and last, 80
overlay middle and last app, 468
overlay middle and last pre, 468
overlay middle app, 468
overlay middle pre, 468
overlay pre, 467
overlay unbroken, 80
overlay unbroken and first, 80
overlay unbroken and first app, 468
overlay unbroken and first pre, 468
overlay unbroken and last, 80
overlay unbroken and last app, 468
overlay unbroken and last pre, 468
overlay unbroken app, 467
overlay unbroken pre, 467
oversize, 50
pad after break, 405
pad at break, 405
pad at break*, 405
pad before break, 405
pad before break*, 405
parbox, 106
parfillskip restore, 92
parskip, 90
pdf comment, 344
pdf extension, 345
phantom, 110
phantomlabel, 110
placeholder, 447
process code, 354
raster after skip, 312
raster before skip, 312
raster column n, 316
raster column skip, 313

raster columns, 310
raster equal height, 315
raster equal height group, 315
raster equal skip, 312
raster even column, 316
raster even number, 317
raster even row, 317
raster every box, 316
raster force size, 316
raster halign, 314
raster height, 312
raster left skip, 313
raster multicolumn, 318
raster multirow, 319
raster number n, 317
raster odd column, 316
raster odd number, 317
raster odd row, 316
raster reset, 316
raster right skip, 313
raster row m, 317
raster row m column n, 317
raster row skip, 313
raster rows, 310
raster valign, 314
raster width, 310
raster width center, 311
raster width flush left, 311
raster width flush right, 311
record, 147
remake, 118
remember, 214
remember as, 215
reset, 119
reset and store to box array, 428
reset box array, 425
right, 45
right skip, 89
right*, 46
righthand ratio, 138
righthand width, 137
rightlower, 47
rightrule, 40
righttitle, 46
rightupper, 46
rotate, 214
rounded corners, 54
run arara, 356
run biber, 356
run bibtex, 356
run dvips, 356
run latex, 356
run lualatex, 356
run makeindex, 356
run pdflatex, 354
run ps2pdf, 356
run system command, 354
run xelatex, 356
savedelimiter, 31
savelowerto, 29
saveto, 28
scale, 214
segmentation at break, 406
segmentation code, 158
segmentation code app, 473
segmentation code pre, 473
segmentation empty, 158
segmentation engine, 155
segmentation hidden, 171
segmentation style, 171
separator sign, 376
separator sign colon, 376
separator sign dash, 376
separator sign none, 376
shadow, 209
sharp corners, 53
sharpish corners, 54
shield externalize, 118
short title, 112
show bounding box, 200
shrink break goal, 403
shrink tight, 100
sidebyside, 134
sidebyside adapt, 141
sidebyside align, 135
sidebyside gap, 137
sidebyside switch, 143
size, 49
skin, 153
skin first, 153
skin first is subskin of, 160
skin last, 153
skin last is subskin of, 160
skin middle, 153
skin middle is subskin of, 160
smart shadow arc, 211
space, 63
space to, 64
space to both, 64
space to lower, 63
space to upper, 63
spartan, 274
split, 65
spread, 99
spread downwards, 99
spread inwards, 98
spread outwards, 98
spread sidewards, 99
spread upwards, 99
spread upwards*, 99
square, 63
squeezed title, 24
squeezed title*, 24
standard, 228
standard jigsaw, 229
step, 111
step and label, 111
store to box array, 426

subtitle style, 26
tabulars, 75
tabulars*, 75
tabularx, 76
tabularx*, 76
tcbimage comment, 343
tcbox raise, 108
tcbox raise base, 108
tcbox width, 109
tempfile, 107
terminator sign, 378
terminator sign colon, 379
terminator sign dash, 379
terminator sign none, 379
text above listing, 349
text above* listing, 349
text and listing, 341
text fill, 74
text height, 59
text only, 342
text outside listing, 347
text side listing, 346
text width, 39
theorem, 383
theorem full label supplement, 380
theorem hanging indent, 381
theorem label supplement, 380
theorem name, 382
theorem name and number, 382
theorem number, 382
theorem number and name, 382
theorem style, 389
tikz, 213
tikz lower, 77
tikz reset, 213
tikz upper, 77
tikznode, 78
tikznode boxed title, 185
tikznode lower, 78
tikznode upper, 78
tile, 253
title, 23
title after break, 401
title code, 159
title code app, 473
title code pre, 473
title empty, 159
title engine, 155
title filled, 32
title hidden, 172
title style, 171
title style image, 172
title style tile, 172
titlebox, 24
titlerule, 41
titlerule style, 173
toggle enlargement, 97
toggle left and right, 51
top, 47
toprule, 40
toprule at break, 405
topsep at break, 405
toptitle, 47
unbreakable, 401
underlay, 216
underlay boxed title, 217
underlay boxed title pre, 471
underlay broken, 217
underlay broken pre, 471
underlay first, 217
underlay first and middle, 217
underlay first and middle pre, 471
underlay first pre, 471
underlay last, 217
underlay last pre, 471
underlay middle, 217
underlay middle and last, 217
underlay middle and last pre, 471
underlay middle pre, 471
underlay pre, 471
underlay raised fading vignette, 300
underlay raised shading vignette, 300
underlay shade in vignette, 300
underlay unbroken, 217
underlay unbroken and first, 217
underlay unbroken and first pre, 471
underlay unbroken and last, 217
underlay unbroken and last pre, 471
underlay unbroken pre, 471
underlay vignette, 299
upperbox, 27
use color stack, 403
use height from group, 68
valign, 38
valign lower, 38
valign scale limit, 38
valign upper, 38
varwidth boxed title, 185
varwidth boxed title*, 185
varwidth upper, 78
verbatim, 108
verbatim ignore indention at end, 146
verbatim ignore percent, 145
vfill before first, 406
visible, 27
void, 123
watermark color, 191
watermark graphics, 187
watermark graphics app, 470
watermark graphics app on, 470
watermark graphics on, 187
watermark graphics pre, 470
watermark graphics pre on, 470
watermark opacity, 189

watermark overzoom, 190
watermark shrink, 190
watermark stretch, 191
watermark text, 186
watermark text app, 469
watermark text app on, 469
watermark text on, 186
watermark text pre, 469
watermark text pre on, 469
watermark tikz, 188
watermark tikz app, 470
watermark tikz app on, 470
watermark tikz on, 188
watermark tikz pre, 470
watermark tikz pre on, 470
watermark zoom, 189
widget, 261
width, 39
/tcb/boxtitle/
xshift, 178
yshift, 178
yshift*, 178
yshifttext, 178
/tcb/doclang/
color, 513
colors, 513
commands, 513
counter, 513
counters, 513
environment, 513
environment content, 513
environments, 513
index, 513
key, 513
keys, 513
length, 513
lengths, 513
new, 513
pageshort, 513
path, 513
paths, 513
updated, 513
value, 514
values, 514
/tcb/external/
-, 477
!, 477
clear preamble, 484
clear preclass, 484
compiler, 483
environment, 483
environment with percent, 483
externalize, 477
force remake, 477
input source on error, 483
minipage, 483
name, 479
PassOptionsToClass, 484
PassOptionsToPackage, 484
plain, 483
preamble, 484
preamble tcbset, 484
preclass, 484
prefix, 477
runner, 477
runs, 483
safety, 483
/tcb/library/
all, 10
breakable, 9
documentation, 10
external, 10
fitting, 9
hooks, 9
listings, 9
listingsutf8, 9
magazine, 9
many, 10
minted, 9
most, 10
poster, 9
raster, 9
skins, 9
theorems, 9
vignette, 9
xparse, 10
/tcb/new/
auto counter, 124
blend into, 128
Crefname, 127
crefname, 127
list inside, 131
list type, 131
no counter, 125
number format, 126
number freestyle, 126
number within, 126
reset counter on overlays, 125
use counter, 125
use counter from, 125
use counter*, 125
/tcb/poster/
colspacing, 438
columns, 438
height, 438
prefix, 438
rows, 438
rowspacing, 438
showframe, 438
spacing, 438
width, 438
/tcb/posterloc/
above, 444
at, 445
below, 444
between, 445
column, 442
column*, 442

fixed height, 443
name, 442
row, 443
rowspan, 443
sequence, 446
span, 443
xshift, 447
yshift, 448
/tcb/posterset/
boxes, 440
coverage, 439
fontsize, 440
no coverage, 439
poster, 438
/tcb/vig/
base color, 295
color from, 295
draw method, 296
east size, 293
east style, 294
fade in, 297
fade out, 297
horizontal size, 294
inside node, 292
lower left corner, 292
lowered color, 295
north size, 293
north style, 294
outside node, 293
over node, 293
over node offset, 293
raised color, 295
scope, 295
semi fade in, 297
semi fade out, 297
size, 294
south size, 293
south style, 294
upper right corner, 292
vertical size, 294
west size, 293
west style, 295
xmax, 292
xmin, 292
ymax, 292
ymin, 292
/tikz/
tcb fill frame, 174
tcb fill interior, 174
tcb fill title, 174
keys key, 513
keywords bold key, 511

label key, 110
label is label key, 110
label is zlabel key, 110
label separator key, 379
label type key, 111
landscape value, 282
landscape* value, 282
last value, 186–188, 406
left key, 44
left value, 35, 141, 314
left skip key, 89
left* key, 44
lefthand ratio key, 138
lefthand width key, 137
leftlower key, 45
leftright skip key, 89
leftrule key, 40
lefttitle key, 45
leftupper key, 45
length key, 513
Lengths
\foolength, 495
lengths key, 513
lifted shadow key, 211
lines before break key, 401
list entry key, 133
list inside key, 131
list text key, 133
list type key, 131
listing above comment key, 349
listing above text key, 348
listing above* comment key, 349
listing above* text key, 348
listing and comment key, 345
listing and text key, 341
listing engine key, 341
listing file key, 341
listing inputencoding key, 337
listing only key, 341
listing options key, 336
listing options app key, 474
listing options pre key, 474
listing outside comment key, 348
listing outside text key, 346
listing remove caption key, 337
listing side comment key, 347
listing side text key, 346
listing style key, 336
listing utf8 key, 338
listings key, 9
listings value, 128, 341
listingsutf8 key, 9
lower left corner key, 292
lower separated key, 30
lowerbox key, 29
lowered color key, 295

magazine key, 9
many key, 10
\marg, 495
margin value, 391
margin apart value, 391
margin break value, 391
marker key, 238
math key, 385
math lower key, 385
math upper key, 385

maximum value, 61
\meta, 495
middle key, 48
middle value, 186–188, 406
middle and last value, 186–188, 406
minimal value, 49
minimum center value, 109
minimum for current equal height group key, 67
minimum for equal height group key, 67
minimum left value, 109
minimum right value, 109
minipage key, 105, 483
minipage value, 105, 307
minipage boxed title key, 184
minipage boxed title* key, 184
minted key, 9
minted value, 341
minted language key, 339
minted options key, 339
minted options app key, 474
minted options pre key, 474
minted style key, 340
most key, 10
move upwards key, 98
move upwards* key, 98

name key, 442, 479
nameref key, 112
natural height key, 58
new key, 513
\newboxarray, 425
\newtcbexternalizeenvironment, 485
\newtcbexternalizetcolorbox, 485
\NewTCBInputListing, 335
\newtcbinputlisting, 334
\NewTCBListing, 332
\newtcblisting, 330
\NewTCBox, 20
\newtcbox, 19
\NewTCBoxFit, 452
\newtcboxfit, 451
\NewTcbTheorem, 371
\newtcbtheorem, 371
\NewTColorBox, 16
\newtcolorbox, 15
\NewTotalTCBox, 21
\NewTotalTCBoxFit, 453
\NewTotalTColorBox, 18
nirvana key, 123
no borderline key, 200
no boxed title style key, 183
no counter key, 125
no coverage key, 439
no extras key, 407
no extras first key, 407
no extras last key, 407
no extras middle key, 407
no extras title after break key, 408
no extras unbroken key, 407
no finish key, 219
no finish first key, 219
no finish last key, 219
no finish middle key, 219
no finish unbroken key, 219
no label type key, 111
no listing options key, 336
no overlay key, 80
no process key, 354
no recording key, 147
no shadow key, 203
no underlay key, 216
no underlay boxed title key, 217
no underlay first key, 217
no underlay last key, 217
no underlay middle key, 217
no underlay unbroken key, 217
no watermark key, 188
nobeforeafter key, 86
nofloat key, 84
none value, 51, 97, 141, 315, 403, 406
noparskip key, 90
nophantom key, 110
normal value, 49, 179
north fading, 296
north value, 53, 54
north size key, 293
north style key, 294
northeast value, 53, 54
northwest value, 53, 54
notitle key, 23
notitle after break key, 401
number format key, 126
number freestyle key, 126
number within key, 126

\oarg, 495
octogon arc key, 42
off value, 462, 511
on value, 462
on line key, 108
only key, 285
opacityback key, 56
opacitybacklower key, 244
opacitybacktitle key, 56
opacityfill key, 56
opacityframe key, 56
opacitylower key, 57
opacitytext key, 57
opacitytitle key, 57
opacityupper key, 57
Option color, 514
outer arc key, 43
outside node key, 293
over node key, 293
over node offset key, 293
overlaplower key, 245
overlay key, 79
overlay app key, 467
overlay broken key, 80

overlay broken app key, 468
overlay broken pre key, 468
overlay first key, 80
overlay first and middle key, 80
overlay first and middle app key, 468
overlay first and middle pre key, 468
overlay first app key, 467
overlay first pre key, 467
overlay last key, 80
overlay last app key, 468
overlay last pre key, 468
overlay middle key, 80
overlay middle and last key, 80
overlay middle and last app key, 468
overlay middle and last pre key, 468
overlay middle app key, 468
overlay middle pre key, 468
overlay pre key, 467
overlay unbroken key, 80
overlay unbroken and first key, 80
overlay unbroken and first app key, 468
overlay unbroken and first pre key, 468
overlay unbroken and last key, 80
overlay unbroken and last app key, 468
overlay unbroken and last pre key, 468
overlay unbroken app key, 467
overlay unbroken pre key, 467
oversize key, 50

pad after break key, 405
pad at break key, 405
pad at break* key, 405
pad before break key, 405
pad before break* key, 405
pageshort key, 513
parbox key, 106
parfillskip restore key, 92
parskip key, 90
PassOptionsToClass key, 484
PassOptionsToPackage key, 484
path key, 513
path value, 154, 155
Path operations
    foo path (horizontal then vertical), 503
    fooop, 493
pathfirst value, 154, 155
pathfirstjigsaw value, 154
pathjigsaw value, 154
pathlast value, 154, 155
pathlastjigsaw value, 154
pathmiddle value, 154, 155
pathmiddlejigsaw value, 154
paths key, 513
pdf comment key, 344
pdf extension key, 345
\pdfpages, 281
pgf value, 511
pgfchapter value, 511
pgfsection value, 511
phantom key, 110
phantomlabel key, 110
placeholder key, 447
plain key, 483
plain value, 389
plain apart value, 390
portrait value, 282
portrait* value, 282
poster key, 9, 438
\posterbox, 441
posterboxenv environment, 441
preamble key, 484
preamble tcbset key, 484
preclass key, 484
prefix key, 438, 477
process code key, 354
\ProvideTCBInputListing, 335
\ProvideTCBListing, 332
\ProvideTCBox, 20
\ProvideTCBoxFit, 452
\ProvideTcbTheorem, 373
\ProvideTColorBox, 17
\ProvideTotalTCBox, 22
\ProvideTotalTCBoxFit, 453
\ProvideTotalTColorBox, 18

raised color key, 295
raster key, 9
raster after skip key, 312
raster before skip key, 312
raster column n key, 316
raster column skip key, 313
raster columns key, 310
raster equal height key, 315
raster equal height group key, 315
raster equal skip key, 312
raster even column key, 316
raster even number key, 317
raster even row key, 317
raster every box key, 316
raster force size key, 316
raster halign key, 314
raster height key, 312
raster left skip key, 313
raster multicolumn key, 318
raster multirow key, 319
raster number n key, 317
raster odd column key, 316
raster odd number key, 317
raster odd row key, 316
raster reset key, 316
raster right skip key, 313
raster row m key, 317
raster row m column n key, 317
raster row skip key, 313
raster rows key, 310
raster valign key, 314
raster width key, 310
raster width center key, 311
raster width flush left key, 311

raster width flush right key, 311
record key, 147
\refAux, 500
\refAuxcs, 500
\refCom, 499
\refCom*, 499
\refEnv, 499
\refEnv*, 499
\refKey, 499
\refKey*, 499
\refPathOperation, 500
\refPathOperation*, 500
remake key, 118
remember key, 214
remember as key, 215
\renewtcbexternalizeenvironment, 485
\renewtcbexternalizetcolorbox, 486
\RenewTCBInputListing, 335
\renewtcbinputlisting, 334
\RenewTCBListing, 332
\renewtcblisting, 331
\RenewTCBox, 20
\renewtcbox, 20
\RenewTCBoxFit, 452
\renewtcboxfit, 451
\RenewTcbTheorem, 373
\renewtcbtheorem, 373
\RenewTColorBox, 17
\renewtcolorbox, 15
\RenewTotalTCBox, 22
\RenewTotalTCBoxFit, 453
\RenewTotalTColorBox, 18
reset key, 119
reset and store to box array key, 428
reset box array key, 425
reset counter on overlays key, 125
right key, 45
right value, 35, 141, 314
right skip key, 89
right* key, 46
righthand ratio key, 138
righthand width key, 137
rightlower key, 47
rightrule key, 40
righttitle key, 46
rightupper key, 46
rotate key, 214
rounded corners key, 54
row key, 443
rows key, 438
rows value, 315
rowspacing key, 438
rowspan key, 443
run arara key, 356
run biber key, 356
run bibtex key, 356
run dvips key, 356
run latex key, 356
run lualatex key, 356
run makeindex key, 356
run pdflatex key, 354
run ps2pdf key, 356
run system command key, 354
run xelatex key, 356
runner key, 477
runs key, 483

safety key, 483
\sarg, 496
savedelimiter key, 31
savelowerto key, 29
saveto key, 28
scale key, 214
scale value, 38
scale* value, 38
scope key, 295
segmentation at break key, 406
segmentation code key, 158
segmentation code app key, 473
segmentation code pre key, 473
segmentation empty key, 158
segmentation engine key, 155
segmentation hidden key, 171
segmentation style key, 171
semi east fading, 296
semi fade in key, 297
semi fade out key, 297
semi north fading, 296
semi south fading, 296
semi west fading, 296
separator sign key, 376
separator sign colon key, 376
separator sign dash key, 376
separator sign none key, 376
sequence key, 446
shadow key, 209
sharp corners key, 53
sharpish corners key, 54
shield externalize key, 118
short title key, 112
show bounding box key, 200
showframe key, 438
shrink break goal key, 403
shrink tight key, 100
sidebyside key, 134
sidebyside adapt key, 141
sidebyside align key, 135
sidebyside gap key, 137
sidebyside switch key, 143
size key, 49, 294
skin key, 153
skin first key, 153
skin first is subskin of key, 160
skin last key, 153
skin last is subskin of key, 160
skin middle key, 153
skin middle is subskin of key, 160
\skinExampleSet, 227
Skins

beamer, 257
beamerfirst, 259
beamerlast, 260
beamermiddle, 259
bicolor, 242
bicolor jigsaw, 249
bicolorfirst, 246
bicolorfirst jigsaw, 250
bicolorlast, 248
bicolorlast jigsaw, 252
bicolormiddle, 247
bicolormiddle jigsaw, 251
draft, 275
empty, 264
emptyfirst, 267
emptylast, 269
emptymiddle, 268
enhanced, 230
enhanced jigsaw, 236
enhancedfirst, 234
enhancedfirst jigsaw, 237
enhancedlast, 235
enhancedlast jigsaw, 241
enhancedmiddle, 234
enhancedmiddle jigsaw, 238
freelance, 277
freelancefirst, 277
freelancelast, 277
freelancemiddle, 277
spartan, 274
standard, 228
standard jigsaw, 229
tile, 253
tilefirst, 254
tilelast, 256
tilemiddle, 255
widget, 261
widgetfirst, 262
widgetlast, 263
widgetmiddle, 262
skins key, 9
small value, 49
smart shadow arc key, 211
south fading, 296
south value, 53, 54
south size key, 293
south style key, 294
southeast value, 53, 54
southwest value, 53, 54
space key, 63
space to key, 64
space to both key, 64
space to lower key, 63
space to upper key, 63
spacing key, 438
span key, 443
spartan key, 274
spartan Skin, 274
spartan value, 154, 155
split key, 65
spread key, 99
spread downwards key, 99
spread inwards key, 98
spread outwards key, 98
spread sidewards key, 99
spread upwards key, 99
spread upwards* key, 99
square key, 63
squeeze value, 460
squeezed title key, 24
squeezed title* key, 24
standard key, 228
standard Skin, 228
standard value, 154, 155, 179, 389
standard jigsaw key, 229
standard jigsaw Skin, 229
step key, 111
step and label key, 111
store to box array key, 426
subtitle style key, 26

tables value, 128
tabulars key, 75
tabulars* key, 75
tabularx key, 76
tabularx* key, 76
tcb fill frame key, 174
tcb fill interior key, 174
tcb fill title key, 174
\tcbbreak, 413
tcbclipframe environment, 193
tcbclipinterior environment, 195
tcbcliptitle environment, 195
tcbcolback color, 165
tcbcolbacklower color, 165
tcbcolbacktitle color, 165
tcbcolframe color, 165
tcbcollower color, 165
tcbcoltitle color, 165
tcbcolupper color, 165
\tcbcontinuedraftmode, 224
\tcbcounter, 124
\tcbdocmarginnote, 501
\tcbdocnew, 501
\tcbdocupdated, 501
tcbexternal environment, 478
\tcbEXTERNALIZE, 477
\tcbfitdim, 450
\tcbfitsteps, 454
\tcbfontsize, 450
\tcbheightfromgroup, 68
\tcbheightspace, 166
\tcbhighmath, 374
\tcbhypernode, 284
\tcbifexternal, 484
\tcbiffileprocess, 486
\tcbifoddpage, 116
\tcbifoddpageoroneside, 116
tcbimage comment key, 343

\tcbincludegraphics, 278
\tcbincludepdf, 280
\tcbinputlisting, 329
\tcbinputrecords, 147
\tcbinterruptdraftmode, 224
tcbinvclipframe environment, 194
\tcbitem, 307
tcbitemize environment, 307
\tcbline, 233
\tcbline*, 233
tcblisting environment, 327
\tcblistof, 132
\tcblower, 12
\tcbmakedocSubKey, 498
\tcbmakedocSubKeys, 498
tcboutputlisting environment, 329
\tcboverlaplower, 245
\tcbox, 14
tcbox raise key, 108
tcbox raise base key, 108
tcbox width key, 109
tcboxeditemize environment, 309
tcboxedraster environment, 308
\tcboxedtitleheight, 178
\tcboxedtitlewidth, 178
\tcboxfit, 449
\tcboxmath, 374
\tcboxverb, 22
\tcbpatcharcangular, 283
\tcbpatcharcround, 283
tcbposter environment, 436
\tcbpostercolspacing, 437
\tcbpostercolumns, 437
\tcbpostercolwidth, 437
\tcbposterheight, 437
\tcbposterrowheight, 437
\tcbposterrows, 437
\tcbposterrowspacing, 437
\tcbposterset, 437
\tcbposterwidth, 437
tcbraster environment, 306
tcbrastercolumn counter, 306
tcbrasternum counter, 306
tcbrasterrow counter, 306
\tcbrecord, 147
\tcbsegmentstate, 167
\tcbset, 13
\tcbsetforeverylayer, 13
\tcbsetmacrotoheightofnode, 284
\tcbsetmacrotowidthofnode, 284
\tcbsetmanagedlayers, 103
\tcbsettoheightofnode, 284
\tcbsettowidthofnode, 284
\tcbsidebyside, 140
\tcbstartdraftmode, 224
\tcbstartrecording, 147
\tcbstopdraftmode, 224
\tcbstoprecording, 147
\tcbsubskin, 160
\tcbsubtitle, 26
\tcbtextheight, 167
\tcbtextwidth, 166
\tcbtitle, 25
\tcbtitletext, 25
\tcbuselibrary, 9
\tcbuselistinglisting, 329
\tcbuselistingtext, 329
\tcbusetemp, 144
\tcbusetemplisting, 329
tcbverbatimwrite environment, 144
\tcbvignette, 291
tcbwritetemp environment, 144
tcolorbox environment, 12
\tcolorboxenvironment, 22
tempfile key, 107
terminator sign key, 378
terminator sign colon key, 379
terminator sign dash key, 379
terminator sign none key, 379
text above listing key, 349
text above* listing key, 349
text and listing key, 341
text fill key, 74
text height key, 59
text only key, 342
text outside listing key, 347
text side listing key, 346
text width key, 39
theorem key, 383
theorem full label supplement key, 380
theorem hanging indent key, 381
theorem label supplement key, 380
theorem name key, 382
theorem name and number key, 382
theorem number key, 382
theorem number and name key, 382
theorem style key, 389
theorems key, 9
\thetcbcounter, 124, 125
\thetcbrasternum, 306, 318
\thetcolorboxnumber, 117
\thetcolorboxpage, 117
tight value, 49
tikz key, 213
tikz lower key, 77
tikz reset key, 213
tikz upper key, 77
tikznode key, 78
tikznode boxed title key, 185
tikznode lower key, 78
tikznode upper key, 78
tile key, 253
tile Skin, 253
tilefirst Skin, 254
tilelast Skin, 256
tilemiddle Skin, 255
title key, 23
title value, 49, 179

title after break key, 401
title code key, 159
title code app key, 473
title code pre key, 473
title empty key, 159
title engine key, 155
title filled key, 32
title hidden key, 172
title style key, 171
title style image key, 172
title style tile key, 172
titlebox key, 24
titlerule key, 41
titlerule style key, 173
toggle enlargement key, 97
toggle left and right key, 51
top key, 47
top value, 38, 91, 135, 314
top seam value, 135
toprule key, 40
toprule at break key, 405
topsep at break key, 405
toptitle key, 47
true value, 92, 400

unbreakable key, 401
unbroken value, 186–188
unbroken and first value, 186–188
underlay key, 216
underlay boxed title key, 217
underlay boxed title pre key, 471
underlay broken key, 217
underlay broken pre key, 471
underlay first key, 217
underlay first and middle key, 217
underlay first and middle pre key, 471
underlay first pre key, 471
underlay last key, 217
underlay last pre key, 471
underlay middle key, 217
underlay middle and last key, 217
underlay middle and last pre key, 471
underlay middle pre key, 471
underlay pre key, 471
underlay raised fading vignette key, 300
underlay raised shading vignette key, 300
underlay shade in vignette key, 300
underlay unbroken key, 217
underlay unbroken and first key, 217
underlay unbroken and first pre key, 471
underlay unbroken and last key, 217
underlay unbroken and last pre key, 471
underlay unbroken pre key, 471
underlay vignette key, 299
unlimited value, 399, 400
updated key, 513
uphill value, 53, 54
upper right corner key, 292
upperbox key, 27
use color stack key, 403
use counter key, 125
use counter from key, 125
use counter* key, 125
use height from group key, 68
\useboxarray, 428
\usetcboxarray, 429

valign key, 38
valign lower key, 38
valign scale limit key, 38
valign upper key, 38
value key, 514
Values
0, 167
1, 167
2, 167
all, 53, 54, 315, 403, 406
areasize, 460
areasize*, 460
as-is, 282
auto, 109, 381
auto limited, 109
base, 91
baselineskip, 403
both, 141
bottom, 38, 91, 135, 314
bottom seam, 135
break, 390
broken, 186–188
center, 35, 38, 91, 135, 314
center seam, 135
change, 390
change apart, 390
change break, 390
change standard, 389
clipped, 296
colon, 129
colon hang, 129
copy, 179
dash, 129
dash hang, 129
direct, 296
doc, 511
downhill, 53, 54
east, 53, 54
empty, 154, 155
evenpage, 51, 97
false, 86, 92, 316, 400
fbox, 49
figures, 128
final, 462
first, 186–188, 406
first and middle, 186, 406
fitbox, 105
flush center, 35, 37, 38
flush left, 35, 37, 38
flush right, 35, 37, 38
fontsize, 460
fontsize*, 460
forced, 51, 97

forced center, 109
forced left, 109
forced right, 109
freelance, 154, 155
hbox, 105
hybrid, 460
hybrid*, 460
ignored, 29
invisible, 24, 27, 29
justify, 35
landscape, 282
landscape*, 282
last, 186–188, 406
left, 35, 141, 314
listings, 128, 341
margin, 391
margin apart, 391
margin break, 391
maximum, 61
middle, 186–188, 406
middle and last, 186–188, 406
minimal, 49
minimum center, 109
minimum left, 109
minimum right, 109
minipage, 105, 307
minted, 341
none, 51, 97, 141, 315, 403, 406
normal, 49, 179
north, 53, 54
northeast, 53, 54
northwest, 53, 54
off, 462, 511
on, 462
path, 154, 155
pathfirst, 154, 155
pathfirstjigsaw, 154
pathjigsaw, 154
pathlast, 154, 155
pathlastjigsaw, 154
pathmiddle, 154, 155
pathmiddlejigsaw, 154
pgf, 511
pgfchapter, 511
pgfsection, 511
plain, 389
plain apart, 390
portrait, 282
portrait*, 282
right, 35, 141, 314
rows, 315
scale, 38
scale*, 38
small, 49
south, 53, 54
southeast, 53, 54
southwest, 53, 54
spartan, 154, 155
squeeze, 460
standard, 154, 155, 179, 389
tables, 128
tight, 49
title, 49, 179
top, 38, 91, 135, 314
top seam, 135
true, 92, 400
unbroken, 186–188
unbroken and first, 186–188
unlimited, 399, 400
uphill, 53, 54
visible, 24, 27, 29
west, 53, 54
values key, 514
varwidth boxed title key, 185
varwidth boxed title* key, 185
varwidth upper key, 78
verbatim key, 108
verbatim ignore indention at end key, 146
verbatim ignore percent key, 145
vertical size key, 294
vfill before first key, 406
vignette key, 9
visible key, 27
visible value, 24, 27, 29
void key, 123

watermark color key, 191
watermark graphics key, 187
watermark graphics app key, 470
watermark graphics app on key, 470
watermark graphics on key, 187
watermark graphics pre key, 470
watermark graphics pre on key, 470
watermark opacity key, 189
watermark overzoom key, 190
watermark shrink key, 190
watermark stretch key, 191
watermark text key, 186
watermark text app key, 469
watermark text app on key, 469
watermark text on key, 186
watermark text pre key, 469
watermark text pre on key, 469
watermark tikz key, 188
watermark tikz app key, 470
watermark tikz app on key, 470
watermark tikz on key, 188
watermark tikz pre key, 470
watermark tikz pre on key, 470
watermark zoom key, 189
west fading, 296
west value, 53, 54
west size key, 293
west style key, 295
widget key, 261
widget Skin, 261
widgetfirst Skin, 262
widgetlast Skin, 263
widgetmiddle Skin, 262

width key, 39, 438

xmax key, 292
xmin key, 292
xparse key, 10
xshift key, 178, 447

ymax key, 292
ymin key, 292
yshift key, 178, 448
yshift* key, 178
yshifttext key, 178